RICOH FT4227/FT4427/FT4727
(A085/A087/A088)

PARTS CATALOG

First Edition August 1992

RICOH COMPANY, LTD.

PARTS CATALOG

INTRODUCTION

This chapter instructs you the numbers and names of these parts on this machine.

INDEX to PARTS CATALOG

FT4227/FT4427/FT4727	**(A085/A087/A088)**
PS140/250	**(A325/A326)**
DF56	**(A497)**
CS120	**(A327)**
SORTER ADAPTER TYPE G	**(A328)**
CS2080	**(A411)**
CS2090	**(A423)**
ST24	**(A374)**
MR20	**(A952)**

FT4227/FT4427/FT4727
(A085/A087/A088)

PARTS CATALOG

INTRODUCTION

This chapter instructs you the numbers and names of these parts on this machine.

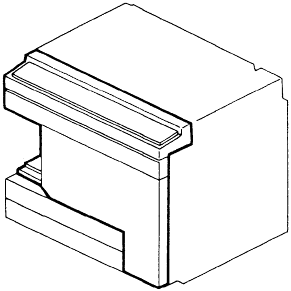
INDEX to PARTS CATALOG

LOCATION OF UNIT **3**
1. EXTERIOR 1 (A085/A087/A088) 10
2. EXTERIOR 2 (A085/A087/A088) 12
3. OPERATION PANEL (A085/A087/A088) 14
4. PLATEN COVER (A085/A087/A088) 16
5. OPTICS SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088) 18
6. OPTICS SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088) 20
7. OPTICS SECTION 3 (A085/A087/A088) 22
8. OPTICS SECTION 4 (A085/A087/A088) 24
9. OPTICS SECTION 5 (A085/A087/A088) 26
10. BY-PASS FEED TABLE (A085/A087/A088) 28
11. PAPER FEED TRAY (A085/A087/A088) 30
12. PAPER FEED SECTION (A085/A087/A088) 32
13. TRAY LIFT SECTION (A085/A087/A088) 34
14. LCT SECTION 1 (A087/A088) 36
15. LCT SECTION 2 (A087/A088) 38
16. LCT SECTION 3 (A087/A088) 40
17. VERTICAL TRANSPORT SECTION (A085/A087/A088) 42
18. PAPER REGISTRATION (A085/A087/A088) 44
19. DRUM SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088) 46
20. DRUM SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088) 48
21. DEVELOPMENT UNIT 1 (A085/A087/A088) 50
22. DEVELOPMENT UNIT 2 (A085/A087/A088) 52
23. CLEANING UNIT (A085/A087/A088) 54
24. T & S CORONA UNIT (A085/A087/A088) 56
25. TRANSPORT SECTION (A085/A087/A088) 58
26. FUSING UNIT 1 (A085/A087/A088) 60
27. FUSING UNIT 2 (A085/A087/A088) 62
28. PAPER EXIT SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088) 64
29. PAPER EXIT SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088) 66
30. FRAME SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088) 68
31. FRAME SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088) 70

32. FRAME SECTION 3 (A085/A087/A088) 72
33. FRAME SECTION 4 (A085/A087/A088) 74
34. DRIVE SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088) 76
35. DRIVE SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088) 78
36. ELECTRICAL SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088) 80
37. ELECTRICAL SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088) 82
38. ELECTRICAL SECTION 3 (A085/A087/A088) 84
39. ELECTRICAL SECTION 4 (A085/A087/A088) 86
40. DUPLEX UNIT 1 (A088) 88
41. DUPLEX UNIT 2 (A088) 90
42. DUPLEX UNIT 3 (A088) 92
43. MAIN CONTROL BOARD (A085/A087/A088) 94
44. MEMORY BOARD (A085/A087/A088) 99
45. AC HARNESS (A085/A087/A088) 101
46. DC HARNESS TYPE 2 (A085/A087/A088) 103
47. DC HARNESS TYPE 4 (A085/A087/A088) 105
48. FUSING UNIT HARNESS (A085/A087/A088) 107
49. LCT HARNESS (A087/A088) 109
50. DECAL AND DOCUMENT (A085/A087/A088) 111
51. SPECIAL TOOL (A085/A087/A088) 117
Parts Index 119

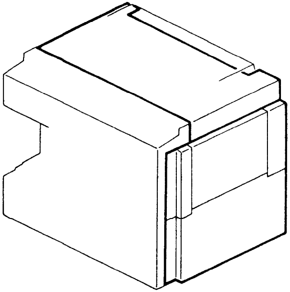
LOCATION OF UNIT

1. EXTERIOR 1 (A085/A087/A088)



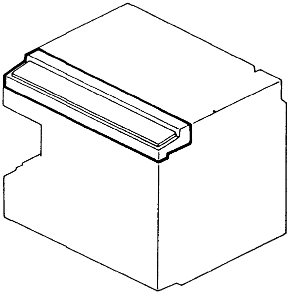
See Page 10

2. EXTERIOR 2 (A085/A087/A088)



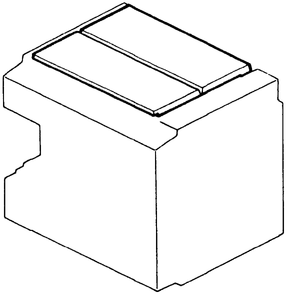
See Page 12

3. OPERATION PANEL (A085/A087/A088)



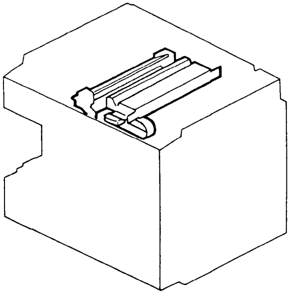
See Page 14

4. PLATEN COVER (A085/A087/A088)



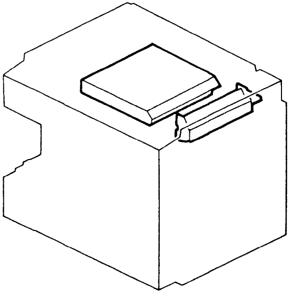
See Page 16

5. OPTICS SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)



See Page 18

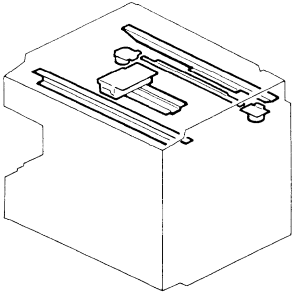
6. OPTICS SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)



See Page 20

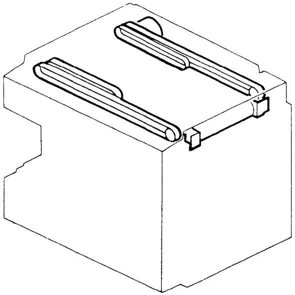
LOCATION OF UNIT

7. OPTICS SECTION 3 (A085/A087/A088)



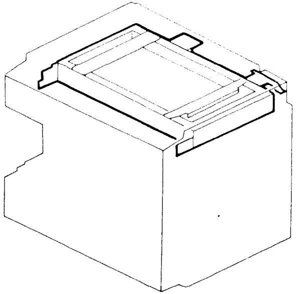
See Page 22

8. OPTICS SECTION 4 (A085/A087/A088)



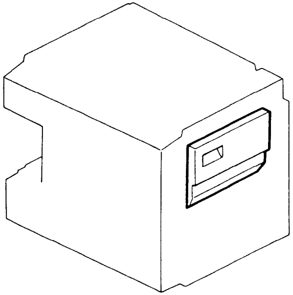
See Page 24

9. OPTICS SECTION 5 (A085/A087/A088)



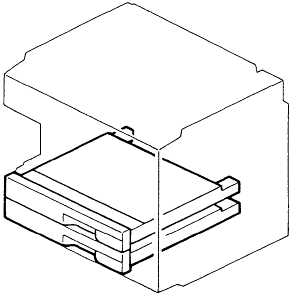
See Page 26

10. BY-PASS FEED TABLE (A085/A087/A088)



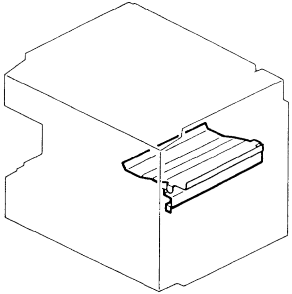
See Page 28

11. PAPER FEED TRAY (A085/A087/A088)



See Page 30

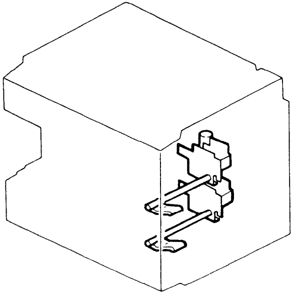
12. PAPER FEED SECTION (A085/A087/A088)



See Page 32

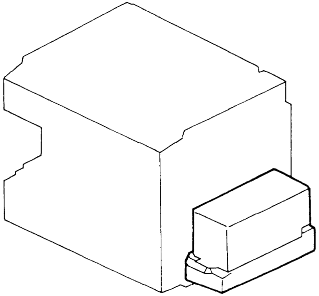
LOCATION OF UNIT

13. TRAY LIFT SECTION (A085/A087/A088)



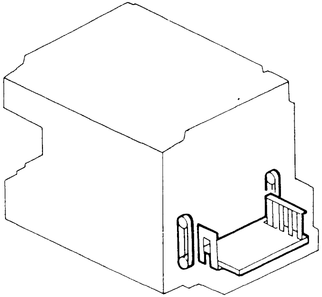
See Page 34

14. LCT SECTION 1 (A087/A088)



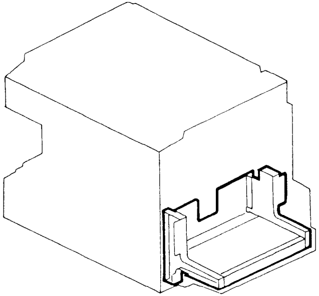
See Page 36

15. LCT SECTION 2 (A087/A088)



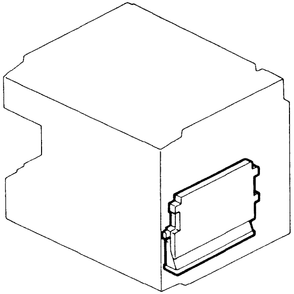
See Page 38

16. LCT SECTION 3 (A087/A088)



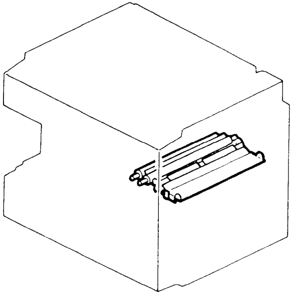
See Page 40

17. VERTICAL TRANSPORT SECTION (A085/A087/A088)



See Page 42

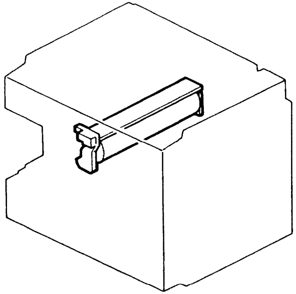
18. PAPER REGISTRATION (A085/A087/A088)



See Page 44

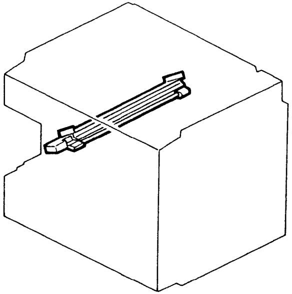
LOCATION OF UNIT

19. DRUM SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)



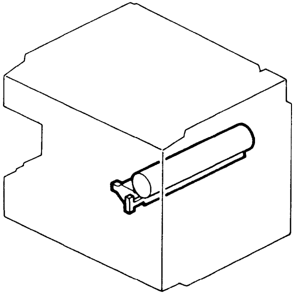
See Page 46

20. DRUM SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)



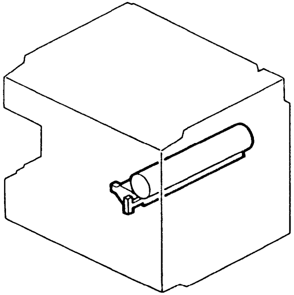
See Page 48

21. DEVELOPMENT UNIT 1 (A085/A087/A088)



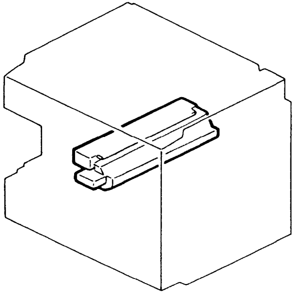
See Page 50

22. DEVELOPMENT UNIT 2 (A085/A087/A088)



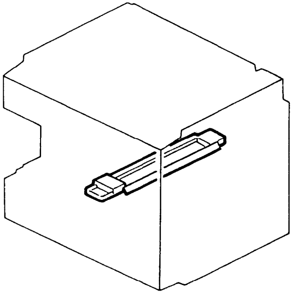
See Page 52

23. CLEANING UNIT (A085/A087/A088)



See Page 54

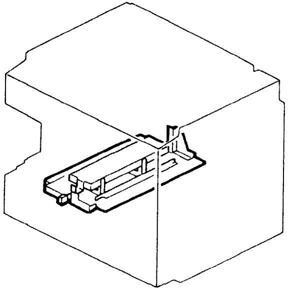
24. T & S CORONA UNIT (A085/A087/A088)



See Page 56

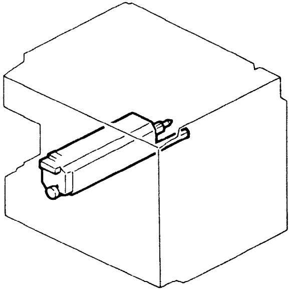
LOCATION OF UNIT

25. TRANSPORT SECTION (A085/A087/A088)



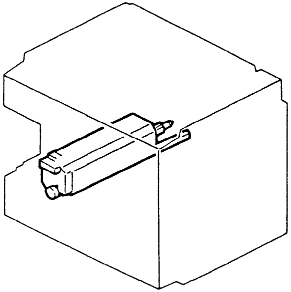
See Page 58

26. FUSING UNIT 1 (A085/A087/A088)



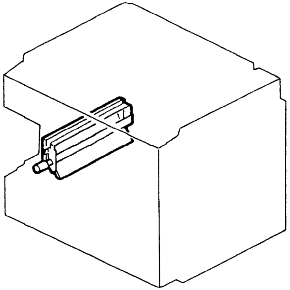
See Page 60

27. FUSING UNIT 2 (A085/A087/A088)



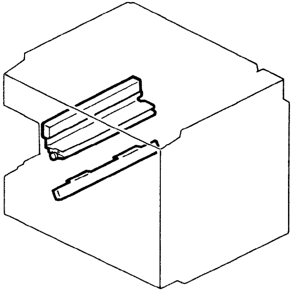
See Page 62

28. PAPER EXIT SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)



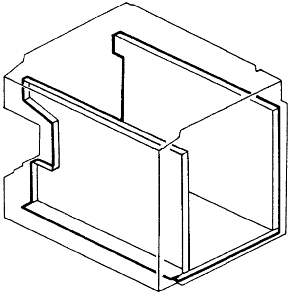
See Page 64

29. PAPER EXIT SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)



See Page 66

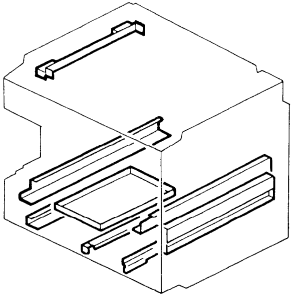
30. FRAME SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)



See Page 68

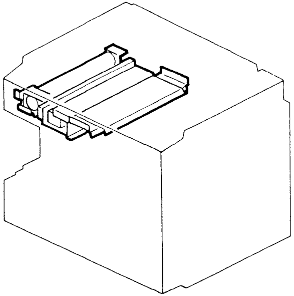
LOCATION OF UNIT

31. FRAME SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)



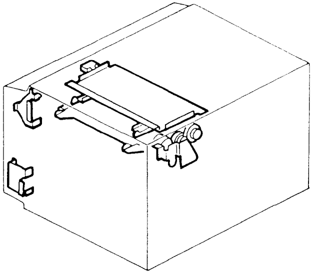
See Page 70

32. FRAME SECTION 3 (A085/A087/A088)



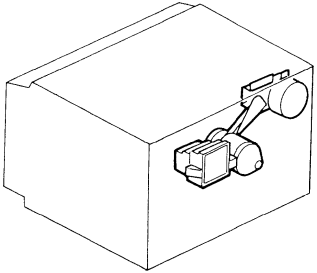
See Page 72

33. FRAME SECTION 4 (A085/A087/A088)



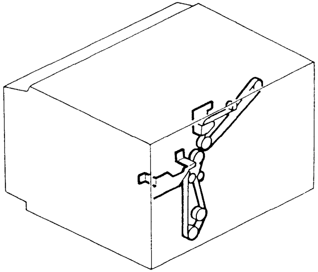
See Page 74

34. DRIVE SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)



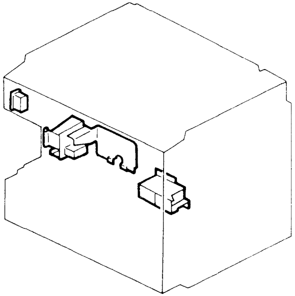
See Page 76

35. DRIVE SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)



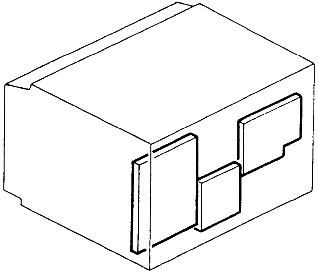
See Page 78

36. ELECTRICAL SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)



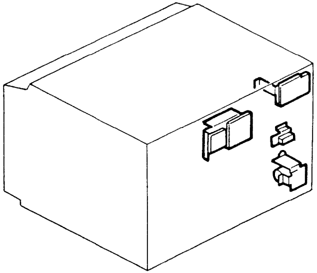
See Page 80

37. ELECTRICAL SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)



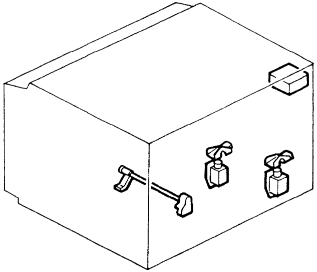
See Page 82

38. ELECTRICAL SECTION 3 (A085/A087/A088)



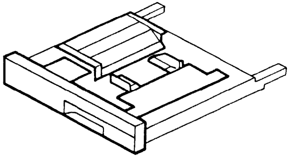
See Page 84

39. ELECTRICAL SECTION 4 (A085/A087/A088)



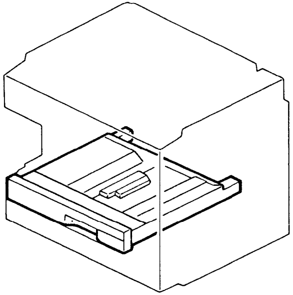
See Page 86

40. DUPLEX UNIT 1 (A088)



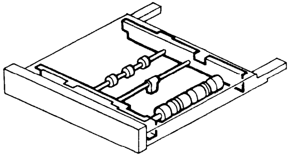
See Page 88

41. DUPLEX UNIT 2 (A088)



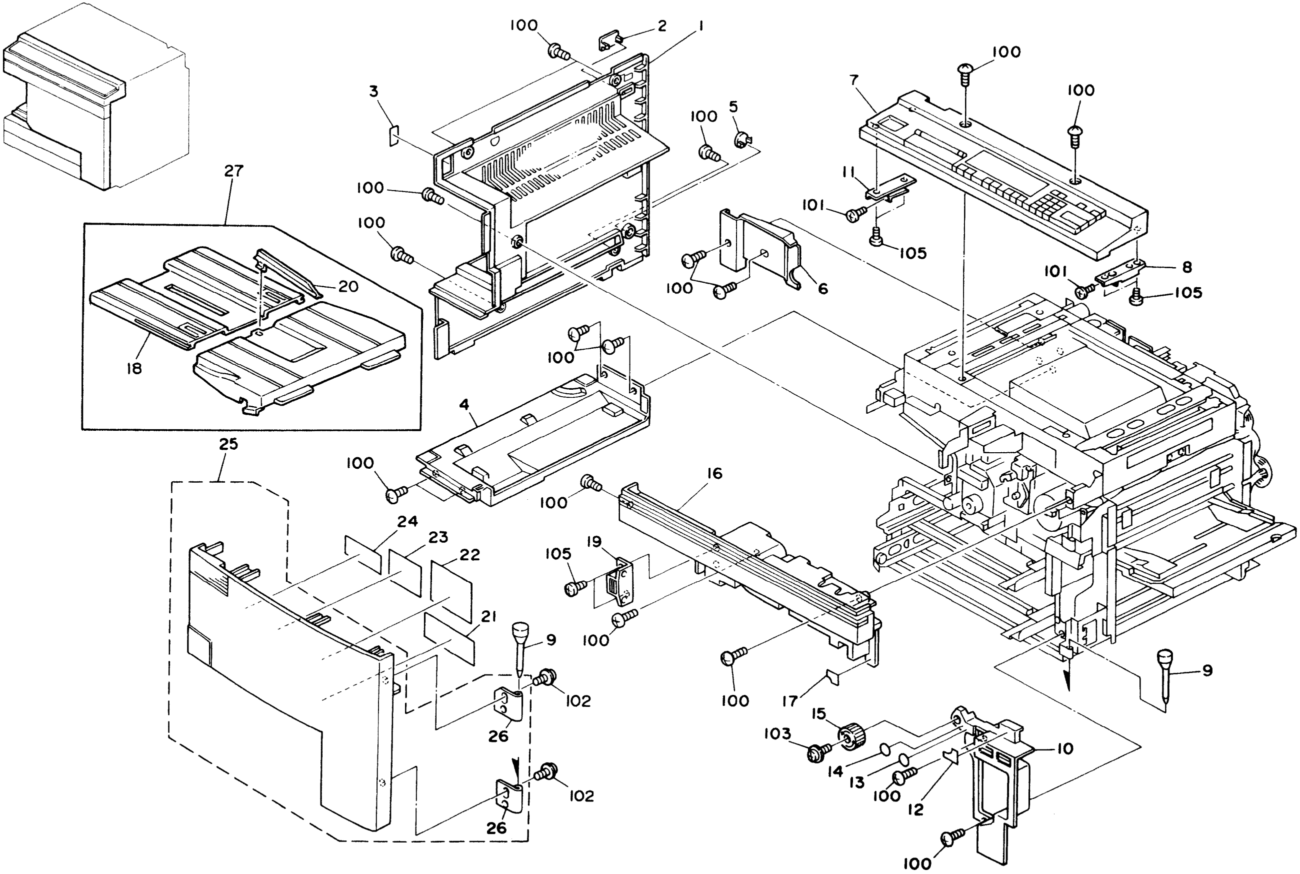
See Page 90

42. DUPLEX UNIT 3 (A088)



See Page 92

1. EXTERIOR 1 (A085/A087/A088)

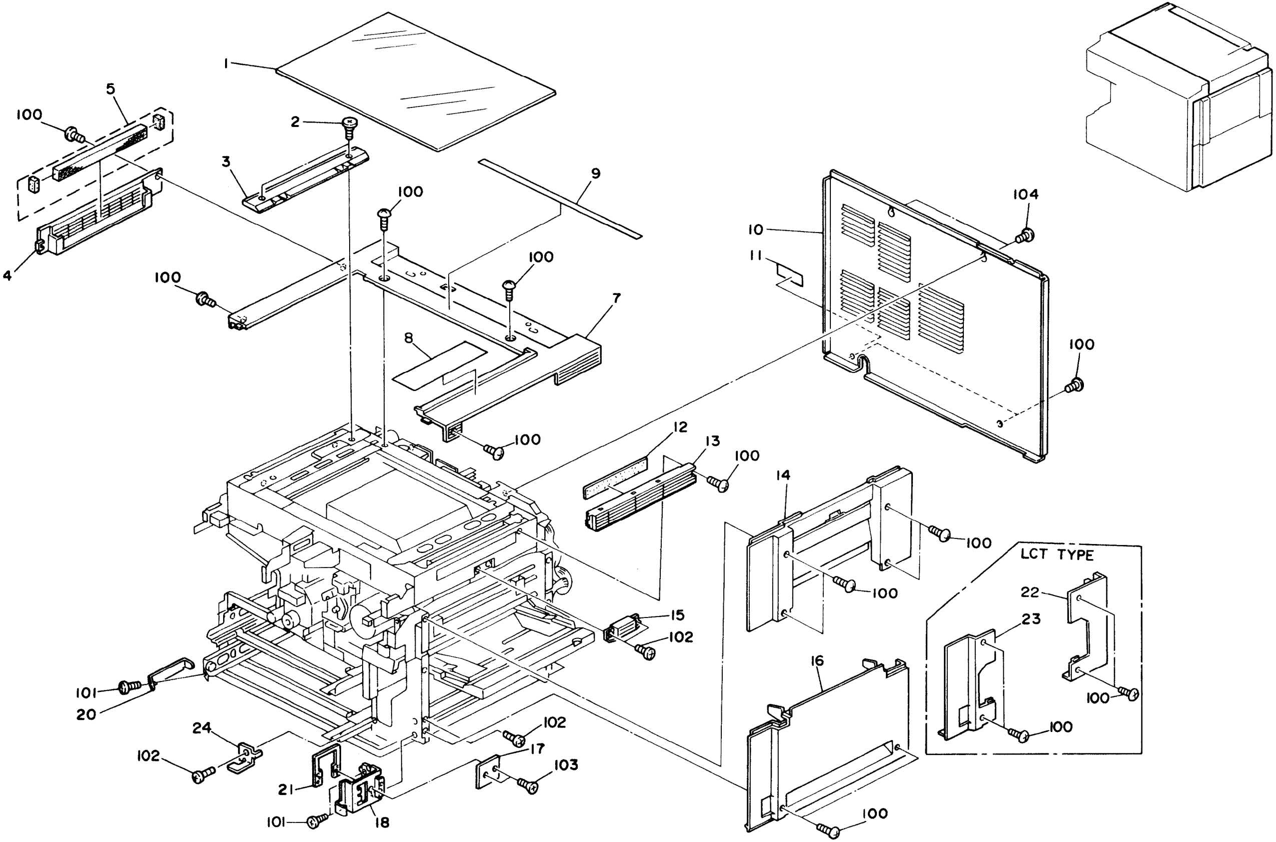

100
2
1
100
7
100
3
100
5
27
100
11
101
100
105
20
6
100
101
8
105
18
100
4
25
100
16
100
24
23
105
19
22
21
100
9
102
9
100
17
15
26
103
10
14
13
100
12
102
26
100

1. EXTERIOR 1 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 1301	Left Cover	1
2	A024 1368	Left Cover Cap - Sorter	1
3	AA00 1196	Decal - Switch - 230V	1
4	A069 1311	Left Bottom Cover	1
5	A069 1305	Plastic Cap - Sorter Stapler	1
6	A069 1321	Left Small Cover	1
7	A088 5650	Operation Panel Ass'y - A4 (A088)	1
7	A088 5550	Operation Panel Ass'y - LT (A088)	1
7	A087 5650	Operation Panel Ass'y - A4 (A085/A087)	1
7	A087 5550	Operation Panel Ass'y - LT (A087)	1
8	A069 1453	Operation Panel Bracket - Right	1
9	AA14 5198	Hinge Pin	2
10	A069 1218	Inner Cover	1
11	A069 1452	Operation Panel Bracket - Left	1
12	A006 1398	Decal - Unlock	1
13	AA00 1203	Decal - A3	1
14	AA00 0008	Decal - A2	1
15	AG05 0051	Registration Roller Knob	1
16	A088 1388	Front Upper Cover (A088)	1
16	A087 1262	Front Upper Cover (A087)	1
16	A085 1262	Front Upper Cover (A085)	1
17	A006 1396	Decal - Lock	1
18	AF04 3028	Copy Tray - Slid	1
19	AG07 0004	Magnet Catch	1
20	A006 4493	Guide - Copy Tray	1
21	A073 1278	Decal - Adding Toner	1
22	A073 1327	Decal - Removing Misfeed Paper A-B (A085/A087)	1
22	A074 1327	Decal - Misfeed Removal A-B (A088)	1
23	A074 1326	Decal - Misfeed Removal C (A088)	1
24	A073 1326	Decal - Removing Misfeed Paper D	1
25	A069 1383	Front Door	1
26	A069 1287	Front Door Hinge	2
27	A069 4235	Receiving Tray	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0802 5094	Tapping Truss Head Screw - M4x8	
101	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
102	0965 4008W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer-M4x8	
103	0960 3006W	Philips Flange Screw - M3x6	
104	0414 0082F	Philips Truss Head Screw - M4x8	
105	0434 0082W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	

2. EXTERIOR 2 (A085/A087/A088)

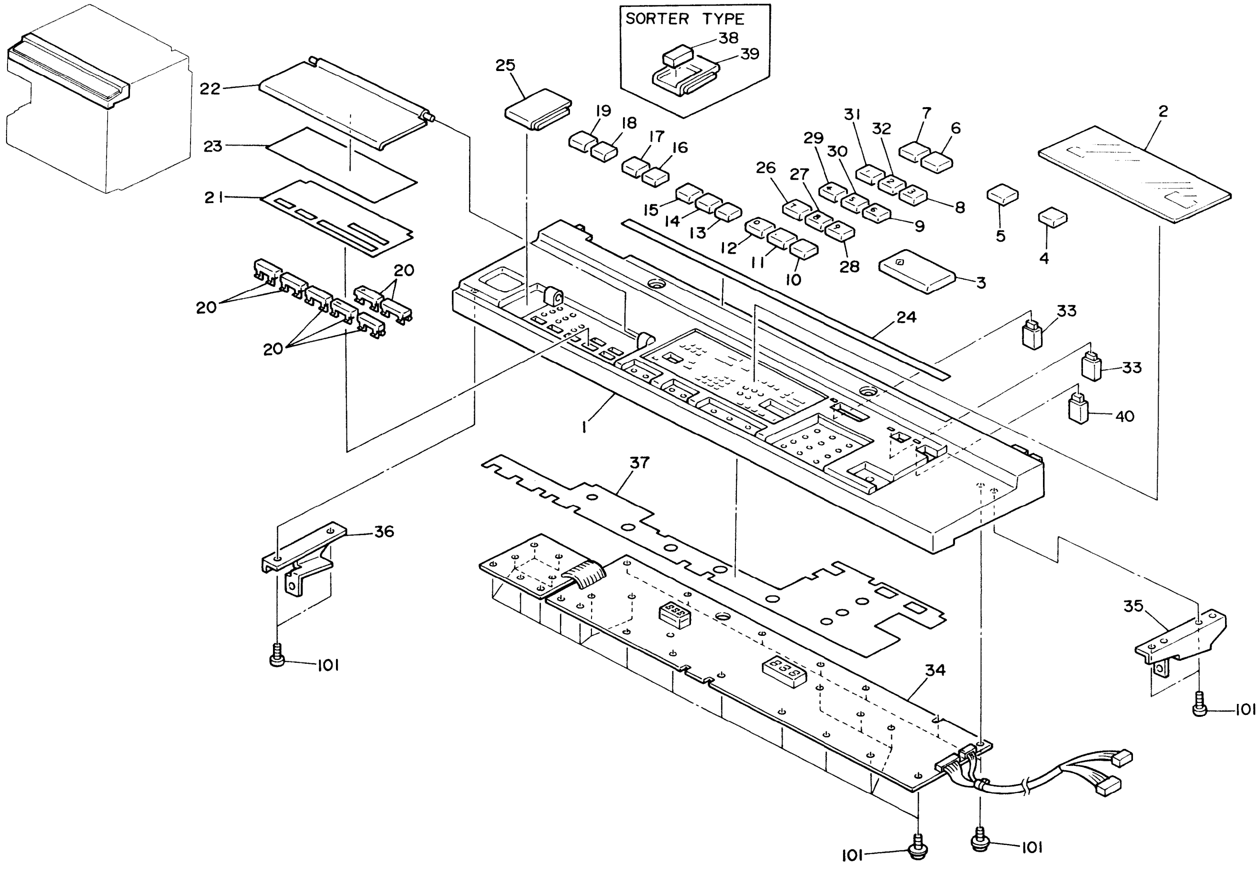

1
2
3
4
5
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
20
21
22
23
24
100
101
102
103
104
LCT TYPE

2. EXTERIOR 2 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	5215 1980	Exposure Glass	1
2	AA14 3070	Shoulder Screw - M2x2	2
3	AC04 2051	Original Scale - A4	1
3	AC04 2050	Original Scale - LT	1
4	A069 1346	Left Optics Cover	1
5	AA01 0063	Ozone Filter	1
6	AA14 3387	Stepped Screw - Platen Cover	1
7	A069 1251	Top Cover	1
8	A088 1532	Decal - Symbol - A4 (A088)	1
8	A088 1531	Decal - Symbol - LT (A088)	1
8	A087 1532	Decal - Symbols - A4 (A085/A087)	1
8	A087 1531	Decal - Symbol - LT (A087)	1
9	A006 1268	Decal - Scale - A4	1
9	A006 1266	Decal - Scale - LT	1
10	A069 1291	Rear Cover	1
11	5442 1372	Decal - Power Source - 220V	1
12	AA01 2050	Filter - Right Optics Cover	1
13	A069 1341	Right Optics Cover	1
14	A069 1261	Right Upper Cover	1
15	AG07 0004	Magnet Catch	1
16	A069 1271	Right Lower Cover (A085)	1
17	A006 1352	Key Counter Cover	1
18	A069 5804	Key Counter Bracket	1
19	A069 2796	Right Stopper - Paper Tray	2
20	A069 2786	Left Stopper - Paper Tray	2
21	5420 1515	Plate - Key Counter	1
22	A335 1231	LCT Rear Cover (A087/A088)	1
23	A335 1211	LCT Front Cover (A087/A088)	1
24	A334 4707	Stopper - Bottom Plate Clutch	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0802 5094	Tapping Truss Head Screw - M4x8	
101	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
102	0434 0082W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
103	0323 0060W	Philips Sunken Head Screw - M3x6	
104	0953 4008M	Screw - M4x8	

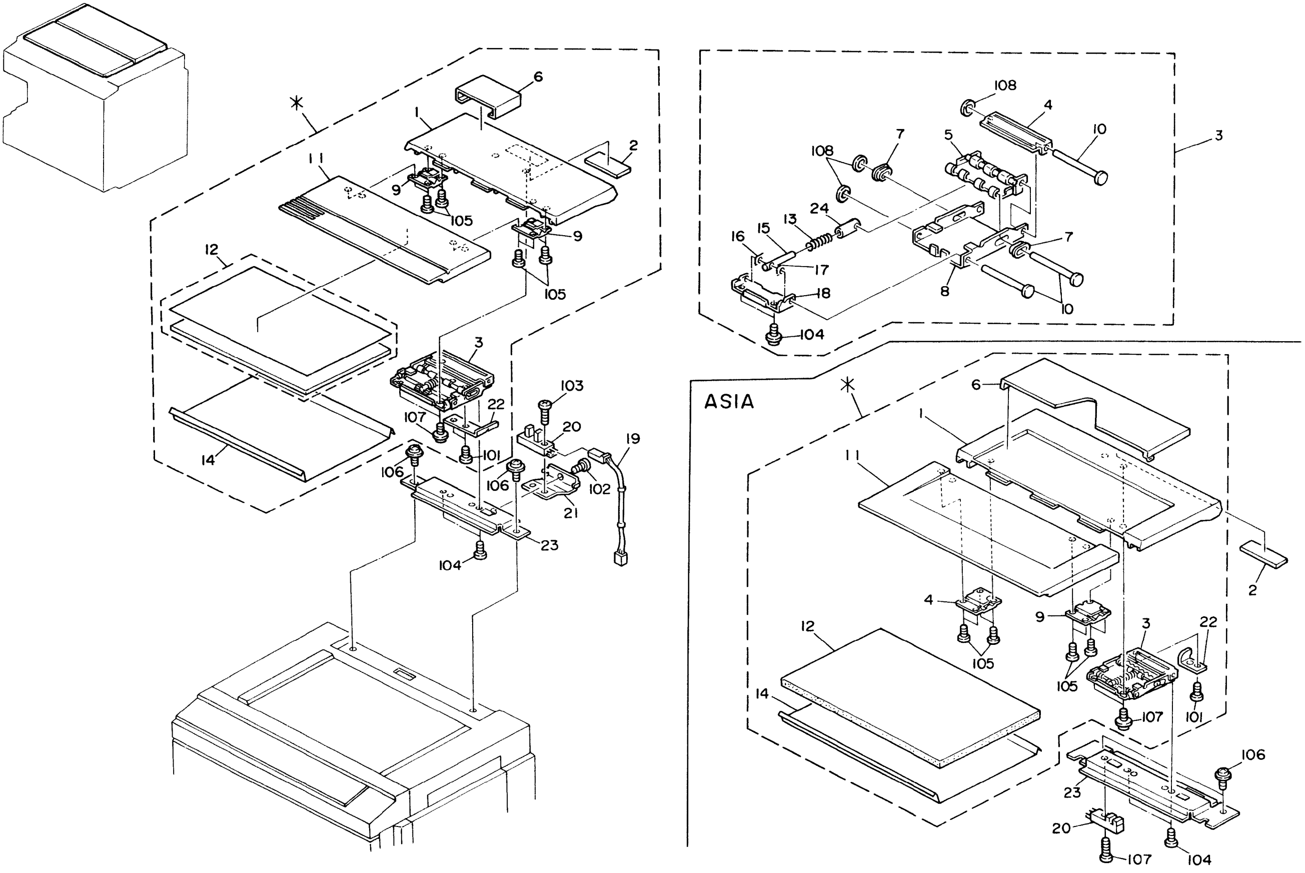
3. OPERATION PANEL (A085/A087/A088)


SORTER TYPE
38
39
25
22
23
21
20
20
20
19
18
17
16
15
14
13
12
11
10
31
32
7
6
29
30
26
27
28
8
9
5
4
3
2
24
33
33
40
1
37
36
35
34
101
101
101
101

3. OPERATION PANEL (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	A088 5650	Operation Panel Ass'y - A4 (A088)	1
*	A088 5550	Operation Panel Ass'y - LT (A088)	1
*	A087 5650	Operation Panel Ass'y - A4 (A085/A087)	1
*	A087 5550	Operation Panel Ass'y - LT (A087)	1
1	A087 1501	Operation Panel Case - A4	1
1	A087 1481	Operation Panel Case - LT	1
2	A088 1502	Indication Panel Cover - A4 (A088)	1
2	A088 1482	Indication Panel Cover - LT (A088)	1
2	A087 1502	Indication Panel Cover - A4 (A085/A087)	1
2	A087 1482	Indication Panel Cover - LT (A087)	1
3	A085 1463	Keytop - Start	1
4	A087 1504	Keytop - Clear Modes - A4	1
4	A087 1484	Keytop - Clear Modes - LT	1
5	A087 1505	Keytop - Interrupt - A4	1
5	A087 1485	Keytop - Interrupt - LT	1
6	A087 1506	Keytop - R/# - A4	1
6	A087 1486	Keytop - R/# - LT	1
7	A087 1507	Keytop - Program - A4	1
7	A087 1487	Keytop - Program - LT	1
8	A069 1513	Keytop - 3	1
9	A069 1516	Keytop - 6	1
10	A069 1522	Keytop - C/S	1
11	A069 1521	Keytop - Period	1
12	A069 1520	Keytop - 0	1
13	A085 1468	Keytop - Auto Image Density	1
14	A085 1469	Keytop - Darker	1
15	A085 1470	Keytop - Lighter	1
16	A085 1471	Keytop - Auto Paper Select	1
17	A085 1472	Keytop - Cassette Select	1
18	A085 1473	Keytop - Full Size	1
19	A085 1474	Keytop - Auto R/E	1
20	A085 1475	Keytop	7
21	A088 1516	Keytop Sheet - A4 (A088)	1
21	A088 1496	Keytop Sheet - LT (A088)	1
21	A087 1516	Keytop Sheet - A4 (A085/A087)	1
21	A087 1496	Keytop Sheet - LT (A087)	1
22	A087 1497	Key Cover	1
23	A088 1520	Decal - Instruction - A4 (A088)	1
23	A088 1500	Decal - Instruction - LT (A088)	1
23	A087 1520	Decal - Instruction - A4 (A085/A087)	1
23	A087 1500	Decal - Instruction - LT (A087)	1
24	A006 1268	Decal - Scale - A4	2
24	A006 1266	Decal - Scale - LT	2
25	A087 1499	Keytop Cover - Non Option	1
26	A069 1517	Keytop - 7	1
27	A069 1518	Keytop - 8	1
28	A069 1519	Keytop - 9	1
29	A069 1514	Keytop - 4	1
30	A069 1515	Keytop - 5	1
31	A069 1511	Keytop - 1	1
32	A069 1512	Keytop - 2	1
33	A069 1477	LED Cover	2
34	A088 1518	Operation Panel Board - A4 (A088)	1
34	A088 1498	Operation Panel Board - LT (A088)	1
34	A087 1518	Operation Panel Board - A4 (A085/A087)	1
34	A087 1478	Operation Panel Board - LT (A087)	1
35	A069 1453	Operation Panel Bracket - Right	1
36	A069 1452	Operation Panel Bracket - Left	1
37	A087 1479	Sealding Sheet	1
38	A087 1527	Keytop - Sorter	1
39	A087 1526	Panel - Sorter - EU	1
39	A087 1525	Panel - Sorter - NA	1
40	A073 1476	LED Cover	1
101	0434 0082W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	

4. PLATEN COVER (A085/A087/A088)

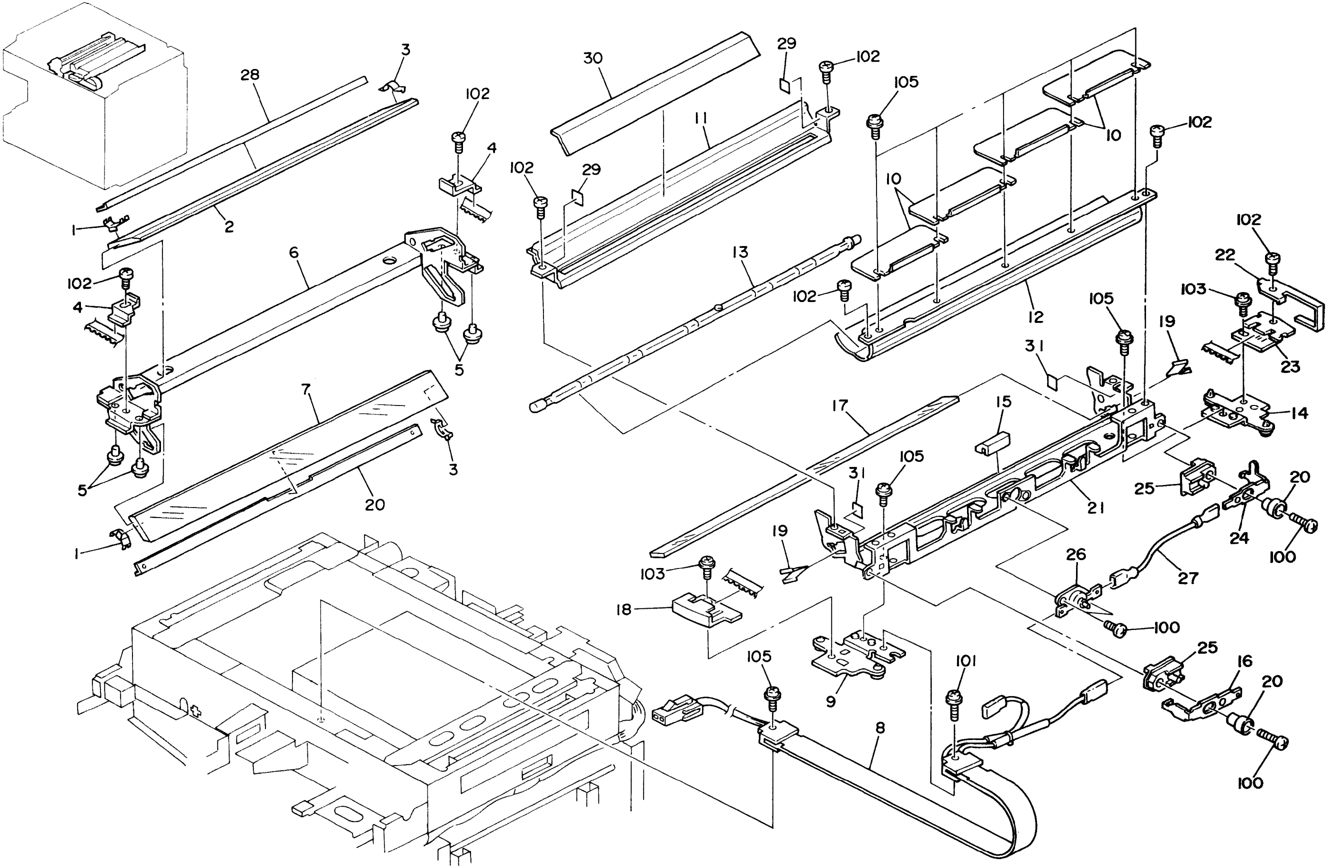

*
6
1
2
11
9
105
9
105
12
3
22
107
101
103
20
19
14
106
106
102
21
23
104
108
4
10
3
108
7
5
24
13
16
15
17
18
7
8
10
104
ASIA
*
6
1
11
2
4
9
12
105
105
3
22
14
107
101
106
23
20
107
104

4. PLATEN COVER (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	AC00 1036	Platen Cover Ass'y	1
*	A069 1670	Platen Cover Ass'y (ASIA)	1
1	A053 1969	Rear Platen Cover	1
1	A069 1677	Rear Platen Cover (ASIA)	1
2	5215 2838	Rubber Magnet	1
3	5215 2832	Platen Cover Hinge Ass'y	1
4	5215 2845	Plate - Magnet	1
5	5215 2847	Base Holder	1
6	AG02 1008	Original Holder	1
6	A069 1674	Original Holder (ASIA)	1
7	5215 2844	Slide Supporter	2
8	5215 2834	Arm Holder	1
9	A053 1957	Flex Hinge - Platen Cover	2
10	5215 2840	Pin - 4 x 115 mm	3
11	A053 1966	Front Platen Cover	1
11	A069 1671	Front Platen Cover (ASIA)	1
12	5448 2803	Platen Cover Pad	1
12	AA16 2053	Platen Cover Pad (ASIA)	1
13	5215 2839	Balancer Spring	1
14	A406 9505	Platen Cover Sheet (10pcs/set)	1
15	5215 2837	Shaft 7 x 40 mm	1
16	5215 2843	Left Spring - Platen Cover	1
17	5215 2842	Right Spring - Platen Cover	1
18	5215 2846	Platen Base	1
19	A053 5219	Positioning Sensor Harness	1
20	5205 5251	LED Sensor Type-T	1
20	AW02 0041	Photointerruptor (ASIA)	1
21	A053 1949	Positioning Sensor Bracket	1
22	A053 1960	Positioning Sensor Shutter	1
22	A069 1958	Positioning Sensor Shutter (ASIA)	1
23	A053 1948	Mounting Bracket - Platen Cover	1
23	A069 1956	Platen Cover Bracket (ASIA)	1
24	5215 2836	Sleeve - 8 x 34 mm	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
101	0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
102	0314 0080W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x8	
103	0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	
104	0414 0102W	Tapping Screw - M4x10	
105	0802 5131	Truss Head Screw - M4x8	
106	0951 5014W	Philips Screw W/H Flat Washer - M5x14	
107	0965 4012W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x12	
108	0805 0083	Retaing Ring - M4	

5. OPTICS SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)


3
28
102
4
30
29
102
105
11
10
102
102
29
10
1
2
6
13
102
102
22
103
102
4
5
12
105
19
31
23
7
17
15
14
3
5
105
31
25
20
21
20
1
19
24
100
103
26
27
18
100
105
101
25
16
20
9
8
100

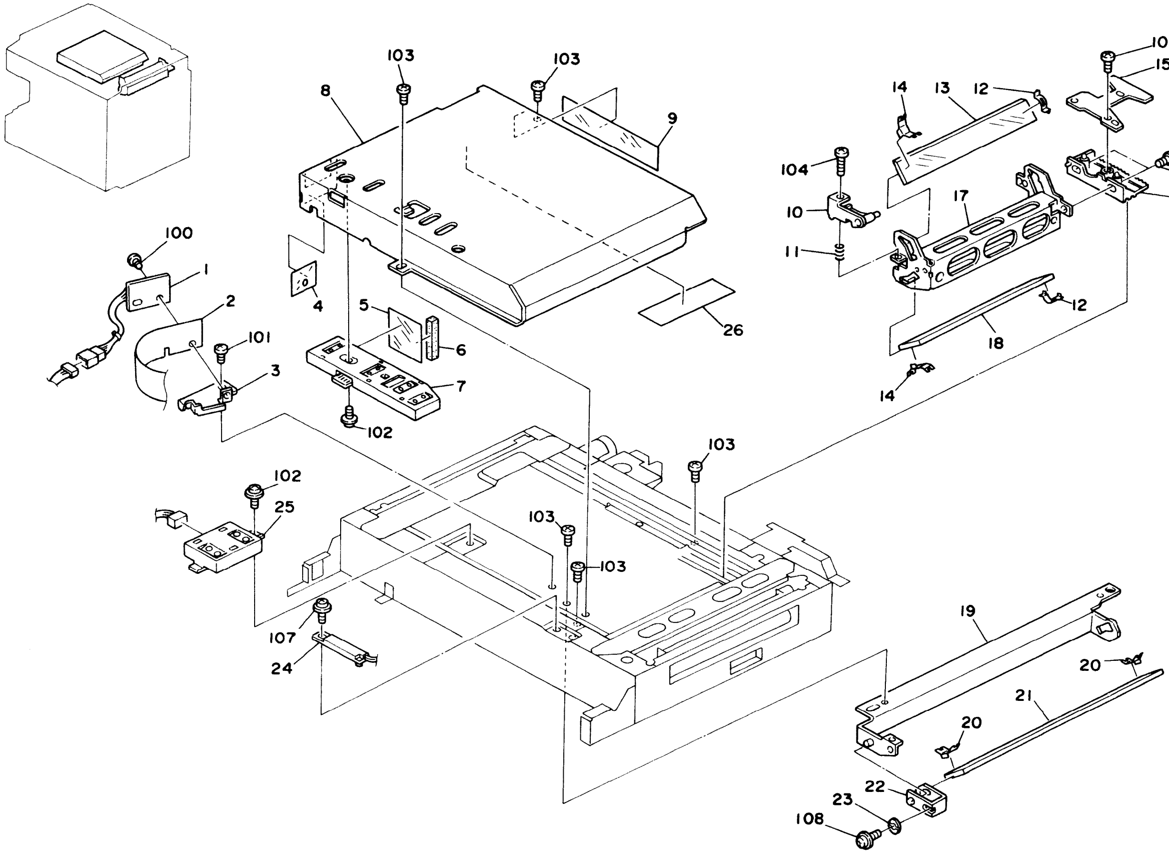
- - -

5. OPTICS SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 1835	Spring Plate A	2
2	AC03 0060	2nd Mirror	1
3	A006 1724	Rear Spring Plate	2
4	A069 1875	2nd Scanner Clamp	2
5	A069 1854	Bushing - 5mm	8
6	A069 1871	2nd Scanner Bracket	1
7	AC03 0061	3rd Mirror	1
8	A069 5280	Exposure Lamp Harness	1
9	A085 1663	Front Side Plate	1
10	A085 1670	Exposure Adjusting Plate	4
11	A085 1665	1st Scanner Stay	1
12	A085 1861	Main Reflector	1
13	AX53 0016	Exposure Lamp - 180V/310W (230V)	1
13	AX52 0015	Exposure Lamp - 85V/280W (115V)	1
14	A085 1664	Rear Side Plate	1
15	A085 1705	1st Mirror Cushion	1
16	A085 1672	Front Lamp Terminal	1
17	AC03 0087	1st Mirror	1
18	A069 1862	1st Scanner Clamp - Front	1
19	A048 1721	Spring Plate A	2
20	A085 1669	Support Bushing	2
21	A085 1661	1st Scanner Frame	1
22	A069 1864	1st Scanner Shutter	1
23	A069 1863	1st Scanner Clamp - Rear	1
24	A085 1667	Rear Lamp Terminal	1
25	A085 1668	Terminal Supporter	2
26	AW11 0011	Thermostat 140;C AC120V 15A	1
27	A085 5360	Extension Lamp Harness	1
28	A069 1881	2nd Mirror Support Plate	1
29	A085 1673	Small Reflector	2
30	A085 1666	Reflector	1
31	A085 1671	Large Refector	2

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0950 3008W	Philips Screw With Lock Washer - M3x8	
101	0951 3012W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x1	
102	0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
103	0951 4006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	
105	0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	

6. OPTICS SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)

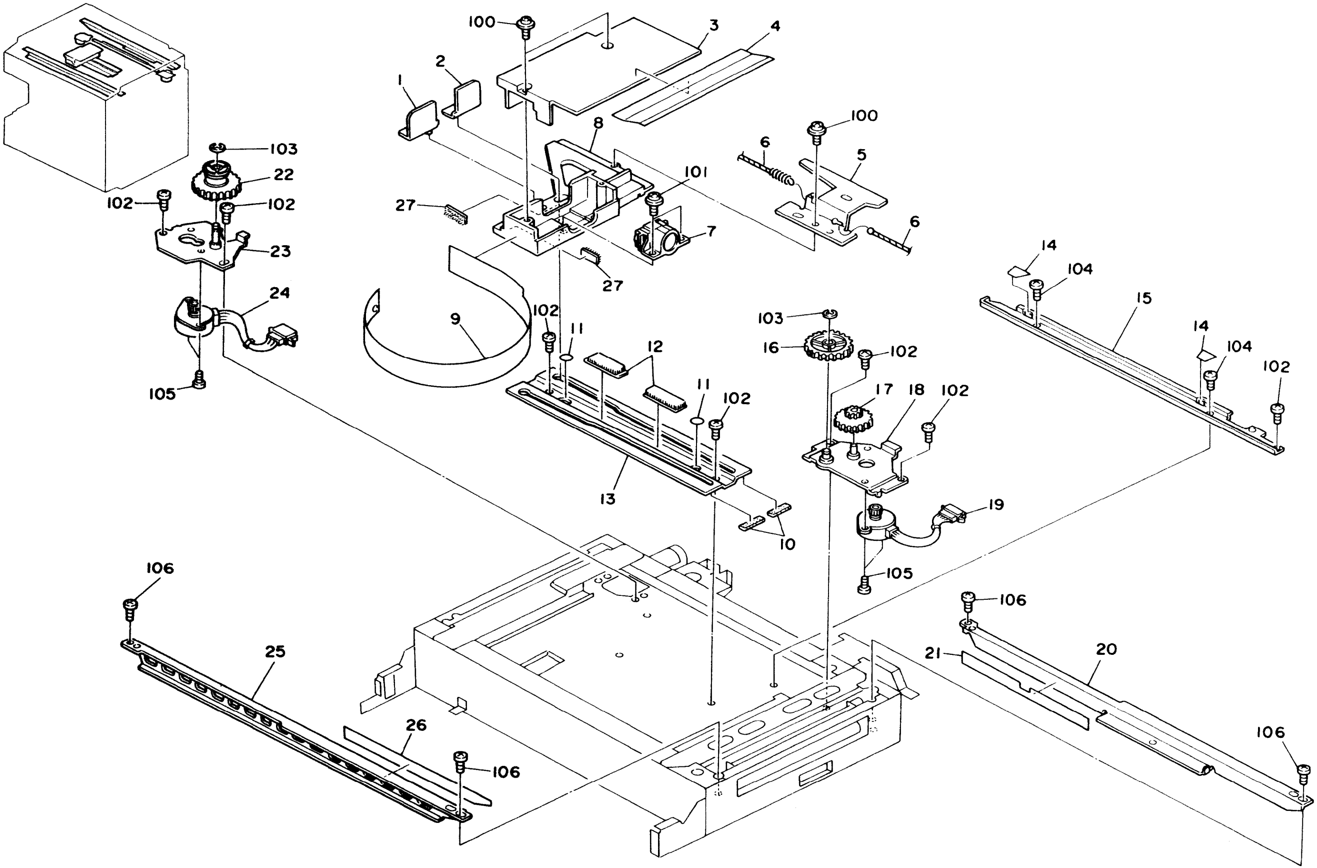

103
103
105
15
8
9
14
13
12
104
106
10
17
16
11
100
1
2
4
5
12
6
101
3
7
26
18
14
102
103
102
25
103
103
19
107
24
20
21
20
22
23
108

6. OPTICS SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 5261	ADS Sensor Board	1
2	AA15 0252	Seal - 0.1x37x290	1
3	A069 1803	ADS Sensor Bracket	1
4	AA15 0241	Mylar Seal - 0.1x48x59	1
5	AA15 0242	Mylar Seal - 0.1x45x48	1
6	AA15 1533	Seal - 5x13x48	1
7	AW40 0011	Original Length Sensor - A4	1
7	AW40 0012	Original Length Sensor - LT	1
8	A069 1801	Large Lens Cover	1
9	AA15 0257	Mylar Seal - 0.2x39x178	1
10	A069 1834	3rd Scanner Shoe	1
11	AA06 3012	Second Mirror Spring	1
12	A006 1724	Rear Spring Plate	2
13	AC03 0062	4th Mirror	1
14	A069 1835	Spring Plate A	2
15	A069 1836	3rd Scanner Shutter	1
16	A069 1832	3rd Scanner Lack	1
17	A069 1831	3rd Scanner Bracket	1
18	AC03 0021	5th Mirror	1
19	A069 1841	6th Mirror Bracket	1
20	A069 1844	Spring Plate - 6th Mirror	2
21	AC03 0063	6th Mirror	1
22	A069 1843	6th Mirror Bracket - Front	1
23	A006 1766	Adjusting Cam	1
24	A069 5252	Reed Switch - PS0009	1
25	AW40 0010	Original Width Sensor	1
26	A069 1805	Upper Seal - Lens Cover	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	
101	0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	
102	0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	
103	0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	
104	0314 0120W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x12	
105	0434 0082W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
106	0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
107	0951 4006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	
108	0951 4008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	

7. OPTICS SECTION 3 (A085/A087/A088)



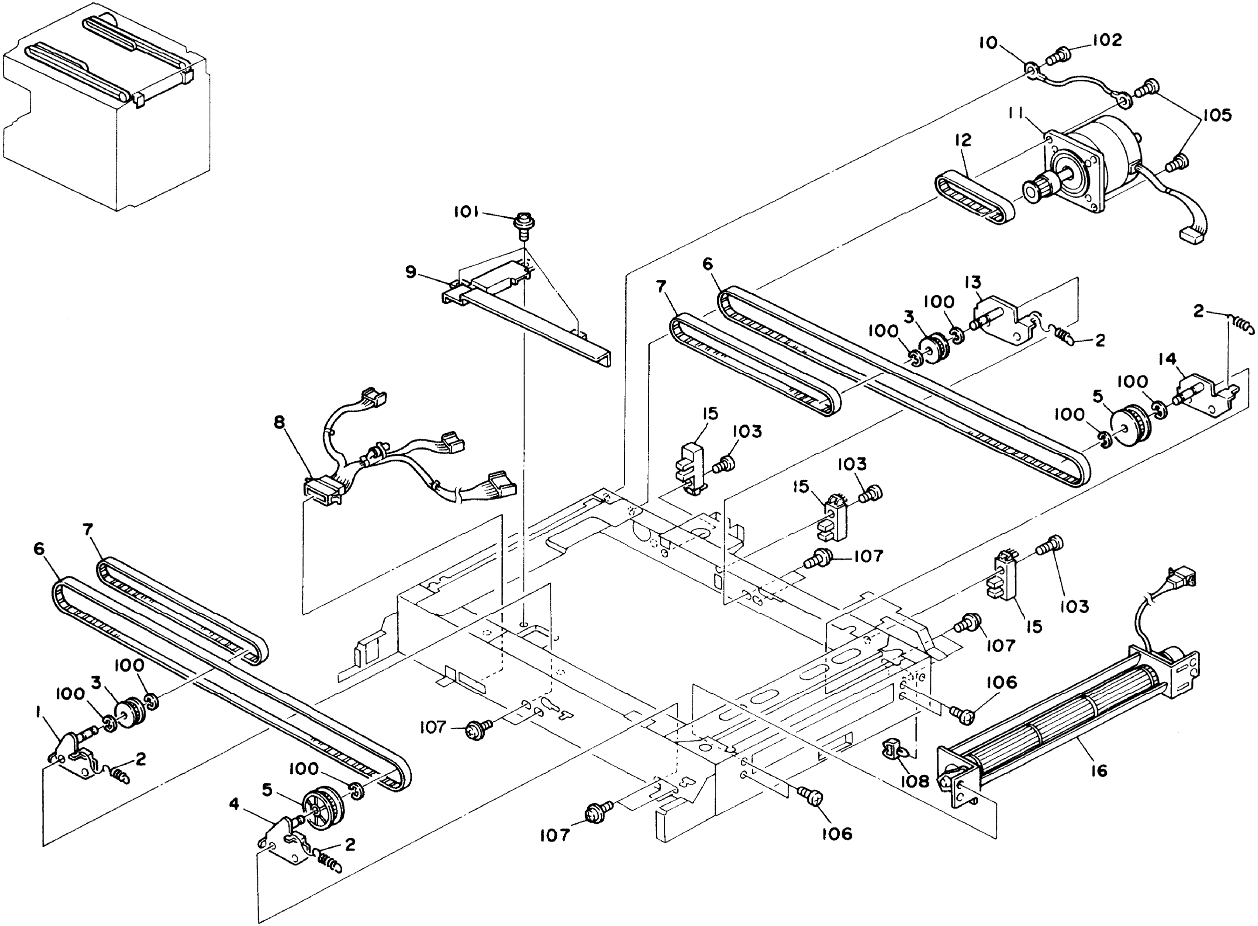
100
3
4
2
1
8
100
6
5
101
103
22
102
102
27
7
6
23
27
14
104
24
15
9
102
11
103
16
102
14
104
12
102
105
11
102
17
18
102
13
19
10
105
106
106
25
21
20
26
106
106

7. OPTICS SECTION 3 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 1792	Front Shielding Plate	1
2	A069 1790	Rear Shielding Plate	1
3	A069 1794	Small Lens Cover	1
4	AA15 0256	Mylar Seal - 0.2x35x195	1
5	A069 1795	Lens Shutter	1
6	AA05 0046	Lens Drive Wire	1
7	AC02 0060	Lens - F6.5 F180	1
8	A069 1781	Lens Bracket	1
9	AA15 0252	Seal - 0.1x37x290	1
10	AA15 1534	Seal - 4x5x29.5	2
11	5442 1855	Seal	1
12	AA15 2014	Seal - 12x56 mm	2
13	A069 1773	Cam Plate - Lens Shield	1
14	AA15 0255	Seal - 0.2x8.5x10	2
15	A069 1774	Guide Plate - Lens Drive	1
16	AB01 7129	Gear - 48T	1
17	AB00 0014	Gear - 20Z And 72Z	1
18	A069 1821	Motor Bracket - 3rd Scanner	1
19	A069 5206	3rd Scanner Drive Motor - DC24V	1
20	A069 1667	Scanner Slide Rail - Rear	1
21	AA15 0258	Seal - 0.2x13x250	1
22	5215 1812	Lens Drive Pulley	1
23	A069 1811	Lens Motor Bracket	1
24	A069 5207	Lens Drive Motor - DC24V	1
25	A069 1668	Scanner Slide Rail - Front	1
26	AA15 0293	Seal - 0.1x18x275	1
27	AA15 2190	Seal - 4x5x45	2

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0951 3005W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x5	
101	0951 3008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x8	
102	0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	
103	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
104	0434 0062W	Pan Head Tapping Screw - M4x6	
105	0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	
106	0434 0082W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	

8. OPTICS SECTION 4 (A085/A087/A088)

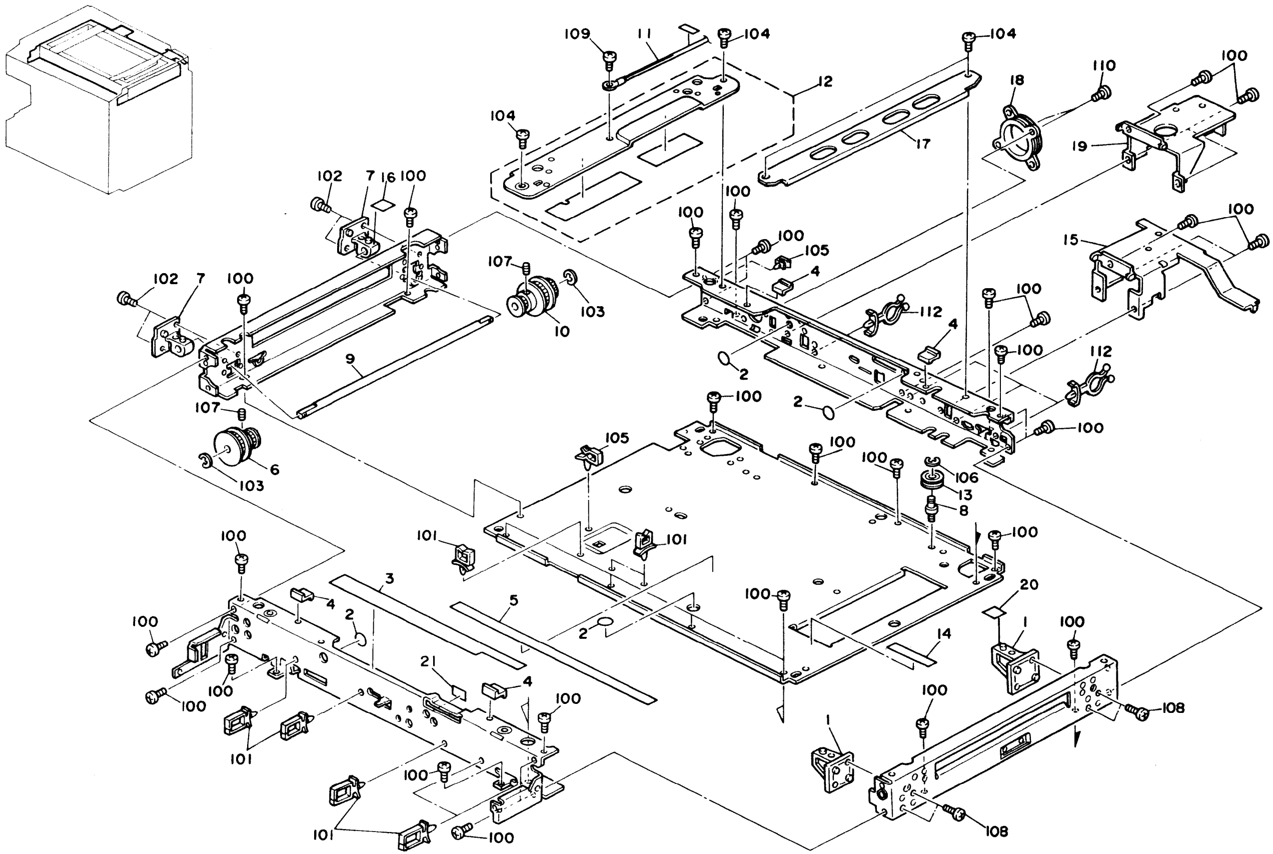

10
102
105
11
12
101
9
6
7
13
100
3
100
2
2
14
100
5
100
8
15
103
103
15
107
103
15
7
6
107
100
3
100
1
2
107
106
108
16
100
5
4
2
107
106

8. OPTICS SECTION 4 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 1913	Timing Pulley Bracket - Front Middle	1
2	AA06 0478	Tension Spring	4
3	AB03 0271	Timing Pulley - 24Z	2
4	A069 1921	Timing Pulley Bracket - Front Right	1
5	AB03 0272	Timing Pulley - 48Z	2
6	AA04 3115	Timing Belt - 4x1250	2
7	AA04 3114	Timing Belt - 4x630	2
8	A069 5332	Optics Harness	1
9	A069 1771	Exposure Harness Cover	1
10	A069 5352	Grounding Harness	1
11	A069 5205	Scanner Drive Motor - DC24V	1
12	AA04 3113	Timing Belt - 6x190	1
13	A069 1891	Timing Pulley Bracket - Rear Middle	1
14	A069 1901	Timing Pulley Bracket - Rear Right	1
15	AW02 0043	Photointerruptor - EE - SX4009 - P15	3
16	AX65 0010	Cooling Fan Motor - DC 8.4W	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
101	0964 4006W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	
102	0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	
103	0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	
104	0314 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x5	
105	0314 0080W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x8	
106	0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
107	0951 4006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	
108	1105 0199	Clamp	

9. OPTICS SECTION 5 (A085/A087/A088)

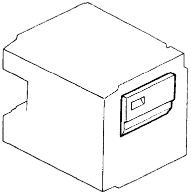

109
11
104
104
12
17
18
110
100
19
104
102
7
16
100
100
100
100
105
4
15
100
102
7
100
107
103
10
9
112
4
100
100
112
2
100
2
107
6
103
105
100
100
106
13
8
101
101
100
100
3
4
2
5
2
100
20
100
1
14
100
100
100
21
4
100
100
108
101
1
100
101
100
108

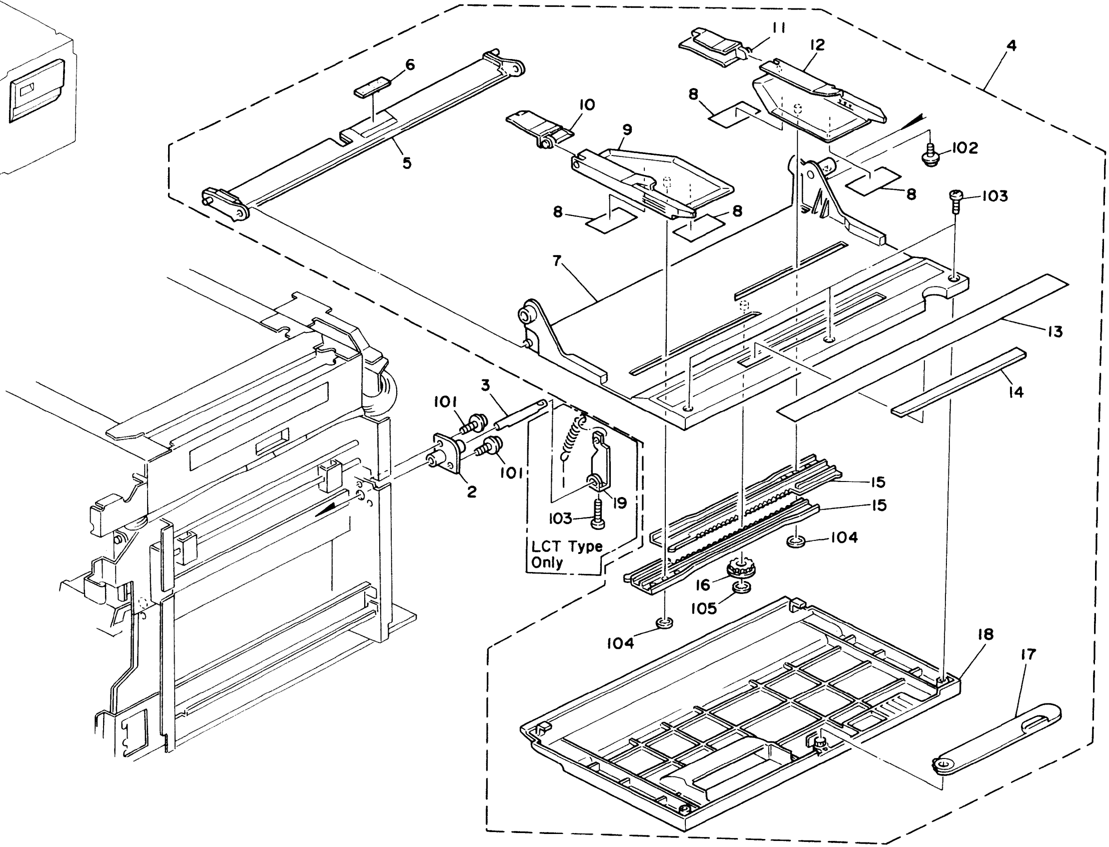
9. OPTICS SECTION 5 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 1931	Right Rail Holder	2
2	5442 1855	Seal	1
3	AA15 0238	Mylar Seal - 0.2x27x310	1
4	A069 1882	Exposure Glass Holder	4
5	AA15 0240	Seal - 0.2x10x292	1
6	AB03 0270	Timing Pulley - 24/28Z	1
7	A069 1942	Left Rail Holder	2
8	AA14 3359	Pulley Stud	1
9	AA14 0325	Scanner Drive Shaft	1
10	AB03 0268	Timing Pulley - 24/48/26Z	1
11	AW10 0013	Thermistor - 103AT-2	1
12	A069 1951	Scale Bracket	1
13	5215 1806	Pulley	1
14	AA15 0239	Seal - 0.1x10x68	1
15	A069 1258	Right Bracket - Platen Cover	1
16	A069 1943	Rear Seal - Left Rail Holder	1
17	A069 1950	Exposure Glass Stay	1
18	A069 1903	Scanner Motor Cushion	1
19	A069 1259	Left Bracket - Platen Cover	1
20	A069 1932	Rear Seal - Right Rail Holder	1
21	5205 1853	Mylar Seal - Base	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	
101	1105 0200	Clamp	
102	0314 0040W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x4	
103	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
104	0433 0060W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	
105	1105 0200	Clamp	
106	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
107	0573 0060E	Hexagon Headless Set Screw - M3x6	
108	0434 0082W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
109	0313 0040W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x4	
110	0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
112	1105 0287	Wire Saddle	

10. BY-PASS FEED TABLE (A085/A087/A088)



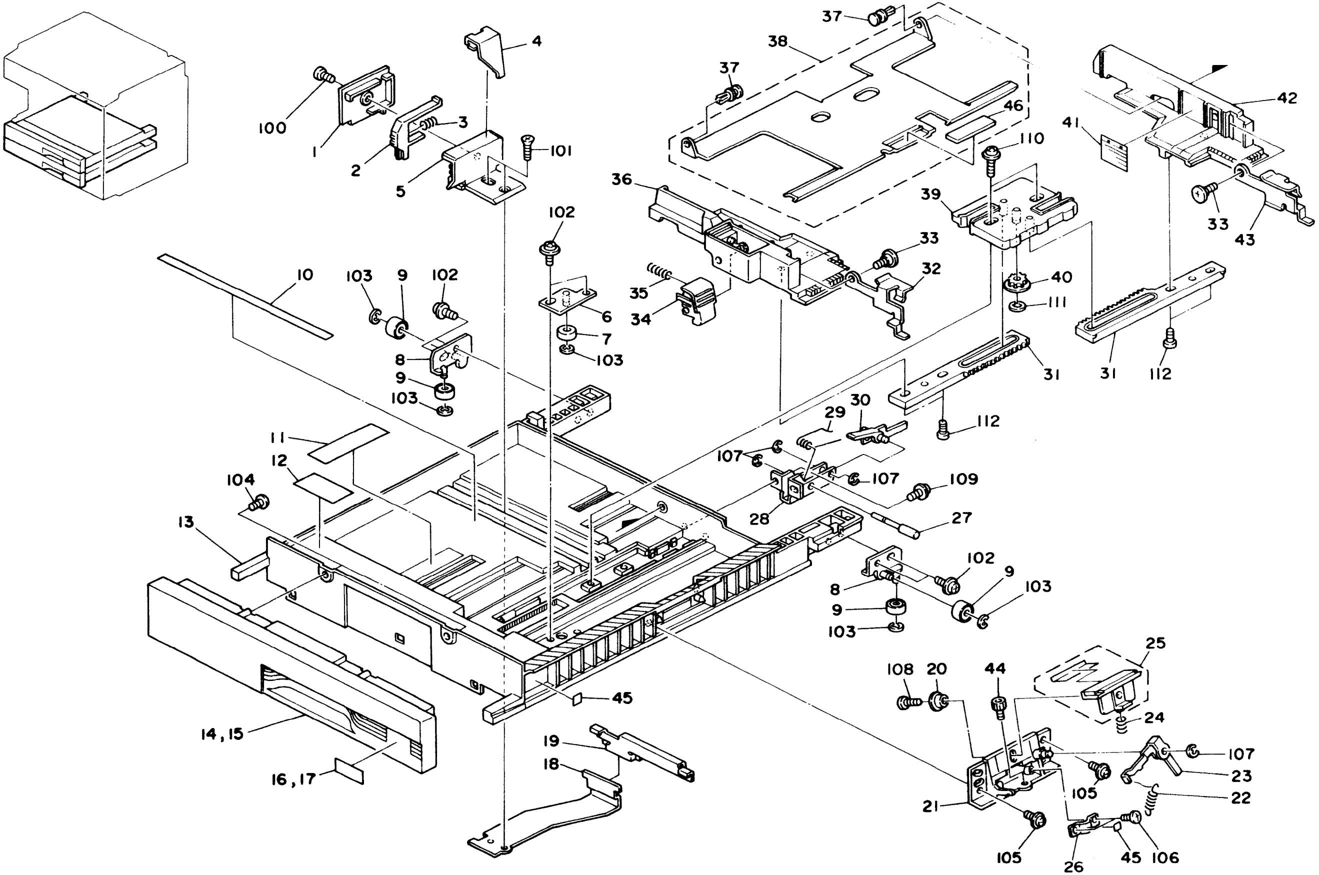

11
12
4
6
10
8
9
5
102
8
103
8
8
7
13
14
3
101
101
2
19
103
LCT Type Only
15
15
104
16
105
104
18
17

10. BY-PASS FEED TABLE (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	AA06 0339	Lever Spring - By-pass Feed	1
2	A069 2648	By-pass Feed Bushing	1
3	AA14 8253	Rear Shaft - By-pass Feed	1
4	A069 2852	By-pass Feed Table Ass'y - A4	1
4	A073 2575	By-pass Feed Table Ass'y - LT	1
5	A069 2921	By-pass Feed Guide	1
6	5447 2927	Friction Pad - B	1
7	A069 2861	By-pass Feed Table	1
8	A069 2645	Seal - 0.2x16x47	4
9	A069 2881	Front Side Fence	1
10	A069 2901	Small Paper Guide - Front	1
11	A069 2911	Small Paper Guide - Rear	1
12	A069 2891	Rear Side Fence	1
13	AA00 2140	Decal - Paper Size - A4	1
13	AA00 2139	Decal - Paper Size - LT	1
14	A069 2631	Fixed Plate - By-pass Feed Table	1
15	A069 2638	Rack - Manual Feed Table	2
16	AB01 3492	Gear - 16Z	1
17	A048 2938	Paper Guide - Manual Feed Table	1
18	A069 2871	By-pass Feed Cover	1
19	A073 2577	Lever - By-pass Feed Table	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
101	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
102	0960 3008W	Philips Flange Screw - M3x8	
103	0414 0082F	Philips Truss Head Screw - M4x8	
104	0805 0073	Retaining Ring - M5	
105	0805 0083	Retaing Ring - M4	

11. PAPER FEED TRAY (A085/A087/A088)

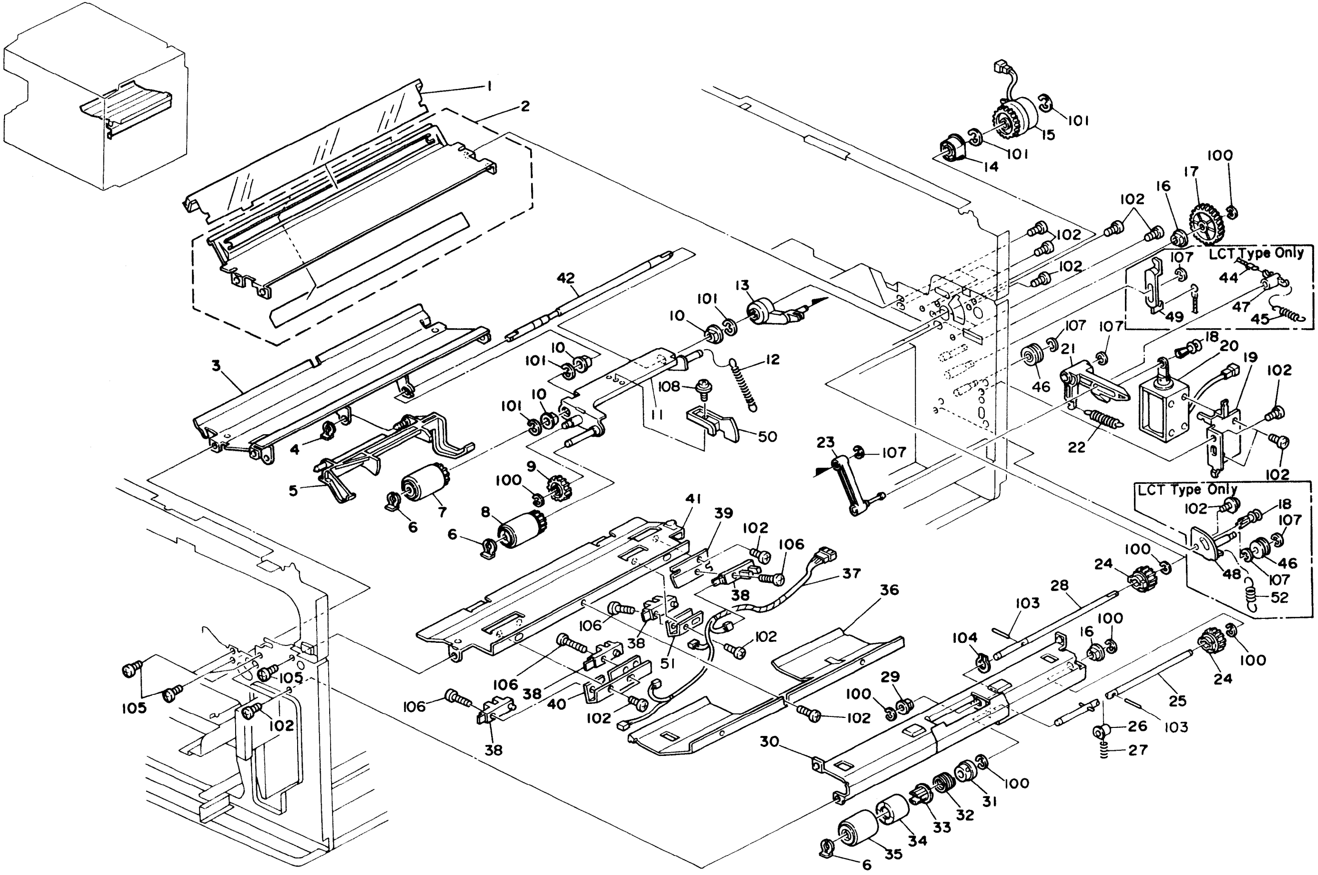


37
4
38
37
3
42
100
101
46
41
1
110
2
5
36
39
33
102
33
43
10
103
9
102
32
40
35
6
111
34
7
8
103
31
31
112
9
103
30
112
11
29
12
107
104
107
109
13
28
27
102
9
8
103
9
103
45
25
108
20
44
24
14,15
19
107
18
23
105
22
16,17
21
105
45
106
26

11. PAPER FEED TRAY (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 2718	End Fence Cover	1
2	A048 2828	End Fence Stopper	1
3	AA06 3156	Spring - End Fence Stopper	1
4	A069 2719	Spring Plate - End Fence	1
5	A069 2717	End Fence	1
6	A069 2732	Tray Pressure Bracket	1
7	6754 2866	Roller - Positioning Guide	1
8	A069 2708	Tray Guide Bracket	2
9	A069 2704	Guide Roller - 6x12x7.5	4
10	AA00 2138	Decal - Paper Size - A4	1
10	AA00 2137	Decal - Paper Size - LT	1
11	AA00 2136	Decal - Paper Size - A4	1
11	AA00 2135	Decal - Paper Size - LT	1
12	A073 2739	Decal - Loading Paper	1
13	AF01 0029	Paper Drawer Tray	1
14	A069 1353	Front Cover - Upper	1
15	A069 1363	Front Cover - Lower	1
16	AA00 1198	Decal - Paper Tray Removal	1
17	AA00 1199	Decal - Paper Tray 2 (A085/A087)	1
18	A069 2721	Actuator Arm - Paper Size	1
19	A069 2720	Paper Size Actuator - A4	1
19	A073 2583	Paper Size Actuator - LT	1
20	5442 2638	Collar - Friction Pad Arm	1
21	A069 2815	Friction Pad Bracket	1
22	AA06 0319	Release Spring	1
23	A069 2818	Release Lever - Friction Pad	1
24	AA06 3165	Pressure Spring	1
25	A069 2820	Friction Pad Ass’y	1
26	A069 2822	Cover Plate	1
27	A009 2590	Pressure Release Shaft	1
28	A069 2746	Tray Release Bracket	1
29	A009 2592	Spring - Pressure Release Lever	1
30	A009 2588	Release Lever - 3rd Cassette	1
31	A048 2835	Side Fence Gear	2
32	A069 2711	Front Paper Guide	1
33	AA14 3288	Stepped Screw	2
34	A069 2735	Side Fence Stopper	1
35	AA06 3081	Spring	1
36	A069 2714	Front Side Fence	1
37	A048 2838	Nylon Rivet	2
38	AF01 1016	Tray Bottom Plate	1
39	A069 2716	Registration Adjustment Plate	1
40	AB01 3492	Gear - 16Z	1
41	AA00 1227	Decal - Paper Level	1
42	A069 2715	Rear Side Fence	1
43	A069 2712	Rear Paper Guide	1
44	A069 2819	Adjusting Screw	1
45	AA00 1005	Decal - A (A085/A087)	2
45	AA00 1006	Decal - B	2
46	5215 2713	Bottom Plate Pad	1
100	0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
101	0323 0140W	Philips Sunk Head Screw - M3x14	
102	0965 3008W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M3x8	
103	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
104	0414 0102F	Tapping Screw - M4x10	
105	0951 3006F	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	
106	0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
107	0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	
108	0313 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x10	
109	0414 0102W	Tapping Screw - M4x10	
110	0965 4080W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M4x8	
111	0805 0073	Retaining Ring - M5	
112	0965 3010W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M3x10	

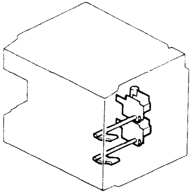
12. PAPER FEED SECTION (A085/A087/A088)

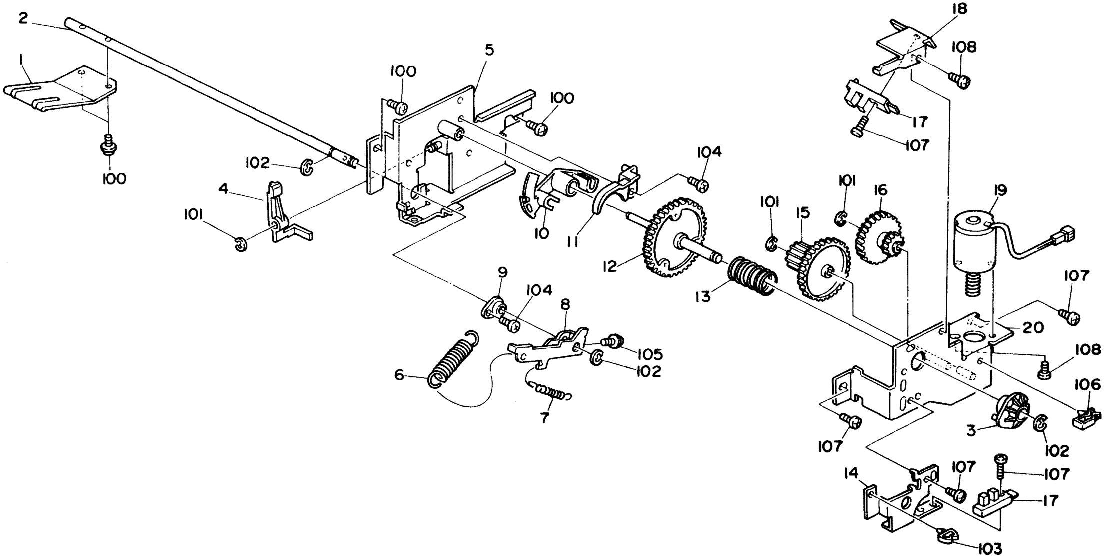

1
2
101
15
101
14
100
17
16
102
102
102
102
LCT Type Only
107
44
47
49
45
42
13
101
10
12
10
101
3
108
11
101
10
50
107
107
46
21
18
20
19
102
22
102
23
107
4
5
9
100
7
6
8
6
LCT Type Only
102
18
107
46
48
107
52
100
24
41
39
102
106
37
38
36
28
103
100
16
104
24
100
25
103
26
27
106
38
51
102
106
38
40
102
106
38
105
105
102
29
100
102
30
31
32
33
34
35
6
100

12. PAPER FEED SECTION (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 2180	Filter PTL	1
2	A069 2588	Upper Registration Stay	1
3	A069 2581	Upper Registration Guide	1
4	5206 2686	Snap Ring	1
5	A069 2686	Paper End Feeler	1
6	5447 2681	Snap Ring	3
7	AF03 1019	Feed Roller	1
8	AF03 0019	Pick-up Roller	1
9	AB01 3079	Gear - 21T	1
10	5053 0223	Bushing - 8mm	3
11	A069 2560	Pick-up Roller Arm	1
12	AA06 0313	Pick-up Pressure Spring	1
13	A069 2627	Support Arm	1
14	5205 2865	Bushing - Paper Feed Roller	1
15	AX20 0054	Magnetic Clutch - By-pass Feed	1
16	5053 0447	Bushing - 6mm	2
17	AB01 1105	Gear - 40Z	1
18	A048 2838	Nylon Rivet	2
19	A069 2621	Pick-up Solenoid Bracket	1
20	A069 2620	Pick-up Solenoid	1
21	A069 2654	Center Link (A085)	1
21	A073 2561	Wire Link (A087/A088)	1
22	AA06 0314	Stopper Spring	1
23	A069 2628	Arm Support Link	1
24	AB01 3420	Gear - 18Z	2
25	A069 2565	Separation Driven Shaft	1
26	AA08 0037	Bushing - 6 mm	1
27	AA06 3246	Pressure Spring	1
28	AA14 0330	Separation Roller Shaft	1
29	5442 3585	Bushing	1
30	A069 2563	Separation Guide	1
31	AB04 1011	Bushing - 6x18x10	1
32	5447 2697	Cylindrical Spring	1
33	AB04 2004	Clutch Sleeve - Torque Limiter	1
34	5447 2678	Slip Clutch Cover	1
35	AF03 2019	Separation Roller	1
36	A069 2555	Paper Feed Guide	1
37	A069 5338	Paper Feed Harness - Non LCT	1
37	A073 5338	Paper Feed Harness - LCT	1
38	AW02 0041	Photointerruptor	4
39	A069 2681	Sensor Bracket - By-pass Feed	1
40	A069 2684	Sensor Bracket - Paper End	1
41	A069 2556	Paper Feed Stay	1
42	AA14 0329	Feed Roller Shaft - Non LCT	1
42	AA14 0355	Feed Roller Shaft - LCT	1
44	AA05 1015	Wire - Pick-up Roller	1
45	AA06 0338	Wire Tension Spring	1
46	AB03 2042	Wire Pulley	1
47	A073 2562	Wire Hook	1
48	A073 2566	Pulley Bracket	1
49	A073 2569	Wire Slider	1
50	A073 2556	Upper Limit Feeler - LCT	1
51	A073 2553	Bracket - Upper Limit Sensor	1
52	5171 1606	Spring - Wire Hook	1
100	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
101	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
102	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
103	0632 0100G	Pin - 2x10mm	
104	0725 0100E	Retaining Ring C - M10	
105	0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	
106	0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	
107	0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	
108	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M4x8	

13. TRAY LIFT SECTION (A085/A087/A088)



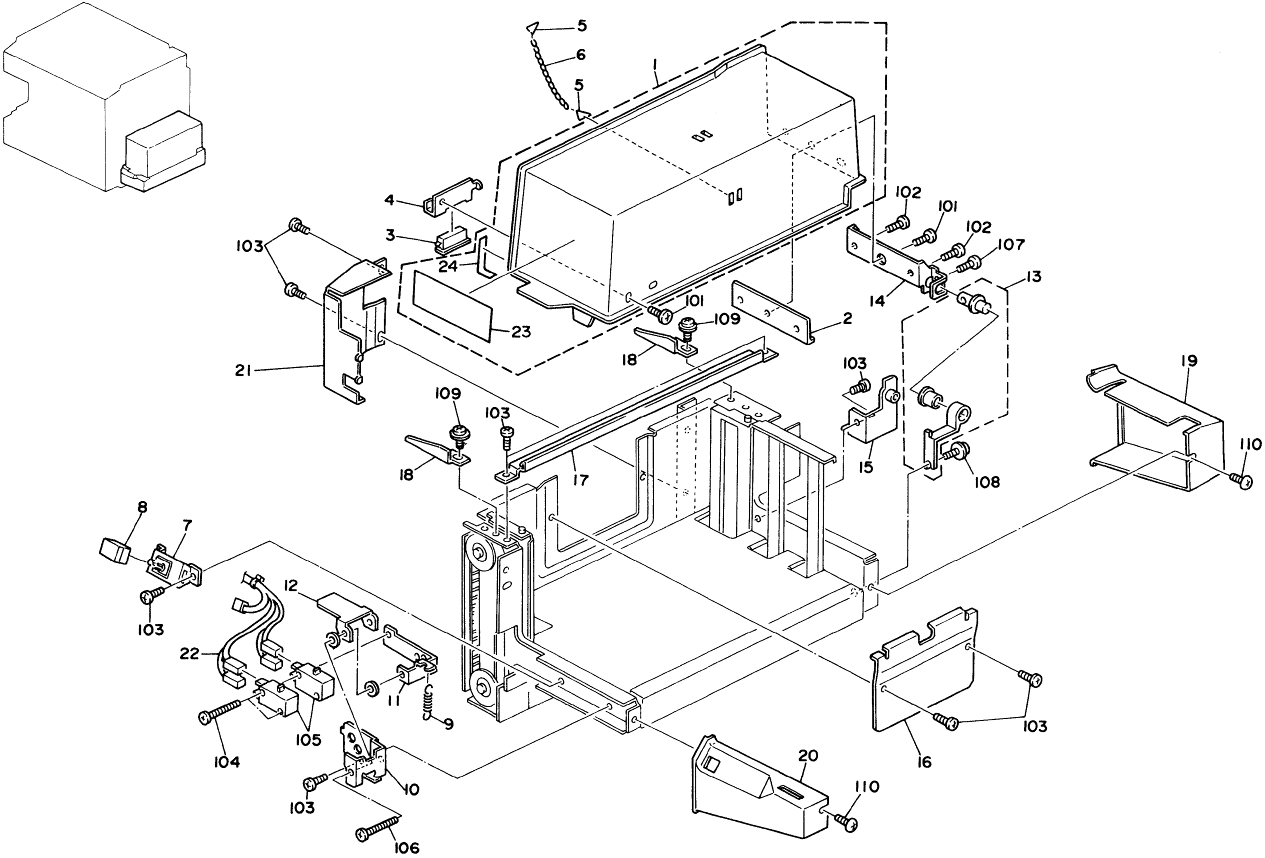

2
1
100
18
108
5
100
100
17
107
102
104
4
101
101
101
15
16
19
10
11
12
13
107
9
104
8
20
105
102
108
6
7
106
3
102
107
107
107
14
17
103

13. TRAY LIFT SECTION (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 2751	Tray Pressure Arm	1
2	AA14 0339	Bottom Plate Shaft - Tray	1
3	5447 2805	Slide Pin Holder	1
4	A009 2644	Stopper Lever	1
5	A069 2841	Lift Motor Bracket	1
6	AA06 0321	Pressure Spring - Bottom Plate	1
7	AA06 0320	Release Spring	1
8	A069 2750	Tray Pressure Lever	1
9	AE03 1005	Bushing	1
10	A069 2758	Tray Lift Lever	1
11	A009 2645	Lift Lever Guide	1
12	A009 2634	Gear Ass’y - 45T	1
13	5447 2812	Slide Gear Spring	1
14	A069 2761	Sensor Bracket - Tray Set	1
15	5447 2806	Gear - 15T & 40T	1
16	5447 2804	Gear - 15T	1
17	AW02 0041	Photointerruptor	2
18	A009 2647	Lift Sensor Bracket	1
19	AX04 0058	Tray Lift Motor - DC 1.9W	1
20	A009 2632	Tray Lift Bracket	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
101	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
102	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
103	1105 0197	Wire Saddle	
104	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
105	0960 4012W	Philips Flange Screw - M4x12	
106	1105 0201	Harness Clamp	
107	0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	
108	0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	

14. LCT SECTION 1 (A087/A088)

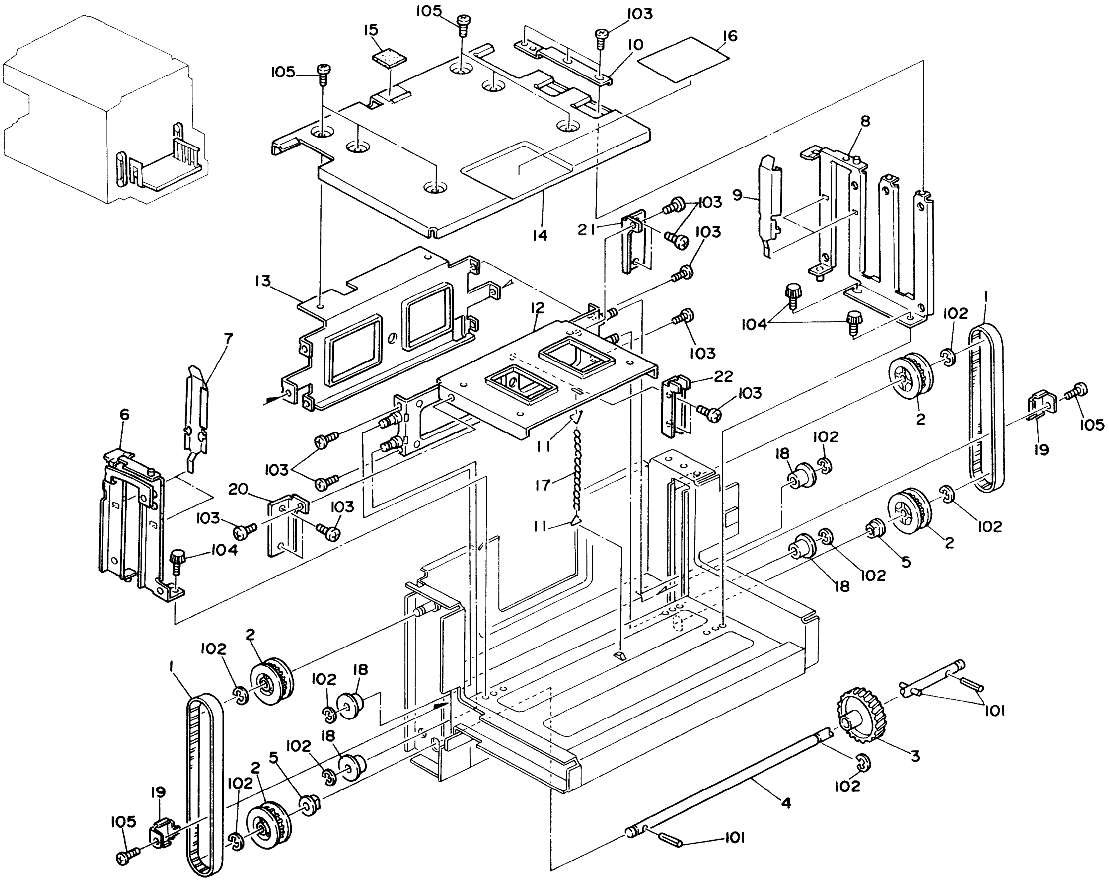

5
6
1
5
4
3
24
23
103
21
102
101
102
107
13
14
101
109
2
18
103
15
19
110
109
103
18
17
108
8
7
103
12
22
11
9
104
105
103
10
106
20
110
16
103

14. LCT SECTION 1 (A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A335 1253	LCT Top Cover	1
2	A335 1311	Top Cover Plate	1
3	AG07 0007	Magnet Catch	1
4	A335 1331	Door Catch Bracket	1
5	A335 1341	Chain Hook	2
6	5897 1490	Stopper Chain	1
7	A335 5110	LCT Operation Board	1
8	5446 5298	Key Plate - Tray Button	1
9	AA06 0346	Tension Spring	1
10	A335 3141	Safety Switch Bracket	1
11	A335 3151	Safety Switch Arm	1
12	A335 3161	Safety Switch Actuator	1
13	A335 3251	Top Cover Hinge	1
14	A335 3252	Hinge Plate	1
15	A335 3261	Rear Hinge Bracket	1
16	A335 3422	Cover Plate	1
17	A335 4353	Upper Stay	1
18	A335 4354	Guide - By-pass Feed Table	2
19	A335 1241	Rear Lower Cover - Right	1
20	A335 1221	Front Lower Cover - Right	1
21	A335 3441	Motor Cover Plate	1
22	A335 5330	LCT Harness	1
23	A335 1271	Decal - Paper Set	1
24	A335 1269	Cover Guard Tape	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
101	0344 0080F	Philips Truss Head Screw - M4x8	
102	0344 0100F	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	
103	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
104	0313 0300W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x30	
105	1204 2136	Micro Switch	
106	0314 0400W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x40	
107	0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
108	0964 4010W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M4	
109	0951 4008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
110	0414 0080F	Binding Self Tapping Screw - M4x8	

15. LCT SECTION 2 (A087/A088)

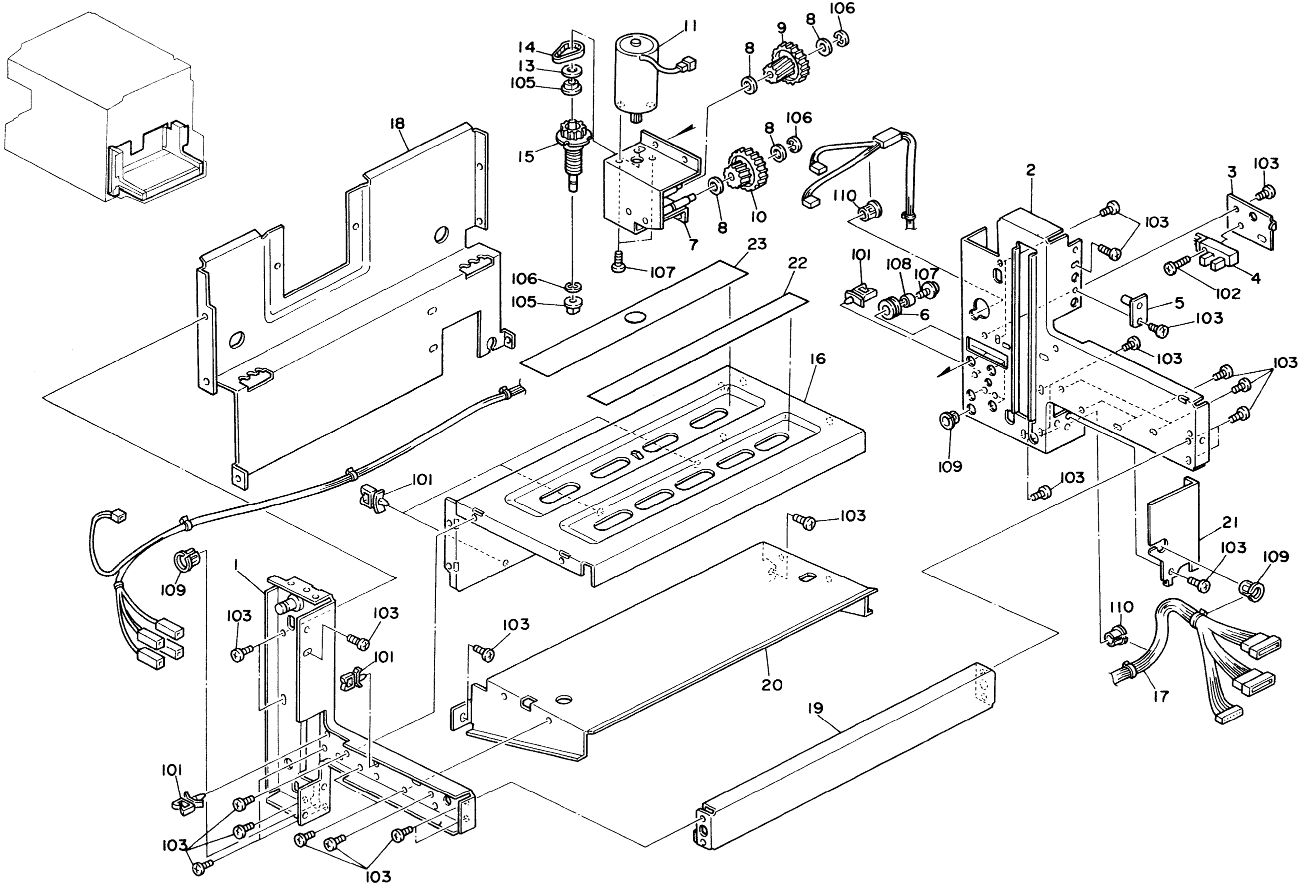

105
103
15
16
10
105
8
9
103
21
103
14
13
104
12
103
1
102
7
22
103
2
105
6
11
19
103
18
102
17
20
103
103
102
104
11
2
5
102
18
2
102
18
102
101
1
102
18
3
102
2
5
102
19
4
105
101

15. LCT SECTION 2 (A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	AA04 3124	Timing Belt - 6x501	2
2	AB03 0281	Timing Pulley - 28Z	4
3	AB01 1133	Gear - 49Z	1
4	AA14 0366	Drive Shaft	1
5	5053 0223	Bushing - 8mm	2
6	A335 4220	Front Side Fence	1
7	A335 4241	Front Spring Plate	2
8	A335 4260	Rear Side Fence	1
9	A335 4281	Rear Spring Plate	2
10	A335 4291	Lift Stay	1
11	A340 1488	Chain Hook	2
12	A335 4320	Right Stay	1
13	A335 4322	Left Stay	1
14	A335 4341	Tray Bottom Plate	1
15	A421 2543	Friction Pad	1
16	AA00 0094	Decal - LCT Paper Size	1
17	5925 2258	Stopper Chain	1
18	A335 4351	Guide Roller	4
19	A335 4352	Timing Belt Clump	2
20	A335 4346	Front Support Plate	1
21	A335 4347	Rear Support Plate	1
22	A335 4348	Upper Support Plate	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
101	0623 0160E	Spring Pin - 3x16mm	
102	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
103	0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
104	0803 0017	Knob Screw - M4x6.5	
105	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	

16. LCT SECTION 3 (A087/A088)



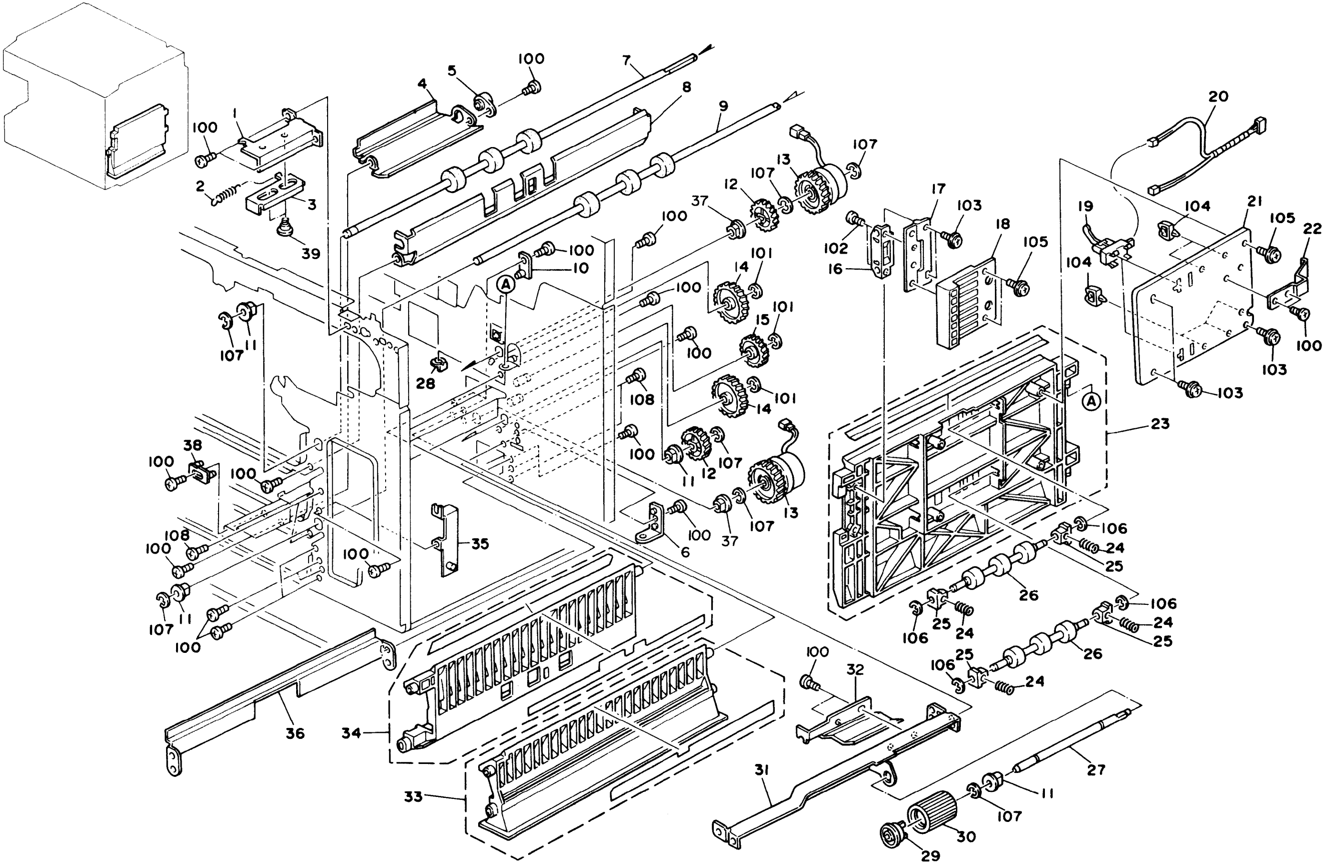
106
11
9
8
14
13
105
8
18
15
106
8
110
2
3
103
103
10
8
7
23
22
101
108
107
4
102
107
106
105
6
5
103
16
103
103
109
101
103
21
103
109
109
1
103
103
103
110
101
20
17
19
101
103
103

16. LCT SECTION 3 (A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A335 3110	Front Side Plate	1
2	A335 3210	Rear Side Plate	1
3	A335 3231	Bracket - Lower Limit Sensor	1
4	5205 5250	LED Sensor Type S	1
5	A335 3280	Positioning Pin	1
6	AA16 1014	Cushion Motor	4
7	A335 3330	Motor Bracket	1
8	AA13 2024	Spacer - M6	4
9	AB01 7200	Gear - 25/17Z	1
10	AB01 7201	Gear - 51/19Z	1
11	A335 5210	LCT Lift Motor - DC9W	1
12	AB03 0289	Timing Pulley - 15Z	1
13	AA13 2139	Spacer - 10x14x2	1
14	AA04 3128	Timing Belt - 4x84	1
15	AB01 7263	Worm Pulley - 44Z	1
16	A335 3411	Bottom Plate	1
17	A335 5330	LCT Harness	1
18	A335 3421	Feed-in Guide	1
19	A335 3431	Stay	1
20	A335 3451	Bottom Cover Plate	1
21	A335 3461	Harness Guide Plate	1
22	A335 3412	Right Tape - Bottom Plate	1
23	A335 3413	Left Tape - Bottom Plate	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
101	1105 0197	Wire Saddle	
102	0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	
103	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
104	0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	
105	0805 3384	Bushing - 5mm	
106	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
107	0964 4010W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M4	
108	0707 4050W	Bushing - 4x5	
109	1106 0193	Bushing - 7.9mm	
110	1106 0241	Bushing - 6.7mm	

17. VERTICAL TRANSPORT SECTION (A085/A087/A088)

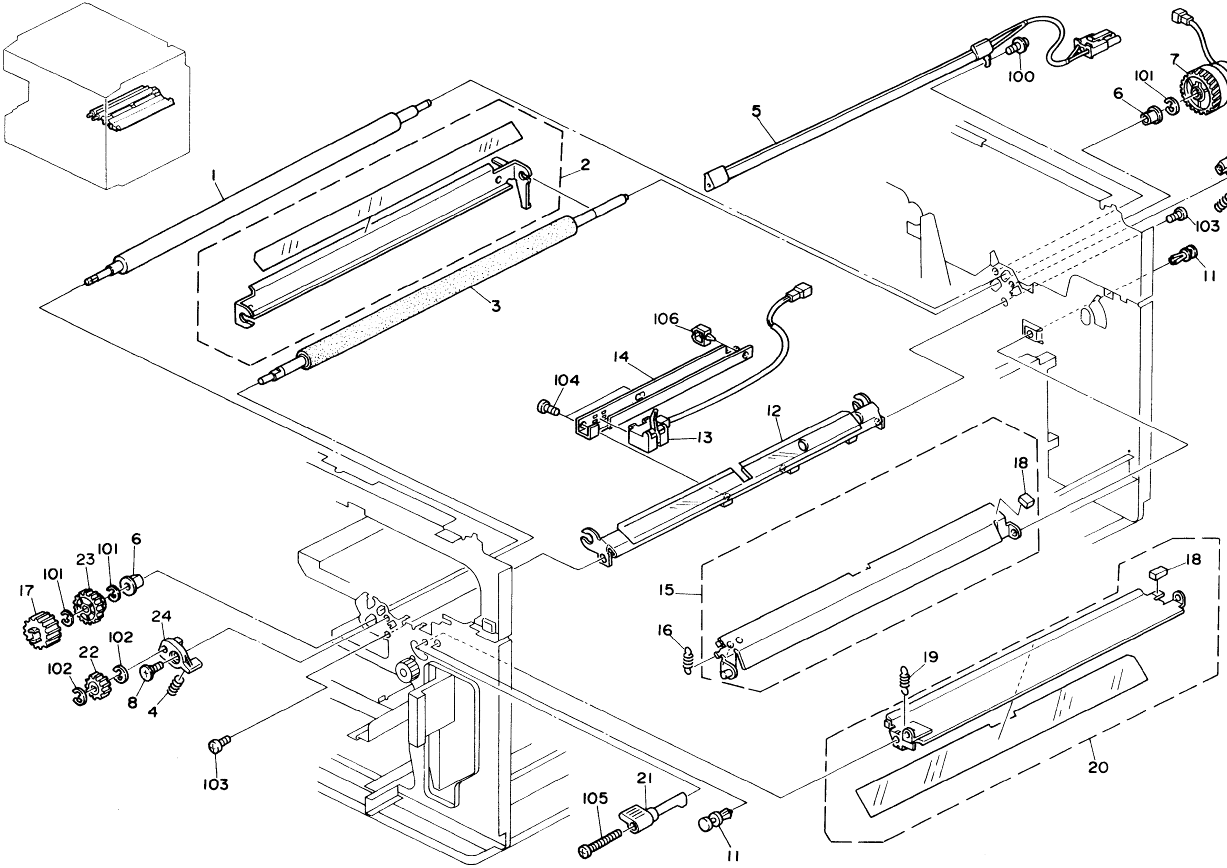

100
7
4
5
8
9
20
1
100
107
13
107
2
3
12
17
103
39
37
100
18
19
104
21
105
22
100
10
102
16
105
104
100
14
101
A
15
101
107
11
100
28
108
14
101
100
103
A
103
23
38
100
100
12
107
11
100
107
13
37
107
106
24
25
108
100
100
35
6
100
26
106
24
106
25
24
25
107
11
100
100
26
25
106
24
36
34
100
32
33
31
27
11
107
30
29

17. VERTICAL TRANSPORT SECTION (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 1131	Release Bracket - Fusing Drive	1
2	5442 4467	Spring - Stripper Pawl Plate	1
3	A069 1130	Release Slider	1
4	A069 2743	Front Guide - Tray Feed	1
5	A069 2745	Tray Feed Bushing	1
6	A069 2665	Vertical Transport Holder	1
7	AF02 0186	Vertical Transport Roller - Upper	1
8	A069 2656	Upper Guide - Tray Feed	1
9	AF02 0187	Vertical Transport Roller - Lower	1
10	A069 2826	Small Positioning Bracket	1
11	5053 0223	Bushing - 8mm	4
12	AB01 1106	Gear - 25Z	2
13	AX20 0055	Magnetic Clutch - Feed Relay	2
14	AB01 1107	Gear - 40Z	2
15	AB01 1108	Gear - 30Z	1
16	AG07 0004	Magnet Catch	1
17	A069 2676	Vertical Transport Hinge	1
18	AG05 1081	Release Lever - Vertical Transport	1
19	AW02 0034	Photointerruptor - 35C	2
20	A069 5335	Relay Sensor Harness	1
21	A069 2673	Sensor Bracket - Vertical Transport	1
22	A069 2675	Grounding Plate	1
23	A069 2671	Vertical Transport Guide	1
24	5205 2698	Relay Roller Spring	4
25	AA08 0034	Bushing - 4x5x7	4
26	AF02 0126	Driven Roller - Vertical Transport	2
27	AA14 0338	Feed Roller Shaft	1
28	5447 2681	Snap Ring	2
29	5215 2618	Feed Roller Hub	1
30	5215 2619	Feed Roller	1
31	A069 2740	Tray Feed Stay	1
32	A069 2744	Rear Guide - Tray Feed	1
33	A069 2666	Lower Guide - Tray Feed	1
34	A069 2657	Center Guide - Tray Feed (A085/A087)	1
34	A070 2657	Duplex Paper Guide (A088)	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
35	A069 2663	Positioning Bracket - Vertical Tr.	1
36	A069 2789	Upper Tray Rail	1
37	AA08 2021	Bushing - 8x12x10mm	2
38	A069 2824	Large Positioning Bracket	1
39	5400 3404	Stepped Screw	2
100	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
101	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
102	0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
103	0965 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
104	1105 0199	Clamp	
105	0960 4006W	Philips Flange Screw - M4x6	
106	0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	
107	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
108	0414 0082W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	

18. PAPER REGISTRATION (A085/A087/A088)

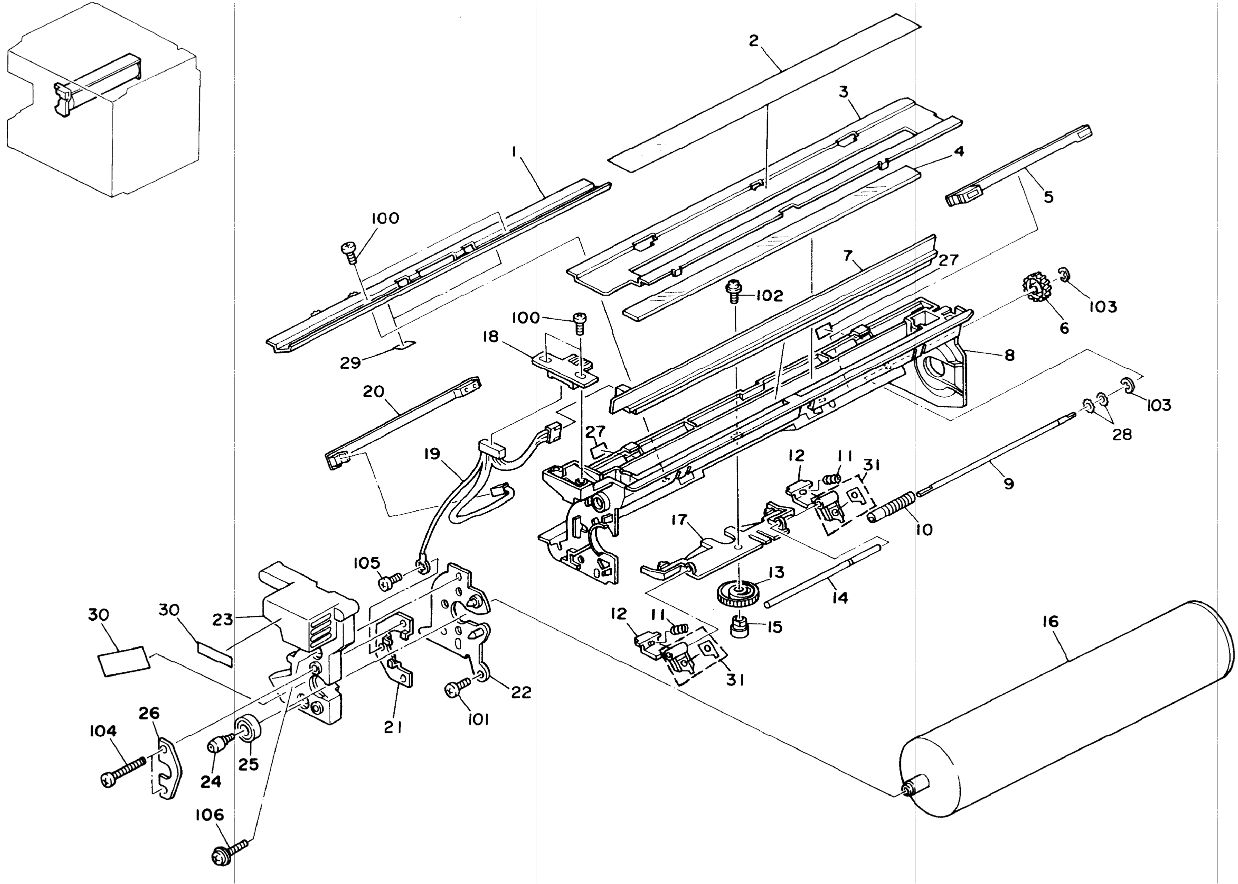

100
7
101
6
102
5
2
1
8
9
10
103
11
3
106
14
104
12
13
18
6
101
23
17
101
24
102
22
102
8
4
15
16
18
19
20
103
105
21
11

18. PAPER REGISTRATION (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	AF02 1044	Upper Registration Roller	1
2	A069 2589	Transfer Entrance Guide	1
3	AF02 0284	Duplex Stack Roller	1
4	AA06 3222	Registration Pressure Spring	1
5	AX50 0037	PTL Stabilizer	1
6	AA08 2021	Bushing - 8x12x10mm	2
7	AX20 0053	Registration Magnetic Clutch	1
8	5206 2684	Shoulder Screw - M3	2
9	AA08 0085	Bushing - Rear Registration Roller	1
10	AA06 3242	Registration Pressure Spring - Rear	1
11	A048 2838	Nylon Rivet	1
12	A069 2571	Upper Registration Guide	1
13	AW02 0033	Photointerruptor - 40;C	1
14	A069 2576	Registration Sensor Bracket	1
15	A069 2614	Lower Relay Guide	1
16	AA06 0316	Lower Guide Spring	1
17	AB01 3487	Gear - 20Z	1
18	AA02 0001	Drawer Tray Magnet	2
19	AA06 0315	Upper Guide Spring	1
20	A069 2610	Upper Relay Guide	1
21	AG05 1079	Release Lever - Relay Guide	1
22	AB01 3486	Gear - 14Z	1
23	AB01 3485	Gear - 20Z	1
24	AA08 0084	Bushing - Front Registration Roller	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0951 4008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
101	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
102	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
103	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
104	0313 0040W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x4	
105	0313 0350W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x35	
106	1105 0199	Clamp	

19. DRUM SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)

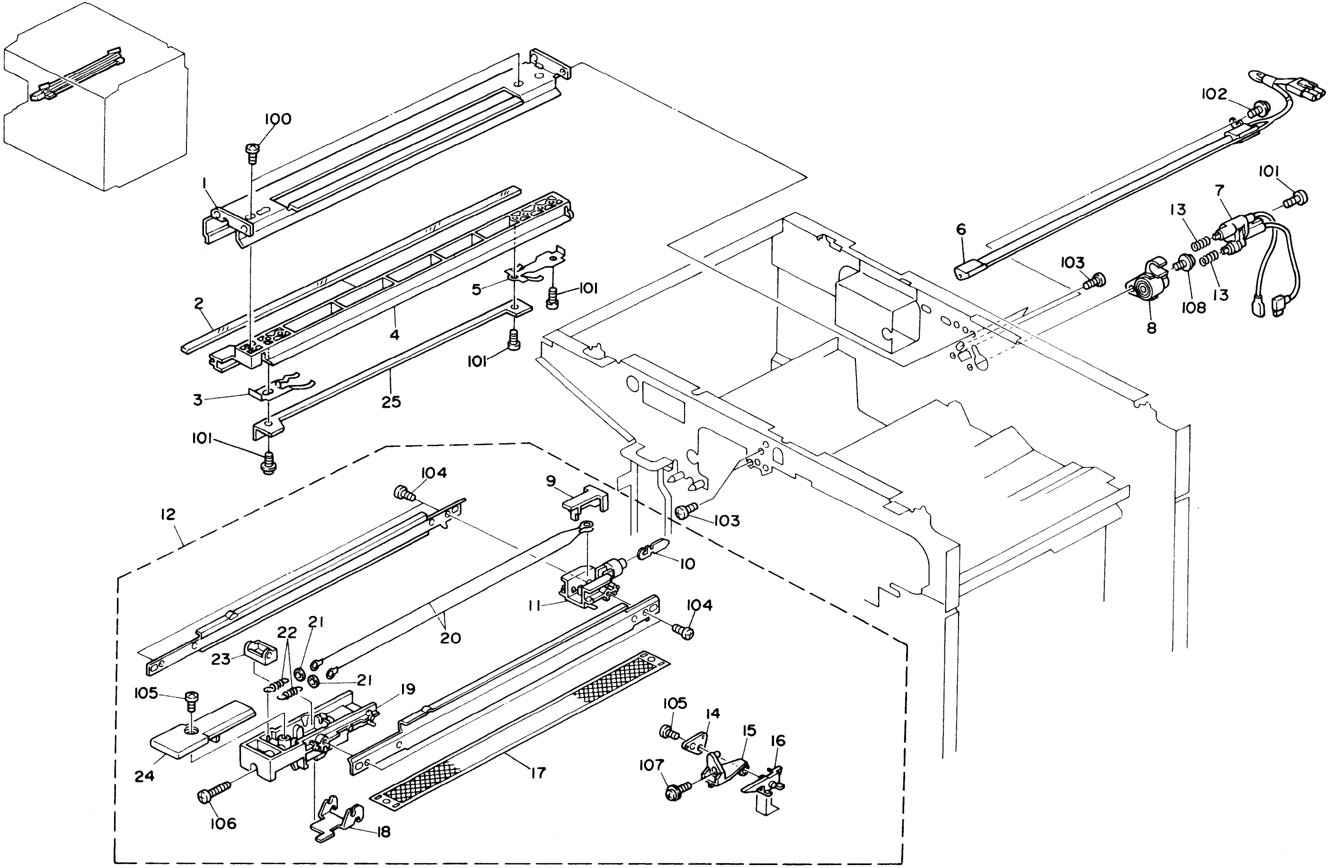

2
3
1
4
5
100
7
27
103
102
6
100
18
8
29
20
27
103
28
19
12
11
31
9
17
10
105
13
14
30
30
23
12
11
15
16
22
31
21
101
26
104
25
24
106

19. DRUM SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 2261	Left Drum Stay	1
2	AA01 0043	Filter	1
3	A069 2258	Top Plate - Drum Unit	1
4	AC01 5011	Toner Shield Glass	1
5	A069 5240	ID Sensor Board	1
6	AB01 1104	Gear - 17Z	1
7	A069 5255	Erase Lamp Unit	1
8	A069 2276	Drum Unit Frame	1
9	AA14 0322	Worm Gear Shaft	1
10	AB01 0065	Pick-off Pawl Worm	1
11	AA06 3106	Spring - Pick-up Pawl	2
12	A069 2267	Pick-off Pawl Holder	2
13	AB01 0064	Pick-off Pawl Cam	1
14	AA14 0321	Pick-off Pawl Shaft	1
15	AA14 3293	Gear Shaft	1
16	A069 9510	Drum	1
17	A069 2270	Pick-off Pawl Retainer	2
18	A069 5257	Connector Board - Drum Unit	1
19	A069 5333	Drum Unit Harness	1
20	A069 5245	V Sensor Board	1
21	A069 2263	Grounding Plate	1
22	A085 2256	Front Side Plate - Drum	1
23	A069 2285	Drum Support Plate	1
24	AA14 3313	Stepped Screw - M5x7	1
25	0805 3441	Ball Bearing - 8x22mm	1
26	A048 2258	Drum Holder	1
27	A069 2278	Seal - 0.1x12x22	2
28	A069 2283	Guide Ring	2
29	A069 2273	V Sensor Seal	2
30	A023 2074	Hight Voltage Decal	2
31	AD02 5012	Pick-off Pawl	2

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0413 0062W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	
101	0951 4008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
102	0952 3006W	Philips Screw - M3x6	
103	0720 0020E	Retaining Ring - M2	
104	0314 0200W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x20	
105	0801 1185	Philips Truss Head Screw - M4x8	
106	0951 4020W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4	

20. DRUM SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)

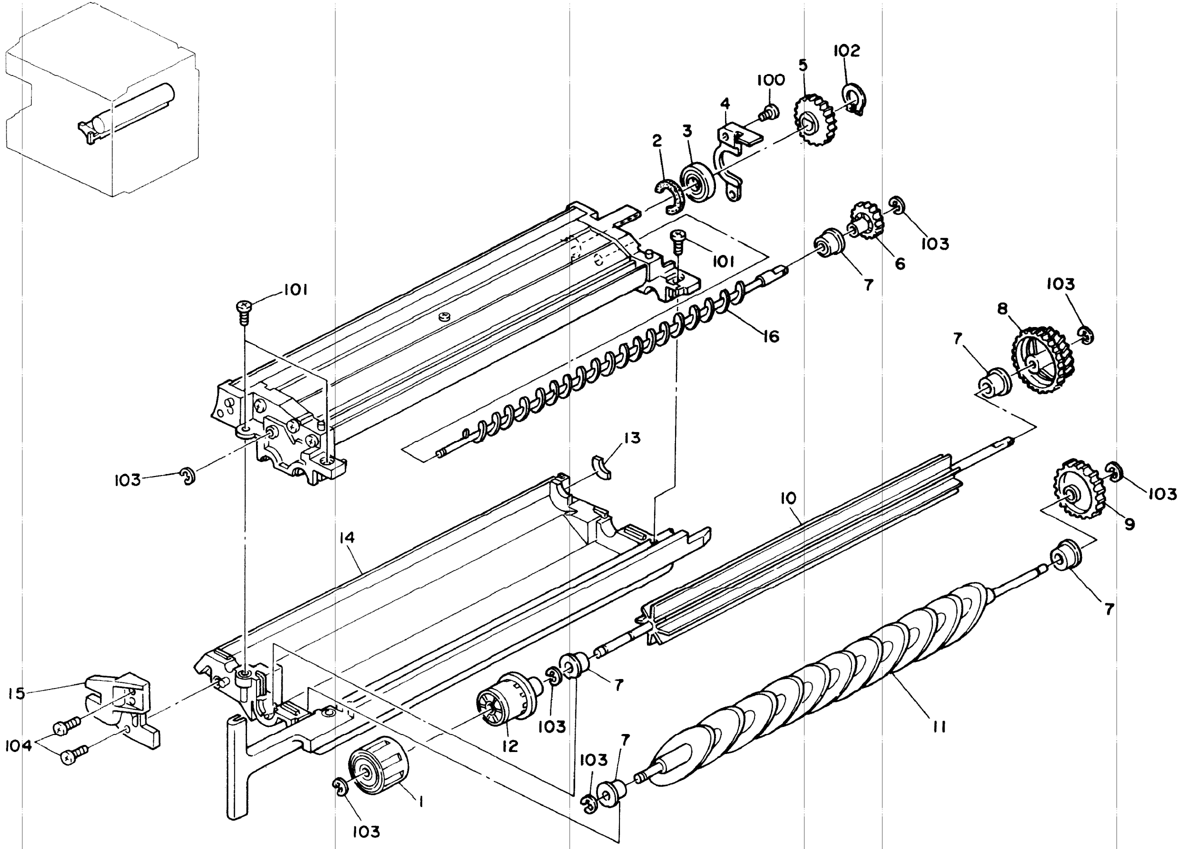

100
1
2
4
5
101
101
3
25
101
102
101
7
13
6
103
108
13
8
104
9
12
103
10
11
104
20
22
21
23
21
105
19
24
105
14
15
16
17
107
106
18

20. DRUM SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 2061	Left Rail - Charge Corona	1
2	A069 2065	Quenching Lamp Filter	1
3	A069 2073	Charge Spring Plate	1
4	A069 2070	Right Rail - Charge Corona	1
5	A069 2074	Rear Spring Plate - Charge	1
6	AX50 0038	QL Stabilizer	1
7	AD02 1066	Charge Corona Receptacle	1
8	AD02 1015	Receptacle Housing	1
9	AD02 2198	Rear End Block Cover - Main Charge	1
10	5442 2110	Plug - Corona Unit	1
11	AD02 2197	Rear End Block - Main Charge	1
12	AD00 4068	Charge Corona Unit	1
13	5442 2107	Hookless Spring	2
14	A006 2122	Cleaner Stay	1
15	A069 2152	Cleaner Stay	1
16	A069 2151	Corona Wire Cleaner	1
17	A069 2117	Charge Corona Grid	1
18	A069 2130	Anchor - Grid	1
19	AD02 2260	Front End Block - Main Charge	1
20	A069 9540	Charge Corona Wire - 10pcs/set	1
21	A030 6231	Corona Wire Ring	2
22	5442 2108	Spring - Corona Wire	2
23	A069 2127	Adjuster - Main Charge	1
24	AD02 2261	Front End Block Cover - Main Charge	1
25	A069 2075	Electrod Plate	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0314 0080W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x8	
101	0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
102	0951 4008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
103	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
104	0413 0062W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	
105	0971 3006A	Philips Polycarbonate Screw - M3x6	
106	0971 3006A	Philips Polycarbonate Screw - M3x6	
107	0951 4006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	
108	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	

21. DEVELOPMENT UNIT 1 (A085/A087/A088)



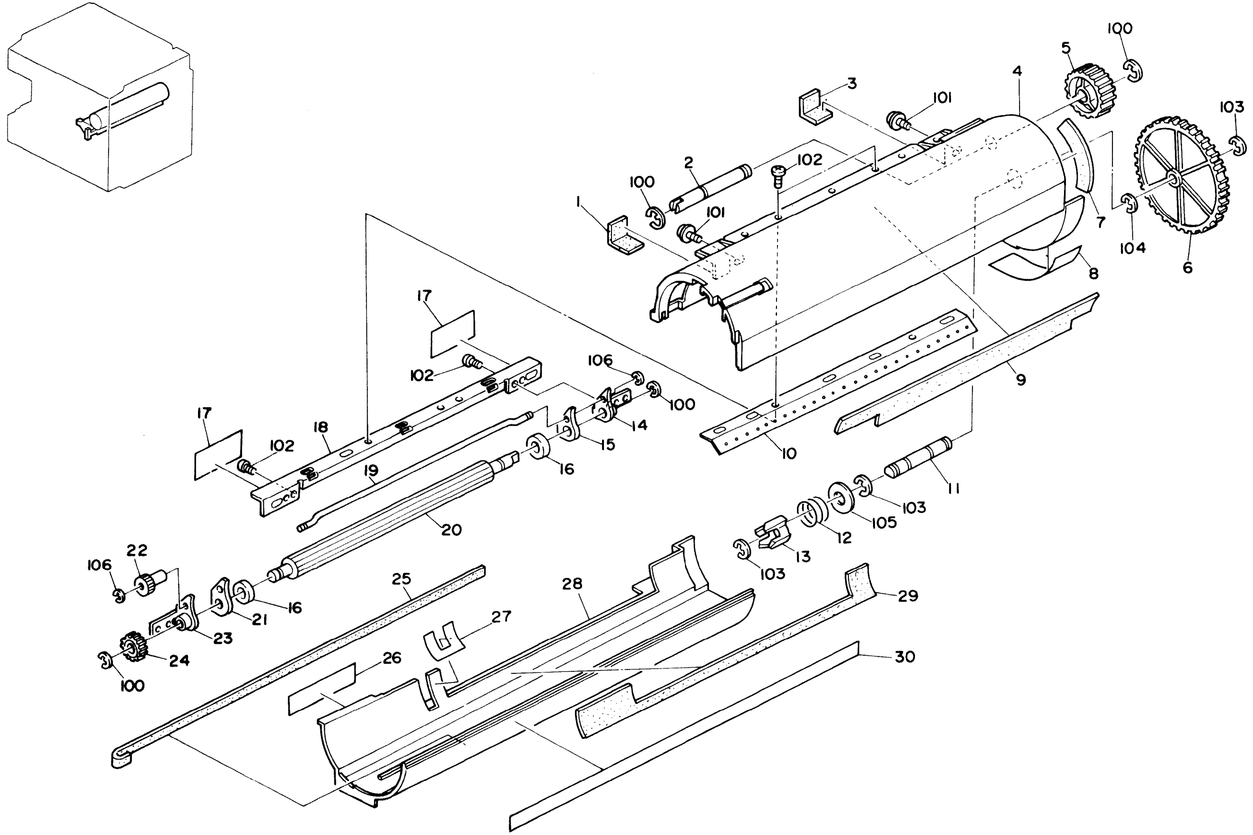
102
100
5
4
3
2
103
6
101
7
101
103
8
16
7
13
103
10
103
9
14
7
15
7
104
103
12
11
103
7
1
103

21. DEVELOPMENT UNIT 1 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	A069 3050	Development Unit	1
1	A006 3330	Development Knob	1
2	AA15 2161	Rear Upper Seal - Development	1
3	5429 3561	Ball Bearing - 10x26x8	1
4	A069 3075	Retainer - Black	1
5	AB01 3213	Gear - 27T	1
6	AB01 3694	Gear - 19Z	1
7	5205 3103	Bushing - 6x13	5
8	AB01 7046	Coupled Gear - 27T/34T	1
9	AB01 3136	Gear - 34T	1
10	AD03 8004	Paddle Roller	1
11	AD03 8021	Right Paddle Roller	1
12	A006 3335	Knob - Paddle	1
13	AA15 2162	Rear Lower Seal - Development	1
14	A069 3061	Lower Casing	1
15	A006 3205	Development Pannel Plate	1
16	AD03 7034	Mixing Auger	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
101	0314 0080W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x8	
102	0725 0100E	Retaining Ring C - M10	
103	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
104	0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	

22. DEVELOPMENT UNIT 2 (A085/A087/A088)

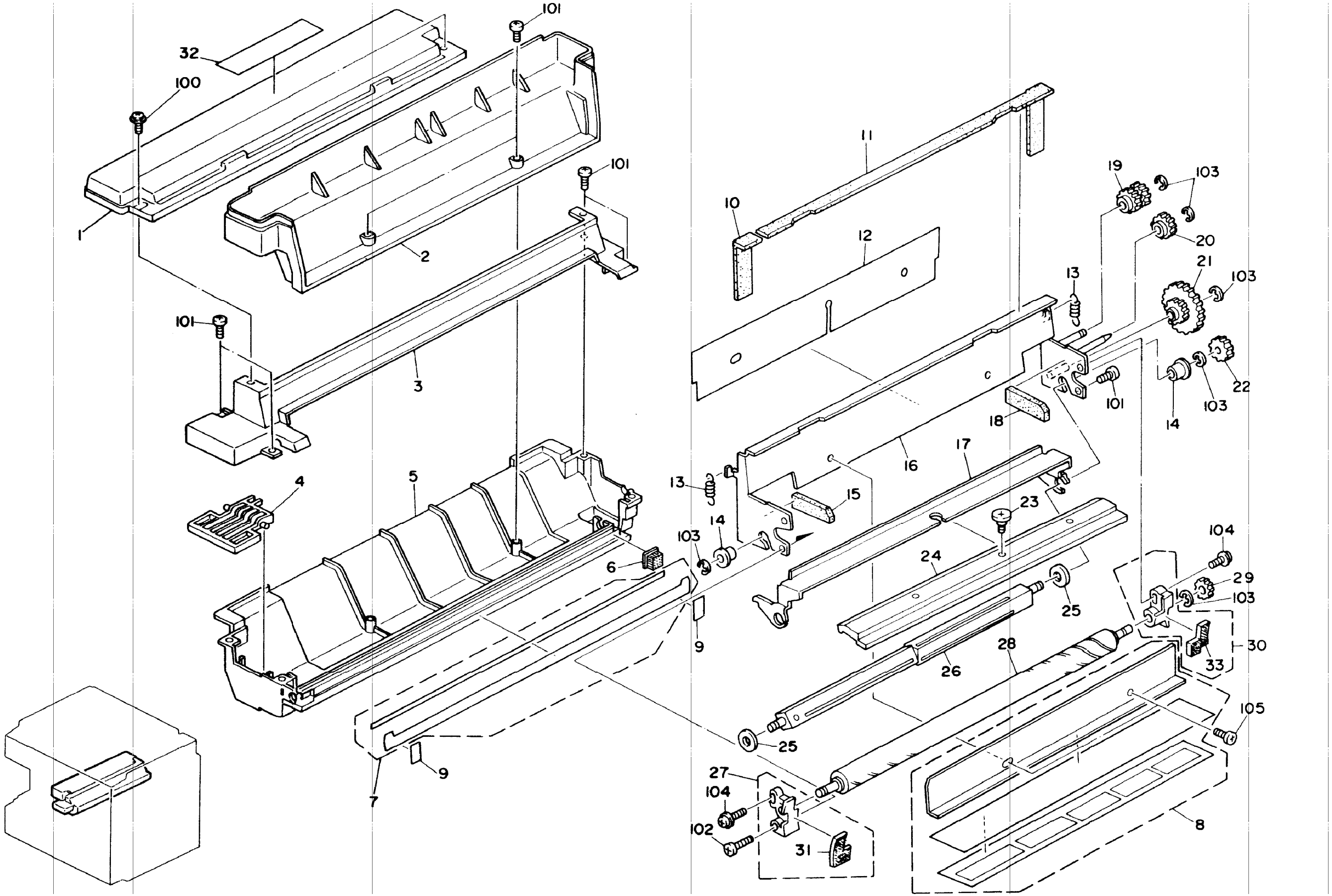

100
5
4
3
101
103
102
2
100
1
101
7
104
6
8
17
106
102
100
14
18
15
10
17
102
16
19
11
103
20
105
12
13
22
103
106
25
28
29
16
21
27
23
24
26
30
100

22. DEVELOPMENT UNIT 2 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	A069 3120	Toner Supply Unit - EU,ASIA	1
*	A073 3110	Toner Supply Unit - NA	1
1	AA15 1099	Seal - 2x14x37mm	1
2	AA14 5050	Toner Supply Shaft	1
3	AA15 1099	Seal - 2x14x37mm	1
4	A069 3122	Upper Casing - Toner Supply - EU,ASIA	1
4	A073 3112	Upper Casing - Toner Supply - NA	1
5	AB01 3156	Gear - 27T	1
6	AB01 3157	Gear - 67T	1
7	5215 3295	Hopper Filter	1
8	AA15 0060	Seal - 20x28mm	1
9	AA15 1100	Seal - 2x28x320mm	1
10	A006 3160	Slitter	1
11	5215 3327	Shaft - Agitator	1
12	5215 3347	Spring - Gear	1
13	5215 3328	Joint - Hopper	1
14	A006 3171	Rear Side Bracket	1
15	AA15 1148	Seal - Supply Roller - Rear	1
16	AA15 1104	Seal - Toner Supply Roller	2
17	5215 3399	Seal - 50x19mm	2
18	A006 3155	Plate Nut	1
19	A006 3168	Agitator Shaft	1
20	AD03 3002	Toner Supply Roller - Black	1
21	AA15 1096	Seal - Supply Roller - Front	1
22	AB01 0017	Gear - 18Z	1
23	A006 3158	Front Side Bracket	1
24	AB01 0018	Gear - 34Z	1
25	AA15 1102	Seal - 2x7x420mm	1
26	AA15 0031	Seal - 25x55 mm	1
27	AA15 0042	Seal - 20x30mm	1
28	A069 3091	Lower Casing - Toner Supply Unit	1
29	AA15 1547	Lower Casing Seal	1
30	5215 3394	Seal - 12x406mm	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
101	0951 4006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	
102	0353 0050W	Tapping Screw - M3x5	
103	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
104	0720 0050E	Retaining Ring - M5	
105	0807 4103	Spacer - 0.5mm	
106	0720 0020E	Retaining Ring - M2	

23. CLEANING UNIT (A085/A087/A088)

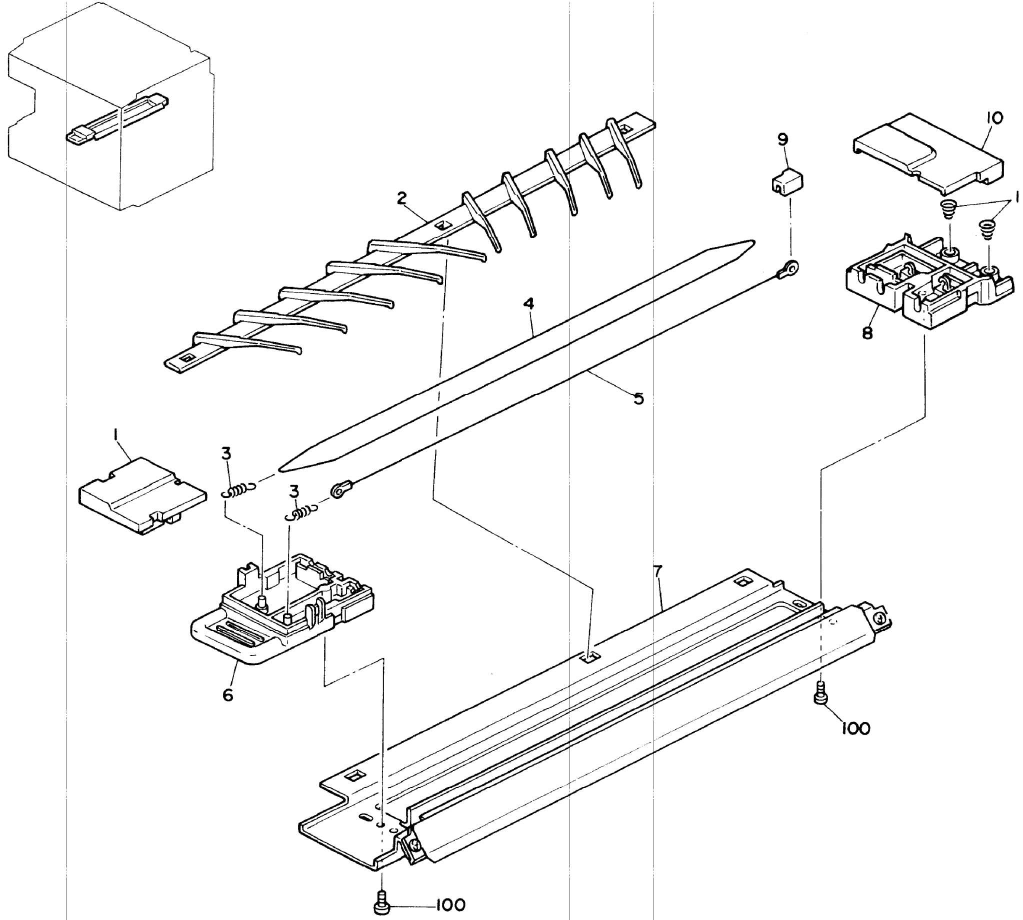

32
100
101
1
2
101
101
3
4
5
6
7
9
9
11
10
12
13
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
103
103
103
103
14
101
23
24
25
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
33
8
102
104
104
105

23. CLEANING UNIT (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	A069 3503	Cleaning Unit	1
1	A069 3585	Used Toner Tank - Upper	1
2	A069 3586	Used Toner Tank - Lower	1
3	A069 3552	Upper Cleaning Casing	1
4	A069 3589	Release Lever - Cleaning Blade	1
5	A069 3582	Lower Cleaning Casing	1
6	AA15 2171	Rear Lower Seal - Cleaning	1
7	A069 9001	Cleaning Entrance Sheal	1
8	A069 3575	Cleaning Blade Cleaner	1
9	AA15 0102	Seal - 0.05x12x25	2
10	AA15 1405	Small Seal - Cleaning Casing	1
11	AA15 1404	Large Seal - Cleaning Casing	1
12	AA15 2015	Toner Collection Seal	1
13	AA06 0099	Cleaning Blade Spring	2
14	AA08 0030	Bushing - 5x13x7	2
15	AA15 1105	Front Blade Seal	1
16	A069 3557	Cleaning Unit Frame	1
17	A069 3565	Blade Bracket	1
18	AA15 1106	Rear Blade Seal	1
19	AB01 7062	Coupled Gear - 17T/18T	1
20	AB01 1026	Gear - 17T	1
21	AB01 7044	Coupled Gear - 18T/35T	1
22	AB01 1027	Gear - 19T	1
23	5446 3648	Stepped Screw - M4	1
24	AD00 2017	Cleaning Blade	1
25	AA15 1109	Seal - 5x16x5	2
26	A069 3580	Toner Collection Shaft	1
27	A006 3603	Front Brush Holder	1
28	AD04 2016	Cleaning Brush	1
29	AB01 1019	Gear - 12T	1
30	A069 3567	Rear Brush Holder	1
31	AA15 2016	Side Seal - Cleaning Front	1
32	AA00 0092	Decal - Used Toner Tank	1
33	AA15 2170	Rear Side Seal	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0951 3014W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x14	
101	0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
102	0413 0142W	Tapping Screw - M3x14	
103	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
104	0951 3010W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x10	
105	0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	

24. T & S CORONA UNIT (A085/A087/A088)

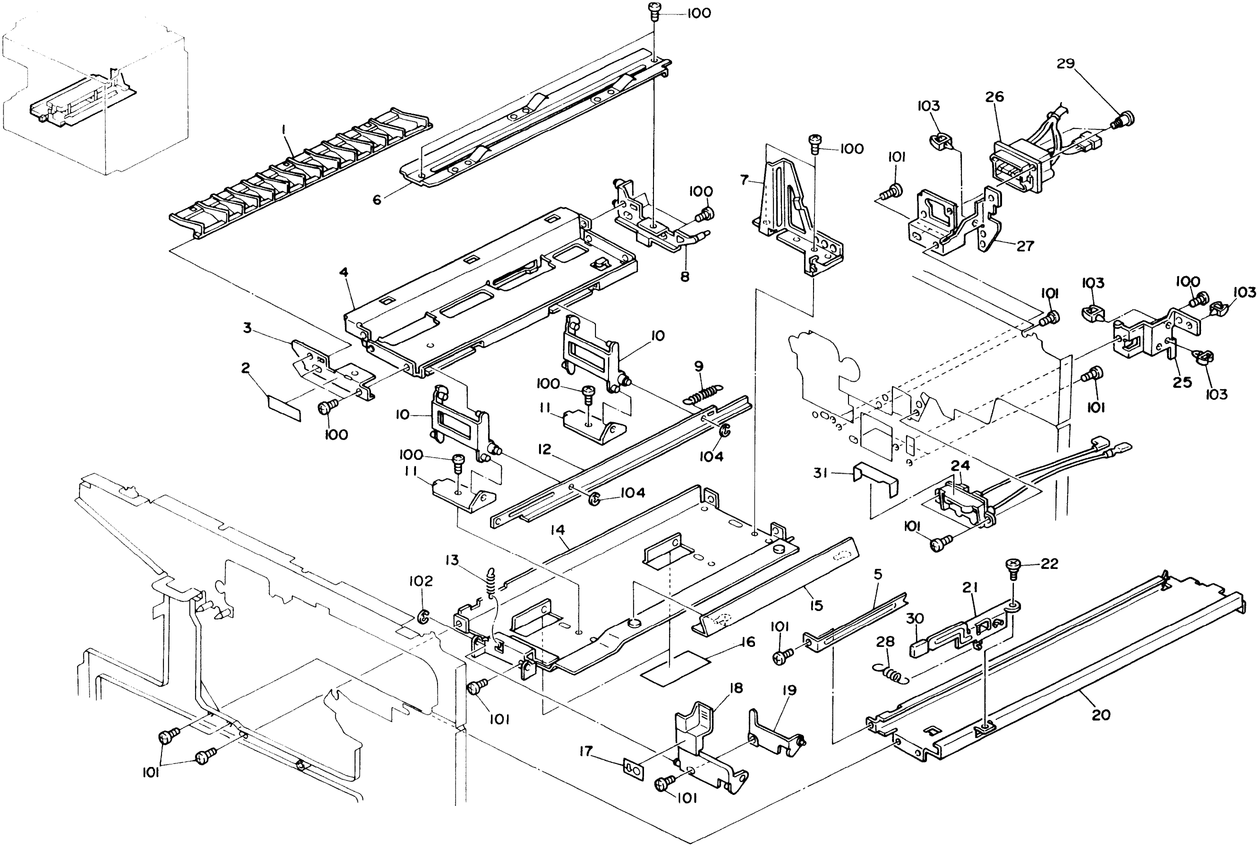

10
9
11
2
4
8
5
1
3
3
7
6
100
100

24. T & S CORONA UNIT (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	AD00 4062	T/S Corona Unit	1
1	AD02 2202	Front End Block Cover	1
2	A069 2188	Paper Guide - T/S Corona	1
3	5442 2108	Spring - Corona Wire	2
4	A069 9542	Separation Corona Wire - 10pcs/set	1
5	A069 9541	Transfer Corona Wire - 10pcs/set	1
6	AD02 2201	Front End Block	1
7	A069 3070	Entrance Seal	1
8	AD02 2203	Rear End Block	1
9	A006 3855	Terminal Cover - Transfer	1
10	AD02 2204	Rear End Block Cover	1
11	AA06 3036	Terminal Spring	2

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
101	0952 3006W	Philips Screw - M3x6	

25. TRANSPORT SECTION (A085/A087/A088)



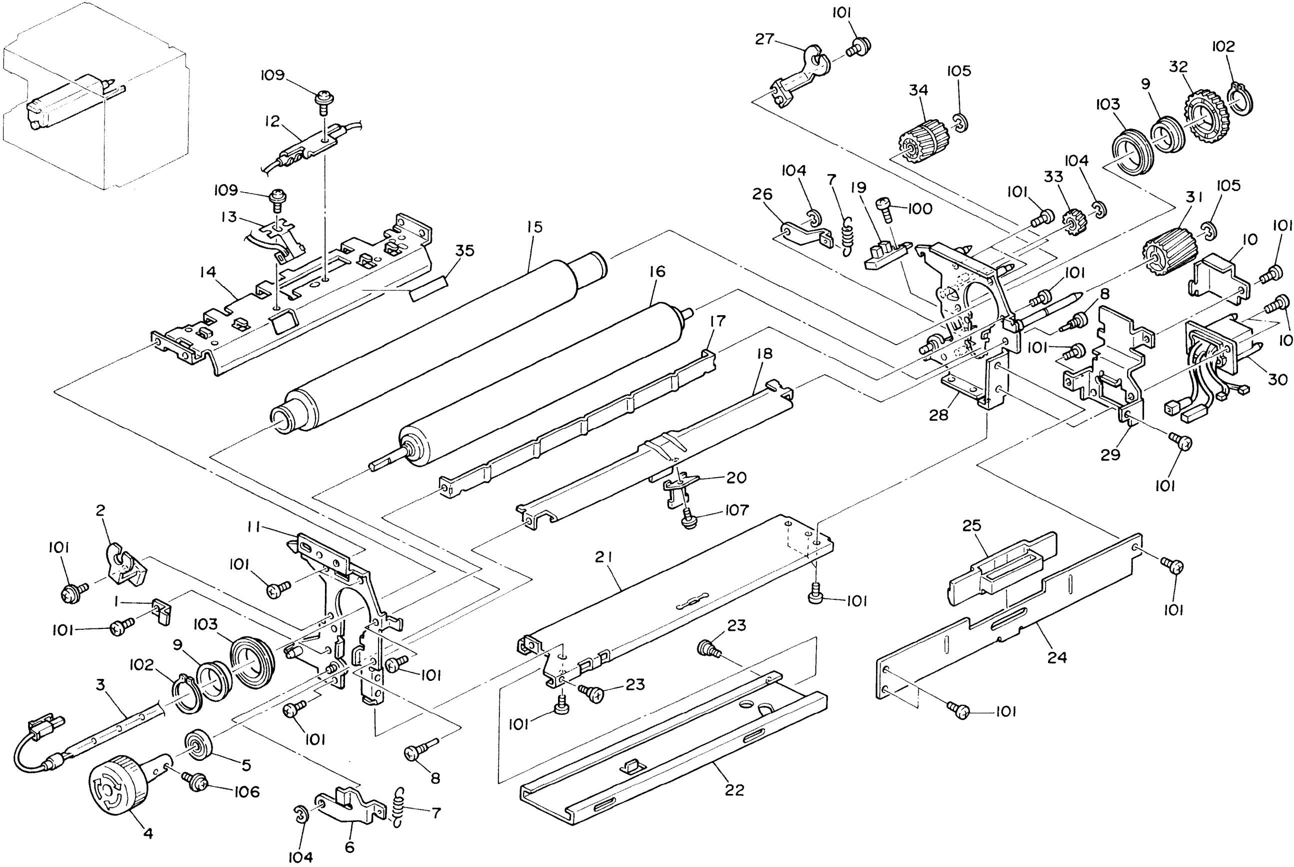
100
29
26
103
100
101
1
7
6
100
27
8
4
101
103
100
103
3
10
2
9
100
25
103
100
101
11
10
12
104
31
24
100
11
104
101
14
22
13
102
5
21
15
30
101
16
28
20
101
18
19
101
17
101

25. TRANSPORT SECTION (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 3918	Transport Guide	1
2	A023 2074	High Voltage Decal	1
3	A069 3910	Front Transport Bracket	1
4	A069 3914	Heater Bracket	1
5	A085 4087	Fusing Unit Stopper	1
6	A069 3915	T&S Corona Rail	1
7	A069 3893	Release Link Stopper	1
8	A069 3920	Rear Transport Bracket	1
9	5413 2300	Spring - Trailing Clamp	1
10	A069 3885	Release Arm	2
11	A069 3891	Release Arm Hinge	2
12	A069 3895	Transport Release Link	1
13	5429 1236	Tightener Spring	1
14	A069 3887	Transport Base Plate	1
15	A069 3892	Side Base Plate	1
16	AA15 0259	Seal - 0.1x30x75	2
17	AA00 1201	Decal - A1	1
18	AG05 1082	Transport Release Lever	1
19	A069 3882	Release Lever Bracket	1
20	A085 4351	Fusing Unit Guide Rail	1
21	A085 4355	Release Lever - Fusing Unit	1
22	5203 1686	Screw - Slid Rail	3
23	AA06 0318	Fusing Lock Spring	1
24	A069 2014	T/S Corona Receptacle	1
25	A069 5827	Duct Bracket	1
26	A085 5623	AC Harness - 230V	1
26	A085 5621	AC Harness - 115V	1
27	A069 4189	Board Angle	1
28	5442 4467	Spring - Stripper Pawl Plate	2
29	AA14 3301	Stepped Screw - M3x4	2
30	A069 4144	Release Lever Knob	1
31	A069 2012	Receptacle Cover	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	
101	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
102	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
103	1105 0199	Clamp	
104	0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	

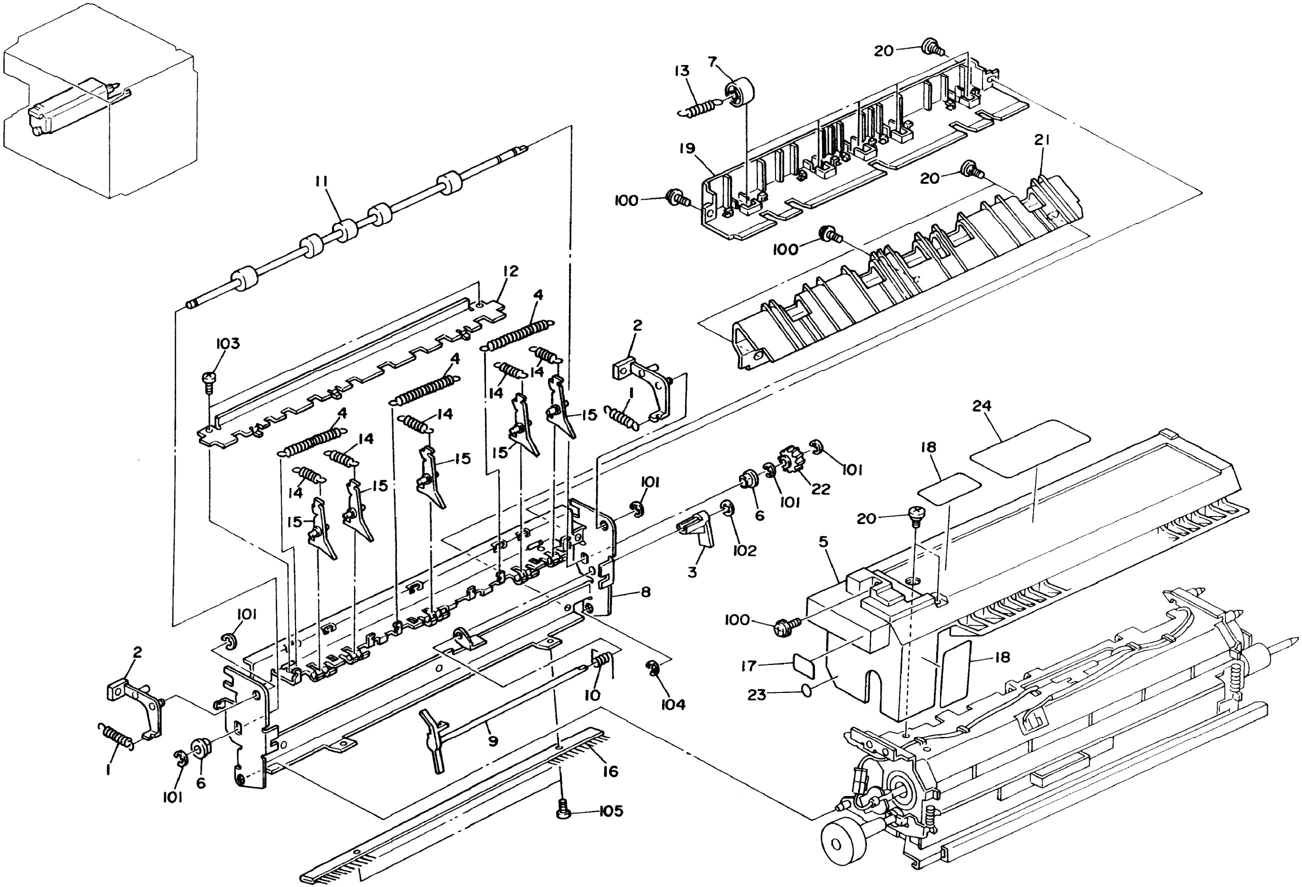
26. FUSING UNIT 1 (A085/A087/A088)


101
27
102
105
32
34
9
103
109
12
104
7
19
33
104
26
100
101
105
109
31
13
15
101
10
35
16
101
14
8
17
108
18
101
30
28
29
20
101
107
2
11
25
101
21
101
101
101
1
101
23
24
103
101
9
23
102
101
101
3
101
5
8
106
22
7
4
104
6

26. FUSING UNIT 1 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	A085 4081	Fusing Unit - 230V	1
*	A087 4060	Fusing Unit - 115V	1
1	A085 4103	Support Plate	1
2	A085 4186	Front Heater Holder	1
3	AX44 0054	Fusing Lamp - 230V 800W	1
3	AX44 0053	Fusing Lamp - 115V 800W	1
4	AG05 0050	Fusing Knob	1
5	0805 3104	Ball Bearing - 8x22x7mm	1
6	A085 4145	Front Pressure Lever	1
7	AA06 0440	Pressure Spring	2
8	AA14 3362	Posisioning Pin	2
9	AE03 2002	Bushing - 25x30x9 mm	2
10	A085 4147	Connector Support Plate	1
11	A085 4101	Front Side Plate	1
12	A085 5238	Thermofuse - 169;C	1
13	A085 5237	Fusing Thermistor	1
14	A085 4120	Upper Stay	1
15	AE01 1002	Hot Roller	1
16	AE02 0028	Pressure Roller	1
17	A069 4126	Upper Entrance Guide	1
18	A085 4127	Lower Entrance Guide	1
19	AW02 0041	Photointerruptor	1
20	A085 4119	Spring Plate	1
21	A085 4114	Fusing Unit Rail	1
22	A085 4086	Fusing Unit Guide	1
23	5447 2769	Stepped Screw	2
24	A085 4116	Side Plate - Entrance Guide	1
25	A085 4139	Entrance Guide Slider	1
26	A085 4146	Rear Pressure Lever	1
27	A085 4190	Rear Heater Holder	1
28	A085 4110	Rear Side Plate	1
29	A085 4144	Fusing Connector Bracket	1
30	A085 5339	Fusing Unit Harness	1
31	AB01 3501	Gear - 26Z	1
32	AB01 3559	Gear - 40Z	1
33	AB01 3481	Gear - 18Z	1
34	AB01 3482	Gear - 24/24Z	1
35	5216 4145	Thermofuse Decal	1
100	0314 0120W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x12	
101	0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	
102	0725 0250E	Retaining Ring - M25	
103	0805 3377	Ball Bearing - 25x42x9mm	
104	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
105	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
106	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
107	0964 3005W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M3x5	
108	0313 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x10	
109	0951 3005W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x5	

27. FUSING UNIT 2 (A085/A087/A088)



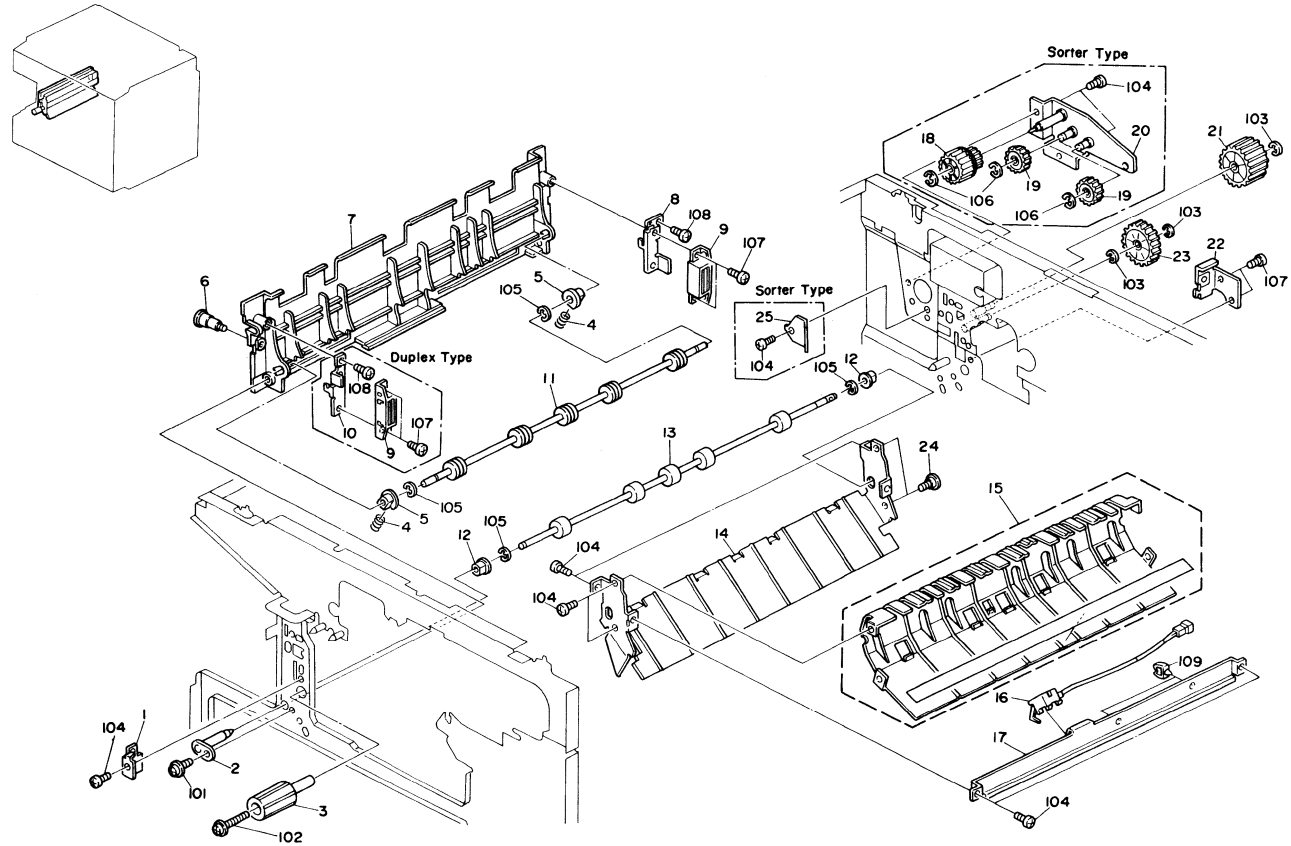
20
13
7
19
21
20
100
100
11
12
4
103
4
2
14
14
1
14
15
4
14
15
14
15
15
24
18
101
101
22
14
15
15
101
6
20
102
3
5
8
100
101
2
17
18
23
10
104
9
1
101
6
16
105

27. FUSING UNIT 2 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	AA06 0443	Release Lever Spring	2
2	A085 4133	Exit Release Lever	2
3	A085 4181	Shielding Plate - Paper Feed Sensor	1
4	AA06 0444	Release Spring	3
5	A069 4109	Fusing Unit Cover	1
6	5424 4142	Bushing - Cleaning Roller	2
7	AF04 0045	Exit Roller	5
8	A085 4130	Exit Side Plate	1
9	A085 4137	Exit Sensor Feeler	1
10	AA06 6182	Exit Sensor Spring	1
11	AF02 0188	Lower Transport Roller	1
12	A085 4123	Stripper Pawl Holder	1
13	AA06 0442	Pressure Spring	5
14	AA06 0477	Stripper Pawl Spring	5
15	A006 9002	Hot Roller Stripper (5pcs/set)	1
17	AA00 1231	Decal - Fusing Unit Removal - 230V	1
17	AA00 1230	Decal - Fusing Unit Removal - 115V	1
18	AA00 0118	Decal - High Temperature	2
19	A085 4131	Upper Exit Guide	1
20	5840 1632	Stepped Screw	5
21	A085 4132	Lower Exit Guide	1
22	AB01 3484	Gear - 15Z	1
23	AA00 1205	Decal - B	1
24	A073 4149	Decal - Removing Misfeed Paper Fusing	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
101	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
102	0805 0077	Retaining Ring - 8mm	
103	0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	
104	0720 0050E	Retaining Ring - M5	

28. PAPER EXIT SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)

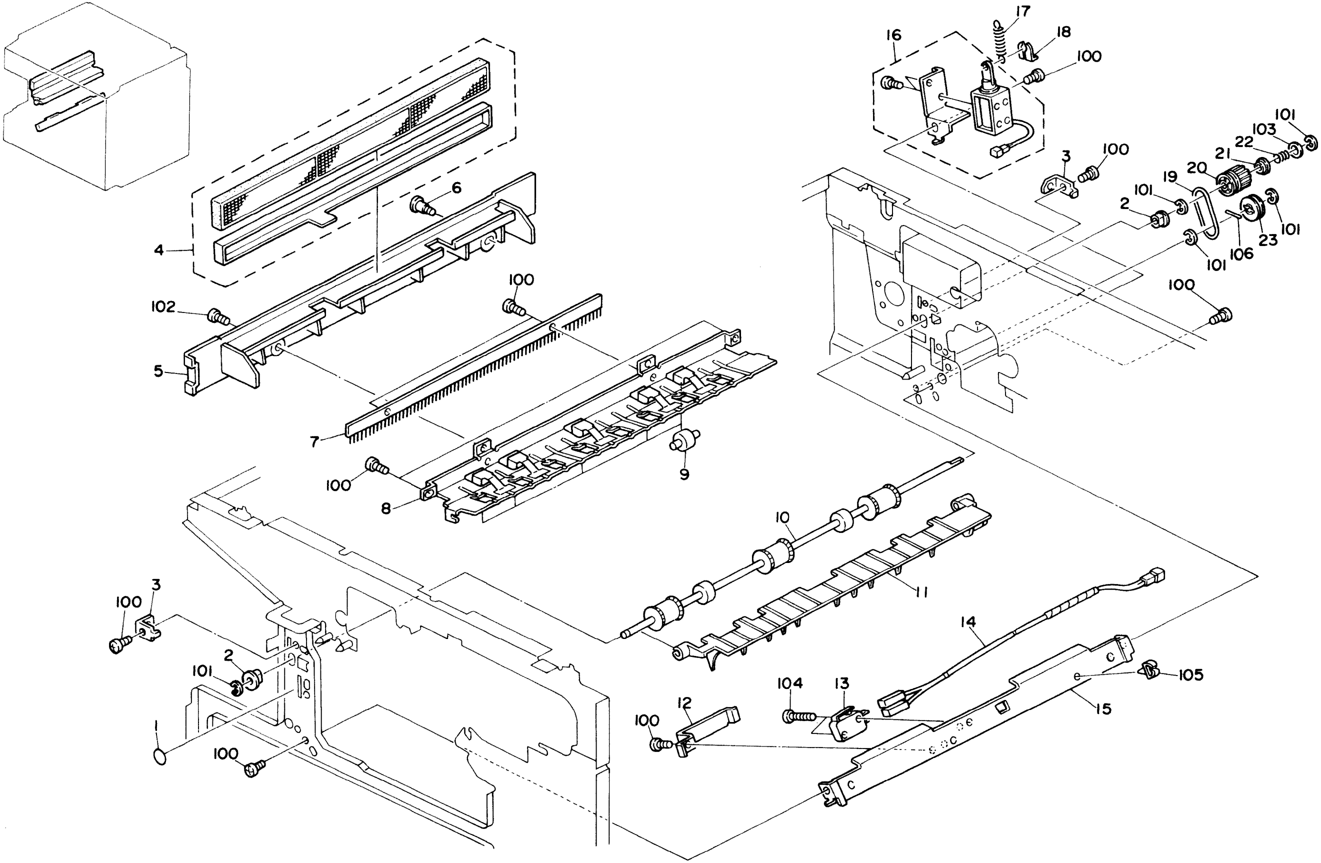

Sorter Type
104
20
18
21
103
106
19
106
19
8
108
9
107
7
103
23
103
22
107
6
5
105
4
Sorter Type
25
104
Duplex Type
108
107
10
9
11
105
12
13
105
5
4
12
105
24
15
104
14
104
109
16
17
104
104
1
2
101
3
102

28. PAPER EXIT SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 4161	Front Magnet Plate	1
2	A069 4154	Exit Cover Holder	1
3	AG05 0058	Relay Roller Knob (A088)	1
4	5205 4527	Spring - Exit (A088)	2
5	AA08 0037	Bushing - 6mm (A088)	2
6	AA14 3315	Knob - Exit (A088)	1
7	A069 4156	Lower Exit Cover	1
8	A069 4169	Rear Magnet Holder	1
9	AG07 0004	Magnet Catch	2
10	A069 4168	Front Magnet Holder (A088)	1
11	AF02 2049	Outer Inverter Roller (A088)	1
12	AA08 2041	Bushing - 6mm	2
13	AF02 0189	Inner Inverter Roller (A088)	1
14	A070 4181	Duplex Entrance Guide - Lower (A088)	1
15	A070 4179	Duplex Entrance Guide - Upper (A088)	1
16	AW02 0035	Photointerruptor - 55C (A088)	1
17	A070 4182	Junction Gate Stay (A088)	1
18	AB01 7185	Double Gear - 20/16Z	1
19	5447 3236	Gear - 23T	2
20	A328 1095	Gear Bracket	1
21	AB01 3483	Gear - 32Z	1
22	A069 4162	Rear Magnet Plate	1
23	AB01 3560	Gear - 30Z	1
24	AA14 3400	Stepped Screw - M4x7	2
25	A328 1091	Cover Plate	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
101	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
102	0960 4030W	Philips Flange Screw - M4x30	
103	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
104	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
105	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
106	0720 0050E	Retaining Ring - M5	
107	0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	
108	0434 0082W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
109	1105 0199	Clamp	

29. PAPER EXIT SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)



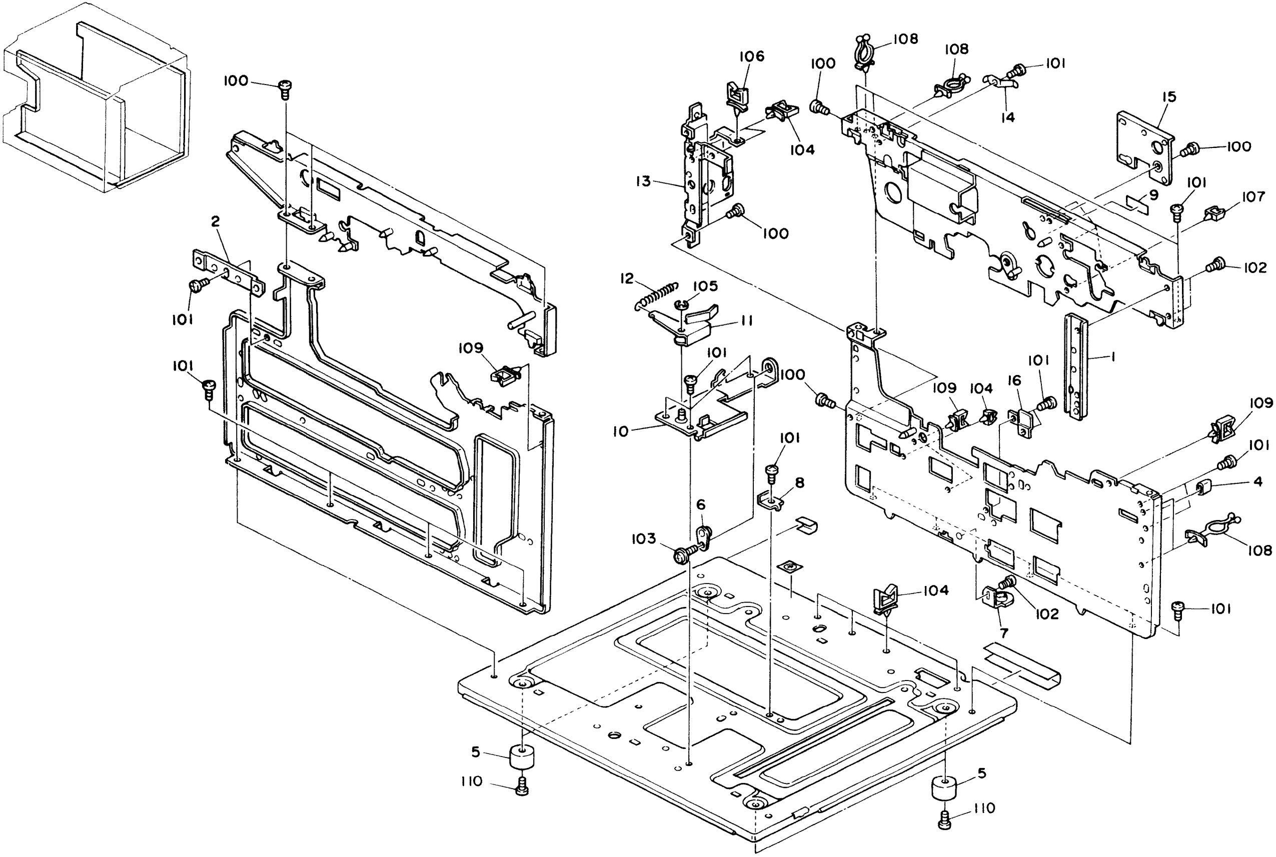
17
16
18
100
101
103
22
21
20
3
100
19
101
2
101
106
23
101
100
4
6
100
102
5
7
100
8
9
10
11
14
3
100
2
101
1
100
12
100
104
13
105
15

29. PAPER EXIT SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A030 1370	Decal - C (A088)	1
2	5053 0447	Bushing - 6mm (A088)	2
3	A069 4163	Exit Guide Bracket	2
4	AA01 0061	Ozone Filter	1
5	A069 4155	Upper Exit Cover	1
6	5875 1521	Shoulder Screw - M4	1
7	AA12 0005	Antistatic Brush	1
8	A069 4150	Upper Exit Guide	1
9	AF02 2007	Exit Driven Roller	5
10	AF04 0036	Lower Exit Roller	1
11	A069 4152	Junction Gate	1
12	A070 4161	Switch Cover Plate (A088)	1
13	1204 2188	Interlock Switch (A088)	1
14	A070 5337	Harness - Exit Cover Switch (A088)	1
15	A069 4164	Exit Sensor Stay	1
16	A070 4194	Junction Gate Solenoid (A088)	1
17	AA06 0397	Turn Gate Spring (A088)	1
18	5206 2686	Snap Ring (A088)	1
19	AA04 2006	Turn Roller Drive Belt (A088)	1
20	AB01 7184	Gear - 19Z	1
21	A470 1703	Shift Clutch	1
22	A470 1704	Spring - Lower Exit Roller	1
23	AB01 7207	Pulley (A088)	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
101	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
102	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M4x8	
103	0701 0060B	Flat Washer - M6	
104	0433 0140W	Tapping Screw - M3x14	
105	1105 0199	Clamp	
106	0622 0100E	Spring Pin - 2x10mm	

30. FRAME SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)



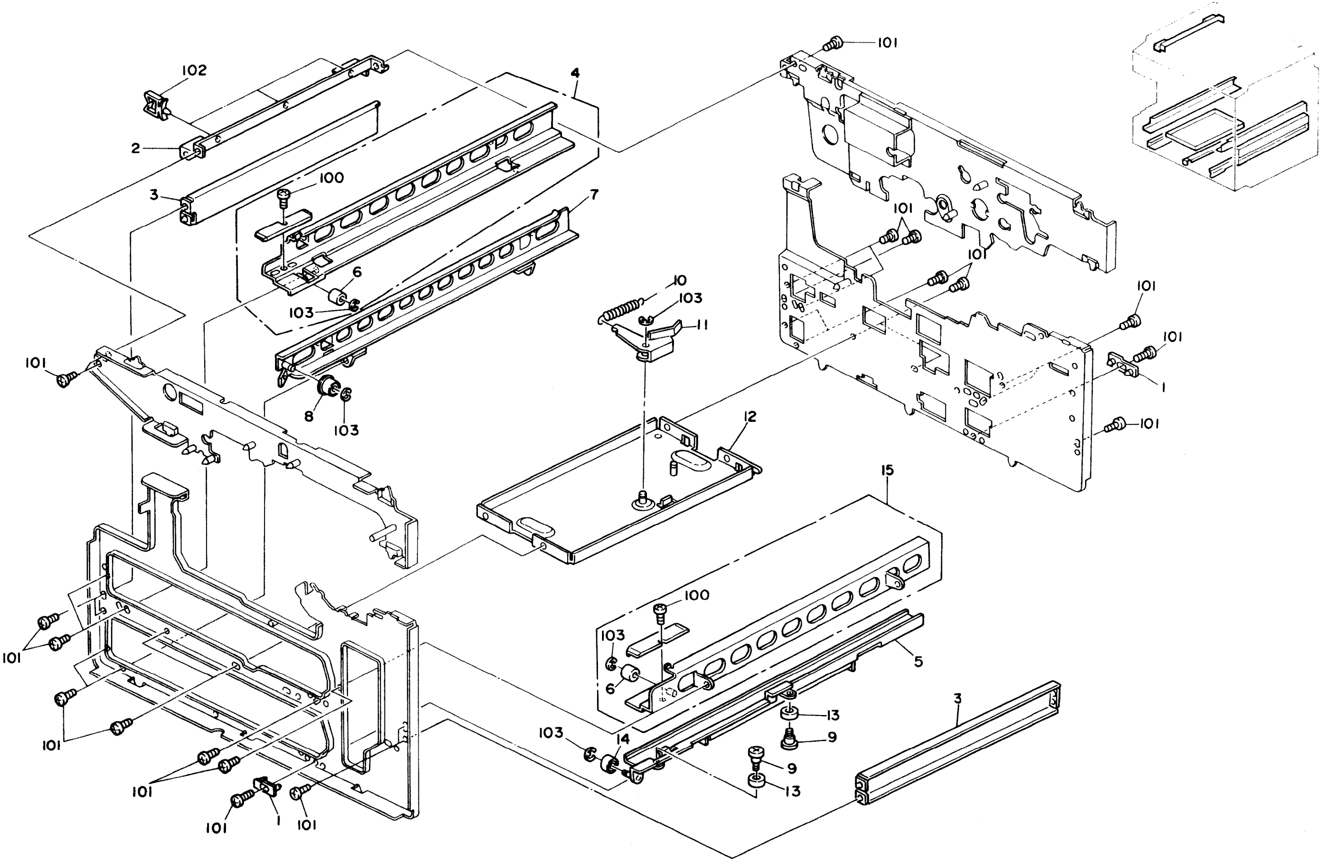
100
2
101
101
109
106
104
13
100
12
105
11
101
10
100
101
8
6
103
108
108
100
101
14
15
100
9
101
107
102
1
109
104
16
101
109
101
4
108
104
102
7
101
5
110
5
110

30. FRAME SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 1092	Right Support Plate	1
2	A069 1288	Rear Cover Bracket	1
3	A069 5827	Duct Bracket	1
4	AA16 1016	Cushion - Fork Gate	1
5	AH01 0007	Rubbber Foot	4
6	AE03 1005	Bushing	1
7	A069 1095	Base Cover	1
8	A069 2804	Pressure Arm Stopper	1
9	A023 2074	High Voltage Decal	1
10	A069 2846	Tray Guide Bracket	1
11	A069 2759	Tray Guide Arm	1
12	AA06 0472	Tray Arm Spring	1
13	A069 1068	Rear Support Plate	1
14	A069 1134	Grounding Plate	1
15	A069 1079	Rear Positioning Plate - Optics	1
16	A070 4927	Stopper Plate - Duplex Tray (A088)	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	
101	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
102	0314 0080W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x8	
103	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
104	1105 0197	Wire Saddle	
105	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
106	1105 0201	Harness Clamp	
107	1105 0229	Clamp	
108	1105 0287	Wire Saddle	
109	1105 0199	Clamp	
110	0964 4010W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M4	

31. FRAME SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)

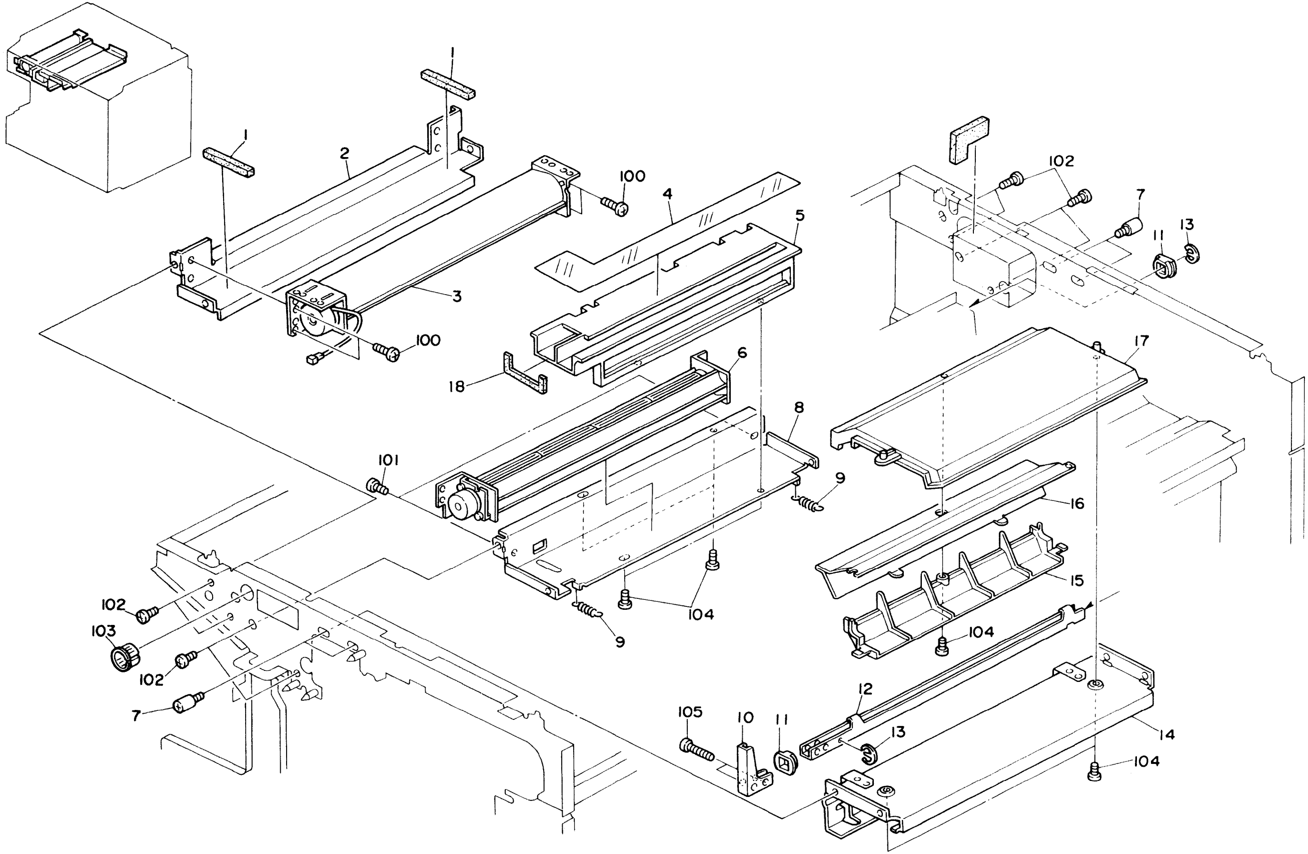

102
2
3
100
4
7
6
103
101
8
103
10
103
11
12
101
101
101
101
101
1
101
15
100
103
6
5
3
13
9
103
14
9
13
101
101
101
101
1
101

31. FRAME SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 2824	Large Positioning Bracket	2
2	A069 1085	Upper Left Harness Stay	1
3	A069 1081	Grip	2
4	A070 4900	Left Rail - Duplex Tray (A088)	1
5	A069 2791	Lower Right Tray Rail	1
5	A069 2790	Upper Right Tray Rail (A085/A087)	1
6	A069 2704	Guide Roller - 6x12x7.5	2
7	A069 2781	Lower Left Tray Rail	1
7	A069 2780	Upper Left Tray Rail (A085/A087)	1
8	A069 2799	Guide Roller - 7.5mm	1
9	AA14 3394	Stepped Screw - M3x10	2
10	5446 6334	Front Spring - Tray Pressure (A088)	1
10	AA06 0472	Tray Arm Spring (A085/A087)	1
11	A069 2759	Tray Guide Arm (A085/A087)	1
11	A070 2775	Tray Lock Arm (A088)	1
12	A069 2769	Left Stay (A085/A087)	1
12	A070 2773	Tray Lock Stay (A088)	1
13	A069 2823	Rail Guide Roller	2
14	A069 2704	Guide Roller - 6x12x7.5	1
15	A070 4909	Right Rail - Duplex Tray (A088)	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
101	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
102	1105 0197	Wire Saddle	
103	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	

32. FRAME SECTION 3 (A085/A087/A088)

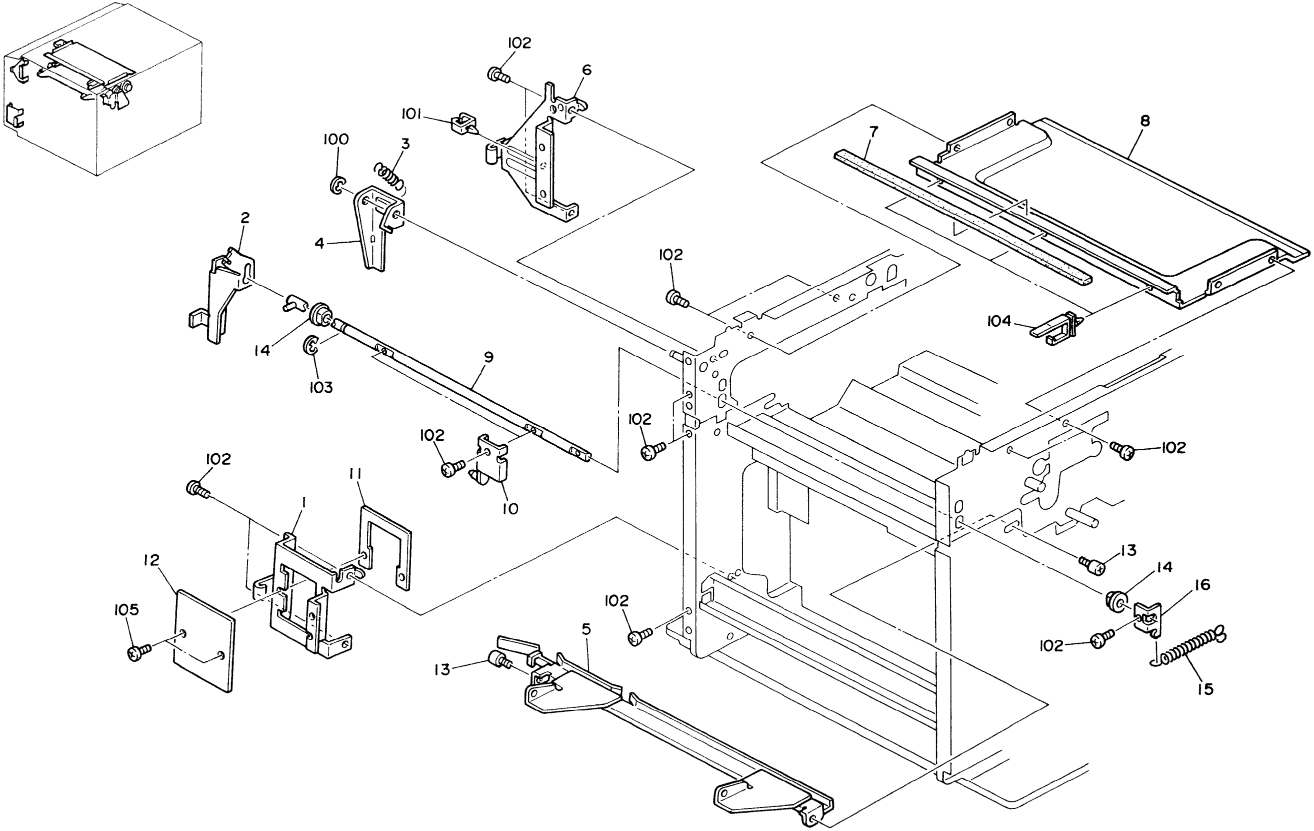

1
1
2
100
4
5
102
7
13
11
3
100
18
6
17
8
101
9
16
102
103
104
15
102
9
104
7
105
10
11
12
13
14
104

32. FRAME SECTION 3 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	AA15 1406	Seal - 6x6x48	2
2	A069 1083	Exhaust Fan Bracket	1
3	AX65 0008	Exhaust Fan Motor - DC 7.7W	1
4	A069 3613	Duct Cover	1
5	A069 3614	Transport Fan Duct	1
6	AX65 0009	Transport Fan Motor - DC 8.4W	1
7	5413 1875	Knob Screw	4
8	A069 3612	Transport Fan Bracket	1
9	AA06 0146	Spring	2
10	A069 3621	Release Lever - Cleaning Unit	1
11	A069 3625	Release Lever Bushing	2
12	A069 3623	Cleaning Release Shaft	1
13	AA10 0003	Stopper - E	2
14	A069 3631	Cleaning Unit Rail	1
15	A069 3637	Lower Duct	1
16	A069 3641	Duct Support Plate	1
17	A069 3636	Upper Duct	1
18	AA15 1731	Duct Seal	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	
101	0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
102	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
103	1106 0200	Bushing - 19.44mm	
104	0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
105	0313 0120W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x12	

33. FRAME SECTION 4 (A085/A087/A088)

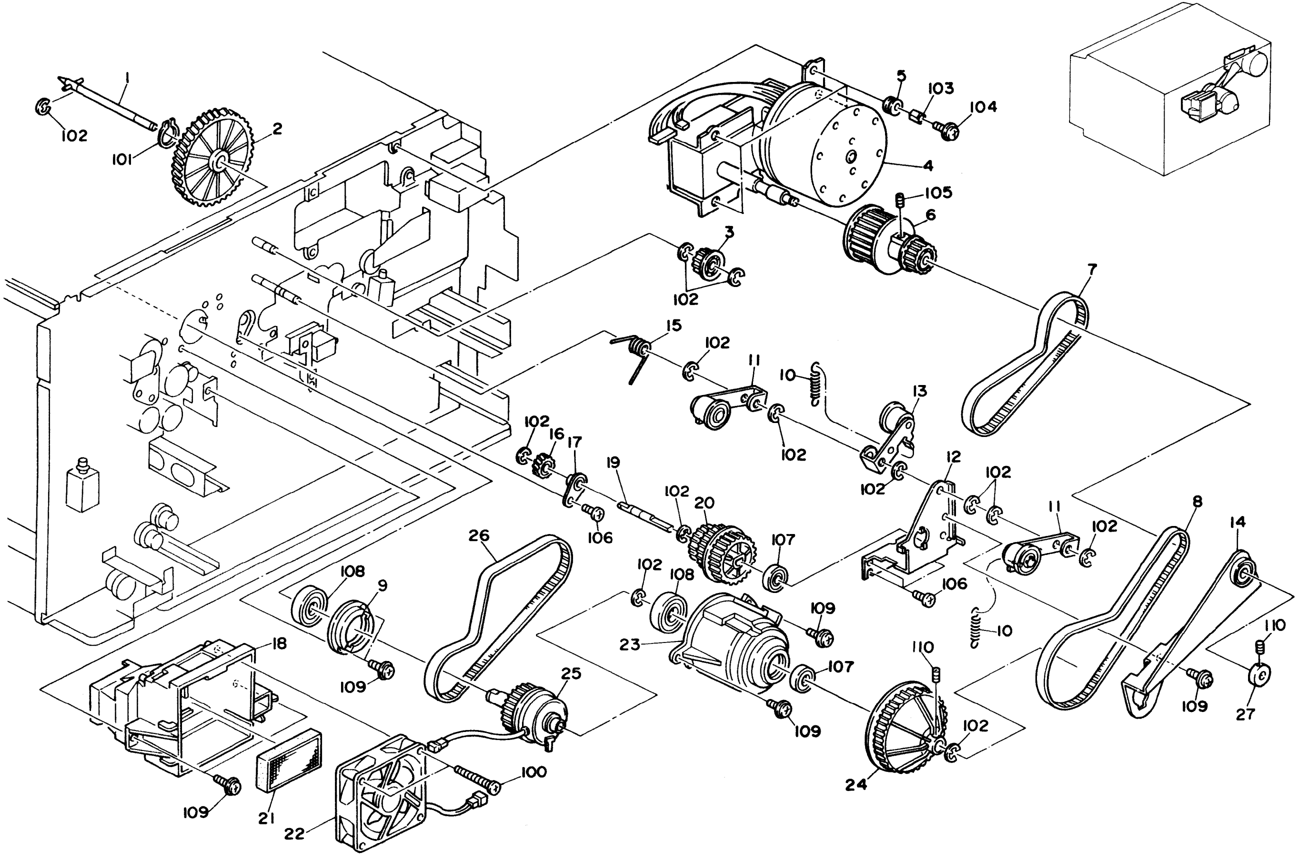

102
6
101
100
3
8
7
2
4
102
104
14
9
103
102
102
102
102
11
10
1
12
13
14
16
105
102
5
102
102
15
13

33. FRAME SECTION 4 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 5804	Key Counter Bracket	1
2	A069 3062	Development Lever	1
3	5216 2676	Spring - Engage Gear Bracket	1
4	A006 3063	Development Stopper	1
5	A006 3050	Development Rail	1
6	A069 1286	Upper Door Hinge	1
7	AA16 2052	Seal - 5x10x356	1
8	A085 1990	Upper Right Shielding Plate	1
9	A006 3060	Shaft	1
10	A006 3056	Shaft Arm	1
11	5420 1515	Plate - Key Counter	1
12	A006 1352	Key Counter Cover	1
13	5918 3120	Stud - M4	1
14	5304 1639	Bushing - 8mm	4
15	5216 2676	Spring - Engage Gear Bracket	1
16	A085 3483	Development Pressure Arm	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
101	1105 0229	Clamp	
102	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
103	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
104	1105 0262	Wire Saddle	
105	0323 0060W	Philips Sunken Head Screw - M3x6	

34. DRIVE SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)



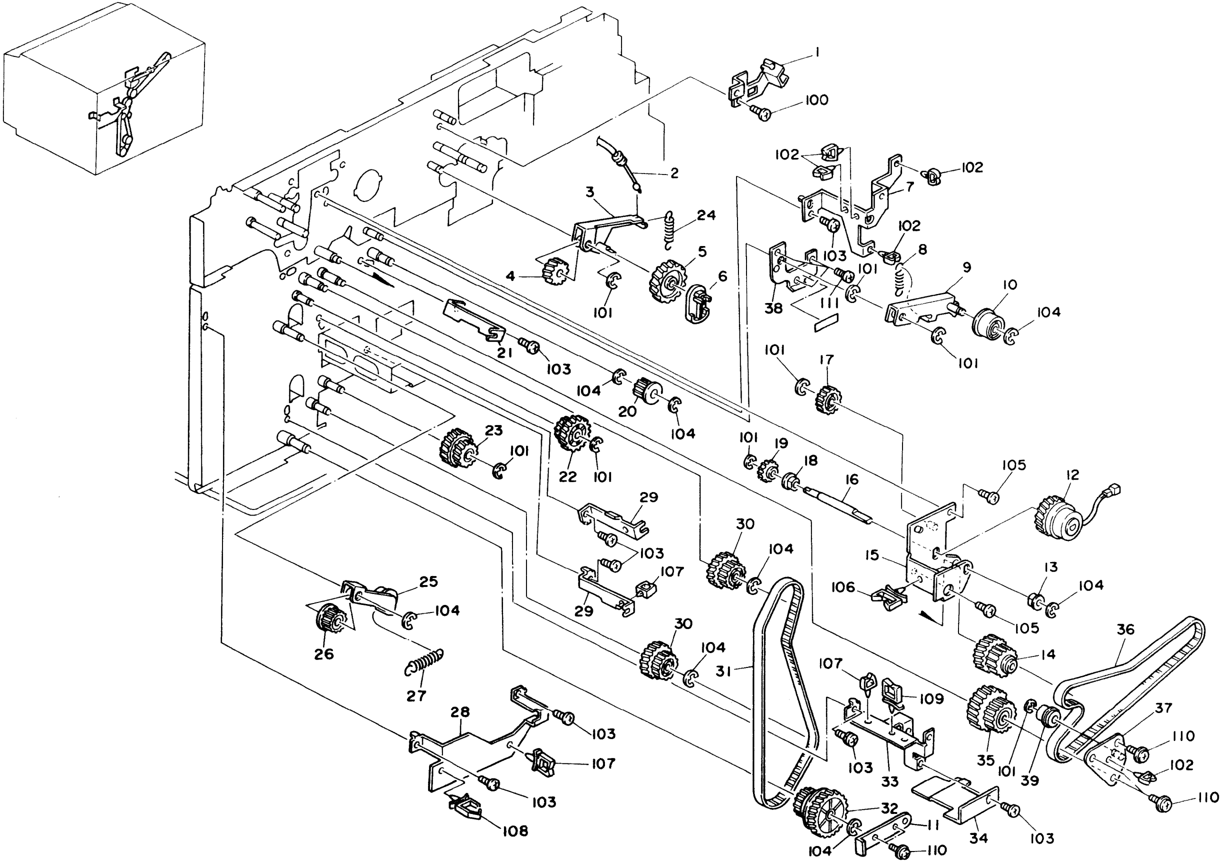
1
102
2
101
5
103
104
4
105
6
3
102
7
15
102
11
10
13
102
102
102
16
17
19
102
20
12
102
102
11
102
8
14
106
107
106
26
108
9
102
108
109
10
110
18
23
107
110
109
25
109
109
27
102
100
24
109
21
22

34. DRIVE SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 1191	Drum Shaft	1
2	AB01 3339	Gear - 80Z	1
3	AB03 0273	Timing Pulley - 20Z	1
4	AX06 0047	Brushless Motor - DC24V 61W	1
5	AA16 1072	Cushion - 5x12x6	4
6	AB03 3047	Timing Pulley - 25/40Z	1
7	GA04 3013	Timing Belt - 408x10x3	1
8	AA04 3212	Timing Belt - B60S3M543	1
9	AA08 4031	Bearing Case	1
10	5442 1111	Spring - Main Drive Tightener	3
11	A069 1106	Belt Tightener - Main Drive	3
12	A069 1108	Support Bracket - Fusing Drive	1
13	A069 1107	Belt Tightener - Paper Feed	1
14	A069 1136	Support Bracket - Main Drive	1
15	AA06 6132	Tension Spring	1
16	AB01 1109	Gear - 17Z	1
17	A069 1111	Fusing Drive Bushing	1
18	A069 5830	Exhaust Blower Duct	1
19	AA14 5139	Pulley Shaft - Fusing Drive	1
20	AB01 7192	Timing Pulley - 30Z	1
21	AA01 0062	Ozone Filter	1
22	AX64 0027	Transfer Fan Motor - DC 4.8W	1
23	A069 1102	Clutch Case - Development Drive	1
24	AB03 0274	Drum Pulley - 80Z	1
25	AX20 0058	Magnetic Clutch - Development Drive	1
26	AA04 3118	Timing Belt - 8x537	1
27	5205 2866	Magnetic Clutch Collar	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0434 0352W	Pan Head Self - Tapping Screw - M4x35	
101	0725 0170E	Retaining Ring C - M17	
102	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
103	0707 4060B	Bushing - 4x5	
104	0951 4010W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x10	
105	0575 0060E	Hexagon Headless Set Screw - M5x6	
106	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
107	0740 3008	Ball Bearing	
108	0740 3017	Ball Bearing - M17	
109	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
110	0574 0050E	Hexagon Headless Set Screw - M4x5	

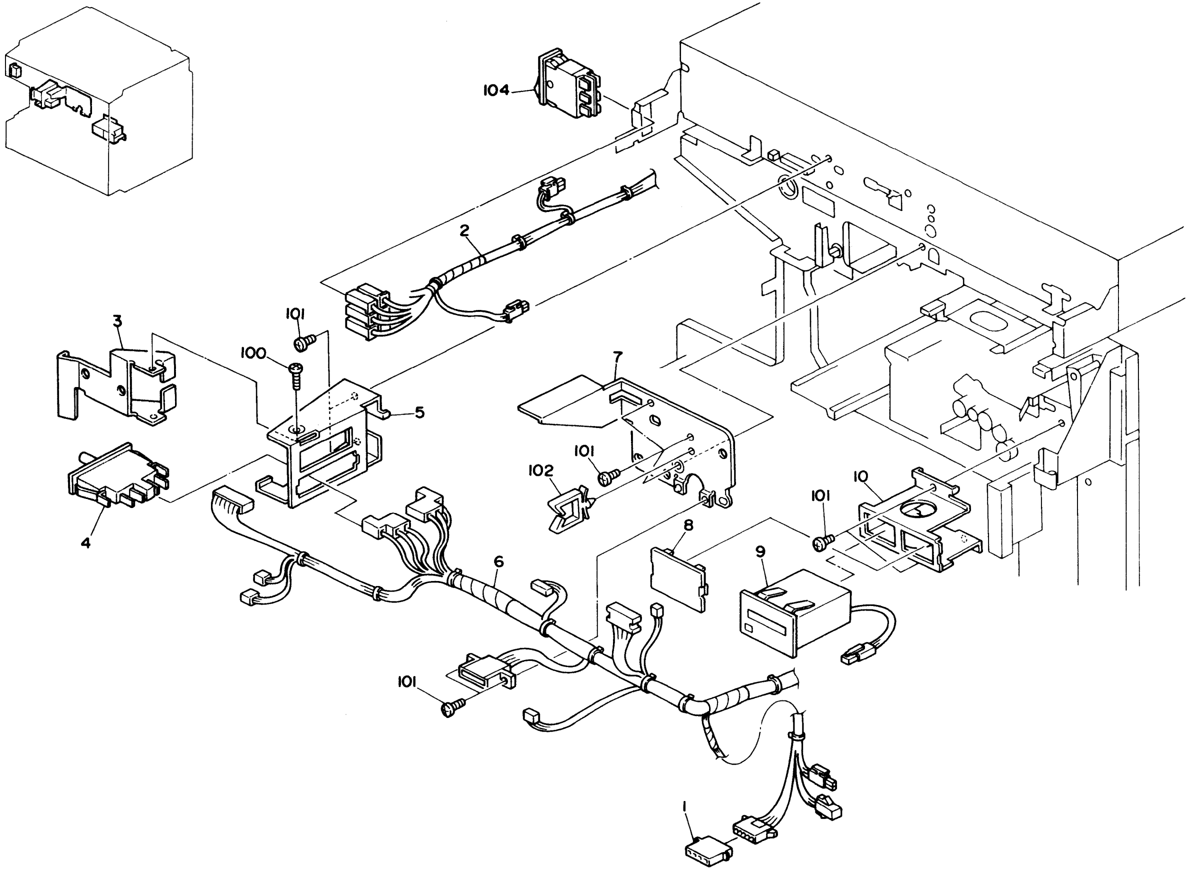
35. DRIVE SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)


1
100
2
102
102
7
3
24
102
8
103
5
4
6
101
9
101
10
38
111
104
101
21
103
101
17
104
20
104
23
101
22
101
101
19
18
105
12
16
29
30
104
103
107
15
13
104
106
29
25
104
26
30
104
105
14
36
27
31
107
109
37
28
103
110
35
101
39
102
107
103
33
103
110
32
11
108
34
103
104
110

35. DRIVE SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 1197	Jiont Bracket - Fusing Drive	1
2	AA05 1014	Release Wire	1
3	A069 1109	Fusing Drive Bracket	1
4	AB01 3561	Gear - 18Z	1
5	AB01 3344	Gear - 30Z	1
6	A069 1116	Positioning Plate - Fusing Drive	1
7	A069 5815	Board Angle	1
8	5442 1111	Spring - Main Drive Tightener	1
9	A069 1122	Belt Tightener - Paper Feed	1
10	AB03 0276	Tightner Pulley	1
11	A326 1088	Gear Fixing Bracket	1
12	AX21 0022	Magnetic Clutch - Toner Supply	1
13	5053 0223	Bushing - 8mm	1
14	AB01 7193	Gear/Pulley - 27/24Z	1
15	A085 1114	Toner Supply Clutch Bracket	1
16	AA14 5140	Shaft - Toner Supply Clutch	1
17	AB01 3140	Gear - 17T	1
18	5053 0447	Bushing - 6mm	1
19	AB01 3139	Gear - 19T	1
20	AB03 0273	Timing Pulley - 20Z	1
21	A069 2986	Lock Plate - Registration Clutch	1
22	AB01 7190	Gear - 24/20Z	1
23	AB01 7191	Gear - 20/16Z	1
24	5203 3151	Roller Cover Spring	1
25	A069 2989	Timing Belt Tightener	1
26	AB03 0273	Timing Pulley - 20Z	1
27	AA06 0359	Tension Spring	1
28	A069 5837	Link Cover Plate	1
29	A069 2985	Lock Plate - Feed Clutch	2
30	AB01 7188	Gear/Pulley - 24/24Z	2
31	AA04 3120	Timing Belt - 7x612	1
32	AB01 7262	Gear/Pulley - 35/30Z	1
33	A069 1299	Rear Cover Bracket - Right	1
34	A069 1090	Base Cover Plate	1
35	AB01 7202	Gear/Pulley - 35/32Z	1
36	AA04 3211	Timing Belt - B90S3M564	1
37	A069 1195	Support Bracket - Feed Drive	1
38	A069 1093	Frame Support Plate	1
39	AB03 0401	Tightner Pulley	1
100	0314 0040W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x4	
101	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
102	1105 0199	Clamp	
103	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
104	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
105	0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
106	1105 0200	Clamp	
107	1105 0229	Clamp	
108	1105 0262	Wire Saddle	
109	1105 0201	Harness Clamp	
110	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
111	0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	

36. ELECTRICAL SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)



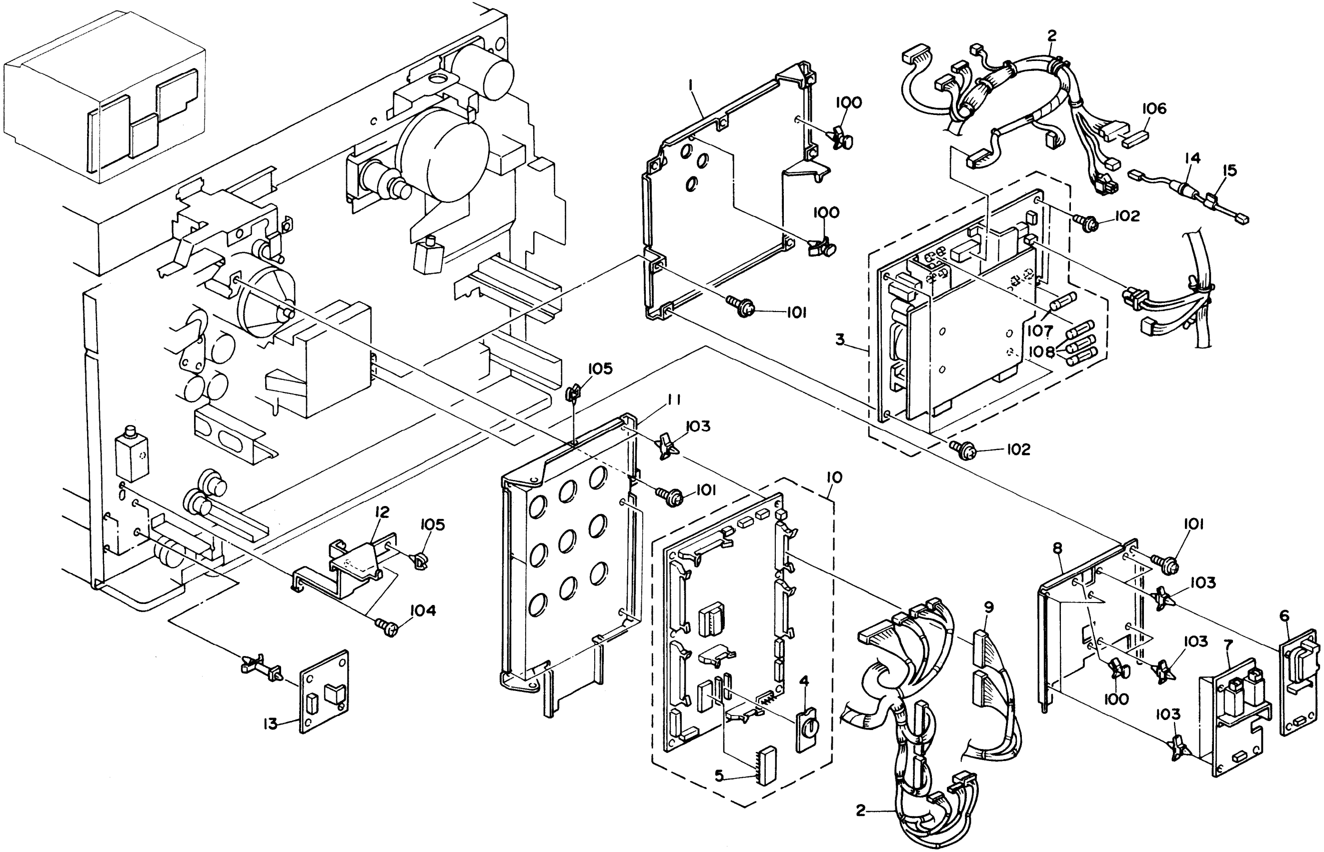
104
2
101
3
100
5
7
4
101
102
10
101
8
6
9
101
1

36. ELECTRICAL SECTION 1 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	5408 5160	Short Connector	1
2	A085 5623	AC Harness - 230V	1
2	A085 5621	AC Harness - 115V	1
3	A069 5803	Safety Switch Lever	1
4	AW50 0014	Push Switch - F87B-AJDL	2
5	A069 5802	Safety Switch Bracket	1
6	A086 5331	DC Main Harness - 230V (A088)	1
6	A088 5330	DC Main Harness - 115V (A088)	1
6	A085 5330	Dc Main Harness - 230V (A085/A087)	1
6	A087 5330	Dc Main Harness - 115V (A087)	1
7	A069 1073	Front Positioning Plate - Optics	1
8	A006 5828	Cover - Counter	1
9	5439 5246	Totalizer Ass’y -230V	1
9	5442 5385	Tatal Counter - 115V	1
10	A069 5831	Counter Bracket	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0314 0080W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x8	
101	0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	
102	1105 0199	Clamp	
103	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
104	1204 1545	Main Switch	

37. ELECTRICAL SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)



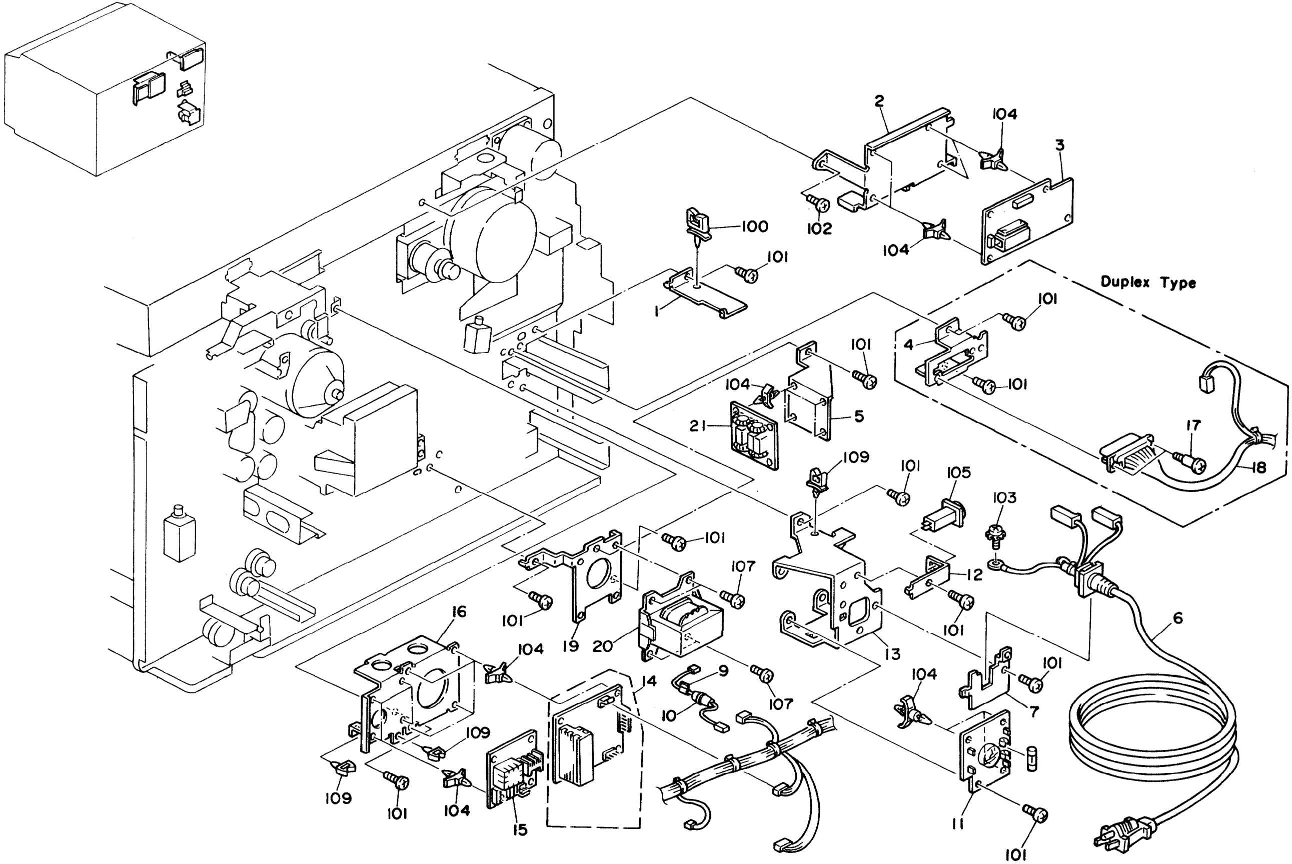
1
2
100
106
14
15
100
102
101
3
107
108
105
11
103
102
10
101
12
105
101
8
103
104
9
6
103
7
4
100
13
103
5
2

37. ELECTRICAL SECTION 2 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 5819	Bracket - DC Power Supply Board	1
2	A086 5331	Dc Main Harness - 230V (A088)	1
2	A088 5330	Dc Main Harness - 115V (A088)	1
2	A085 5330	Dc Main Harness - 230V (A085/A087)	1
2	A087 5330	Dc Main Harness - 115V (A087)	1
3	AZ24 0010	DC Power Supply Board - 230V	1
3	AZ24 0015	DC Power Supply Board - 115V	1
3	AZ24 0005	DC Power Supply Board - 110V	1
4	A069 5131	RAM Board	1
5	A085 5114	IC - HN27C101G-17	1
6	AZ31 0007	High Voltage Supply Board - D	1
7	AZ32 0060	High Voltage Supply Board - C TBG	1
8	A069 5824	Board Bracket - High Voltage	1
9	A074 5331	DC Harness - Paper Feed (A088)	1
9	A073 5331	DC Harness - Paper Feed (A087)	1
9	A069 5331	DC Harness - Paper Feed (A085)	1
10	A085 5111	Main Control Board	1
11	A069 5814	Main Control Board Bracket	1
12	A069 5816	Hinge - Main Control Board	1
13	A073 5181	LCT Interface Board (A087/A088)	1
14	A073 5350	Fuse Harness - 3.15A/125V	1
15	AA00 0123	Decal - Fuse	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	1105 0183	Spacer	
101	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
102	0960 4006W	Philips Flange Screw - M4x6	
103	1105 0159	PCB Stud	
104	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
105	1105 0199	Clamp	
106	1102 1919	Connector - 11P	
107	1107 0652	Fuse - 10A 250V (115V)	
107	1107 0460	Fuse - 220/240V (230V)	
108	1107 0392	Fuse - 6.3A	

38. ELECTRICAL SECTION 3 (A085/A087/A088)

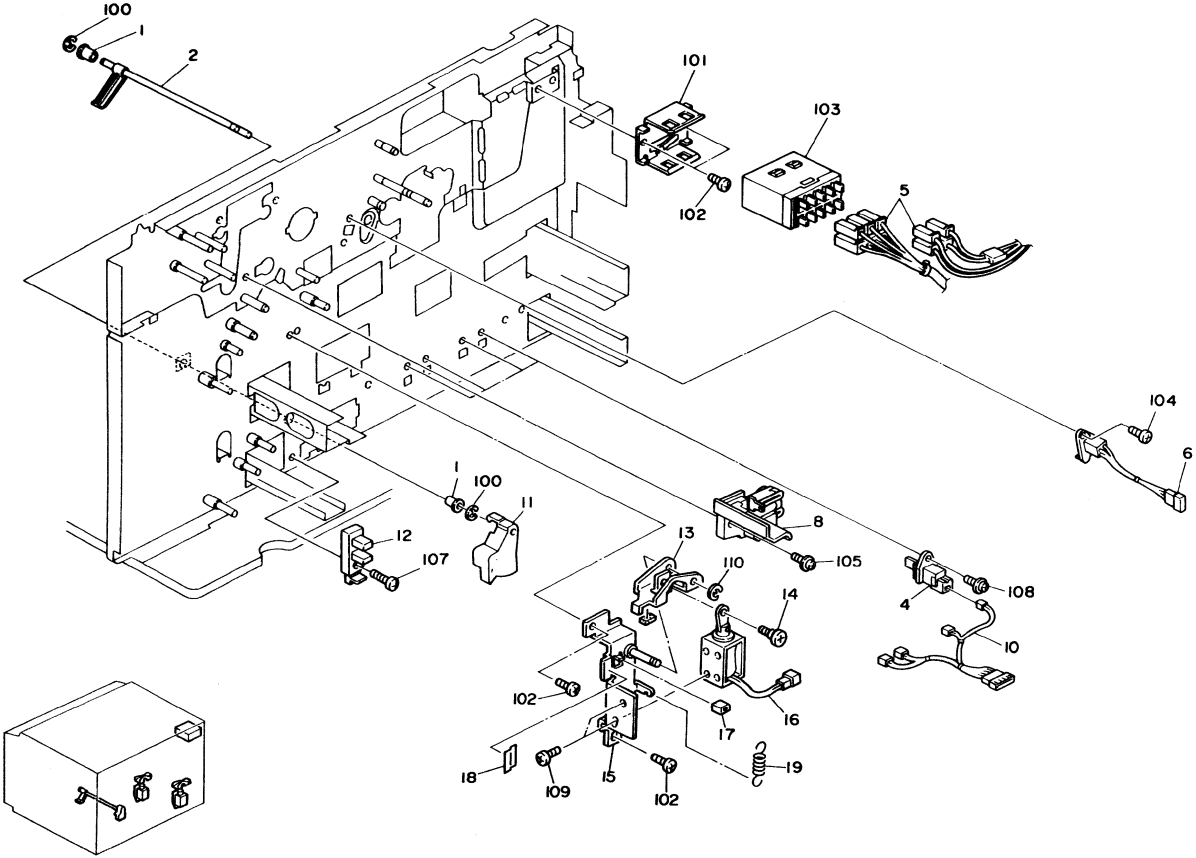

2
104
3
100
101
102
104
Duplex Type
1
101
4
101
101
104
5
21
109
101
105
103
101
107
12
6
17
18
16
104
19
20
101
13
101
101
14
9
10
107
104
7
109
109
101
104
15
11
101

38. ELECTRICAL SECTION 3 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A069 5821	Lower Hinge - DC Power Supply Board	1
2	A069 5836	Optics Board Bracket	1
3	A069 5161	Scanner Motor Control Board	1
4	A070 4865	Connector Bracket - Duplex	1
5	A069 5809	Bracket - Noize Filter Board (220/240V)	1
6	1150 0327	Power Supply Cord - 125V	1
6	1150 0019	Power Supply Cord - 220/240V	1
7	A069 5811	Power Cord Bracket - 110V	1
8	A069 5810	Noise Filter Bracket	1
9	AA00 0123	Decal - Fuse	1
10	A073 5350	Fuse Harness - 3.15A/125V	1
11	A085 5640	Noise Filter Board - 230V	1
11	A085 5540	Noise Filter Board - 115V	1
12	A085 5812	Circuit Breaker Bracket	1
13	A085 5810	Power Cord Bracket	1
14	AY03 0009	Main Motor Control Board	1
15	AZ50 0002	CFL Stabilizer - 115V	1
15	AZ50 0019	CFL Stabilizer - 230V	1
16	A069 5835	Board Bracket - Main Motor	1
17	AA14 3300	Stepped Screw - M3x4	1
18	A086 5331	DC Main Harness - 230V (A088)	1
18	A088 5330	Dc Main Harness - 115V (A087/A088)	1
18	A087 5330	Dc Main Harness - 115V (A087)	1
18	A085 5330	Dc Main Harness - 230V (A085)	1
19	A069 5808	Transfomer Bracket	1
20	5205 5405	Transfomer - 115V	1
20	AZ12 0018	Main Transfomer - 230V	1
21	A085 5648	Noise Filter	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	1105 0197	Wire Saddle	
101	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
102	0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	
103	0950 5012M	Screw - M5x12	
104	1105 0159	PCB Stud	
105	1107 0472	Circuit Breaker - 250V/8A	
106	0952 3006W	Philips Screw - M3x6	
107	0315 0080W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M5x8	
108	1107 0486	Fuse 8A 250V	
109	1105 0199	Clamp	

39. ELECTRICAL SECTION 4 (A085/A087/A088)

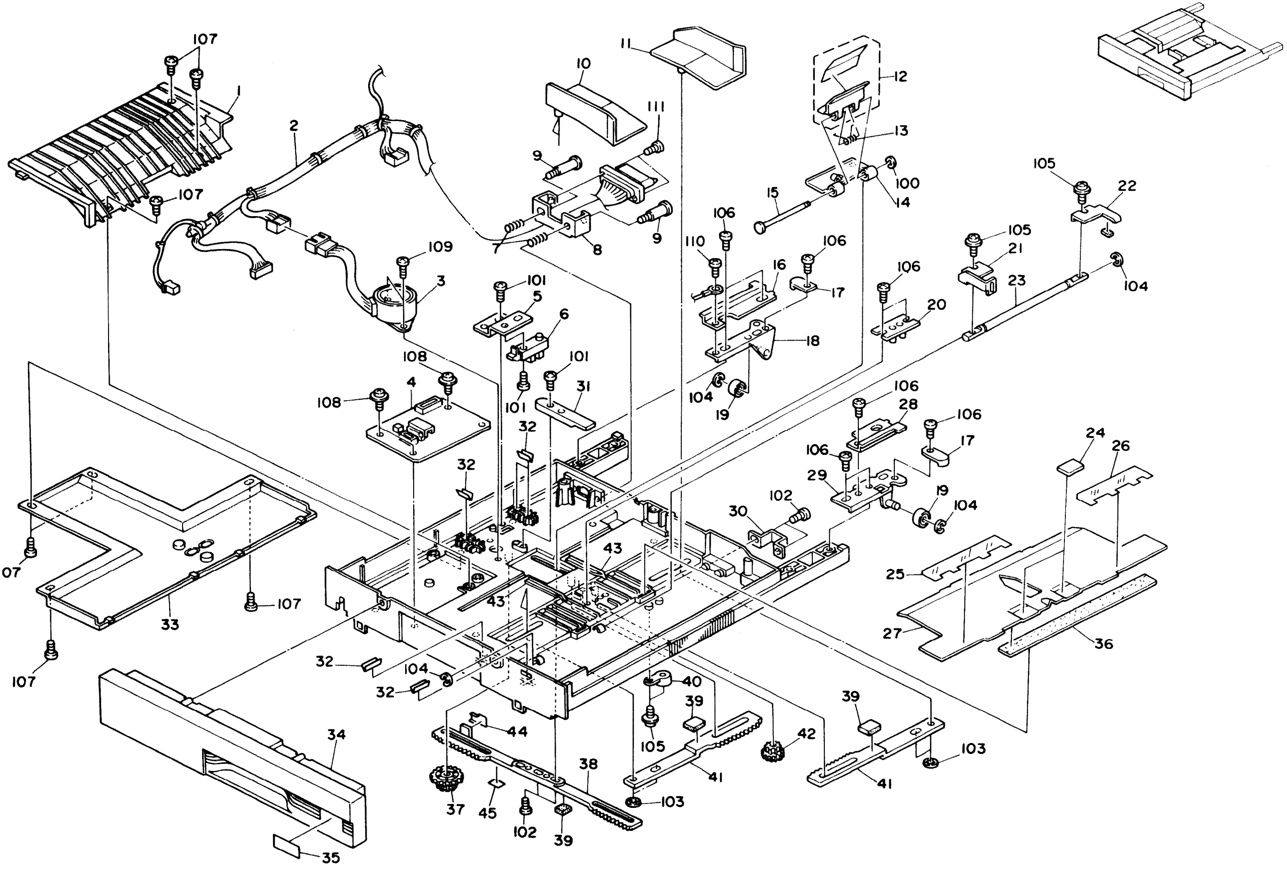

100
1
2
101
103
5
102
104
6
1
100
11
8
12
107
13
110
14
105
108
4
10
102
17
16
19
18
109
15
102

39. ELECTRICAL SECTION 4 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	5443 2668	Bushing	2
2	A069 2762	Paper End Feeler	1
4	AW50 0013	Push Switch	1
5	A085 5623	AC Harness - 230V	1
5	A085 5621	AC Harness - 115V	1
6	A069 5334	Extension Harness - Drum Unit	1
8	A069 1127	Black Bias Terminal	1
10	A069 5336	Paper Size Sensor Harness	1
11	A069 2770	Paper End Actuator	1
12	AW02 0042	Photointerruptor - EE - SX4009 - P12	1
13	A070 4928	Tray Lock Lever - Duplex	1
14	AA14 3062	Shoulder Screw - M4	1
15	A070 4923	Lock Solenoid Bracket	1
16	A069 2773	Tray Lock Solenoid	1
17	AA16 1016	Cushion - Fork Gate	1
18	A069 2832	Seal - 0.2x36x46	1
19	AA06 0436	Tray Lock Spring	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
100	0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	
101	1104 0224	Relay Bracket	
102	0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	
103	1208 1029	Power Relay	
104	0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
105	0960 4010W	Philips Flange Screw - M4x10	
106	0960 4006W	Philips Flange Screw - M4x6	
107	0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	
108	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
109	0313 0040W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x4	
110	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	

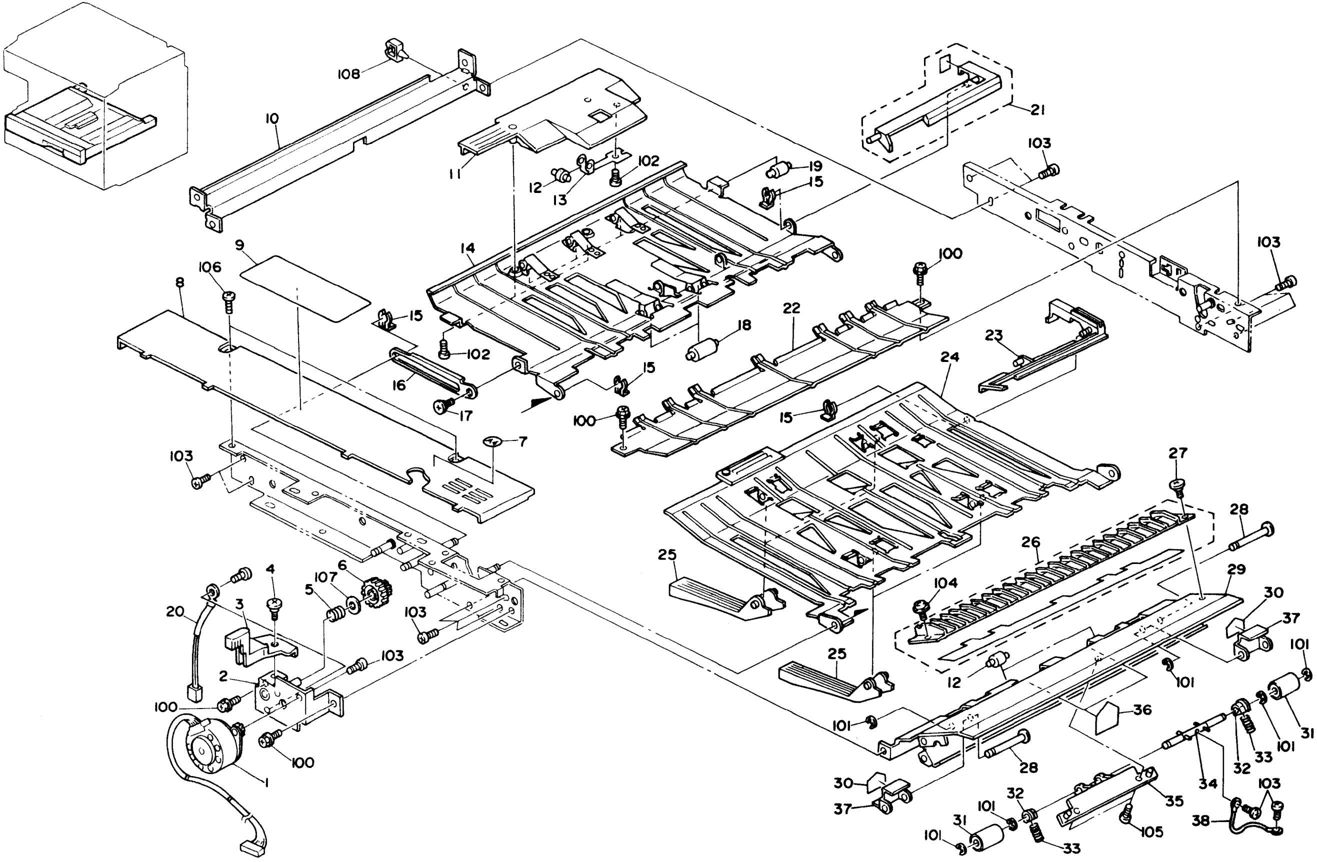
40. DUPLEX UNIT 1 (A088)


107
1
107
2
11
10
111
9
12
13
100
14
15
7
8
9
105
22
106
110
106
16
17
105
21
104
109
3
101
5
6
106
20
23
18
108
4
108
101
31
101
104
19
106
28
106
17
32
32
106
29
19
104
24
26
30
102
107
43
107
33
43
25
27
36
107
32
104
40
32
39
44
34
105
39
42
103
38
41
41
37
45
102
39
103
35

40. DUPLEX UNIT 1 (A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	A334 4504	Duplex Tray Unit - A4	1
*	A334 4503	Duplex Tray Unit - LT	1
1	A334 4625	Duplex Left Cover	1
2	A334 5330	Main Harness - Duplex	1
3	A334 5279	Jogger Motor - DC24V	1
4	A334 5166	Duplex Control Board	1
5	A491 4660	Jog Sensor Bracket	1
6	A030 5383	Photointerrupter	1
7	AA06 3163	Connector Spring	2
8	A334 4860	Connector Bracket	1
9	AA14 3120	Stepped Screw - M3x3	2
10	AF01 6026	Front Jog Fence	1
11	AF01 6027	Rear Jog Fence	1
12	A334 4652	Jogger End Fence - Upper	1
13	AA06 6094	End Fence Spring	1
14	A334 4651	Jogger End Fence - Lower	1
15	AA14 8252	End Fence Shaft	1
16	A070 4885	Left Stopper - Duplex Tray	1
17	A334 4877	Rail Guide	2
18	A334 4875	Guide Bracket - Left Rail	1
19	A069 2704	Guide Roller - 6x12x7.5	2
20	A491 4650	Jog Registration Plate	1
21	A491 4690	Bottom Plate Hook	1
22	A334 4694	Pressure Plate	1
23	AA14 0291	Bottom Plate Shaft	1
24	AF01 3003	Bottom Plate Pad - Duplex	1
25	A334 4687	Front Guide Mylar	1
26	A334 4688	Rear Guide Mylar	1
27	AF01 1015	Duplex Bottom Plate	1
28	A070 4886	Right Stopper - Duplex Tray	1
29	A334 4880	Guide Bracket - Right Rail	1
30	A334 4890	Tray Positioning Bracket	1
31	A334 4655	End Fence Guide	1
32	A491 4890	Harness Clamp Plate	5
33	A491 4630	Bottom Cover	1
34	A069 1353	Front Cover - Upper	1
35	AA00 1197	Decal - Duplex Tray Removal	1
36	A491 4686	Cushion - Tray Bottom Plate	1
37	AB01 7164	Gear - 21Z/64Z	1
38	A491 4645	End Fence Rack	1
39	A491 4647	Cushion - Side Fence Rack	3
40	A334 4870	Tray Lock Guide	1
41	A491 4640	Side Fence Rack	2
42	AB01 7165	Gear - 16Z/22Z	1
43	A334 4657	Paper Guide	2
44	A334 4666	Mylar Seal - 0.2x9x16	1
45	A334 4663	Mylar Seal - 0.1x8.3x13	1
100	0720 0025E	Retaining Ring - M2.5	
101	0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	
102	0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	
103	0805 0073	Retaining Ring - M5	
104	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
105	0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	
106	0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
107	0353 0050F	Tapping Screw - M3x5	
108	0951 3005W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x5	
109	0413 0062W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	
110	0313 0030B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x3	
111	0313 0040W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x4	

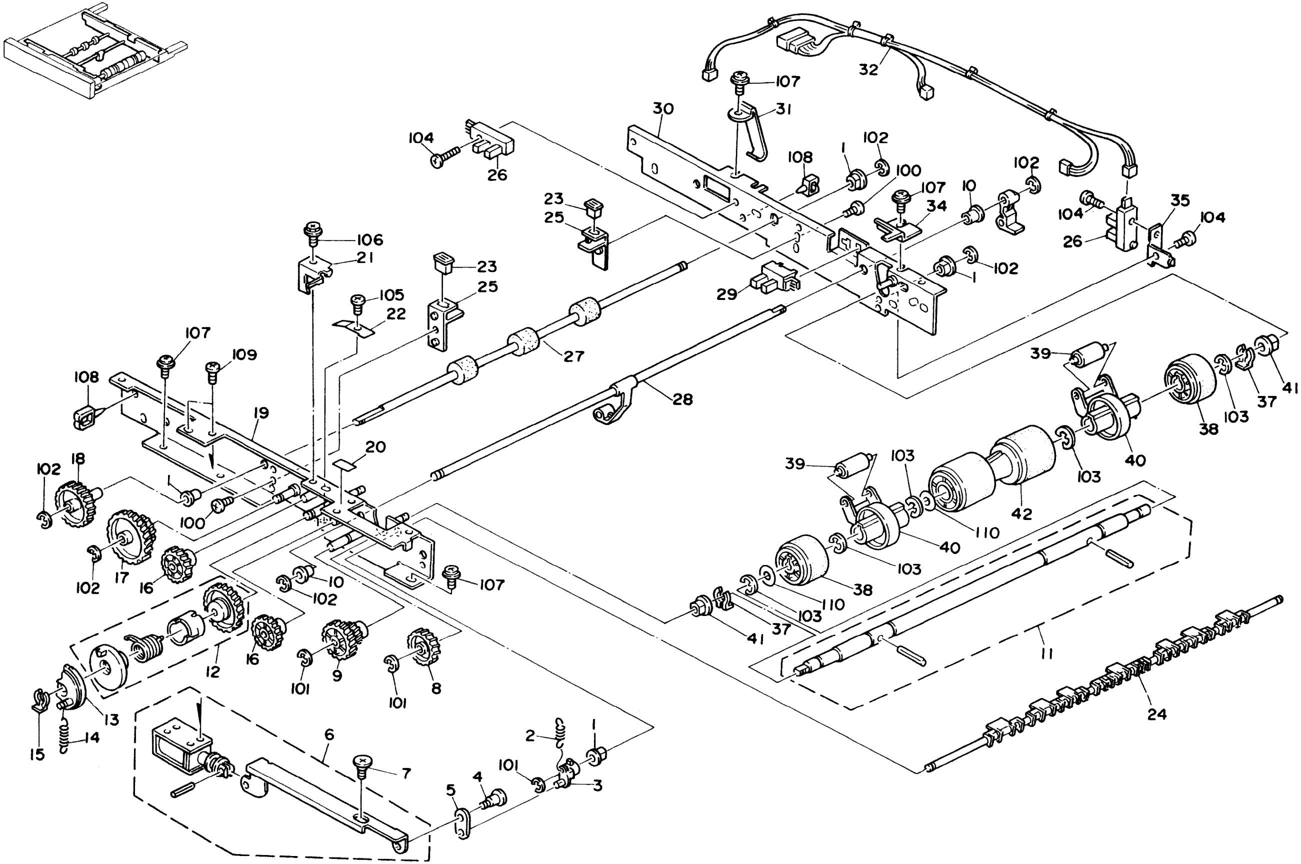
41. DUPLEX UNIT 2 (A088)


108
10
11
12
13
102
19
15
21
103
14
9
106
8
100
103
15
22
18
102
23
24
16
17
15
100
15
7
103
27
28
25
26
29
4
6
107
5
20
3
103
104
30
37
101
103
2
25
12
101
100
36
101
31
100
28
33
101
1
30
32
34
103
37
32
35
101
31
101
105
38
33

41. DUPLEX UNIT 2 (A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A334 5278	Duplex Feed Motor - DC24V	1
2	A334 4700	Feed Motor Bracket	1
3	A334 4865	Release Lever	1
4	5419 5714	Stepped Screw - M4	1
5	AA06 3170	Drive Change Spring	1
6	AB01 7183	Gear - 12/45Z	1
7	AA00 0010	Decal - A4	1
8	A334 4620	Duplex Upper Cover	1
9	A073 4912	Decal - Duplex Misfeed Removal	1
10	A334 4720	Duplex Stay	1
11	AG05 1078	Release Lever - Upper Guide	1
12	AF02 2047	Driven Roller	3
13	A334 4740	Spring Plate	1
14	A334 4730	Upper Guide Plate	1
15	5206 2686	Snap Ring	4
16	A491 4740	Guide Plate Link	1
17	5447 2768	Stepped Screw - M3	1
18	AF02 2060	Driven Roller	2
19	AF02 2043	Small Driven Roller	3
20	AW10 0014	Thermistor - 103GT	1
21	A334 4690	Turn Gate Feeler	1
22	A334 4755	Guide Plate	1
23	AA11 1019	Paper Entrance Feeler	1
24	A334 4750	Lower Guide Plate	1
25	A334 4753	Paper Flatenner	4
26	A334 4790	Turn Guide Plate	1
27	AA14 3307	Stepped Screw - M3x4	1
28	AA14 5119	Jog Plate Shaft	2
29	A334 4765	Guide Plate - Paper Feed	1
30	A334 4785	Mylar Seal - 0.5x18x22.5	2
31	AF03 2017	Separation Roller	2
32	AA08 0128	Bushing - 6x9x8	2
33	AA06 3198	Separation Spring	2
34	A334 4813	Separation Roler Shaft	1
35	A334 4811	Separation Roller Holder	1
36	A334 4780	Mylar Seal - 0.5x22x24	2
37	A491 4787	Jog Plate	2
38	A334 5332	Grounding Harness	1
100	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
101	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
102	0413 0062W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	
103	0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	
104	0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	
105	0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
106	0353 0050F	Tapping Screw - M3x5	
107	0807 7081	Washer	
108	1105 0231	Clamp	

42. DUPLEX UNIT 3 (A088)



32
107
31
30
104
26
102
108
1
100
102
107
10
34
104
35
104
26
23
25
106
21
23
25
105
22
29
1
102
27
28
107
109
108
19
39
41
37
103
38
40
18
102
1
100
20
39
103
103
42
110
40
103
17
16
102
10
102
107
38
110
103
41
37
11
12
16
9
101
8
101
24
13
15
14
6
7
2
1
101
3
4
5

42. DUPLEX UNIT 3 (A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	AA08 0022	Bushing - 4x7x5mm	4
2	AA06 0310	Turn Gate Spring	1
3	A334 4726	Turn Gate Hook	1
4	AA14 3025	Stepped Screw - M3	1
5	A334 4727	Turn Gate Link	1
6	A334 4724	Turn Gate Solenoid	1
7	AA14 3358	Stepped Screw - M4x3	1
8	AB01 1101	Gear - 28Z	1
9	AB01 7182	Gear - 14/30Z	1
10	5443 2668	Bushing	2
11	A334 4822	Feed Roller Shaft	1
12	AB04 0013	Spring Clutch - Tray Bottom Plate	1
13	A334 4706	Disk - Bottom Plate Clutch	1
14	AA06 0257	Spring - Bottom Plate Clutch	1
15	5447 2681	Snap Ring	1
16	AB01 1103	Gear - 28Z	2
17	AB01 7181	Gear - 14/45Z	1
18	AB01 1102	Gear - 35Z	1
19	A334 4670	Front Side Plate	1
20	AA15 2204	Seal - 6x22	1
21	A334 4705	Stopper - Bottom Plate Clutch	1
22	A334 4672	Grounding Plate	1
23	A049 3371	Magnet	2
24	AF02 5015	Turn Gate	1
25	A334 4676	Guide Plate Stopper	2
26	5205 5250	LED Sensor Type S	2
27	AF02 0183	Transport Roller	1
28	A491 4715	Paper End Actuator	1
29	5216 5245	Photointerruptor - IL-G-3P-S3T2-E	1
30	A334 4680	Rear Side Plate	1
31	A334 4893	Grounding Plate	1
32	A334 5331	Sub Harness - Duplex	1
33	AA11 1011	Paper End Feeler	1
34	A334 4683	Stopper - Upper Guide Plate	1
35	A334 4710	Bracket - Paper End Sensor	1
36	A334 4823	Bushing - Feed Roller	1
37	5215 2621	Snap Ring - M6	2
38	AF02 0184	Duplex Stack Roller	2
39	AF02 2060	Driven Roller	2
40	A334 4825	Paper Support Guide	2
41	5304 1639	Bushing - 8mm	2
42	AF03 1009	Paper Feed Roller	1
100	0413 0062W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	
101	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
102	0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	
103	0720 0080E	Retaining Ring - M8	
104	0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	
105	0313 0030B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x3	
106	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
107	0951 4006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	
108	1105 0231	Clamp	
109	0313 0040W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x4	
110	0807 7046	Washer - 10.5x20x0.2mm	

43. MAIN CONTROL BOARD (A085/A087/A088)

CAPACITOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C101	157
C102	159
C103	158
C106	162
C107	162
C108	163
C110	163
C111	163
C112	163
C113	163

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C114	163
C115	162
C116	161
C117	160
C118	163
C119	163
C120	163
C121	162
C122	160
C123	160

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C124	160
C125	160
C126	160
C127	160
C128	160
C129	163
C130	163
C131	163
C132	163
C133	162

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C134	163
C135	162
C136	163
C137	163
C138	163
C139	163
C140	163
C141	163
C142	163
C143	163

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C144	163
C145	163
C146	163
C147	163
C148	163
C149	163
C150	163
C151	162
C152	165
C153	163

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C154	163
C155	160
C156	163
C157	163
C159	163
C160	163
C161	165
C162	165
C163	162
C164	165

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C165	165

CONNECTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
CN101	113
CN102	107
CN103	109
CN104	117
CN105	116
CN106	105
CN108	106
CN109	115
CN110	118
CN111	111

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
CN112	110
CN113	108
CN114	112
CN115	114
CN116	102
CN503	103
CN504	104

DIODE

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
D101	123
D102	122
D103	122
D104	122
D105	122
D106	122
D107	122
D108	122
D109	122
D110	122

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
D111	124
D112	126
D113	126
D114	126
D115	126
D116	126
D117	126
D118	126
D119	125
D120	125

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
D121	125

FL

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
FL101	156
FL102	164
FL103	164

IC

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
IC101	144
IC103	128
IC104	129
IC105	130
IC106	130
IC107	130
IC108	146
IC110	139
IC111	129
IC112	148

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
IC113	131
IC114	130
IC115	129
IC116	137
IC117	142
IC118	143
IC119	153
IC120	130
IC121	135
IC122	138

43. MAIN CONTROL BOARD (A085/A087/A088)

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
IC123	134
IC124	130
IC125	134
IC126	129
IC127	151
IC128	152
IC129	147
IC130	133
IC131	136
IC132	2
(IC132)	119

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
IC133	145
IC134	132
IC135	141
IC136	150
IC137	140
IC138	131
IC139	129
IC140	131
IC141	149
IC142	149

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
IC143	149
IC145	148
IC146	1
(IC146)	120
IC147	136

OSC

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
OSC101	154
OSC102	154
OSC103	155

RESISTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R101	181
R102	181
R103	172
R104	172
R105	172
R106	172
R107	172
R108	172
R109	172
R110	172

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R111	181
R112	181
R113	177
R114	177
R115	177
R116	177
R117	181
R118	181
R119	181
R120	181

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R121	181
R122	181
R123	167
R124	185
R125	182
R126	167
R127	177
R128	177
R129	177
R130	177

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R131	177
R132	177
R133	168
R134	172
R135	172
R136	167
R137	177
R138	177
R139	177
R140	177

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R141	177
R142	177
R143	177
R144	177
R145	177
R146	177
R147	177
R148	168
R149	167
R150	173

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R151	183
R152	181
R153	167
R154	167
R155	167
R156	167
R157	167
R158	186
R159	169
R160	169

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R161	167
R162	169
R163	167
R164	169
R165	168
R166	168
R167	168
R168	168
R169	168
R170	168

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R171	168
R172	168
R173	168
R174	168
R176	177
R177	177
R178	177
R179	177
R180	177
R181	177

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R182	177
R183	177
R184	177
R185	177
R186	177
R187	177
R188	189
R189	168
R190	168
R191	177

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R192	177
R193	177
R194	177
R195	177
R196	177
R197	177
R198	168
R199	181
R200	178
R201	171

43. MAIN CONTROL BOARD (A085/A087/A088)

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R202	187
R203	187
R204	184
R205	177
R206	168
R207	168
R208	168
R209	168
R210	168
R211	168

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R212	168
R213	177
R214	177
R215	177
R216	170
R217	188
R218	172
R219	166
R220	167
R221	168

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R222	176
R223	176
R224	176
R225	176
R226	168
R227	168
R228	168
R229	180
R230	177
R231	168

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R232	168
R233	167
R234	167
R235	175
R236	167
R237	167
R238	167
R239	167
R240	167
R241	168

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R242	168
R243	168
R245	168
R246	168
R247	168
R248	168
R249	168
R250	168
R251	168
R252	168

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R253	177
R254	177
R255	177
R256	173
R259	181
R261	181
R264	181
R270	177
R271	177
R272	177

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R273	177
R274	177
R275	174
R276	174
R277	169
R278	168
R281	169
R282	179
R283	179

TEST POINT

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
TP101	101
TP102	101
TP103	101
TP104	101
TP105	101
TP108	101
TP109	101
TP110	101
TP113	101

TRANSISTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
Q103	121
Q104	121

Z

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
Z101	127

43. MAIN CONTROL BOARD (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	A085 5111	Main Control Board	1
1	A085 5114	IC - HN27C101G-17	1
2	A085 5118	IC - uPD78CP14G-36	1
3	A069 5131	RAM Board	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
101	1101 0328	Connector Pin Contact	
102	1102 2986	Connector - 14P	
103	1102 4205	CT Header- 6P	
104	1102 4209	CT Header- 10P	
105	1102 5003	Connector - 2P	
106	1102 5278	Connector - 6P	
107	1102 5279	Connector - 7P	
108	1102 5280	Connector - 8P	
109	1102 5281	Connector - 9P	
110	1102 5283	Connector - 11P	
111	1102 5375	Connector - 50P	
112	1102 5376	Connector - 30P	
113	1103 0441	Connector - 4P	
114	1103 3020	Connector - 20P	
115	1103 3022	Connector - 30P	
116	1103 3024	Connector	
117	1103 3025	Connector - 50P	
118	1103 3027	Connector - 64P	
119	1104 0339	IC Socket - 64P	
120	1104 0589	DIP Socket : 32P	
121	1400 0558	Transistor - 2SD780	
122	1401 0826	Diode - 1SS181	
123	1402 0688	Diode	
124	1402 0804	Diode - 1SS294	
125	1402 1037	Diode - U1ZB12	
126	1402 1122	Diode - MA159A	
127	1404 0163	Diode - Z2010	
128	1407 1600	IC - SN74LS244NS	
129	1407 2187	IC - SN74LS07NS	
130	1407 2231	IC - TD62308AF	
131	1407 2746	IC - CXD1095Q	
132	1407 2948	IC - TC7S04F	
133	1407 3152	IC - TC74HC238F	
134	1407 3202	IC - TC74HC00AF	
135	1407 3245	IC - TC74HC32AF	

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
136	1407 3258	IC - TC74HC139AF	
137	1407 3285	IC - TC74HC08AF	
138	1407 3286	IC - TC74HC04AF	
139	1407 3412	IC - TC74HC165AF	
140	1407 3692	IC - RF5C86	
141	1407 3693	IC - uPD70325GJ-8-5BG	
142	1407 3694	IC - SN74HC73NS	
143	1407 3695	IC - HD74HC93FP	
144	1407 3696	IC - TC74HC4050AF	
145	1408 0595	IC - NJM2904M	
146	1408 0598	IC - MB3773PF	
147	1408 0873	Transistor Array - MPA1600GS	
148	1408 0874	Transistor Array - M54587FP	
149	1408 0875	Transistor Array - TD62382AF	
150	1408 0877	IC - LM339NS	
151	1408 0878	IC - 9104S	
152	1408 0901	IC - NJM78M09FA	
153	1408 0921	IC - MB3863PF	
154	1503 0417	Far Oscillator - 15MHz	
155	1503 0484	Cristal Oscilator - SG-635P-7.5mhz	
156	1602 0707	EMI Filter - NFM52R10P206	
157	1604 1353	Capaciter - 47uF 10V	
158	1604 1728	Capacitor - 100uF 10V	
159	1604 1958	Capacitor - 100uF 50V	
160	1605 0192	Capacitor - 470pF 50V	
161	1605 0222	Capacitor - 0.033uF 50V	
162	1605 0636	Capaciter - 0.1uF	
163	1606 1139	Capaciter - 0.01uF ±20%	
164	1607 0551	Inductor - BLM32A07PB	
165	1610 0286	Capacitor - 100pF 50V ±10%	
166	1610 1162	Resistor - 82 Ω 1/4W ±5%	
167	1630 2102	Resistor - 1K Ω 1/8W ±5%	
168	1630 2103	Resistor - 10K Ω 1/8W	
169	1630 2104	Resistor - 100K Ω 1/8W ±5%	
170	1630 2105	Resistor - 1M Ω 1/8W	

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
171	1630 2152	Resistor - 1.5K Ω 1/8W ±5%	
172	1630 2161	Resistor - 160 Ω 1/8W ±5%	
173	1630 2181	Resistor - 180 Ω 1/8W ±5%	
174	1630 2221	Resistor - 220 Ω	
175	1630 2223	Resistor - 22K Ω 1/8W ±5%	
176	1630 2243	Resistor - 24K Ω 1/8W ±5%	
177	1630 2332	Resistor - 3.3K Ω 1/8W ±5%	
178	1630 2362	Resistor - 3.6K Ω 1/8W ±5%	
179	1630 2390	Resistor - 39 Ω 1/8W	
180	1630 2394	Resistor - 390K Ω 1/8W ±5%	
181	1630 2472	Resistor - 4.7K Ω 1/8W ±5%	
182	1630 2511	Resistor - 510 Ω 1/8W	
183	1630 2561	Resistor - 560 Ω ±5% 1/8W	
184	1630 2824	Resistor - 820K Ω 1/8W ±5%	
185	1632 0000	Resistor - 0 Ω 1/8W	
186	1632 1502	Resistor - 15K Ω 1/8W ±1%	
187	1632 4871	Resistor - 4.87K Ω 1/8W ±1%	
188	1632 5231	Resistor - 5.23k Ω ±1%	
189	1632 6191	Resistor - 6.19K Ω 1/8W ±1%	

44. MEMORY BOARD (A085/A087/A088)

BATERY

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
BAT601	

CONNECTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
CN601	101

IC

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
IC601	107

RESISTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R601	111
R602	110
R603	110
R604	110
R605	109
R606	109

TRANSISTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
Q601	103
Q602	103
Q603	104

CAPACITOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C601	108
C602	108
C603	108

DIODE

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
D601	105

ZENER DIODE

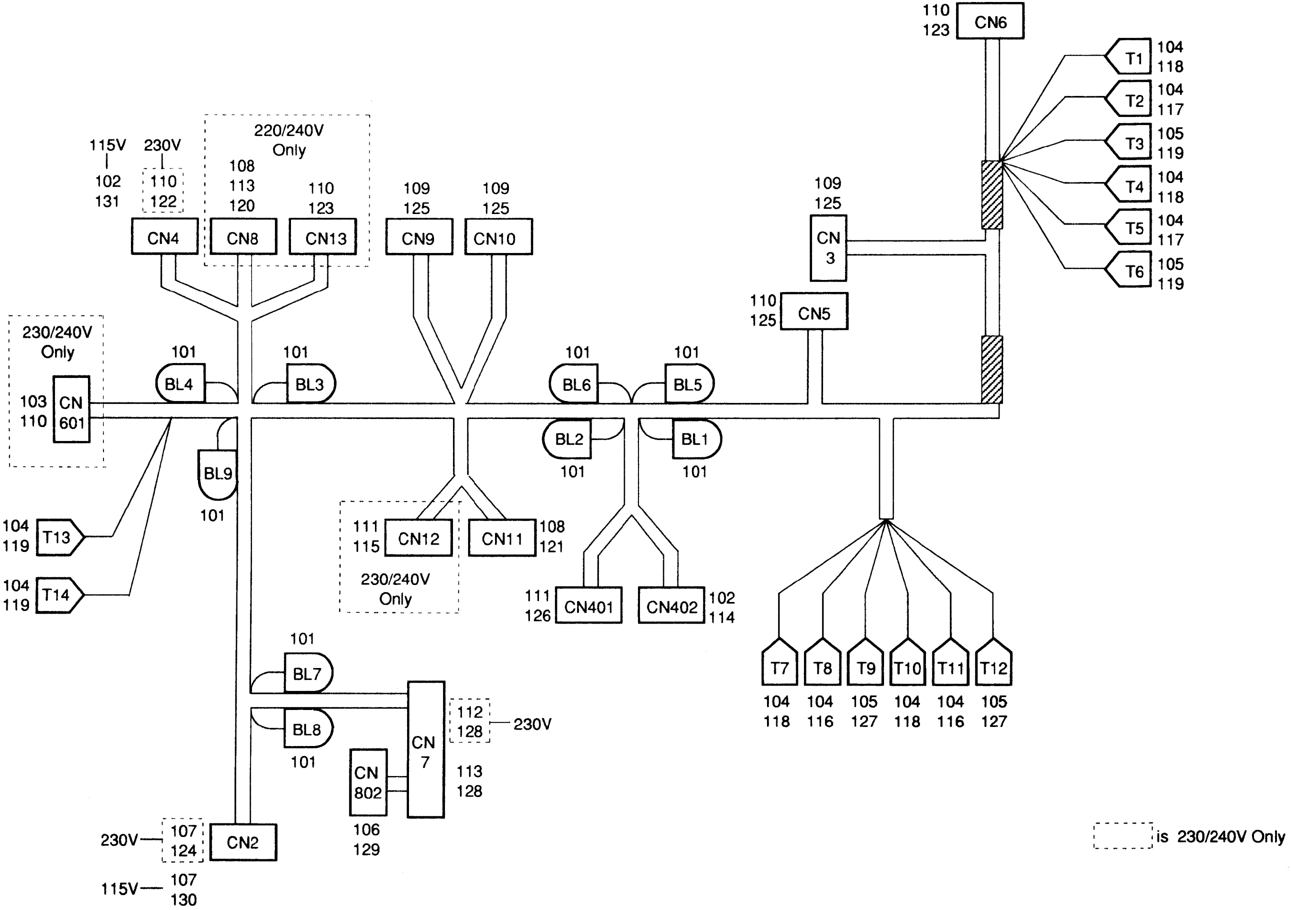
SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
ZD601	106

44. MEMORY BOARD (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	A069 5131	RAM Board	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
101	1102 2979	Connector - 14P	
103	1400 0382	Transistor - 2SA1037KR	
104	1400 0384	Transistor - 2SC2412KR	
105	1402 0476	Diode - 1SS184	
106	1402 0682	Zener Diode - RD3.6M	
107	1407 2797	IC - TC5564AFL-15	
108	1606 1454	Capacitor - 0.01uF 25V	
109	1630 2103	Resistor - 10K Ω 1/8W	
110	1630 2152	Resistor - 1.5K Ω 1/8W ±5%	
111	1630 2472	Resistor - 4.7K Ω 1/8W ±5%	

45. AC HARNESS (A085/A087/A088)



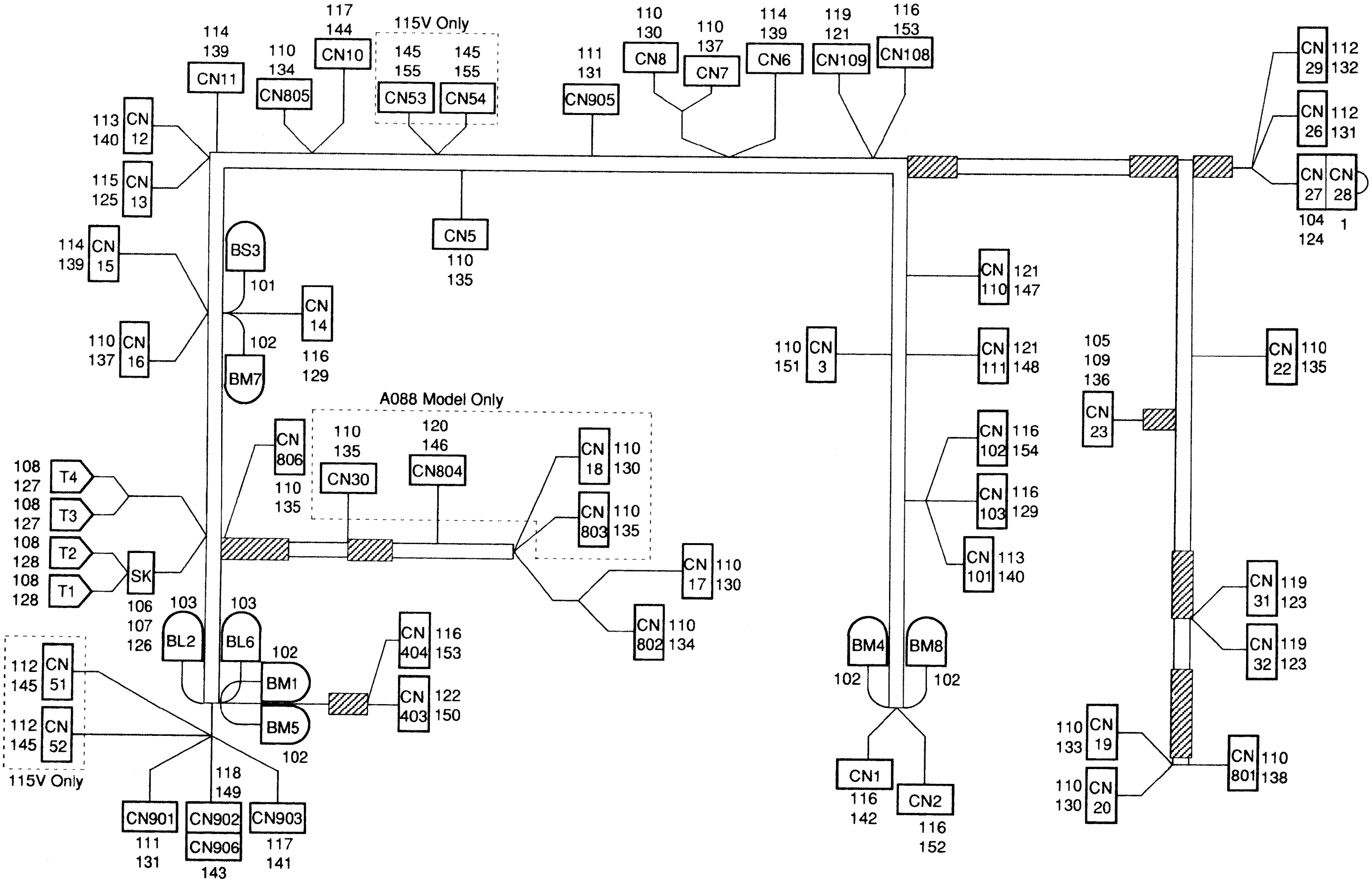
CN6
110
123
T1
104
118
T2
104
117
T3
105
119
T4
104
118
T5
104
117
T6
105
119
115V
102
131
230V
110
122
220/240V
Only
108
113
120
110
123
CN4
CN8
CN13
109
125
CN9
109
125
CN10
109
125
CN
3
110
125
CN5
230/240V
Only
103
110
CN
601
101
BL4
101
BL3
101
BL6
101
BL5
BL2
101
BL1
101
BL9
101
T13
104
119
T14
104
119
111
115
CN12
CN11
108
121
230/240V
Only
111
126
CN401
CN402
102
114
T7
104
118
T8
104
116
T9
105
127
T10
104
118
T11
104
116
T12
105
127
101
BL7
BL8
101
CN
7
112
128
230V
113
128
CN
802
106
129
230V
107
124
CN2
115V
107
130
is 230/240V Only

45. AC HARNESS (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	A085 5623	AC Harness - 230V	1
*	A085 5621	AC Harness - 115V	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
101	1100 0853	Closed Terminal	
102	1100 0916	Connector - 2P	
103	1102 1551	Connector - 2P	
104	1100 1171	Fastening Receptacle	
105	1100 1172	Fastening Receptacle	
106	1100 1205	Terminal	
107	1100 1238	Pin - Mate-N-Lock	
108	1100 1239	Pin - Mate-N-Lock	
109	1100 1240	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	
110	1100 1241	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	
111	1100 1247	Terminal	
112	1100 1339	Pin Contact	
113	1100 1344	Pin Contact	
114	1102 0983	Connector - 2P	
115	1102 1878	Connector - 3P	
116	1102 1401	Receptacle Housing - 1P	
117	1102 1402	Receptacle Housing - 1P	
118	1102 1403	Receptacle Housing	
119	1102 1404	Connector - 1P	
120	1102 1507	Connector - 2P	
121	1102 1508	Connector - 3P	
122	1102 1514	Connector - 1P	
123	1102 1515	Connector - 2P	
124	1102 1524	Connector - 2P	
125	1102 1532	Connector - 2P	
126	1102 1815	Connector - 3P	
127	1102 3203	Contact	
128	1102 5187	Connector - 14P	
129	1102 5262	Plug Housing - 5P	
130	1102 1547	Connector - 2P (Blue)	
131	1102 0782	Connector - 4P	

46. DC HARNESS TYPE 2 (A085/A087/A088)



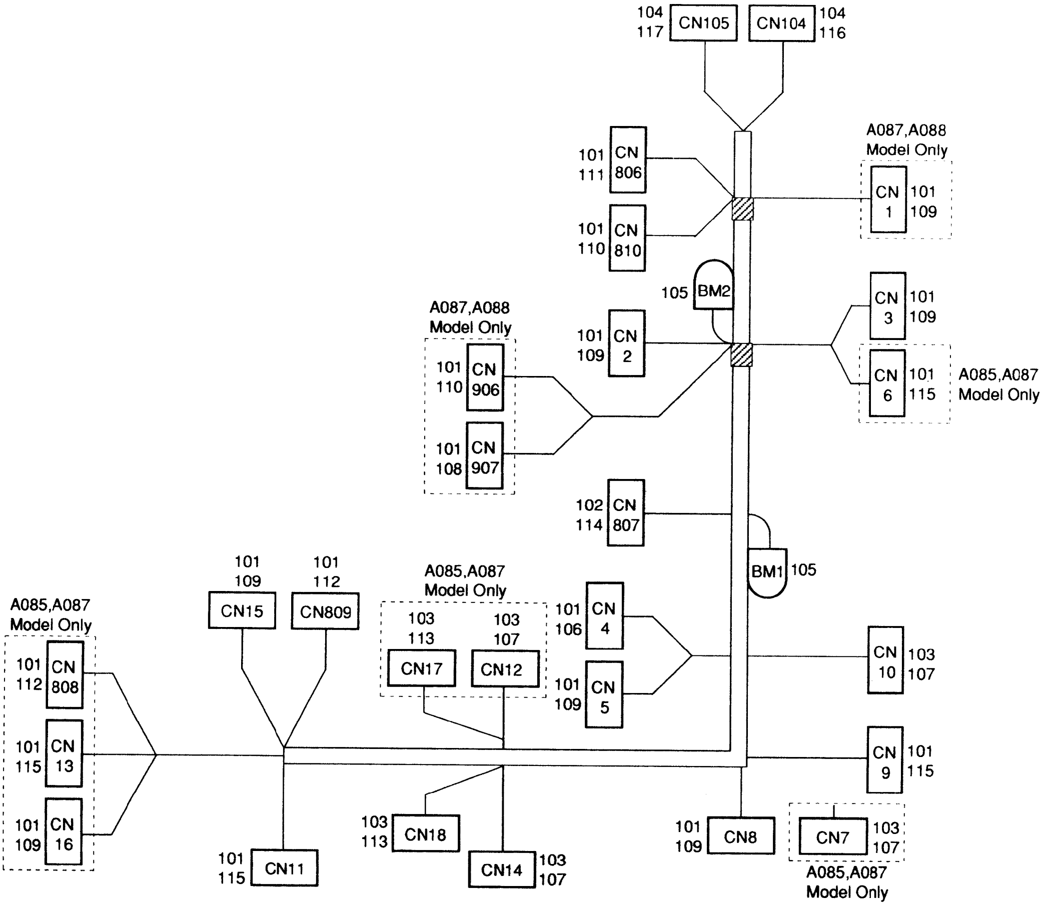
114 139 CN11
110 134 CN805
117 144 CN10
115V Only
145 155 CN53
145 155 CN54
111 131 CN905
110 130 CN8
110 137 CN7
114 139 CN6
119 121 CN109
116 153 CN108
CN 29 112 132
CN 26 112 131
CN 27 CN 28
104 124
1
113 140 CN 12
115 125 CN 13
114 139 CN 15
110 137 CN 16
BS3 101
CN 14 116 129
102 BM7
CN5 110 135
110 151 CN 3
CN 110 121 147
CN 111 121 148
105 109 136 CN 23
CN 22 110 135
A088 Model Only
CN 806 110 135
110 135 CN30
120 146 CN804
CN 18 110 130
CN 803 110 135
CN 102 116 154
CN 103 116 129
CN 101 113 140
108 127 T4
108 127 T3
108 128 T2
108 128 T1
SK 106 107 126
CN 17 110 130
CN 802 110 134
CN 31 119 123
CN 32 119 123
103 BL2
103 BL6
102 BM1
BM5 102
CN 404 116 153
CN 403 122 150
BM4 102
BM8 102
115V Only
112 145 CN 51
112 145 CN 52
CN901 111 131
118 149 CN902
CN906 143
CN903 117 141
CN1 116 142
CN2 116 152
110 133 CN 19
110 130 CN 20
CN 801 110 138

46. DC HARNESS TYPE 2 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	A086 5331	DC Main Harness - 230V (A088)	1
*	A088 5330	DC Main Harness - 115V (A088)	1
*	A087 5330	DC Main Harness - 115V (A085/A087)	1
*	A085 5330	DC Main Harness - 230V (A085/A087)	1
1	5408 5160	Short Connector	1
101	1100 0340	Connector - 1P	
102	1100 0341	Closed Terminal	
103	1100 0342	Closed Terminal	
104	1100 0844	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	
105	1100 1153	Terminal	
106	1100 1155	Contact	
107	1402 1035	Diode - S5688G	
108	1100 1172	Fastening Receptacle	
109	1100 1200	Terminal	
110	1100 1204	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	
111	1100 1239	Pin - Mate-N-Lock	
112	1100 1240	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	
113	1100 1247	Terminal	
114	1100 1249	Receptacle Terminal	
115	1103 0660	Connector - 16P	
115	1100 1259	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	
116	1100 1322	Contact	
117	1100 1327	Contact	
118	1100 1328	Contact	
119	1102 5620	Plug Housing - NSW - 01 - 3PH	

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
120	1100 1346	Pin Contact	
121	1100 1348	Pin Contact	
122	1100 1374	Terminal	
123	1100 1625	Receptacle - F187	
124	1102 0185	Connector - 4P	
125	1102 1089	Connector - 3P	
126	1102 1286	Connector - 2P	
127	1102 1402	Receptacle Housing - 1P	
128	1102 1404	Connector - 1P	
129	1102 5291	Connector - 9P	
130	1102 1426	Connector - 3P	
131	1102 1509	Connector - 4P	
132	1102 1515	Connector - 2P	
133	1102 1632	Connector - 4P	
134	1102 1634	Connector - 5P	
135	1102 1692	Connector - 2P	
136	1102 1714	Connector - 6P	
137	1102 1729	Connector - 6P	
138	1102 1747	Connector - 15P	
139	1102 1787	Connector - 3P	
140	1102 1831	Connector - 4P	
141	1102 1912	Connector - 4P	
142	1102 5290	Connector - 8P	
143	1102 1919	Connector - 11P	
144	1102 1940	Connector - 4P	
146	1102 3983	Connector - 24P	
147	1102 4293	Connector - 64P	
148	1102 4969	Connector - 50P	
149	1102 5250	Connector - 11P	
150	1102 5251	Receptacle Housing - 16P	
151	1102 5272	Connector - 2P	
152	1102 5287	Receptacle Housing - 5P	
153	1102 5288	Receptacle Housing - 6P	
154	1102 5289	Connector - 7P	
155	1100 1241	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	

47. DC HARNESS TYPE 4 (A085/A087/A088)

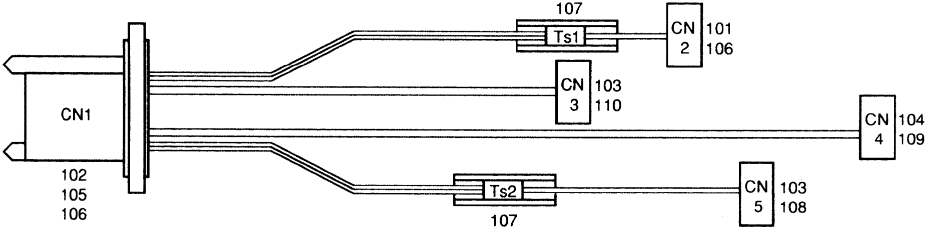

104 117 CN105
CN104 104 116
101 111 CN 806
101 110 CN 810
A087,A088 Model Only
CN 1 101 109
105 BM2
101 109 CN 2
CN 3 101 109
CN 6 101 115
A085,A087 Model Only
A087,A088 Model Only
101 110 CN 906
101 108 CN 907
102 114 CN 807
BM1 105
101 109 CN15
101 112 CN809
A085,A087 Model Only
103 113 CN17
103 107 CN12
101 106 CN 4
101 109 CN 5
CN 10 103 107
A085,A087 Model Only
101 112 CN 808
101 115 CN 13
101 109 CN 16
CN 9 101 115
101 115 CN11
103 113 CN18
CN14 103 107
101 109 CN8
CN7 103 107
A085,A087 Model Only

47. DC HARNESS TYPE 4 (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	A074 5331	DC Harness - Paper Feed (A088)	1
*	A073 5331	DC Harness - Paper Feed (A087)	1
*	A069 5331	DC Harness - Paper Feed (A085)	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
101	1100 1204	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	
102	1100 1205	Terminal	
103	1100 1249	Receptacle Terminal	
104	1100 1348	Pin Contact	
105	1100 1490	Pin Contact	
106	1102 1426	Connector - 3P	
107	1102 1620	Connector - 3P	
108	1102 1628	Connector - 9P	
109	1102 1692	Connector - 2P	
110	1102 1693	Connector - 7P	
111	1102 1729	Connector - 6P	
112	1102 1746	Connector - 8P	
113	1102 1787	Connector - 3P	
114	1102 5260	Plug Housing - 6P	
115	1102 5272	Connector - 2P	
116	1103 0657	Connector - 50P	
117	1103 0658	Connector - 40P	

48. FUSING UNIT HARNESS (A085/A087/A088)

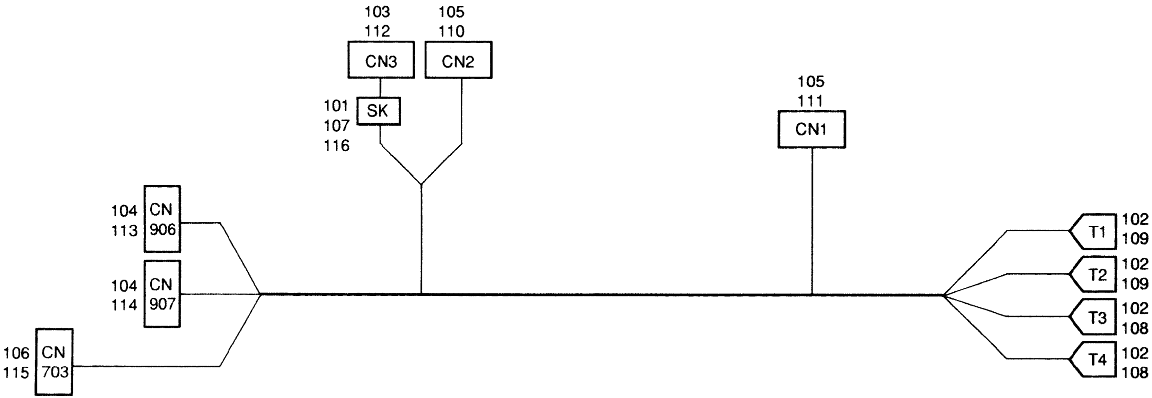

107
Ts1
CN 2
101
106
CN 3
103
110
CN1
102
105
106
CN 4
104
109
Ts2
107
CN 5
103
108

48. FUSING UNIT HARNESS (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	A085 5339	Fusing Unit Harness	

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
101	1100 0965	Pin - Mate-n-lock	
102	1102 5186	Connector - 14P	
103	1102 4124	Connecter - 1P	
104	1100 1249	Receptacle Terminal	
105	1100 1342	Terminal	
106	1100 1346	Pin Contact	
107	1100 1527	Contact	
108	1102 1006	Pin Housing - 1P	
109	1102 1620	Connector - 3P	
110	1102 1692	Connector - 2P	

49. LCT HARNESS (A087/A088)


103
112
CN3
105
110
CN2
101
107
116
SK
105
111
CN1
104
113
CN
906
104
114
CN
907
106
115
CN
703
T1
102
109
T2
102
109
T3
102
108
T4
102
108

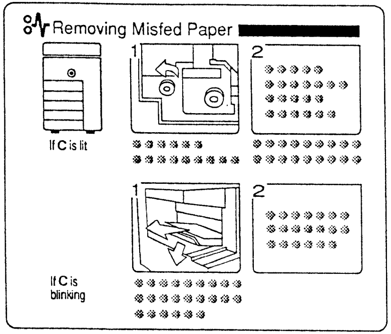
49. LCT HARNESS (A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
*	A335 5330	LCT Harness (A087/A088)	1

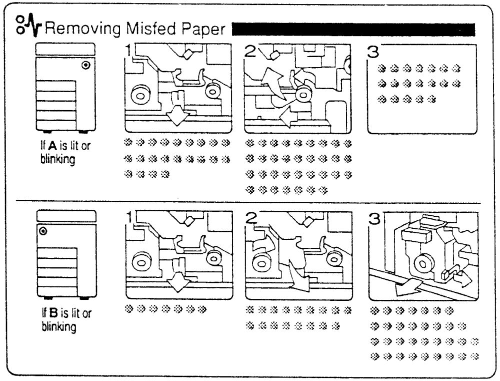
Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
101	1100 1155	Contact	
102	1100 1172	Fastening Receptacle	
103	1100 1204	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	
104	1100 1205	Terminal	
105	1100 1249	Receptacle Terminal	
106	1100 1322	Contact	
107	1102 1286	Connector - 2P	
108	1102 1402	Receptacle Housing - 1P	
109	1102 1404	Connector - 1P	
110	1102 1620	Connector - 3P	
111	1102 1621	Receptacle Housing - 3P	
112	1102 1692	Connector - 2P	
113	1102 5264	Plug Housing - 7P	
114	1102 5266	Plug Housing - 9P	
115	1102 5289	Connector - 7P	
116	1402 1055	Zener Diode - 1/2W 33V	

50. DECAL AND DOCUMENT (A085/A087/A088)

1


Removing Misfed Paper
1
2
If C is lit
1
2
If C is blinking

2


Removing Misfed Paper
1
2
3
If A is lit or blinking
1
2
3
If B is lit or blinking

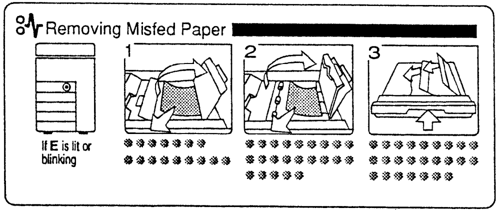
4

A2

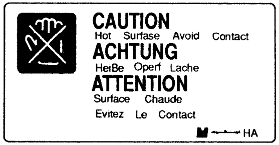
5

A4

3

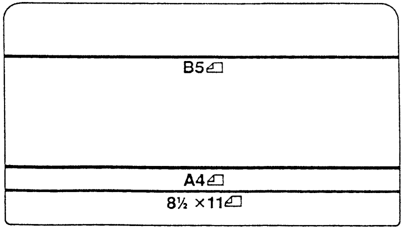

Removing Misfed Paper
1
2
3
If E is lit or blinking

6



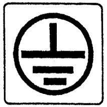
CAUTION
Hot Surfase Avoid Contact
ACHTUNG
HeiBe Operf Lache
ATTENTION
Surface Chaude
Evitez Le Contact

7

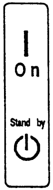


50. DECAL AND DOCUMENT (A085/A087/A088)

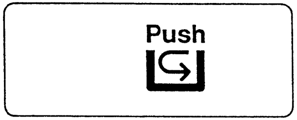
8



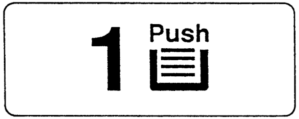
9


I
On
Stand by

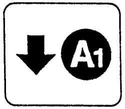
10



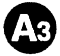
11



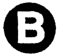
12



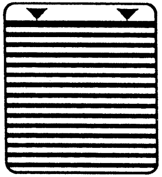
13



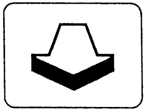
14



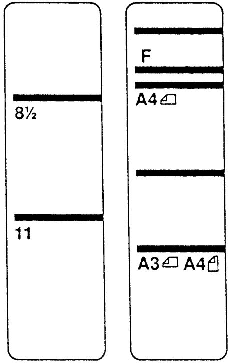
15



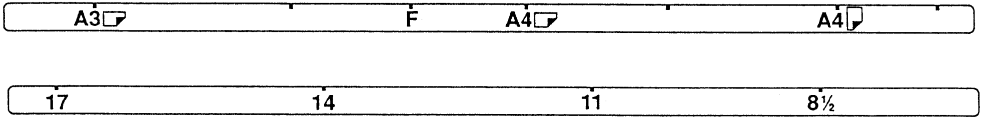
16



17

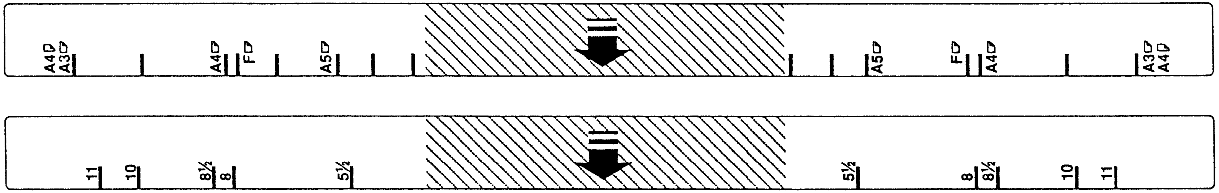

8½
11
F
A4
A3
A4

18

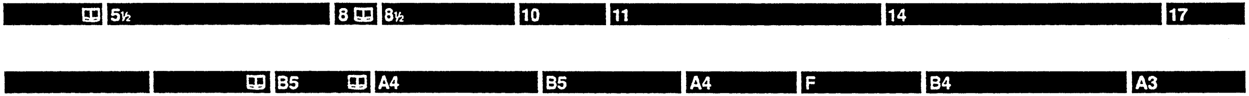

A3
F
A4
A4
17
14
11
8½

50. DECAL AND DOCUMENT (A085/A087/A088)

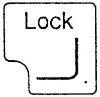
19


A4
A3
A4
F
A5
A5
F
A4
A3
A4
11
10
8½
8
5½
5½
8
8½
10
11

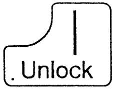
20


5½
8
8½
10
11
14
17
B5
A4
B5
A4
F
B4
A3

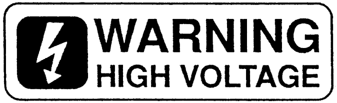
21



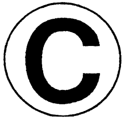
22



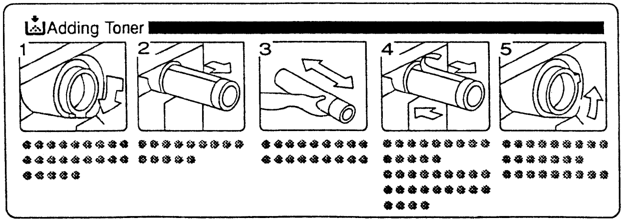
23


WARNING
HIGH VOLTAGE

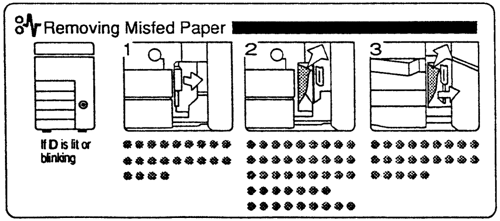
24



25

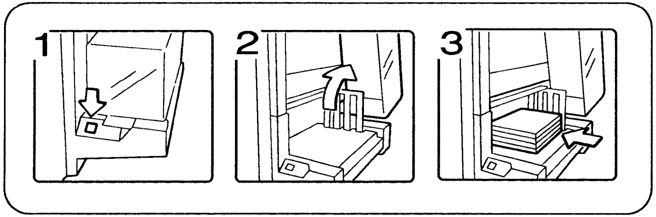

Adding Toner
1
2
3
4
5

26

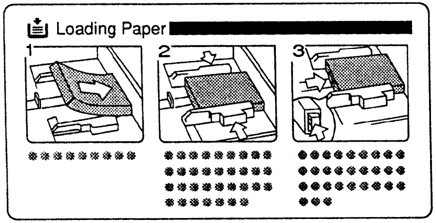

Removing Misfed Paper
If D is lit or blinking
1
2
3

50. DECAL AND DOCUMENT (A085/A087/A088)

28



27


Loading Paper
1
2
3

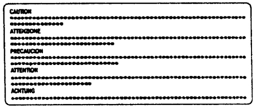
29

A

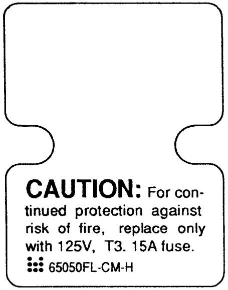
30

B

31


CAUTION
ATTENZIONE
PRECAUCION
ATTENTION
ACHTUNG

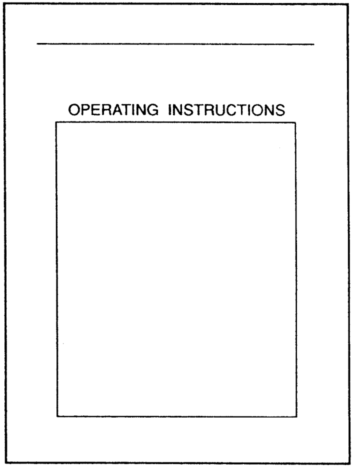
32



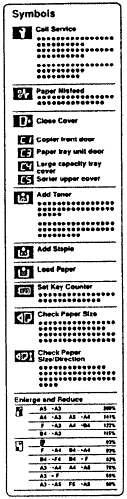
CAUTION: For continued protection against risk of fire, replace only with 125V, T3. 15A fuse.

65050FL-CM-H

33


OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

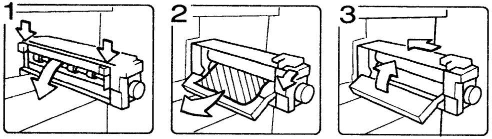
34


Symbols
Call Service
Paper Misfeed
Close Cover
Copier front door
Paper tray unit door
Large capacity tray cover
Sorter upper cover
Add Toner
Add Staple
Load Paper
Set Key Counter
Check Paper Size
Check Paper Size/Direction
Enlarge and Reduce
A5 →A3 200%
A4 →A3 A5 →A4 141%
F →A3 A4 →B4 122%
B4 →A3 115%
93%
F →A4 B4 →A4 93%
B4 →F4 B4 →F 82%
A3 →A4 A4 →A5 75%
A3 →F 65%
A3 →A5 F5 →A5 50%

50. DECAL AND DOCUMENT (A085/A087/A088)

35

Removing Misted Paper in the Fusing Unit



1. Push down two levers at the front and rear of the unit at the same time. Carefully swing down the fusing unit assemdly.
2. Turn knod B counterclockwise and remove misted paper.
3. Reset the fusing unit assemdly using two levers at the front and rear of the unit. Slide the fusing unit dack into the copier until it is locked in place.

36

Duplex	Single Copies		Reduce/Enlarge	
For two-sided copies,select key for original type.	2single originals are combined onto one copy. 2 single copies are made from a 2 sided original or a book original. Combine 2 Originals and 2 Sided Original modes require a DF	Size Mag. Enter original and copy size to auto select magnification ratio.	Zoom Up/Down Alter the reprodution ratio in 1%steps from 50%-200%.	A5 → A3 200% A4 → A3 A5 → A4 141% F → A3 A4 → B4 122% B4 → A3 115% 93% F → A4 B4 → A4 82% B4 → F4 B4 → F 75% A3 → A4 A4 → A5 71% A3 → F 65% A3 → A5 F → A5 50%

37

Attention : This machine is set for 220V/50Hz.

Achtung : Dieses Gerät ist auf 220V/50Hz eingestellt.

38

温度ヒューズ
THERMAL CUT OFF 169°C

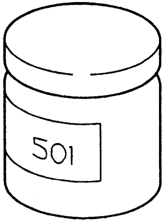
50. DECAL AND DOCUMENT (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	A074 1326	Decal - Misfeed Removal C (A088)	1
2	A074 1327	Decal - Misfeed Removal A-B (A088)	1
2	A073 1327	Decal - Misfeed Removal A-B (A085/A087)	1
3	A074 4912	Decal - Duplex Misfeed Removal	1
4	AA00 0008	Decal - A2	1
5	AA00 0010	Decal - A4	1
6	AA00 0118	Decal - High Temperature	1
7	AA00 0094	Decal - LCT Paper Size	1
8	AA00 1190	Decal - Ground	1
9	AA00 1196	Decal - Switch - 230V	1
10	AA00 1197	Decal - Duplex Tray Removal	1
11	AA00 1198	Decal - Paper Tray Removal	1
11	AA00 1199	Decal - Paper Tray 2 (A085)	1
12	AA00 1201	Decal - A1	1
13	AA00 1203	Decal - A3	1
14	AA00 1205	Decal - B	1
15	AA00 1227	Decal - Paper Level	1
16	AA00 1231	Decal - Fusing Unit Removal - 230V	1
16	AA00 1230	Decal - Fusing Unit Removal - 115V	1
17	AA00 2136	Decal - Paper Size - A4	1
17	AA00 2135	Decal - Paper Size - LT	1
18	AA00 2138	Decal - Paper Size - A4	1
18	AA00 2137	Decal - Paper Size - LT	1
19	AA00 2140	Decal - Paper Size - A4	1
19	AA00 2139	Decal - Paper Size - LT	1
20	A006 1268	Decal - Scale - A4	1
20	A006 1266	Decal - Scale - LT	1
21	A006 1396	Decal - Lock	1
22	A006 1398	Decal - Unlock	1
23	A023 2074	High Voltage Decal	1
24	A030 1370	Decal - C	1
25	A073 1278	Decal - Adding Toner	1
26	A073 1326	Decal - Removing Misfeed Paper D	1
27	A073 2739	Decal - Loading Paper	1
28	A335 1271	Decal - Paper Size - LT	1

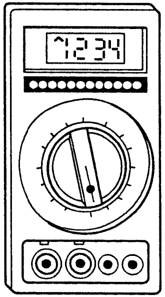
Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
28	AA00 2148	Decal - Paper Size - A4	1
29	AA00 1005	Decal - A	1
30	AA00 1006	Decal - B	1
31	AA00 0092	Decal - Used Toner Tank	1
32	AA00 0123	Decal - Fuse	1
33	A088 8607	Operating Instractions - English - LT	1
33	A088 8608	Operating Instractions - English (AA,TWN)	1
34	A088 1532	Decal - Symbol - A4 (A088)	1
34	A088 1531	Decal - Symbol - LT (A088)	1
34	A087 1532	Decal - Symbols -A4 (A085/A087)	1
34	A087 1531	Decal - Symbol - LT (A087)	1
35	A073 4149	Decal - Removing Misfeed Paper Fus.	1
36	A087 1500	Decal - Instruction - LT (A087)	1
36	A087 1520	Decal - Instruction - A4 (A085/A087)	1
36	A088 1500	Decal - Instruction - LT (A088)	1
36	A088 1520	Decal - Instruction - A4 (A088)	1
37	5442 1372	Decal - Power Source - 220V	1
38	5216 4145	Thermofuse Decal	1

51. SPECIAL TOOL (A085/A087/A088)

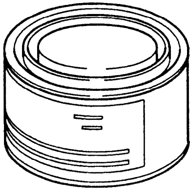
1



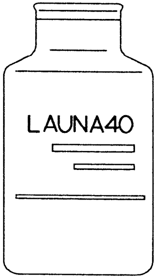
2



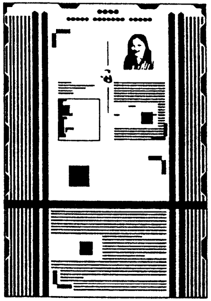
3



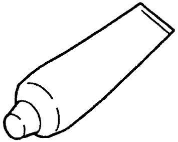
4



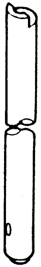
5



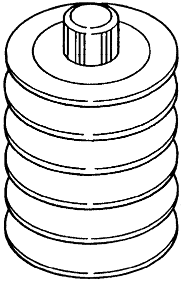
6



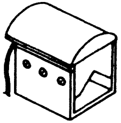
7



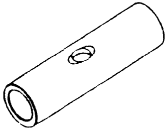
8



9



10



51. SPECIAL TOOL (A085/A087/A088)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly
1	5203 9501	Grease 501	1
2	5420 9507	Digital Multimeter - Beckman	1
3	5447 9078	Heat Resisting Grease MT-78	1
3	A028 9300	Grease NOK Barrierta - JFE 5 5/2	1
4	5442 9103	Launa Oil	1
5	5420 9516	Test Chart - OS - A3 (10psc/Set)	1
6	A008 9502	Silicone Grease - G40m	1
7	A006 9105	Drum Shaft	1
8	A069 9502	Alvania 2 Greese	1
9	5442 9106	Drum Shoe	1
10	5447 9104	Shoe Adaptor	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty per Assembly

PARTS INDEX

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A085 1114	Toner Supply Clutch Bracket	79- 15
A085 1262	Front Upper Cover (A085)	11- 16
A085 1463	Keytop - Start	15- 3
A085 1468	Keytop - Auto Image Density	15- 13
A085 1469	Keytop - Darker	15- 14
A085 1470	Keytop - Lighter	15- 15
A085 1471	Keytop - Auto Paper Select	15- 16
A085 1472	Keytop - Cassette Select	15- 17
A085 1473	Keytop - Full Size	15- 18
A085 1474	Keytop - Auto R/E	15- 19
A085 1475	Keytop	15- 20
A085 1661	1st Scanner Frame	19- 21
A085 1663	Front Side Plate	19- 9
A085 1664	Rear Side Plate	19- 14
A085 1665	1st Scanner Stay	19- 11
A085 1666	Reflector	19- 30
A085 1667	Rear Lamp Terminal	19- 24
A085 1668	Terminal Supporter	19- 25
A085 1669	Support Bushing	19- 20
A085 1670	Exposure Adjusting Plate	19- 10
A085 1671	Large Refector	19- 31
A085 1672	Front Lamp Terminal	19- 16
A085 1673	Small Reflector	19- 29
A085 1705	1st Mirror Cushion	19- 15
A085 1861	Main Reflector	19- 12
A085 1990	Upper Right Shielding Plate	75- 8
A085 2256	Front Side Plate - Drum	47- 22
A085 3483	Development Pressure Arm	75- 16
A085 4081	Fusing Unit - 230V	61- *
A085 4086	Fusing Unit Guide	61- 22
A085 4087	Fusing Unit Stopper	59- 5
A085 4101	Front Side Plate	61- 11
A085 4103	Support Plate	61- 1
A085 4110	Rear Side Plate	61- 28
A085 4114	Fusing Unit Rail	61- 21

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A085 4116	Side Plate - Entrance Guide	61- 24
A085 4119	Spring Plate	61- 20
A085 4120	Upper Stay	61- 14
A085 4123	Stripper Pawl Holder	63- 12
A085 4127	Lower Entrance Guide	61- 18
A085 4130	Exit Side Plate	63- 8
A085 4131	Upper Exit Guide	63- 19
A085 4132	Lower Exit Guide	63- 21
A085 4133	Exit Release Lever	63- 2
A085 4137	Exit Sensor Feeler	63- 9
A085 4139	Entrance Guide Slider	61- 25
A085 4144	Fusing Connector Bracket	61- 29
A085 4145	Front Pressure Lever	61- 6
A085 4146	Rear Pressure Lever	61- 26
A085 4147	Connector Support Plate	61- 10
A085 4181	Shielding Plate - Paper Feed Sensor	63- 3
A085 4186	Front Heater Holder	61- 2
A085 4190	Rear Heater Holder	61- 27
A085 4351	Fusing Unit Guide Rail	59- 20
A085 4355	Release Lever - Fusing Unit	59- 21
A085 5111	Main Control Board	83- 10
A085 5111	Main Control Board	97- *
A085 5114	IC - HN27C101G-17	83- 5
A085 5114	IC - HN27C101G-17	97- 1
A085 5118	IC - uPD78CP14G-36	97- 2
A085 5237	Fusing Thermistor	61- 13
A085 5238	Thermofuse - 169;C	61- 12
A085 5330	Dc Main Harness - 230V (A085/A087)	81- 6
A085 5330	Dc Main Harness - 230V (A085/A087)	83- 2
A085 5330	Dc Main Harness - 230V (A085)	85- 18
A085 5330	DC Main Harness - 230V (A085/A087)	103- *
A085 5339	Fusing Unit Harness	61- 30
A085 5339	Fusing Unit Harness	107- *
A085 5360	Extension Lamp Harness	19- 27
A085 5540	Noise Filter Board - 115V	85- 11

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A085 5621	AC Harness - 115V	59- 26
A085 5621	AC Harness - 115V	81- 2
A085 5621	AC Harness - 115V	87- 5
A085 5621	AC Harness - 115V	101- *
A085 5623	AC Harness - 230V	59- 26
A085 5623	AC Harness - 230V	81- 2
A085 5623	AC Harness - 230V	87- 5
A085 5623	AC Harness - 230V	101- *
A085 5640	Noise Filter Board - 230V	85- 11
A085 5648	Noise Filter	85- 21
A085 5810	Power Cord Bracket	85- 13
A085 5812	Circuit Breaker Bracket	85- 12
A087 1262	Front Upper Cover (A087)	11- 16
A087 1478	Operation Panel Board - LT (A087)	15- 34
A087 1479	Sealding Sheet	15- 37
A087 1481	Operation Panel Case - LT	15- 1
A087 1482	Indication Panel Cover - LT (A087)	15- 2
A087 1484	Keytop - Clear Modes - LT	15- 4
A087 1485	Keytop - Interrupt - LT	15- 5
A087 1486	Keytop - R/# - LT	15- 6
A087 1487	Keytop - Program - LT	15- 7
A087 1496	Keytop Sheet - LT (A087)	15- 21
A087 1497	Key Cover	15- 22
A087 1499	Keytop Cover - Non Option	15- 25
A087 1500	Decal - Instruction - LT (A087)	15- 23
A087 1500	Decal - Instruction - LT (A087)	115- 36
A087 1501	Operation Panel Case - A4	15- 1
A087 1502	Indication Panel Cover - A4 (A085/A087)	15- 2
A087 1504	Keytop - Clear Modes - A4	15- 4
A087 1505	Keytop - Interrupt - A4	15- 5
A087 1506	Keytop - R/# - A4	15- 6
A087 1507	Keytop - Program - A4	15- 7
A087 1516	Keytop Sheet - A4 (A085/A087)	15- 21
A087 1518	Operation Panel Board - A4 (A085/A087)	15- 34
A087 1520	Decal - Instruction - A4 (A085/A087)	15- 23

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A087 1520	Decal - Instruction - A4 (A085/A087)	115- 36
A087 1525	Panel - Sorter - NA	15- 39
A087 1526	Panel - Sorter - EU	15- 39
A087 1527	Keytop - Sorter	15- 38
A087 1531	Decal - Symbol - LT (A087)	13- 8
A087 1531	Decal - Symbol - LT (A087)	115- 34
A087 1532	Decal - Symbols - A4 (A085/A087)	13- 8
A087 1532	Decal - Symbols -A4 (A085/A087)	115- 34
A087 4060	Fusing Unit - 115V	61- *
A087 5330	Dc Main Harness - 115V (A087)	81- 6
A087 5330	Dc Main Harness - 115V (A087)	83- 2
A087 5330	Dc Main Harness - 115V (A087)	85- 18
A087 5330	DC Main Harness - 115V (A085/A087)	103- *
A087 5550	Operation Panel Ass'y - LT (A087)	11- 7
A087 5550	Operation Panel Ass'y - LT (A087)	15- *
A087 5650	Operation Panel Ass'y - A4 (A085/A087)	11- 7
A087 5650	Operation Panel Ass'y - A4 (A085/A087)	15- *
A088 1388	Front Upper Cover (A088)	11- 16
A088 1482	Indication Panel Cover - LT (A088)	15- 2
A088 1496	Keytop Sheet - LT (A088)	15- 21
A088 1498	Operation Panel Board - LT (A088)	15- 34
A088 1500	Decal - Instruction - LT (A088)	15- 23
A088 1500	Decal - Instruction - LT (A088)	115- 36
A088 1502	Indication Panel Cover - A4 (A088)	15- 2
A088 1516	Keytop Sheet - A4 (A088)	15- 21
A088 1518	Operation Panel Board - A4 (A088)	15- 34
A088 1520	Decal - Instruction - A4 (A088)	15- 23
A088 1520	Decal - Instruction - A4 (A088)	115- 36
A088 1531	Decal - Symbol - LT (A088)	13- 8
A088 1531	Decal - Symbol - LT (A088)	115- 34
A088 1532	Decal - Symbol - A4 (A088)	13- 8
A088 1532	Decal - Symbol - A4 (A088)	115- 34
A088 5330	DC Main Harness - 115V (A088)	81- 6
A088 5330	Dc Main Harness - 115V (A088)	83- 2
A088 5330	Dc Main Harness - 115V (A087/A088)	85- 18

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A088 5330	DC Main Harness - 115V (A088)	103- *
A088 5550	Operation Panel Ass'y - LT (A088)	11- 7
A088 5550	Operation Panel Ass'y - LT (A088)	15- *
A088 5650	Operation Panel Ass'y - A4 (A088)	11- 7
A088 5650	Operation Panel Ass'y - A4 (A088)	15- *

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
AA00 0008	Decal - A2	11- 14
AA00 0008	Decal - A2	115- 4
AA00 0010	Decal - A4	91- 7
AA00 0010	Decal - A4	115- 5
AA00 0092	Decal - Used Toner Tank	55- 32
AA00 0092	Decal - Used Toner Tank	115- 31
AA00 0094	Decal - LCT Paper Size	39- 16
AA00 0094	Decal - LCT Paper Size	115- 7
AA00 0118	Decal - High Temperature	63- 18
AA00 0118	Decal - High Temperature	115- 6
AA00 0123	Decal - Fuse	83- 15
AA00 0123	Decal - Fuse	85- 9
AA00 0123	Decal - Fuse	115- 32
AA00 1005	Decal - A (A085/A087)	31- 45
AA00 1005	Decal - A	115- 29
AA00 1006	Decal - B	31- 45
AA00 1006	Decal - B	115- 30
AA00 1190	Decal - Ground	115- 8
AA00 1196	Decal - Switch - 230V	11- 3
AA00 1196	Decal - Switch - 230V	115- 9
AA00 1197	Decal - Duplex Tray Removal	89- 35
AA00 1197	Decal - Duplex Tray Removal	115- 10
AA00 1198	Decal - Paper Tray Removal	31- 16
AA00 1198	Decal - Paper Tray Removal	115- 11
AA00 1199	Decal - Paper Tray 2 (A085/A087)	31- 17
AA00 1199	Decal - Paper Tray 2 (A085)	115- 11
AA00 1201	Decal - A1	59- 17
AA00 1201	Decal - A1	115- 12
AA00 1203	Decal - A3	11- 13
AA00 1203	Decal - A3	115- 13
AA00 1205	Decal - B	63- 23
AA00 1205	Decal - B	115- 14
AA00 1227	Decal - Paper Level	31- 41
AA00 1227	Decal - Paper Level	115- 15
AA00 1230	Decal - Fusing Unit Removal - 115V	63- 17

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
AA00 1230	Decal - Fusing Unit Removal - 115V	115- 16
AA00 1231	Decal - Fusing Unit Removal - 230V	63- 17
AA00 1231	Decal - Fusing Unit Removal - 230V	115- 16
AA00 2135	Decal - Paper Size - LT	31- 11
AA00 2135	Decal - Paper Size - LT	115- 17
AA00 2136	Decal - Paper Size - A4	31- 11
AA00 2136	Decal - Paper Size - A4	115- 17
AA00 2137	Decal - Paper Size - LT	31- 10
AA00 2137	Decal - Paper Size - LT	115- 18
AA00 2138	Decal - Paper Size - A4	31- 10
AA00 2138	Decal - Paper Size - A4	115- 18
AA00 2139	Decal - Paper Size - LT	29- 13
AA00 2139	Decal - Paper Size - LT	115- 19
AA00 2140	Decal - Paper Size - A4	29- 13
AA00 2140	Decal - Paper Size - A4	115- 19
AA01 0043	Filter	47- 2
AA01 0061	Ozone Filter	67- 4
AA01 0062	Ozone Filter	77- 21
AA01 0063	Ozone Filter	13- 5
AA01 2050	Filter - Right Optics Cover	13- 12
AA02 0001	Drawer Tray Magnet	45- 18
AA04 2006	Turn Roller Drive Belt (A088)	67- 19
AA04 3113	Timing Belt - 6x190	25- 12
AA04 3114	Timing Belt - 4x630	25- 7
AA04 3115	Timing Belt - 4x1250	25- 6
AA04 3118	Timing Belt - 8x537	77- 26
AA04 3120	Timing Belt - 7x612	79- 31
AA04 3124	Timing Belt - 6x501	39- 1
AA04 3128	Timing Belt - 4x84	41- 14
AA04 3211	Timing Belt - B90S3M564	79- 36
AA04 3212	Timing Belt - B60S3M543	77- 8
AA05 0046	Lens Drive Wire	23- 6
AA05 1014	Release Wire	79- 2
AA05 1015	Wire - Pick-up Roller	33- 44
AA06 0099	Cleaning Blade Spring	55- 13

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
AA06 0146	Spring	73- 9
AA06 0257	Spring - Bottom Plate Clutch	93- 14
AA06 0310	Turn Gate Spring	93- 2
AA06 0313	Pick-up Pressure Spring	33- 12
AA06 0314	Stopper Spring	33- 22
AA06 0315	Upper Guide Spring	45- 19
AA06 0316	Lower Guide Spring	45- 16
AA06 0318	Fusing Lock Spring	59- 23
AA06 0319	Release Spring	31- 22
AA06 0320	Release Spring	35- 7
AA06 0321	Pressure Spring - Bottom Plate	35- 6
AA06 0338	Wire Tension Spring	33- 45
AA06 0339	Lever Spring - By-pass Feed	29- 1
AA06 0346	Tension Spring	37- 9
AA06 0359	Tension Spring	79- 27
AA06 0397	Turn Gate Spring (A088)	67- 17
AA06 0436	Tray Lock Spring	87- 19
AA06 0440	Pressure Spring	61- 7
AA06 0442	Pressure Spring	63- 13
AA06 0443	Release Lever Spring	63- 1
AA06 0444	Release Spring	63- 4
AA06 0472	Tray Arm Spring	69- 12
AA06 0472	Tray Arm Spring (A085/A087)	71- 10
AA06 0477	Stripper Pawl Spring	63- 14
AA06 0478	Tension Spring	25- 2
AA06 3012	Second Mirror Spring	21- 11
AA06 3036	Terminal Spring	57- 11
AA06 3081	Spring	31- 35
AA06 3106	Spring - Pick-up Pawl	47- 11
AA06 3156	Spring - End Fence Stopper	31- 3
AA06 3163	Connector Spring	89- 7
AA06 3165	Pressure Spring	31- 24
AA06 3170	Drive Change Spring	91- 5
AA06 3198	Separation Spring	91- 33
AA06 3222	Registration Pressure Spring	45- 4

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
AA06 3242	Registration Pressure Spring - Rear	45- 10
AA06 3246	Pressure Spring	33- 27
AA06 6094	End Fence Spring	89- 13
AA06 6132	Tension Spring	77- 15
AA06 6182	Exit Sensor Spring	63- 10
AA08 0022	Bushing - 4x7x5mm	93- 1
AA08 0030	Bushing - 5x13x7	55- 14
AA08 0034	Bushing - 4x5x7	43- 25
AA08 0037	Bushing - 6 mm	33- 26
AA08 0037	Bushing - 6mm (A088)	65- 5
AA08 0084	Bushing - Front Registration Roller	45- 24
AA08 0085	Bushing - Rear Registration Roller	45- 9
AA08 0128	Bushing - 6x9x8	91- 32
AA08 2021	Bushing - 8x12x10mm	43- 37
AA08 2021	Bushing - 8x12x10mm	45- 6
AA08 2041	Bushing - 6mm	65- 12
AA08 4031	Bearing Case	77- 9
AA10 0003	Stopper - E	73- 13
AA11 1011	Paper End Feeler	93- 33
AA11 1019	Paper Entrance Feeler	91- 23
AA12 0005	Antistatic Brush	67- 7
AA13 2024	Spacer - M6	41- 8
AA13 2139	Spacer - 10x14x2	41- 13
AA14 0291	Bottom Plate Shaft	89- 23
AA14 0321	Pick-off Pawl Shaft	47- 14
AA14 0322	Worm Gear Shaft	47- 9
AA14 0325	Scanner Drive Shaft	27- 9
AA14 0329	Feed Roller Shaft - Non LCT	33- 42
AA14 0330	Separation Roller Shaft	33- 28
AA14 0338	Feed Roller Shaft	43- 27
AA14 0339	Bottom Plate Shaft - Tray	35- 2
AA14 0355	Feed Roller Shaft - LCT	33- 42
AA14 0366	Drive Shaft	39- 4
AA14 3025	Stepped Screw - M3	93- 4
AA14 3062	Shoulder Screw - M4	87- 14

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
AA14 3070	Shoulder Screw - M2x2	13- 2
AA14 3120	Stepped Screw - M3x3	89- 9
AA14 3288	Stepped Screw	31- 33
AA14 3293	Gear Shaft	47- 15
AA14 3300	Stepped Screw - M3x4	85- 17
AA14 3301	Stepped Screw - M3x4	59- 29
AA14 3307	Stepped Screw - M3x4	91- 27
AA14 3313	Stepped Screw - M5x7	47- 24
AA14 3315	Knob - Exit (A088)	65- 6
AA14 3358	Stepped Screw - M4x3	93- 7
AA14 3359	Pulley Stud	27- 8
AA14 3362	Posisioning Pin	61- 8
AA14 3387	Stepped Screw - Platen Cover	13- 6
AA14 3394	Stepped Screw - M3x10	71- 9
AA14 3400	Stepped Screw - M4x7	65- 24
AA14 5050	Toner Supply Shaft	53- 2
AA14 5119	Jog Plate Shaft	91- 28
AA14 5139	Pulley Shaft - Fusing Drive	77- 19
AA14 5140	Shaft - Toner Supply Clutch	79- 16
AA14 5198	Hinge Pin	11- 9
AA14 8252	End Fence Shaft	89- 15
AA14 8253	Rear Shaft - By-pass Feed	29- 3
AA15 0031	Seal - 25x55 mm	53- 26
AA15 0042	Seal - 20x30mm	53- 27
AA15 0060	Seal - 20x28mm	53- 8
AA15 0102	Seal - 0.05x12x25	55- 9
AA15 0238	Mylar Seal - 0.2x27x310	27- 3
AA15 0239	Seal - 0.1x10x68	27- 14
AA15 0240	Seal - 0.2x10x292	27- 5
AA15 0241	Mylar Seal - 0.1x48x59	21- 4
AA15 0242	Mylar Seal - 0.1x45x48	21- 5
AA15 0252	Seal - 0.1x37x290	21- 2
AA15 0252	Seal - 0.1x37x290	23- 9
AA15 0255	Seal - 0.2x8.5x10	23- 14
AA15 0256	Mylar Seal - 0.2x35x195	23- 4

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
AA15 0257	Mylar Seal - 0.2x39x178	21- 9
AA15 0258	Seal - 0.2x13x250	23- 21
AA15 0259	Seal - 0.1x30x75	59- 16
AA15 0293	Seal - 0.1x18x275	23- 26
AA15 1096	Seal - Supply Roller - Front	53- 21
AA15 1099	Seal - 2x14x37mm	53- 1
AA15 1099	Seal - 2x14x37mm	53- 3
AA15 1100	Seal - 2x28x320mm	53- 9
AA15 1102	Seal - 2x7x420mm	53- 25
AA15 1104	Seal - Toner Supply Roller	53- 16
AA15 1105	Front Blade Seal	55- 15
AA15 1106	Rear Blade Seal	55- 18
AA15 1109	Seal - 5x16x5	55- 25
AA15 1148	Seal - Supply Roller - Rear	53- 15
AA15 1404	Large Seal - Cleaning Casing	55- 11
AA15 1405	Small Seal - Cleaning Casing	55- 10
AA15 1406	Seal - 6x6x48	73- 1
AA15 1533	Seal - 5x13x48	21- 6
AA15 1534	Seal - 4x5x29.5	23- 10
AA15 1547	Lower Casing Seal	53- 29
AA15 1731	Duct Seal	73- 18
AA15 2014	Seal - 12x56 mm	23- 12
AA15 2015	Toner Collection Seal	55- 12
AA15 2016	Side Seal - Cleaning Front	55- 31
AA15 2161	Rear Upper Seal - Development	51- 2
AA15 2162	Rear Lower Seal - Development	51- 13
AA15 2170	Rear Side Seal	55- 33
AA15 2171	Rear Lower Seal - Cleaning	55- 6
AA15 2190	Seal - 4x5x45	23- 27
AA15 2204	Seal - 6x22	93- 20
AA16 1014	Cushion Motor	41- 6
AA16 1016	Cushion - Fork Gate	69- 4
AA16 1016	Cushion - Fork Gate	87- 17
AA16 1072	Cushion - 5x12x6	77- 5
AA16 2052	Seal - 5x10x356	75- 7

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
AA16 2053	Platen Cover Pad (ASIA)	17- 12
AB00 0014	Gear - 20Z And 72Z	23- 17
AB01 0017	Gear - 18Z	53- 22
AB01 0018	Gear - 34Z	53- 24
AB01 0064	Pick-off Pawl Cam	47- 13
AB01 0065	Pick-off Pawl Worm	47- 10
AB01 1019	Gear - 12T	55- 29
AB01 1026	Gear - 17T	55- 20
AB01 1027	Gear - 19T	55- 22
AB01 1101	Gear - 28Z	93- 8
AB01 1102	Gear - 35Z	93- 18
AB01 1103	Gear - 28Z	93- 16
AB01 1104	Gear - 17Z	47- 6
AB01 1105	Gear - 40Z	33- 17
AB01 1106	Gear - 25Z	43- 12
AB01 1107	Gear - 40Z	43- 14
AB01 1108	Gear - 30Z	43- 15
AB01 1109	Gear - 17Z	77- 16
AB01 1133	Gear - 49Z	39- 3
AB01 3079	Gear - 21T	33- 9
AB01 3136	Gear - 34T	51- 9
AB01 3139	Gear - 19T	79- 19
AB01 3140	Gear - 17T	79- 17
AB01 3156	Gear - 27T	53- 5
AB01 3157	Gear - 67T	53- 6
AB01 3213	Gear - 27T	51- 5
AB01 3339	Gear - 80Z	77- 2
AB01 3344	Gear - 30Z	79- 5
AB01 3420	Gear - 18Z	33- 24
AB01 3481	Gear - 18Z	61- 33
AB01 3482	Gear - 24/24Z	61- 34
AB01 3483	Gear - 32Z	65- 21
AB01 3484	Gear - 15Z	63- 22
AB01 3485	Gear - 20Z	45- 23
AB01 3486	Gear - 14Z	45- 22

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
AB01 3487	Gear - 20Z	45-17
AB01 3492	Gear - 16Z	29-16
AB01 3492	Gear - 16Z	31-40
AB01 3501	Gear - 26Z	61-31
AB01 3559	Gear - 40Z	61-32
AB01 3560	Gear - 30Z	65-23
AB01 3561	Gear - 18Z	79-4
AB01 3694	Gear - 19Z	51-6
AB01 7044	Coupled Gear - 18T/35T	55-21
AB01 7046	Coupled Gear - 27T/34T	51-8
AB01 7062	Coupled Gear - 17T/18T	55-19
AB01 7129	Gear - 48T	23-16
AB01 7164	Gear - 21Z/64Z	89-37
AB01 7165	Gear - 16Z/22Z	89-42
AB01 7181	Gear - 14/45Z	93-17
AB01 7182	Gear - 14/30Z	93-9
AB01 7183	Gear - 12/45Z	91-6
AB01 7184	Gear - 19Z	67-20
AB01 7185	Double Gear - 20/16Z	65-18
AB01 7188	Gear/Pulley - 24/24Z	79-30
AB01 7190	Gear - 24/20Z	79-22
AB01 7191	Gear - 20/16Z	79-23
AB01 7192	Timing Pulley - 30Z	77-20
AB01 7193	Gear/Pulley - 27/24Z	79-14
AB01 7200	Gear - 25/17Z	41-9
AB01 7201	Gear - 51/19Z	41-10
AB01 7202	Gear/Pulley - 35/32Z	79-35
AB01 7207	Pulley (A088)	67-23
AB01 7262	Gear/Pulley - 35/30Z	79-32
AB01 7263	Worm Pulley - 44Z	41-15
AB03 0268	Timing Pulley - 24/48/26Z	27-10
AB03 0270	Timing Pulley - 24/28Z	27-6
AB03 0271	Timing Pulley - 24Z	25-3
AB03 0272	Timing Pulley - 48Z	25-5
AB03 0273	Timing Pulley - 20Z	77-3

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
AB03 0273	Timing Pulley - 20Z	79-20
AB03 0273	Timing Pulley - 20Z	79-26
AB03 0274	Drum Pulley - 80Z	77-24
AB03 0276	Tightner Pulley	79-10
AB03 0281	Timing Pulley - 28Z	39-2
AB03 0289	Timing Pulley - 15Z	41-12
AB03 0401	Tightner Pulley	79-39
AB03 2042	Wire Pulley	33-46
AB03 3047	Timing Pulley - 25/40Z	77-6
AB04 0013	Spring Clutch - Tray Bottom Plate	93-12
AB04 1011	Bushing - 6x18x10	33-31
AB04 2004	Clutch Sleeve - Torque Limiter	33-33
AC00 1036	Platen Cover Ass'y	17-*
AC01 5011	Toner Shield Glass	47-4
AC02 0060	Lens - F6.5 F180	23-7
AC03 0021	5th Mirror	21-18
AC03 0060	2nd Mirror	19-2
AC03 0061	3rd Mirror	19-7
AC03 0062	4th Mirror	21-13
AC03 0063	6th Mirror	21-21
AC03 0087	1st Mirror	19-17
AC04 2050	Original Scale - LT	13-3
AC04 2051	Original Scale - A4	13-3
AD00 2017	Cleaning Blade	55-24
AD00 4062	T/S Corona Unit	57-*
AD00 4068	Charge Corona Unit	49-12
AD02 1015	Receptacle Housing	49-8
AD02 1066	Charge Corona Receptacle	49-7
AD02 2197	Rear End Block - Main Charge	49-11
AD02 2198	Rear End Block Cover - Main Charge	49-9
AD02 2201	Front End Block	57-6
AD02 2202	Front End Block Cover	57-1
AD02 2203	Rear End Block	57-8
AD02 2204	Rear End Block Cover	57-10
AD02 2260	Front End Block - Main Charge	49-19

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
AD02 2261	Front End Block Cover - Main Charge	49- 24
AD02 5012	Pick-off Pawl	47- 31
AD03 3002	Toner Supply Roller - Black	53- 20
AD03 7034	Mixing Auger	51- 16
AD03 8004	Paddle Roller	51- 10
AD03 8021	Right Paddle Roller	51- 11
AD04 2016	Cleaning Brush	55- 28
AE01 1002	Hot Roller	61- 15
AE02 0028	Pressure Roller	61- 16
AE03 1005	Bushing	35- 9
AE03 1005	Bushing	69- 6
AE03 2002	Bushing - 25x30x9 mm	61- 9
AF01 0029	Paper Drawer Tray	31- 13
AF01 1015	Duplex Bottom Plate	89- 27
AF01 1016	Tray Bottom Plate	31- 38
AF01 3003	Bottom Plate Pad - Duplex	89- 24
AF01 6026	Front Jog Fence	89- 10
AF01 6027	Rear Jog Fence	89- 11
AF02 0126	Driven Roller - Vertical Transport	43- 26
AF02 0183	Transport Roller	93- 27
AF02 0184	Duplex Stack Roller	93- 38
AF02 0186	Vertical Transport Roller - Upper	43- 7
AF02 0187	Vertical Transport Roller - Lower	43- 9
AF02 0188	Lower Transport Roller	63- 11
AF02 0189	Inner Inverter Roller (A088)	65- 13
AF02 0284	Duplex Stack Roller	45- 3
AF02 1044	Upper Registration Roller	45- 1
AF02 2007	Exit Driven Roller	67- 9
AF02 2043	Small Driven Roller	91- 19
AF02 2047	Driven Roller	91- 12
AF02 2049	Outer Inverter Roller (A088)	65- 11
AF02 2060	Driven Roller	91- 18
AF02 2060	Driven Roller	93- 39
AF02 5015	Turn Gate	93- 24
AF03 0019	Pick-up Roller	33- 8

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
AF03 1009	Paper Feed Roller	93- 42
AF03 1019	Feed Roller	33- 7
AF03 2017	Separation Roller	91- 31
AF03 2019	Separation Roller	33- 35
AF04 0036	Lower Exit Roller	67- 10
AF04 0045	Exit Roller	63- 7
AF04 3028	Copy Tray - Slid	11- 18
AG02 1008	Original Holder	17- 6
AG05 0050	Fusing Knob	61- 4
AG05 0051	Registration Roller Knob	11- 15
AG05 0058	Relay Roller Knob (A088)	65- 3
AG05 1078	Release Lever - Upper Guide	91- 11
AG05 1079	Release Lever - Relay Guide	45- 21
AG05 1081	Release Lever - Vertical Transport	43- 18
AG05 1082	Transport Release Lever	59- 18
AG07 0004	Magnet Catch	11- 19
AG07 0004	Magnet Catch	13- 15
AG07 0004	Magnet Catch	43- 16
AG07 0004	Magnet Catch	65- 9
AG07 0007	Magnet Catch	37- 3
AH01 0007	Rubbber Foot	69- 5
AW02 0033	Photointerruptor - 40;C	45- 13
AW02 0034	Photointerruptor - 35C	43- 19
AW02 0035	Photointerruptor - 55C (A088)	65- 16
AW02 0041	Photointerruptor (ASIA)	17- 20
AW02 0041	Photointerruptor	33- 38
AW02 0041	Photointerruptor	35- 17
AW02 0041	Photointerruptor	61- 19
AW02 0042	Photointerruptor - EE- SX4009 - P12	87- 12
AW02 0043	Photointerruptor - EE- SX4009 - P15	25- 15
AW10 0013	Thermistor - 103AT-2	27- 11
AW10 0014	Thermistor - 103GT	91- 20
AW11 0011	Thermostat 140;C AC120V 15A	19- 26
AW40 0010	Original Width Sensor	21- 25
AW40 0011	Original Length Sensor - A4	21- 7

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
AW40 0012	Original Length Sensor - LT	21- 7
AW50 0013	Push Switch	87- 4
AW50 0014	Push Switch - F87B-AJDL	81- 4
AX04 0058	Tray Lift Motor - DC 1.9W	35-19
AX06 0047	Brushless Motor - DC24V 61W	77- 4
AX20 0053	Registration Magnetic Clutch	45- 7
AX20 0054	Magnetic Clutch - By-pass Feed	33-15
AX20 0055	Magnetic Clutch - Feed Relay	43-13
AX20 0058	Magnetic Clutch - Development Drive	77-25
AX21 0022	Magnetic Clutch - Toner Supply	79-12
AX44 0053	Fusing Lamp - 115V 800W	61- 3
AX44 0054	Fusing Lamp - 230V 800W	61- 3
AX50 0037	PTL Stabilizer	45- 5
AX50 0038	QL Stabilizer	49- 6
AX52 0015	Exposure Lamp - 85V/280W (115V)	19-13
AX53 0016	Exposure Lamp - 180V/310W (230V)	19-13
AX64 0027	Transfer Fan Motor - DC 4.8W	77-22
AX65 0008	Exhaust Fan Motor - DC 7.7W	73- 3
AX65 0009	Transport Fan Motor - DC 8.4W	73- 6
AX65 0010	Cooling Fan Motor - DC 8.4W	25-16
AY03 0009	Main Motor Control Board	85-14
AZ12 0018	Main Transfomer - 230V	85-20
AZ24 0005	DC Power Supply Board - 110V	83- 3
AZ24 0010	DC Power Supply Board - 230V	83- 3
AZ24 0015	DC Power Supply Board - 115V	83- 3
AZ31 0007	High Voltage Supply Board - D	83- 6
AZ32 0060	High Voltage Supply Board - C TBG	83- 7
AZ50 0002	CFL Stabilizer - 115V	85-15
AZ50 0019	CFL Stabilizer - 230V	85-15
A006 1266	Decal - Scale - LT	13- 9
A006 1266	Decal - Scale - LT	15-24
A006 1266	Decal - Scale - LT	115-20
A006 1268	Decal - Scale - A4	13- 9
A006 1268	Decal - Scale - A4	15-24
A006 1268	Decal - Scale - A4	115-20

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A006 1352	Key Counter Cover	13-17
A006 1352	Key Counter Cover	75-12
A006 1396	Decal - Lock	11-17
A006 1396	Decal - Lock	115-21
A006 1398	Decal - Unlock	11-12
A006 1398	Decal - Unlock	115-22
A006 1724	Rear Spring Plate	19- 3
A006 1724	Rear Spring Plate	21-12
A006 1766	Adjusting Cam	21-23
A006 2122	Cleaner Stay	49-14
A006 3050	Development Rail	75- 5
A006 3056	Shaft Arm	75-10
A006 3060	Shaft	75- 9
A006 3063	Development Stopper	75- 4
A006 3155	Plate Nut	53-18
A006 3158	Front Side Bracket	53-23
A006 3160	Slitter	53-10
A006 3168	Agitator Shaft	53-19
A006 3171	Rear Side Bracket	53-14
A006 3205	Development Pannel Plate	51-15
A006 3330	Development Knob	51- 1
A006 3335	Knob - Paddle	51-12
A006 3603	Front Brush Holder	55-27
A006 3855	Terminal Cover - Transfer	57- 9
A006 4493	Guide - Copy Tray	11-20
A006 5828	Cover - Counter	81- 8
A006 9002	Hot Roller Stripper (5pcs/set)	63-15
A006 9105	Drum Shaft	117- 7
A008 9502	Silicone Grease - G40m	117- 6
A009 2588	Release Lever - 3rd Cassette	31-30
A009 2590	Pressure Release Shaft	31-27
A009 2592	Spring - Pressure Release Lever	31-29
A009 2632	Tray Lift Bracket	35-20
A009 2634	Gear Ass'y - 45T	35-12
A009 2644	Stopper Lever	35- 4

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A009 2645	Lift Lever Guide	35- 11
A009 2647	Lift Sensor Bracket	35- 18
A023 2074	Hight Voltage Decal	47- 30
A023 2074	High Voltage Decal	59- 2
A023 2074	High Voltage Decal	69- 9
A023 2074	High Voltage Decal	115- 23
A024 1368	Left Cover Cap - Sorter	11- 2
A028 9300	Grease NOK Barrierta - JFE 5 5/2	117- 3
A030 1370	Decal - C (A088)	67- 1
A030 1370	Decal - C	115- 24
A030 5383	Photointerrupter	89- 6
A030 6231	Corona Wire Ring	49- 21
A048 1721	Spring Plate A	19- 19
A048 2258	Drum Holder	47- 26
A048 2828	End Fence Stopper	31- 2
A048 2835	Side Fence Gear	31- 31
A048 2838	Nylon Rivet	31- 37
A048 2838	Nylon Rivet	33- 18
A048 2838	Nylon Rivet	45- 11
A048 2938	Paper Guide - Manual Feed Table	29- 17
A049 3371	Magnet	93- 23
A053 1948	Mounting Bracket - Platen Cover	17- 23
A053 1949	Positioning Sensor Bracket	17- 21
A053 1957	Flex Hinge - Platen Cover	17- 9
A053 1960	Positioning Sensor Shutter	17- 22
A053 1966	Front Platen Cover	17- 11
A053 1969	Rear Platen Cover	17- 1
A053 5219	Positioning Sensor Harness	17- 19
A069 1068	Rear Support Plate	69- 13
A069 1073	Front Positioning Plate - Optics	81- 7
A069 1079	Rear Positioning Plate - Optics	69- 15
A069 1081	Grip	71- 3
A069 1083	Exhaust Fan Bracket	73- 2
A069 1085	Upper Left Harness Stay	71- 2
A069 1090	Base Cover Plate	79- 34

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A069 1092	Right Support Plate	69- 1
A069 1093	Frame Support Plate	79- 38
A069 1095	Base Cover	69- 7
A069 1102	Clutch Case - Development Drive	77- 23
A069 1106	Belt Tightener - Main Drive	77- 11
A069 1107	Belt Tightener - Paper Feed	77- 13
A069 1108	Support Bracket - Fusing Drive	77- 12
A069 1109	Fusing Drive Bracket	79- 3
A069 1111	Fusing Drive Bushing	77- 17
A069 1116	Positioning Plate - Fusing Drive	79- 6
A069 1122	Belt Tightener - Paper Feed	79- 9
A069 1127	Black Bias Terminal	87- 8
A069 1130	Release Slider	43- 3
A069 1131	Release Bracket - Fusing Drive	43- 1
A069 1134	Grounding Plate	69- 14
A069 1136	Support Bracket - Main Drive	77- 14
A069 1191	Drum Shaft	77- 1
A069 1195	Support Bracket - Feed Drive	79- 37
A069 1197	Jiont Bracket - Fusing Drive	79- 1
A069 1218	Inner Cover	11- 10
A069 1251	Top Cover	13- 7
A069 1258	Right Bracket - Platen Cover	27- 15
A069 1259	Left Bracket - Platen Cover	27- 19
A069 1261	Right Upper Cover	13- 14
A069 1271	Right Lower Cover (A085)	13- 16
A069 1286	Upper Door Hinge	75- 6
A069 1287	Front Door Hinge	11- 26
A069 1288	Rear Cover Bracket	69- 2
A069 1291	Rear Cover	13- 10
A069 1299	Rear Cover Bracket - Right	79- 33
A069 1301	Left Cover	11- 1
A069 1305	Plastic Cap - Sorter Stapler	11- 5
A069 1311	Left Bottom Cover	11- 4
A069 1321	Left Small Cover	11- 6
A069 1341	Right Optics Cover	13- 13

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A069 1346	Left Optics Cover	13- 4
A069 1353	Front Cover - Upper	31- 14
A069 1353	Front Cover - Upper	89- 34
A069 1363	Front Cover - Lower	31- 15
A069 1383	Front Door	11- 25
A069 1452	Operation Panel Bracket - Left	11- 11
A069 1452	Operation Panel Bracket - Left	15- 36
A069 1453	Operation Panel Bracket - Right	11- 8
A069 1453	Operation Panel Bracket - Right	15- 35
A069 1477	LED Cover	15- 33
A069 1511	Keytop - 1	15- 31
A069 1512	Keytop - 2	15- 32
A069 1513	Keytop - 3	15- 8
A069 1514	Keytop - 4	15- 29
A069 1515	Keytop - 5	15- 30
A069 1516	Keytop - 6	15- 9
A069 1517	Keytop - 7	15- 26
A069 1518	Keytop - 8	15- 27
A069 1519	Keytop - 9	15- 28
A069 1520	Keytop - 0	15- 12
A069 1521	Keytop - Period	15- 11
A069 1522	Keytop - C/S	15- 10
A069 1667	Scanner Slide Rail - Rear	23- 20
A069 1668	Scanner Slide Rail - Front	23- 25
A069 1670	Platen Cover Ass’y (ASIA)	17- *
A069 1671	Front Platen Cover (ASIA)	17- 11
A069 1674	Original Holder (ASIA)	17- 6
A069 1677	Rear Platen Cover (ASIA)	17- 1
A069 1771	Exposure Harness Cover	25- 9
A069 1773	Cam Plate - Lens Shield	23- 13
A069 1774	Guide Plate - Lens Drive	23- 15
A069 1781	Lens Bracket	23- 8
A069 1790	Rear Shielding Plate	23- 2
A069 1792	Front Shielding Plate	23- 1
A069 1794	Small Lens Cover	23- 3

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A069 1795	Lens Shutter	23- 5
A069 1801	Large Lens Cover	21- 8
A069 1803	ADS Sensor Bracket	21- 3
A069 1805	Upper Seal - Lens Cover	21- 26
A069 1811	Lens Motor Bracket	23- 23
A069 1821	Motor Bracket - 3rd Scanner	23- 18
A069 1831	3rd Scanner Bracket	21- 17
A069 1832	3rd Scanner Lack	21- 16
A069 1834	3rd Scanner Shoe	21- 10
A069 1835	Spring Plate A	19- 1
A069 1835	Spring Plate A	21- 14
A069 1836	3rd Scanner Shutter	21- 15
A069 1841	6th Mirror Bracket	21- 19
A069 1843	6th Mirror Bracket - Front	21- 22
A069 1844	Spring Plate - 6th Mirror	21- 20
A069 1854	Bushing - 5mm	19- 5
A069 1862	1st Scanner Clamp - Front	19- 18
A069 1863	1st Scanner Clamp - Rear	19- 23
A069 1864	1st Scanner Shutter	19- 22
A069 1871	2nd Scanner Bracket	19- 6
A069 1875	2nd Scanner Clamp	19- 4
A069 1881	2nd Mirror Support Plate	19- 28
A069 1882	Exposure Glass Holder	27- 4
A069 1891	Timing Pulley Bracket - Rear Middle	25- 13
A069 1901	Timing Pulley Bracket - Rear Right	25- 14
A069 1903	Scanner Motor Cushion	27- 18
A069 1913	Timing Pulley Bracket - Front Middle	25- 1
A069 1921	Timing Pulley Bracket - Front Right	25- 4
A069 1931	Right Rail Holder	27- 1
A069 1932	Rear Seal - Right Rail Holder	27- 20
A069 1942	Left Rail Holder	27- 7
A069 1943	Rear Seal - Left Rail Holder	27- 16
A069 1950	Exposure Glass Stay	27- 17
A069 1951	Scale Bracket	27- 12
A069 1956	Platen Cover Bracket (ASIA)	17- 23

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A069 1958	Positioning Sensor Shutter (ASIA)	17-22
A069 2012	Receptacle Cover	59-31
A069 2014	T/S Corona Receptacle	59-24
A069 2061	Left Rail - Charge Corona	49- 1
A069 2065	Quenching Lamp Filter	49- 2
A069 2070	Right Rail - Charge Corona	49- 4
A069 2073	Charge Spring Plate	49- 3
A069 2074	Rear Spring Plate - Charge	49- 5
A069 2075	Electrod Plate	49-25
A069 2117	Charge Corona Grid	49-17
A069 2127	Adjuster - Main Charge	49-23
A069 2130	Anchor - Grid	49-18
A069 2151	Corona Wire Cleaner	49-16
A069 2152	Cleaner Stay	49-15
A069 2180	Filter PTL	33- 1
A069 2188	Paper Guide - T/S Corona	57- 2
A069 2258	Top Plate - Drum Unit	47- 3
A069 2261	Left Drum Stay	47- 1
A069 2263	Grounding Plate	47-21
A069 2267	Pick-off Pawl Holder	47-12
A069 2270	Pick-off Pawl Retainer	47-17
A069 2273	V Sensor Seal	47-29
A069 2276	Drum Unit Frame	47- 8
A069 2278	Seal - 0.1x12x22	47-27
A069 2283	Guide Ring	47-28
A069 2285	Drum Support Plate	47-23
A069 2555	Paper Feed Guide	33-36
A069 2556	Paper Feed Stay	33-41
A069 2560	Pick-up Roller Arm	33-11
A069 2563	Separation Guide	33-30
A069 2565	Separation Driven Shaft	33-25
A069 2571	Upper Registration Guide	45-12
A069 2576	Registration Sensor Bracket	45-14
A069 2581	Upper Registration Guide	33- 3
A069 2588	Upper Registration Stay	33- 2

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A069 2589	Transfer Entrance Guide	45- 2
A069 2610	Upper Relay Guide	45-20
A069 2614	Lower Relay Guide	45-15
A069 2620	Pick-up Solenoid	33-20
A069 2621	Pick-up Solenoid Bracket	33-19
A069 2627	Support Arm	33-13
A069 2628	Arm Support Link	33-23
A069 2631	Fixed Plate - By-pass Feed Table	29-14
A069 2638	Rack - Manual Feed Table	29-15
A069 2645	Seal - 0.2x16x47	29- 8
A069 2648	By-pass Feed Bushing	29- 2
A069 2654	Center Link (A085)	33-21
A069 2656	Upper Guide - Tray Feed	43- 8
A069 2657	Center Guide - Tray Feed (A085/A087)	43-34
A069 2663	Positioning Bracket - Vertical Tr.	43-35
A069 2665	Vertical Transport Holder	43- 6
A069 2666	Lower Guide - Tray Feed	43-33
A069 2671	Vertical Transport Guide	43-23
A069 2673	Sensor Bracket - Vertical Transport	43-21
A069 2675	Grounding Plate	43-22
A069 2676	Vertical Transport Hinge	43-17
A069 2681	Sensor Bracket - By-pass Feed	33-39
A069 2684	Sensor Bracket - Paper End	33-40
A069 2686	Paper End Feeler	33- 5
A069 2704	Guide Roller - 6x12x7.5	31- 9
A069 2704	Guide Roller - 6x12x7.5	71- 6
A069 2704	Guide Roller - 6x12x7.5	71-14
A069 2704	Guide Roller - 6x12x7.5	89-19
A069 2708	Tray Guide Bracket	31- 8
A069 2711	Front Paper Guide	31-32
A069 2712	Rear Paper Guide	31-43
A069 2714	Front Side Fence	31-36
A069 2715	Rear Side Fence	31-42
A069 2716	Registration Adjustment Plate	31-39
A069 2717	End Fence	31- 5

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A069 2718	End Fence Cover	31- 1
A069 2719	Spring Plate - End Fence	31- 4
A069 2720	Paper Size Actuator - A4	31- 19
A069 2721	Actuator Arm - Paper Size	31- 18
A069 2732	Tray Pressure Bracket	31- 6
A069 2735	Side Fence Stopper	31- 34
A069 2740	Tray Feed Stay	43- 31
A069 2743	Front Guide - Tray Feed	43- 4
A069 2744	Rear Guide - Tray Feed	43- 32
A069 2745	Tray Feed Bushing	43- 5
A069 2746	Tray Release Bracket	31- 28
A069 2750	Tray Pressure Lever	35- 8
A069 2751	Tray Pressure Arm	35- 1
A069 2758	Tray Lift Lever	35- 10
A069 2759	Tray Guide Arm	69- 11
A069 2759	Tray Guide Arm (A085/A087)	71- 11
A069 2761	Sensor Bracket - Tray Set	35- 14
A069 2762	Paper End Feeler	87- 2
A069 2769	Left Stay (A085/A087)	71- 12
A069 2770	Paper End Actuator	87- 11
A069 2773	Tray Lock Solenoid	87- 16
A069 2780	Upper Left Tray Rail (A085/A087)	71- 7
A069 2781	Lower Left Tray Rail	71- 7
A069 2786	Left Stopper - Paper Tray	13- 20
A069 2789	Upper Tray Rail	43- 36
A069 2790	Upper Right Tray Rail (A085/A087)	71- 5
A069 2791	Lower Right Tray Rail	71- 5
A069 2796	Right Stopper - Paper Tray	13- 19
A069 2799	Guide Roller - 7.5mm	71- 8
A069 2804	Pressure Arm Stopper	69- 8
A069 2815	Friction Pad Bracket	31- 21
A069 2818	Release Lever - Friction Pad	31- 23
A069 2819	Adjusting Screw	31- 44
A069 2820	Friction Pad Ass’y	31- 25
A069 2822	Cover Plate	31- 26

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A069 2823	Rail Guide Roller	71- 13
A069 2824	Large Positioning Bracket	43- 38
A069 2824	Large Positioning Bracket	71- 1
A069 2826	Small Positioning Bracket	43- 10
A069 2832	Seal - 0.2x36x46	87- 18
A069 2841	Lift Motor Bracket	35- 5
A069 2846	Tray Guide Bracket	69- 10
A069 2852	By-pass Feed Table Ass’y - A4	29- 4
A069 2861	By-pass Feed Table	29- 7
A069 2871	By-pass Feed Cover	29- 18
A069 2881	Front Side Fence	29- 9
A069 2891	Rear Side Fence	29- 12
A069 2901	Small Paper Guide - Front	29- 10
A069 2911	Small Paper Guide - Rear	29- 11
A069 2921	By-pass Feed Guide	29- 5
A069 2985	Lock Plate - Feed Clutch	79- 29
A069 2986	Lock Plate - Registration Clutch	79- 21
A069 2989	Timing Belt Tightener	79- 25
A069 3050	Development Unit	51- *
A069 3061	Lower Casing	51- 14
A069 3062	Development Lever	75- 2
A069 3070	Entrance Seal	57- 7
A069 3075	Retainer - Black	51- 4
A069 3091	Lower Casing - Toner Supply Unit	53- 28
A069 3120	Toner Supply Unit - EU,ASIA	53- *
A069 3122	Upper Casing - Toner Supply - EU,ASIA	53- 4
A069 3503	Cleaning Unit	55- *
A069 3552	Upper Cleaning Casing	55- 3
A069 3557	Cleaning Unit Frame	55- 16
A069 3565	Blade Bracket	55- 17
A069 3567	Rear Brush Holder	55- 30
A069 3575	Cleaning Blade Cleaner	55- 8
A069 3580	Toner Collection Shaft	55- 26
A069 3582	Lower Cleaning Casing	55- 5
A069 3585	Used Toner Tank - Upper	55- 1

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A069 3586	Used Toner Tank - Lower	55- 2
A069 3589	Release Lever - Cleaning Blade	55- 4
A069 3612	Transport Fan Bracket	73- 8
A069 3613	Duct Cover	73- 4
A069 3614	Transport Fan Duct	73- 5
A069 3621	Release Lever - Cleaning Unit	73- 10
A069 3623	Cleaning Release Shaft	73- 12
A069 3625	Release Lever Bushing	73- 11
A069 3631	Cleaning Unit Rail	73- 14
A069 3636	Upper Duct	73- 17
A069 3637	Lower Duct	73- 15
A069 3641	Duct Support Plate	73- 16
A069 3882	Release Lever Bracket	59- 19
A069 3885	Release Arm	59- 10
A069 3887	Transport Base Plate	59- 14
A069 3891	Release Arm Hinge	59- 11
A069 3892	Side Base Plate	59- 15
A069 3893	Release Link Stopper	59- 7
A069 3895	Transport Release Link	59- 12
A069 3910	Front Transport Bracket	59- 3
A069 3914	Heater Bracket	59- 4
A069 3915	T&S Corona Rail	59- 6
A069 3918	Transport Guide	59- 1
A069 3920	Rear Transport Bracket	59- 8
A069 4109	Fusing Unit Cover	63- 5
A069 4126	Upper Entrance Guide	61- 17
A069 4144	Release Lever Knob	59- 30
A069 4150	Upper Exit Guide	67- 8
A069 4152	Junction Gate	67- 11
A069 4154	Exit Cover Holder	65- 2
A069 4155	Upper Exit Cover	67- 5
A069 4156	Lower Exit Cover	65- 7
A069 4161	Front Magnet Plate	65- 1
A069 4162	Rear Magnet Plate	65- 22
A069 4163	Exit Guide Bracket	67- 3

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A069 4164	Exit Sensor Stay	67- 15
A069 4168	Front Magnet Holder (A088)	65- 10
A069 4169	Rear Magnet Holder	65- 8
A069 4189	Board Angle	59- 27
A069 4235	Receiving Tray	11- 27
A069 5131	RAM Board	83- 4
A069 5131	RAM Board	97- 3
A069 5131	RAM Board	99- *
A069 5161	Scanner Motor Control Board	85- 3
A069 5205	Scanner Drive Motor - DC24V	25- 11
A069 5206	3rd Scanner Drive Motor - DC24V	23- 19
A069 5207	Lens Drive Motor - DC24V	23- 24
A069 5240	ID Sensor Board	47- 5
A069 5245	V Sensor Board	47- 20
A069 5252	Reed Switch - PS0009	21- 24
A069 5255	Erase Lamp Unit	47- 7
A069 5257	Connector Board - Drum Unit	47- 18
A069 5261	ADS Sensor Board	21- 1
A069 5280	Exposure Lamp Harness	19- 8
A069 5331	DC Harness - Paper Feed (A085)	83- 9
A069 5331	DC Harness - Paper Feed (A085)	105- *
A069 5332	Optics Harness	25- 8
A069 5333	Drum Unit Harness	47- 19
A069 5334	Extension Harness - Drum Unit	87- 6
A069 5335	Relay Sensor Harness	43- 20
A069 5336	Paper Size Sensor Harness	87- 10
A069 5338	Paper Feed Harness - Non LCT	33- 37
A069 5352	Grounding Harness	25- 10
A069 5802	Safety Switch Bracket	81- 5
A069 5803	Safety Switch Lever	81- 3
A069 5804	Key Counter Bracket	13- 18
A069 5804	Key Counter Bracket	75- 1
A069 5808	Transfomer Bracket	85- 19
A069 5809	Bracket - Noize Filter Board (220/240V)	85- 5
A069 5810	Noise Filter Bracket	85- 8

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A069 5811	Power Cord Bracket - 110V	85- 7
A069 5814	Main Control Board Bracket	83-11
A069 5815	Board Angle	79- 7
A069 5816	Hinge - Main Control Board	83-12
A069 5819	Bracket - DC Power Supply Board	83- 1
A069 5821	Lower Hinge - DC Power Supply Board	85- 1
A069 5824	Board Bracket - High Voltage	83- 8
A069 5827	Duct Bracket	59-25
A069 5827	Duct Bracket	69- 3
A069 5830	Exhaust Blower Duct	77-18
A069 5831	Counter Bracket	81-10
A069 5835	Board Bracket - Main Motor	85-16
A069 5836	Optics Board Bracket	85- 2
A069 5837	Link Cover Plate	79-28
A069 9001	Cleaning Entrance Sheal	55- 7
A069 9502	Alvania 2 Greese	117- 8
A069 9510	Drum	47-16
A069 9540	Charge Corona Wire - 10pcs/set	49-20
A069 9541	Transfer Corona Wire - 10pcs/set	57- 5
A069 9542	Separation Corona Wire - 10pcs/set	57- 4
A070 2657	Duplex Paper Guide (A088)	43-34
A070 2773	Tray Lock Stay (A088)	71-12
A070 2775	Tray Lock Arm (A088)	71-11
A070 4161	Switch Cover Plate (A088)	67-12
A070 4179	Duplex Entrance Guide - Upper (A088)	65-15
A070 4181	Duplex Entrance Guide - Lower (A088)	65-14
A070 4182	Junction Gate Stay (A088)	65-17
A070 4194	Junction Gate Solenoid (A088)	67-16
A070 4865	Connector Bracket - Duplex	85- 4
A070 4885	Left Stopper - Duplex Tray	89-16
A070 4886	Right Stopper - Duplex Tray	89-28
A070 4900	Left Rail - Duplex Tray (A088)	71- 4
A070 4909	Right Rail - Duplex Tray (A088)	71-15
A070 4923	Lock Solenoid Bracket	87-15
A070 4927	Stopper Plate - Duplex Tray (A088)	69-16
A070 4928	Tray Lock Lever - Duplex	87-13
A070 5337	Harness - Exit Cover Switch (A088)	67-14
A073 1278	Decal - Adding Toner	11-21
A073 1278	Decal - Adding Toner	115-25
A073 1326	Decal - Removing Misfeed Paper D	11-24
A073 1326	Decal - Removing Misfeed Paper D	115-26
A073 1327	Decal - Removing Misfeed Paper A-B(A085/A087)	11-22
A073 1327	Decal - Misfeed Removal A-B (A085/A087)	115- 2
A073 1476	LED Cover	15-40
A073 2553	Bracket - Upper Limit Sensor	33-51
A073 2556	Upper Limit Feeler - LCT	33-50
A073 2561	Wire Link (A087/A088)	33-21
A073 2562	Wire Hook	33-47
A073 2566	Pulley Bracket	33-48
A073 2569	Wire Slider	33-49
A073 2575	By-pass Feed Table Ass'y - LT	29- 4
A073 2577	Lever - By-pass Feed Table	29-19
A073 2583	Paper Size Actuator - LT	31-19
A073 2739	Decal - Loading Paper	31-12
A073 2739	Decal - Loading Paper	115-27
A073 3110	Toner Supply Unit - NA	53- *
A073 3112	Upper Casing - Toner Supply - NA	53- 4
A073 4149	Decal - Removing Misfeed Paper Fusing	63-24
A073 4149	Decal - Removing Misfeed Paper Fus.	115-35
A073 4912	Decal - Duplex Misfeed Removal	91- 9
A073 5181	LCT Interface Board (A087/A088)	83-13
A073 5331	DC Harness - Paper Feed (A087)	83- 9
A073 5331	DC Harness - Paper Feed (A087)	105- *
A073 5338	Paper Feed Harness - LCT	33-37
A073 5350	Fuse Harness - 3.15A/125V	83-14
A073 5350	Fuse Harness - 3.15A/125V	85-10
A074 1326	Decal - Misfeed Removal C (A088)	11-23
A074 1326	Decal - Misfeed Removal C (A088)	115- 1
A074 1327	Decal - Misfeed Removal A-B (A088)	11-22
A074 1327	Decal - Misfeed Removal A-B (A088)	115- 2

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A074 4912	Decal - Duplex Misfeed Removal	115- 3
A074 5331	DC Harness - Paper Feed (A088)	83- 9
A074 5331	DC Harness - Paper Feed (A088)	105- *
A074 8607	Operating Instructions - English - LT	115- 33
A074 8608	Operating Instructions - English (AA, TWN)	115- 33
A086 5331	DC Main Harness - 230V (A088)	81- 6
A086 5331	Dc Main Harness - 230V (A088)	83- 2
A086 5331	DC Main Harness - 230V (A088)	85- 18
A086 5331	DC Main Harness - 230V (A088)	103- *
A326 1088	Gear Fixing Bracket	79- 11
A328 1091	Cover Plate	65- 25
A328 1095	Gear Bracket	65- 20
A334 4503	Duplex Tray Unit - LT	89- *
A334 4504	Duplex Tray Unit - A4	89- *
A334 4620	Duplex Upper Cover	91- 8
A334 4625	Duplex Left Cover	89- 1
A334 4651	Jogger End Fence - Lower	89- 14
A334 4652	Jogger End Fence - Upper	89- 12
A334 4655	End Fence Guide	89- 31
A334 4657	Paper Guide	89- 43
A334 4663	Mylar Seal - 0.1x8.3x13	89- 45
A334 4666	Mylar Seal - 0.2x9x16	89- 44
A334 4670	Front Side Plate	93- 19
A334 4672	Grounding Plate	93- 22
A334 4676	Guide Plate Stopper	93- 25
A334 4680	Rear Side Plate	93- 30
A334 4683	Stopper - Upper Guide Plate	93- 34
A334 4687	Front Guide Mylar	89- 25
A334 4688	Rear Guide Mylar	89- 26
A334 4690	Turn Gate Feeler	91- 21
A334 4694	Pressure Plate	89- 22
A334 4700	Feed Motor Bracket	91- 2
A334 4705	Stopper - Bottom Plate Clutch	93- 21
A334 4706	Disk - Bottom Plate Clutch	93- 13
A334 4707	Stopper - Bottom Plate Clutch	13- 24

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A334 4710	Bracket - Paper End Sensor	93- 35
A334 4720	Duplex Stay	91- 10
A334 4724	Turn Gate Solenoid	93- 6
A334 4726	Turn Gate Hook	93- 3
A334 4727	Turn Gate Link	93- 5
A334 4730	Upper Guide Plate	91- 14
A334 4740	Spring Plate	91- 13
A334 4750	Lower Guide Plate	91- 24
A334 4753	Paper Flatenner	91- 25
A334 4755	Guide Plate	91- 22
A334 4765	Guide Plate - Paper Feed	91- 29
A334 4780	Mylar Seal - 0.5x22x24	91- 36
A334 4785	Mylar Seal - 0.5x18x22.5	91- 30
A334 4790	Turn Guide Plate	91- 26
A334 4811	Separation Roller Holder	91- 35
A334 4813	Separation Roler Shaft	91- 34
A334 4822	Feed Roller Shaft	93- 11
A334 4823	Bushing - Feed Roller	93- 36
A334 4825	Paper Support Guide	93- 40
A334 4860	Connector Bracket	89- 8
A334 4865	Release Lever	91- 3
A334 4870	Tray Lock Guide	89- 40
A334 4875	Guide Bracket - Left Rail	89- 18
A334 4877	Rail Guide	89- 17
A334 4880	Guide Bracket - Right Rail	89- 29
A334 4890	Tray Positioning Bracket	89- 30
A334 4893	Grounding Plate	93- 31
A334 5166	Duplex Control Board	89- 4
A334 5278	Duplex Feed Motor - DC24V	91- 1
A334 5279	Jogger Motor - DC24V	89- 3
A334 5330	Main Harness - Duplex	89- 2
A334 5331	Sub Harness - Duplex	93- 32
A334 5332	Grounding Harness	91- 38
A335 1211	LCT Front Cover (A087/A088)	13- 23
A335 1221	Front Lower Cover - Right	37- 20

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A335 1231	LCT Rear Cover (A087/A088)	13-22
A335 1241	Rear Lower Cover - Right	37-19
A335 1253	LCT Top Cover	37-1
A335 1269	Cover Guard Tape	37-24
A335 1271	Decal - Paper Set	37-23
A335 1271	Decal - Paper Set	115-28
A335 1311	Top Cover Plate	37-2
A335 1331	Door Catch Bracket	37-4
A335 1341	Chain Hook	37-5
A335 3110	Front Side Plate	41-1
A335 3141	Safety Switch Bracket	37-10
A335 3151	Safety Switch Arm	37-11
A335 3161	Safety Switch Actuator	37-12
A335 3210	Rear Side Plate	41-2
A335 3231	Bracket - Lower Limit Sensor	41-3
A335 3251	Top Cover Hinge	37-13
A335 3252	Hinge Plate	37-14
A335 3261	Rear Hinge Bracket	37-15
A335 3280	Positioning Pin	41-5
A335 3330	Motor Bracket	41-7
A335 3411	Bottom Plate	41-16
A335 3412	Right Tape - Bottom Plate	41-22
A335 3413	Left Tape - Bottom Plate	41-23
A335 3421	Feed-in Guide	41-18
A335 3422	Cover Plate	37-16
A335 3431	Stay	41-19
A335 3441	Motor Cover Plate	37-21
A335 3451	Bottom Cover Plate	41-20
A335 3461	Harness Guide Plate	41-21
A335 4220	Front Side Fence	39-6
A335 4241	Front Spring Plate	39-7
A335 4260	Rear Side Fence	39-8
A335 4281	Rear Spring Plate	39-9
A335 4291	Lift Stay	39-10
A335 4320	Right Stay	39-12

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
A335 4322	Left Stay	39-13
A335 4341	Tray Bottom Plate	39-14
A335 4346	Front Support Plate	39-20
A335 4347	Rear Support Plate	39-21
A335 4348	Upper Support Plate	39-22
A335 4351	Guide Roller	39-18
A335 4352	Timing Belt Clump	39-19
A335 4353	Upper Stay	37-17
A335 4354	Guide - By-pass Feed Table	37-18
A335 5110	LCT Operation Board	37-7
A335 5210	LCT Lift Motor - DC9W	41-11
A335 5330	LCT Harness	37-22
A335 5330	LCT Harness	41-17
A335 5330	LCT Harness (A087/A088)	109-*
A340 1488	Chain Hook	39-11
A406 9505	Platen Cover Sheet (10pcs/set)	17-14
A421 2543	Friction Pad	39-15
A470 1703	Shift Clutch	67-21
A470 1704	Spring - Lower Exit Roller	67-22
A491 4630	Bottom Cover	89-33
A491 4640	Side Fence Rack	89-41
A491 4645	End Fence Rack	89-38
A491 4647	Cushion - Side Fence Rack	89-39
A491 4650	Jog Registration Plate	89-20
A491 4660	Jog Sensor Bracket	89-5
A491 4686	Cushion - Tray Bottom Plate	89-36
A491 4690	Bottom Plate Hook	89-21
A491 4715	Paper End Actuator	93-28
A491 4740	Guide Plate Link	91-16
A491 4787	Jog Plate	91-37
A491 4890	Harness Clamp Plate	89-32
GA04 3013	Timing Belt - 408x10x3	77-7
5053 0223	Bushing - 8mm	33-10
5053 0223	Bushing - 8mm	39-5
5053 0223	Bushing - 8mm	43-11

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
5053 0223	Bushing - 8mm	79-13
5053 0447	Bushing - 6mm	33-16
5053 0447	Bushing - 6mm (A088)	67-2
5053 0447	Bushing - 6mm	79-18
5171 1606	Spring - Wire Hook	33-52
5203 1686	Screw - Slid Rail	59-22
5203 3151	Roller Cover Spring	79-24
5203 9501	Grease 501	117-1
5205 1853	Mylar Seal - Base	27-21
5205 2698	Relay Roller Spring	43-24
5205 2865	Bushing - Paper Feed Roller	33-14
5205 2866	Magnetic Clutch Collar	77-27
5205 3103	Bushing - 6x13	51-7
5205 4527	Spring - Exit (A088)	65-4
5205 5250	LED Sensor Type S	41-4
5205 5250	LED Sensor Type S	93-26
5205 5251	LED Sensor Type-T	17-20
5205 5405	Transfomer - 115V	85-20
5206 2684	Shoulder Screw - M3	45-8
5206 2686	Snap Ring	33-4
5206 2686	Snap Ring (A088)	67-18
5206 2686	Snap Ring	91-15
5215 1806	Pulley	27-13
5215 1812	Lens Drive Pulley	23-22
5215 1980	Exposure Glass	13-1
5215 2618	Feed Roller Hub	43-29
5215 2619	Feed Roller	43-30
5215 2621	Snap Ring - M6	93-37
5215 2713	Bottom Plate Pad	31-46
5215 2832	Platen Cover Hinge Ass'y	17-3
5215 2834	Arm Holder	17-8
5215 2836	Sleeve - 8 x 34 mm	17-24
5215 2837	Shaft 7 x 40 mm	17-15
5215 2838	Rubber Magnet	17-2
5215 2839	Balancer Spring	17-13
5215 2840	Pin - 4 x 115 mm	17-10
5215 2842	Right Spring - Platen Cover	17-17
5215 2843	Left Spring - Platen Cover	17-16
5215 2844	Slide Supporter	17-7
5215 2845	Plate - Magnet	17-4
5215 2846	Platen Base	17-18
5215 2847	Base Holder	17-5
5215 3295	Hopper Filter	53-7
5215 3327	Shaft - Agitator	53-11
5215 3328	Joint - Hopper	53-13
5215 3347	Spring - Gear	53-12
5215 3394	Seal - 12x406mm	53-30
5215 3399	Seal - 50x19mm	53-17
5216 2676	Spring - Engage Gear Bracket	75-3
5216 2676	Spring - Engage Gear Bracket	75-15
5216 4145	Thermofuse Decal	61-35
5216 4145	Thermofuse Decal	115-38
5216 5245	Photointerruptor - IL-G-3P-S3T2-E	93-29
5304 1639	Bushing - 8mm	75-14
5304 1639	Bushing - 8mm	93-41
5400 3404	Stepped Screw	43-39
5408 5160	Short Connector	81-1
5408 5160	Short Connector	103-1
5413 1875	Knob Screw	73-7
5413 2300	Spring - Trailing Clamp	59-9
5419 5714	Stepped Screw - M4	91-4
5420 1515	Plate - Key Counter	13-21
5420 1515	Plate - Key Counter	75-11
5420 9507	Digital Multimeter - Beckman	117-2
5420 9516	Test Chart - OS - A3 (10psc/Set)	117-5
5424 4142	Bushing - Cleaning Roller	63-6
5429 1236	Tightener Spring	59-13
5429 3561	Ball Bearing - 10x26x8	51-3
5439 5246	Totalizer Ass'y -230V	81-9
5442 1111	Spring - Main Drive Tightener	77-10

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
5442 1111	Spring - Main Drive Tightener	79- 8
5442 1372	Decal - Power Source - 220V	13- 11
5442 1372	Decal - Power Source - 220V	115- 37
5442 1855	Seal	23- 11
5442 1855	Seal	27- 2
5442 2107	Hookless Spring	49- 13
5442 2108	Spring - Corona Wire	49- 22
5442 2108	Spring - Corona Wire	57- 3
5442 2110	Plug - Corona Unit	49- 10
5442 2638	Collar - Friction Pad Arm	31- 20
5442 3585	Bushing	33- 29
5442 4467	Spring - Stripper Pawl Plate	43- 2
5442 4467	Spring - Stripper Pawl Plate	59- 28
5442 5385	Tatal Counter - 115V	81- 9
5442 9103	Launa Oil	117- 4
5442 9106	Drum Shoe	117- 9
5443 2668	Bushing	87- 1
5443 2668	Bushing	93- 10
5446 3648	Stepped Screw - M4	55- 23
5446 5298	Key Plate - Tray Button	37- 8
5446 6334	Front Spring - Tray Pressure (A088)	71- 10
5447 2678	Slip Clutch Cover	33- 34
5447 2681	Snap Ring	33- 6
5447 2681	Snap Ring	43- 28
5447 2681	Snap Ring	93- 15
5447 2697	Cylindrical Spring	33- 32
5447 2768	Stepped Screw - M3	91- 17
5447 2769	Stepped Screw	61- 23
5447 2804	Gear - 15T	35- 16
5447 2805	Slide Pin Holder	35- 3
5447 2806	Gear - 15T & 40T	35- 15
5447 2812	Slide Gear Spring	35- 13
5447 2927	Friction Pad - B	29- 6
5447 3236	Gear - 23T	65- 19
5447 9078	Heat Resisting Grease MT-78	117- 3

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
5447 9104	Shoe Adaptor	117- 10
5448 2803	Platen Cover Pad	17- 12
5840 1632	Stepped Screw	63- 20
5875 1521	Shoulder Screw - M4	67- 6
5897 1490	Stopper Chain	37- 6
5918 3120	Stud - M4	75- 13
5925 2258	Stopper Chain	39- 17
6754 2866	Roller - Positioning Guide	31- 7

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
0313 0030B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x3	89-110
0313 0030B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x3	93-105
0313 0040W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x4	27-109
0313 0040W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x4	45-104
0313 0040W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x4	87-109
0313 0040W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x4	89-111
0313 0040W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x4	93-109
0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	21-100
0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	23-105
0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	35-108
0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	55-105
0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	89-102
0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	91-103
0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	19-102
0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	39-103
0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	87-104
0313 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x10	31-108
0313 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x10	61-108
0313 0120W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x12	73-105
0313 0300W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x30	37-104
0313 0350W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x35	45-105
0314 0040W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x4	27-102
0314 0040W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x4	79-100
0314 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x5	25-104
0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	17-101
0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	21-106
0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	25-106
0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	27-110
0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	31-106
0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	37-107
0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	43-102
0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	51-100
0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	71-100
0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	73-101
0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	79-105
0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	89-106
0314 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	91-105
0314 0080W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x8	17-102
0314 0080W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x8	25-105
0314 0080W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x8	49-100
0314 0080W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x8	51-101
0314 0080W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x8	69-102
0314 0080W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x8	81-100
0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	17-103
0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	25-103
0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	33-106
0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	35-107
0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	41-102
0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	51-104
0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	87-107
0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	89-101
0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	93-104
0314 0120W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x12	21-104
0314 0120W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x12	61-100
0314 0200W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x20	47-104
0314 0400W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x40	37-106
0315 0080W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M5x8	85-107
0323 0060W	Philips Sunken Head Screw - M3x6	13-103
0323 0060W	Philips Sunken Head Screw - M3x6	75-105
0323 0140W	Philips Sunk Head Screw - M3x14	31-101
0344 0080F	Philips Truss Head Screw - M4x8	37-101
0344 0100F	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	37-102
0353 0050F	Tapping Screw - M3x5	89-107
0353 0050F	Tapping Screw - M3x5	91-106
0353 0050W	Tapping Screw - M3x5	53-102
0413 0062W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	47-100
0413 0062W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	49-104
0413 0062W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	89-109
0413 0062W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	91-102
0413 0062W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	93-100

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	31-100
0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	49-101
0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	55-101
0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	57-100
0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	73-104
0413 0142W	Tapping Screw - M3x14	55-102
0414 0080F	Binding Self Tapping Screw - M4x8	37-110
0414 0082F	Philips Truss Head Screw - M4x8	11-104
0414 0082F	Philips Truss Head Screw - M4x8	29-103
0414 0082W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	43-108
0414 0102F	Tapping Screw - M4x10	31-104
0414 0102W	Tapping Screw - M4x10	17-104
0414 0102W	Tapping Screw - M4x10	31-109
0433 0060W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	27-104
0433 0140W	Tapping Screw - M3x14	67-104
0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	21-101
0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	21-103
0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	23-102
0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	25-102
0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	27-100
0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	33-105
0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	59-100
0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	61-101
0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	63-103
0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	65-107
0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	69-100
0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	79-111
0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	81-101
0434 0060W	Tapping Screw - M4x6	85-102
0434 0062W	Pan Head Tapping Screw - M4x6	23-104
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	11-101
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	13-101
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	33-102
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	35-100
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	37-103

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	39-105
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	41-103
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	43-100
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	45-103
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	49-103
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	59-101
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	65-104
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	67-100
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	69-101
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	71-101
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	73-102
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	75-102
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	77-106
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	79-103
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	81-103
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	83-104
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	85-101
0434 0080W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	87-102
0434 0082W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	11-105
0434 0082W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	13-102
0434 0082W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	15-101
0434 0082W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	21-105
0434 0082W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	23-106
0434 0082W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	27-108
0434 0082W	Tapping Screw - M4x8	65-108
0434 0352W	Pan Head Self - Tapping Screw - M4x35	77-100
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	91-100
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	93-106
0573 0060E	Hexagon Headless Set Screw - M3x6	27-107
0574 0050E	Hexagon Headless Set Screw - M4x5	77-110
0575 0060E	Hexagon Headless Set Screw - M5x6	77-105
0622 0100E	Spring Pin - 2x10mm	67-106
0623 0160E	Spring Pin - 3x16mm	39-101
0632 0100G	Pin - 2x10mm	33-103
0701 0060B	Flat Washer - M6	67-103

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
0707 4050W	Bushing - 4x5	41-108
0707 4060B	Bushing - 4x5	77-103
0720 0020E	Retaining Ring - M2	47-103
0720 0020E	Retaining Ring - M2	53-106
0720 0025E	Retaining Ring - M2.5	89-100
0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	31-107
0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	33-107
0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	41-104
0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	43-106
0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	59-104
0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	87-100
0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	93-102
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	23-103
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	25-100
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	27-106
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	31-103
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	33-100
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	35-101
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	41-106
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	43-101
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	45-102
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	51-103
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	53-103
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	55-103
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	59-102
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	61-104
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	63-101
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	65-105
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	67-101
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	69-105
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	71-103
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	75-100
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	79-101
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	87-110
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	89-104

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	91-101
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	93-101
0720 0050E	Retaining Ring - M5	53-104
0720 0050E	Retaining Ring - M5	63-104
0720 0050E	Retaining Ring - M5	65-106
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	27-103
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	33-101
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	35-102
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	39-102
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	43-107
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	45-101
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	53-100
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	61-105
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	65-103
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	75-103
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	77-102
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	79-104
0720 0080E	Retaining Ring - M8	93-103
0725 0100E	Retaining Ring C - M10	33-104
0725 0100E	Retaining Ring C - M10	51-102
0725 0170E	Retaining Ring C - M17	77-101
0725 0250E	Retaining Ring - M25	61-102
0740 3008	Ball Bearing	77-107
0740 3017	Ball Bearing - M17	77-108
0801 1185	Philips Truss Head Screw - M4x8	47-105
0802 5094	Tapping Truss Head Screw - M4x8	11-100
0802 5094	Tapping Truss Head Screw - M4x8	13-100
0802 5131	Truss Head Screw - M4x8	17-105
0803 0017	Knob Screw - M4x6.5	39-104
0805 0073	Retaining Ring - M5	29-104
0805 0073	Retaining Ring - M5	31-111
0805 0073	Retaining Ring - M5	89-103
0805 0077	Retaining Ring - 8mm	63-102
0805 0083	Retaing Ring - M4	17-108
0805 0083	Retaing Ring - M4	29-105

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
0805 3104	Ball Bearing - 8x22x7mm	61- 5
0805 3377	Ball Bearing - 25x42x9mm	61-103
0805 3384	Bushing - 5mm	41-105
0805 3441	Ball Bearing - 8x22mm	47- 25
0807 4103	Spacer - 0.5mm	53-105
0807 7046	Washer - 10.5x20x0.2mm	93-110
0807 7081	Washer	91-107
0950 3008W	Philips Screw With Lock Washer - M3x8	19-100
0950 5012M	Screw - M5x12	85-103
0951 3005W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x5	23-100
0951 3005W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x5	61-109
0951 3005W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x5	89-108
0951 3006F	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	31-105
0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	19-105
0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	21-102
0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	73-100
0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	89-105
0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	91-104
0951 3008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x8	23-101
0951 3010W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x10	55-104
0951 3012W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x1	19-101
0951 3014W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x14	55-100
0951 4006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	19-103
0951 4006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	21-107
0951 4006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	25-107
0951 4006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	49-107
0951 4006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	53-101
0951 4006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	93-107
0951 4008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	21-108
0951 4008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	37-109
0951 4008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	45-100
0951 4008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	47-101
0951 4008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	49-102
0951 4010W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x10	77-104
0951 4020W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4	47-106

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
0951 5014W	Philips Screw W/H Flat Washer - M5x14	17-106
0952 3006W	Philips Screw - M3x6	47-102
0952 3006W	Philips Screw - M3x6	57-101
0952 3006W	Philips Screw - M3x6	85-106
0953 4008M	Screw - M4x8	13-104
0960 3006W	Philips Flange Screw - M3x6	11-103
0960 3008W	Philips Flange Screw - M3x8	29-102
0960 4006W	Philips Flange Screw - M4x6	43-105
0960 4006W	Philips Flange Screw - M4x6	83-102
0960 4006W	Philips Flange Screw - M4x6	87-106
0960 4010W	Philips Flange Screw - M4x10	87-105
0960 4012W	Philips Flange Screw - M4x12	35-105
0960 4030W	Philips Flange Screw - M4x30	65-102
0964 3005W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M3x5	61-107
0964 4006W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	25-101
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	29-101
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M4x8	33-108
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	35-104
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	49-108
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	61-106
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	63-100
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	65-101
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M4x8	67-102
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	69-103
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	77-109
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	79-110
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	83-101
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	87-108
0964 4010W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M4	37-108
0964 4010W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M4	41-107
0964 4010W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M4	69-110
0965 3008W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M3x8	31-102
0965 3010W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M3x10	31-112
0965 4008W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer-M4x8	11-102
0965 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	43-103

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
0965 4012W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x12	17-107
0965 4080W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M4x8	31-110
0971 3006A	Philips Polycarbonate Screw - M3x6	49-105
0971 3006A	Philips Polycarbonate Screw - M3x6	49-106
1100 0340	Connector - 1P	103-101
1100 0341	Closed Terminal	103-102
1100 0342	Closed Terminal	103-103
1100 0844	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	103-104
1100 0853	Closed Terminal	101-101
1100 0916	Connector - 2P	101-102
1100 0965	Pin - Mate-n-lock	107-101
1100 1153	Terminal	103-105
1100 1155	Contact	103-106
1100 1155	Contact	109-101
1100 1171	Fastening Receptacle	101-104
1100 1172	Fastening Receptacle	101-105
1100 1172	Fastening Receptacle	103-108
1100 1172	Fastening Receptacle	109-102
1100 1200	Terminal	103-109
1100 1204	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	103-110
1100 1204	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	105-101
1100 1204	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	109-103
1100 1205	Terminal	101-106
1100 1205	Terminal	105-102
1100 1205	Terminal	109-104
1100 1238	Pin - Mate-N-Lock	101-107
1100 1239	Pin - Mate-N-Lock	101-108
1100 1239	Pin - Mate-N-Lock	103-111
1100 1240	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	101-109
1100 1240	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	103-112
1100 1241	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	101-110
1100 1241	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	103-155
1100 1247	Terminal	101-111
1100 1247	Terminal	103-113
1100 1249	Receptacle Terminal	103-114
1100 1249	Receptacle Terminal	105-103
1100 1249	Receptacle Terminal	107-104
1100 1249	Receptacle Terminal	109-105
1100 1259	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	103-115
1100 1322	Contact	103-116
1100 1322	Contact	109-106
1100 1327	Contact	103-117
1100 1328	Contact	103-118
1100 1339	Pin Contact	101-112
1100 1342	Terminal	107-105
1100 1344	Pin Contact	101-113
1100 1346	Pin Contact	103-120
1100 1346	Pin Contact	107-106
1100 1348	Pin Contact	103-121
1100 1348	Pin Contact	105-104
1100 1374	Terminal	103-122
1100 1490	Pin Contact	105-105
1100 1527	Contact	107-107
1100 1625	Receptacle - F187	103-123
1101 0328	Connector Pin Contact	97-101
1102 0185	Connector - 4P	103-124
1102 0782	Connector - 4P	101-131
1102 0983	Connector - 2P	101-114
1102 1006	Pin Housing - 1P	107-108
1102 1089	Connector - 3P	103-125
1102 1286	Connector - 2P	103-126
1102 1286	Connector - 2P	109-107
1102 1401	Receptacle Housing - 1P	101-116
1102 1402	Receptacle Housing - 1P	101-117
1102 1402	Receptacle Housing - 1P	103-127
1102 1402	Receptacle Housing - 1P	109-108
1102 1403	Receptacle Housing	101-118
1102 1404	Connector - 1P	101-119
1102 1404	Connector - 1P	103-128
1102 1404	Connector - 1P	109-109

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
1102 1426	Connector - 3P	103-130
1102 1426	Connector - 3P	105-106
1102 1507	Connector - 2P	101-120
1102 1508	Connector - 3P	101-121
1102 1509	Connector - 4P	103-131
1102 1514	Connector - 1P	101-122
1102 1515	Connector - 2P	101-123
1102 1515	Connector - 2P	103-132
1102 1524	Connector - 2P	101-124
1102 1532	Connector - 2P	101-125
1102 1547	Connector - 2P (Blue)	101-130
1102 1551	Connector - 2P	101-103
1102 1620	Connector - 3P	105-107
1102 1620	Connector - 3P	107-109
1102 1620	Connector - 3P	109-110
1102 1621	Receptacle Housing - 3P	109-111
1102 1628	Connector - 9P	105-108
1102 1632	Connector - 4P	103-133
1102 1634	Connector - 5P	103-134
1102 1692	Connector - 2P	103-135
1102 1692	Connector - 2P	105-109
1102 1692	Connector - 2P	107-110
1102 1692	Connector - 2P	109-112
1102 1693	Connector - 7P	105-110
1102 1714	Connector - 6P	103-136
1102 1729	Connector - 6P	103-137
1102 1729	Connector - 6P	105-111
1102 1746	Connector - 8P	105-112
1102 1747	Connector - 15P	103-138
1102 1787	Connector - 3P	103-139
1102 1787	Connector - 3P	105-113
1102 1815	Connector - 3P	101-126
1102 1831	Connector - 4P	103-140
1102 1878	Connector - 3P	101-115
1102 1912	Connector - 4P	103-141

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
1102 1919	Connector - 11P	83-106
1102 1919	Connector - 11P	103-143
1102 1940	Connector - 4P	103-144
1102 2979	Connector - 14P	99-101
1102 2986	Connector - 14P	97-102
1102 3203	Contact	101-127
1102 3983	Connector - 24P	103-146
1102 4124	Connecter - 1P	107-103
1102 4205	CT Header- 6P	97-103
1102 4209	CT Header- 10P	97-104
1102 4293	Connector - 64P	103-147
1102 4969	Connector - 50P	103-148
1102 5003	Connector - 2P	97-105
1102 5186	Connector - 14P	107-102
1102 5187	Connector - 14P	101-128
1102 5250	Connector - 11P	103-149
1102 5251	Receptacle Housing - 16P	103-150
1102 5260	Plug Housing - 6P	105-114
1102 5262	Plug Housing - 5P	101-129
1102 5264	Plug Housing - 7P	109-113
1102 5266	Plug Housing - 9P	109-114
1102 5272	Connector - 2P	103-151
1102 5272	Connector - 2P	105-115
1102 5278	Connector - 6P	97-106
1102 5279	Connector - 7P	97-107
1102 5280	Connector - 8P	97-108
1102 5281	Connector - 9P	97-109
1102 5283	Connector - 11P	97-110
1102 5287	Receptacle Housing - 5P	103-152
1102 5288	Receptacle Housing - 6P	103-153
1102 5289	Connector - 7P	103-154
1102 5289	Connector - 7P	109-115
1102 5290	Connector - 8P	103-142
1102 5291	Connector - 9P	103-129
1102 5375	Connector - 50P	97-111

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
1102 5376	Connector - 30P	97-112
1102 5620	Plug Housing - NSW - 01 - 3PH	103-119
1103 0441	Connector - 4P	97-113
1103 0657	Connector - 50P	105-116
1103 0658	Connector - 40P	105-117
1103 0660	Connector - 16P	103-115
1103 3020	Connector - 20P	97-114
1103 3022	Connector - 30P	97-115
1103 3024	Connector	97-116
1103 3025	Connector - 50P	97-117
1103 3027	Connector - 64P	97-118
1104 0224	Relay Bracket	87-101
1104 0339	IC Socket - 64P	97-119
1104 0589	DIP Socket : 32P	97-120
1105 0159	PCB Stud	83-103
1105 0159	PCB Stud	85-104
1105 0183	Spacer	83-100
1105 0197	Wire Saddle	35-103
1105 0197	Wire Saddle	41-101
1105 0197	Wire Saddle	69-104
1105 0197	Wire Saddle	71-102
1105 0197	Wire Saddle	85-100
1105 0199	Clamp	25-108
1105 0199	Clamp	43-104
1105 0199	Clamp	45-106
1105 0199	Clamp	59-103
1105 0199	Clamp	65-109
1105 0199	Clamp	67-105
1105 0199	Clamp	69-109
1105 0199	Clamp	79-102
1105 0199	Clamp	81-102
1105 0199	Clamp	83-105
1105 0199	Clamp	85-109
1105 0200	Clamp	27-101
1105 0200	Clamp	27-105

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
1105 0200	Clamp	79-106
1105 0201	Harness Clamp	35-106
1105 0201	Harness Clamp	69-106
1105 0201	Harness Clamp	79-109
1105 0229	Clamp	69-107
1105 0229	Clamp	75-101
1105 0229	Clamp	79-107
1105 0231	Clamp	91-108
1105 0231	Clamp	93-108
1105 0262	Wire Saddle	75-104
1105 0262	Wire Saddle	79-108
1105 0287	Wire Saddle	27-112
1105 0287	Wire Saddle	69-108
1106 0193	Bushing - 7.9mm	41-109
1106 0200	Bushing - 19.44mm	73-103
1106 0241	Bushing - 6.7mm	41-110
1107 0392	Fuse - 6.3A	83-108
1107 0460	Fuse - 220/240V (230V)	83-107
1107 0472	Circuit Breaker - 250V/8A	85-105
1107 0486	Fuse 8A 250V	85-108
1107 0652	Fuse - 10A 250V (115V)	83-107
1150 0019	Power Supply Cord - 220/240V	85- 6
1150 0327	Power Supply Cord - 125V	85- 6
1204 1545	Main Switch	81-104
1204 2136	Micro Switch	37-105
1204 2188	Interlock Switch (A088)	67- 13
1208 1029	Power Relay	87-103
1400 0382	Transistor - 2SA1037KR	99-103
1400 0384	Transistor - 2SC2412KR	99-104
1400 0558	Transistor - 2SD780	97-121
1401 0826	Diode - 1SS181	97-122
1402 0476	Diode - 1SS184	99-105
1402 0682	Zener Diode - RD3.6M	99-106
1402 0688	Diode	97-123
1402 0804	Diode - 1SS294	97-124

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
1402 1035	Diode - S5688G	103-107
1402 1037	Diode - U1ZB12	97-125
1402 1055	Zener Diode - 1/2W 33V	109-116
1402 1122	Diode - MA159A	97-126
1404 0163	Diode - Z2010	97-127
1407 1600	IC - SN74LS244NS	97-128
1407 2187	IC - SN74LS07NS	97-129
1407 2231	IC - TD62308AF	97-130
1407 2746	IC - CXD1095Q	97-131
1407 2797	IC - TC5564AFL- 15	99-107
1407 2948	IC - TC7S04F	97-132
1407 3152	IC - TC74HC238F	97-133
1407 3202	IC - TC74HC00AF	97-134
1407 3245	IC - TC74HC32AF	97-135
1407 3258	IC - TC74HC139AF	97-136
1407 3285	IC - TC74HC08AF	97-137
1407 3286	IC - TC74HC04AF	97-138
1407 3412	IC - TC74HC165AF	97-139
1407 3692	IC - RF5C86	97-140
1407 3693	IC - uPD70325GJ-8-5BG	97-141
1407 3694	IC - SN74HC73NS	97-142
1407 3695	IC - HD74HC93FP	97-143
1407 3696	IC - TC74HC4050AF	97-144
1408 0595	IC - NJM2904M	97-145
1408 0598	IC - MB3773PF	97-146
1408 0873	Transistor Array - MPA1600GS	97-147
1408 0874	Transistor Array - M54587FP	97-148
1408 0875	Transistor Array - TD62382AF	97-149
1408 0877	IC - LM339NS	97-150
1408 0878	IC - 9104S	97-151
1408 0901	IC - NJM78M09FA	97-152
1408 0921	IC - MB3863PF	97-153
1503 0417	Far Oscillator - 15MHz	97-154
1503 0484	Cristal Oscilator - SG-635P-7.5mhz	97-155
1602 0707	EMI Filter - NFM52R10P206	97-156

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
1604 1353	Capaciter - 47uF 10V	97-157
1604 1728	Capacitor - 100uF 10V	97-158
1604 1958	Capacitor - 100uF 50V	97-159
1605 0192	Capacitor - 470pF 50V	97-160
1605 0222	Capacitor - 0.033uF 50V	97-161
1605 0636	Capaciter - 0.1uF	97-162
1606 1139	Capaciter - 0.01uF ±20%	97-163
1606 1454	Capacitor - 0.01uF 25V	99-108
1607 0551	Inductor - BLM32A07PB	97-164
1610 0286	Capacitor - 100pF 50V ±10%	97-165
1610 1162	Resistor - 82 Ω 1/4W ±5%	97-166
1630 2102	Resistor - 1K Ω 1/8W ±5%	97-167
1630 2103	Resistor - 10K Ω 1/8W	97-168
1630 2103	Resistor - 10K Ω 1/8W	99-109
1630 2104	Resistor - 100K Ω 1/8W ±5%	97-169
1630 2105	Resistor - 1M Ω 1/8W	97-170
1630 2152	Resistor - 1.5K Ω 1/8W ±5%	97-171
1630 2152	Resistor - 1.5K Ω 1/8W ±5%	99-110
1630 2161	Resistor - 160 Ω 1/8W ±5%	97-172
1630 2181	Resistor - 180 Ω 1/8W ±5%	97-173
1630 2221	Resistor - 220 Ω	97-174
1630 2223	Resistor - 22K Ω 1/8W ±5%	97-175
1630 2243	Resistor - 24K Ω 1/8W ±5%	97-176
1630 2332	Resistor - 3.3K Ω 1/8W ±5%	97-177
1630 2362	Resistor - 3.6K Ω 1/8W ±5%	97-178
1630 2390	Resistor - 39 Ω 1/8W	97-179
1630 2394	Resistor - 390K Ω 1/8W ±5%	97-180
1630 2472	Resistor - 4.7K Ω 1/8W ±5%	97-181
1630 2472	Resistor - 4.7K Ω 1/8W ±5%	99-111
1630 2511	Resistor - 510 Ω 1/8W	97-182
1630 2561	Resistor - 560 Ω ±5% 1/8W	97-183
1630 2824	Resistor - 820K Ω 1/8W ±5%	97-184
1632 0000	Resistor - 0 Ω 1/8W	97-185
1632 1502	Resistor - 15K Ω 1/8W ±1%	97-186
1632 4871	Resistor - 4.87K Ω 1/8W±1%	97-187

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.
1632 5231	Resistor - 5.23k Ω ±1%	97-188
1632 6191	Resistor - 6.19K Ω 1/8W ±1%	97-189

Part No.	Description	Paper and Index No.

INTRODUCTION

The A085/A087/A088 copier is based on the A069/A073/A074 copier, the base copier.

This documentation gathers the modifications to the base copier's service manual that service personnel will need to service this copier. This package contains the following:

- A table of contents for the modified manual
- A list of the major differences between this copier and the base copier
- A set of selected pages to replace the ones in the base copier's manual, including revised specifications SP mode tables.
- An explanation of this model's new functions
- An explanation of DF's (A497) new function
- A section for the new sorter stapler (A374)

IMPORTANT SAFETY NOTICES

PREVENTION OF PHYSICAL INJURY

1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the copier and peripherals, make sure that the copier power cord is unplugged.
2. The wall outlet should be near the copier and easily accessible.
3. Note that some components of the copier and the paper tray unit are supplied with electrical voltage even if the main switch is turned off.
4. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.
5. If the hot roller temperature is low when the main switch is turned on, the copier starts idling automatically when the warm-up period is completed. Keep hands away from the mechanical and the electrical components to avoid any injury.
6. If the start key is pressed before the copier completes the warm-up period (Ready indicator starts blinking), keep hands away from the mechanical and the electrical components as the copier starts making copies as soon as the warm-up period is completed.
7. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the copier is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.

HEALTH SAFETY CONDITIONS

1. Never operate the copier without the ozone filters installed.
2. Always replace the ozone filters with the specified ones at the specified intervals.
3. Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Try to remove with eye drops or flush with water as first aid. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.

OBSERVANCE OF ELECTRICAL SAFETY STANDARDS

1. The copier and its peripherals must be installed and maintained by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.
2. The RAM board on the main control board has a lithium battery which can explode if replaced incorrectly. Replace the battery only with an identical one. The manufacturer recommends replacing the entire RAM board. Do not recharge or burn this battery. Used batteries must be handled in accordance with local regulations.

SAFETY AND ECOLOGICAL NOTES FOR DISPOSAL

1. Do not incinerate the toner cartridge or the used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to open flame.
2. Dispose of used toner, developer, and organic photoconductor according to local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.
4. When keeping used lithium batteries in order to dispose of them later, do not put more than 100 batteries per sealed box. Storing larger numbers or not sealing them apart may lead to chemical reactions and heat build-up.

SECTION 1

OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1. MAJOR DIFFERENT POINTS FROM THE BASE COPIER : A069/A073/A074

The major different points of this copier A085/A087/A088 from the base copier A069/A073/A074 are listed in the following table:

No.	Section/Item	This model (A085/A087/A088)	Base model (A069/A073/A074)
	Major features		
1	Copy speed	27 copies/min. (A4/11 x "81/2" sideways) 16 copies/min. (A3) 15 copies/min. (11" x 17")	33 copies/min. (A4 / 11"X8 1/2" sideways) 19 copies/min. (A3) 18 copies/min. (11" x 17")
2	First copy time	5.4 seconds for type 1 & 3: upper tray 5.8 seconds for type 2: LCT (A4/11" x 81/2" sideways)	4.5 seconds for type 1 & 3: upper tray 4.9 seconds for type 2: LCT (A4/11" x 81/2" sideways)
3	Color copy	Not applicable	Option
4	Overlay mode	Not applicable	Standard for A074
5	Edit function	Not applicable	Option for A074
6	Shadows from pasted originals	Erased for normal thickness paper	Not erased
7	Combine 2 originals mode	Standard with ARDF	Not applicable
	Operation panel		
8	Guidance display	Not applicable	Standard for A074
9	Beeper	Not applicable	Standard
10	Indicators (LEDs)	The following indicators are not applicable: Color copy, full size, overlay, ten keys zoom, enlarge, reduce, special features, editor board guidance, area memory, used toner tank, close cover, set key counter, call service, zoom, start key (red/green)	Standard (Overlay/area memory; A074 only, editor board guidance; option)
		The following indicator has been newly added: Combine 2 originals	Not applicable
11	Keys	The following keys are not applicable: Color copy, ten keys zoom	Standard
	Optics		
12	1st scanner	Newly designed (The newly designed main reflector lets shadows be erased when copying pasted originals.)	Original

No.	Section/Item	This model (A085/A087/A088)	Base model (A069/A073/A074)
	Development		
13	Development unit shift mechanism	Not applicable	Standard
	Around the drum		
14	Automatic drum current adjustment	Not applicable	Standard
	Paper Feed		
15	Tray lock Solenoid (not for duplex tray)	Not applicable	Standard
	Fusing		
16	Fusing unit	Newly designed (Serviceability has been improved. The fusing roller pressure and the nip band width are less.)	Original
17	Pressure roller	Newly designed (The diameter at the middle is slightly smaller than that at the ends, reducing the occurrence ratio of creasing after fusing.)	Original (common with A006)
	Process control		
18	Process speed	150 mm/sec. (The main motor speed is the same, but its output is slowed down by a step-down pulley.)	180 mm/sec.
19	Grid bias voltage	Vgi (for image): -715 V Vgp (for sensor pattern): -480 V	Vgi (for image): -745 V Vgp (for sensor pattern): -500 V
20	Separation corona current	ac 190 µA	ac 210 µA
21	V_G correction	Applies another -20 V to the grid bias voltage after the drum has rotated 2, 44, 75, and 105 hours.	Applies another -20 V to the grid bias voltage after the drum has rotated 2, 37, 63, and 88 hours.
22	Exposure lamp voltage	The target lamp voltage for the first copy of a copy run is decreased by –0.5 V.	The target lamp voltage for all the copies of a copy run are the same.
23	Color toner density control	Not applicable	Standard
24	Development bias voltage control for color toner	Not applicable	Standard
	Peripheral equipment		
25	Color development unit	Not applicable	Option
26	Edit erase lamp unit (Editing interface adapter type B)	Not applicable	Option
27	Editor board	Not applicable	Option for A074

No.	Section/Item	This model (A085/A087/A088)	Base model (A069/A073/A074)
28	Sorter stapler (A366; fixed bin type)	Not applicable	Option
29	Sorter stapler (A374; moving bin type)	Option	Not applicable
30	Auto reverse document feeder (A497)	Option with combine 2 originals mode (The software has been changed. The ARDF with the new ROM has a different destination code. The ARDF can be also installed on other current models (A069/A073/A074/A053).)	Option

2. SPECIFICATIONS

Configuration: Desktop

Copy Process: Dry electrostatic transfer system

Originals: Sheet/Book

Original Size: Maximum A3/11" x 17"

Copy Paper Size:
Maximum A3/11" x 17"
Minimum B5/11" x 8 1/2" - Paper tray
A6/5 1/2" x 8 1/2"(lengthwise)
-By-pass feed table
(LCT B5/A4/11" x 8 1/2" sideways only)

(Duplex Copying)
Multiple: A4 and B5/8 1/2" x 11" (sideways)
Single: Maximum A3/11" x 17"
Minimum B5/8" x 13"

Copy Paper Weight:

- 250-sheet paper tray and 1000-sheet large capacity tray:
  52 –128g/m^2, 14 –34lb
- By-pass feed table:
  52 –157g/m^2, 14 –42lb
- Duplex:
  64 –105 g/m^2, 17 –28lb

Reproduction Ratios: 4 Enlargement and 6 Reduction

	A4/A3 Version	LT/LDG Version
Enlargement	200% 141% 122% 115%	200% 155% 129% 121%
Full Size	100%	100%
Reduction	93% 82% 75% 71% 65% 50%	93% 85% 77% 74% 65% 50%

Receiving Tray Capacity:
250 sheets (B4/8 1/2" x 14" and smaller)
100 sheets (A3/11" x 17")

Power Source: 115V, 60Hz, more than 12A (for N.A)
110V, 60Hz, (for Taiwan)
220/230/240V, 50Hz/60Hz, more than 8A (for EU and AA)

Power Consumption: Maximum: 1.5 KW
Warm-up: 0.77 KW
Stand-by: 0.14 KW
Copy Cycle (average): 1.2 KW

Noise Emission: Stand-by: less than 40 dB
Copy Cycle (average):
less than 56 dB (copier only)
less than 59 dB (full system)
Maximum:
less than 62 dB (copier only)
less than 65 dB (full system)

Dimensions:

	Width	Depth	Height
Type 1	697 mm (1035 mm) 27.4" (40.7")	600 mm 23.6"	542 mm (574 mm) 21.3" (22.6")
Type 2	871 mm (1075 mm) 34.3" (42.2")	600 mm 23.6"	542 mm (574 mm) 21.3" (22.6")
Type 3	871 mm (1075 mm) 34.3" (42.2")	600 mm 23.6"	542 mm (574 mm) 21.3" (22.6")

( ): When the by-pass feed table is opened, the copy tray is extended, and the platen cover is installed.

Weight: Copier only (Without the optional platen cover= Approximately 2 kg (4.4 lb))

Type 1: approximately 77 kg (169.4 lb)
Type 2: approximately 87 kg (191.4 lb)
Type 3: approximately 83 kg (182.6 lb)

Zoom: From 50% to 200% in 1% steps

Copying Speed: 27 copies/minute (A4/8½" x 11" sideways)
16 copies/minute (A3)
15 copies/minute ("11 x 17")

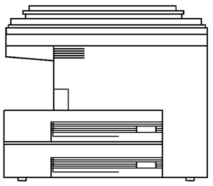
Copying Speed with ARDF: (Single copy (1 to 1), full size)
27 copies/minute (A4/8½" x 11" sideways)
16 copies/minute (A3)
15 copies/minute ("11 x 17")

Warm-up Time: Less than 110 seconds (20℃)

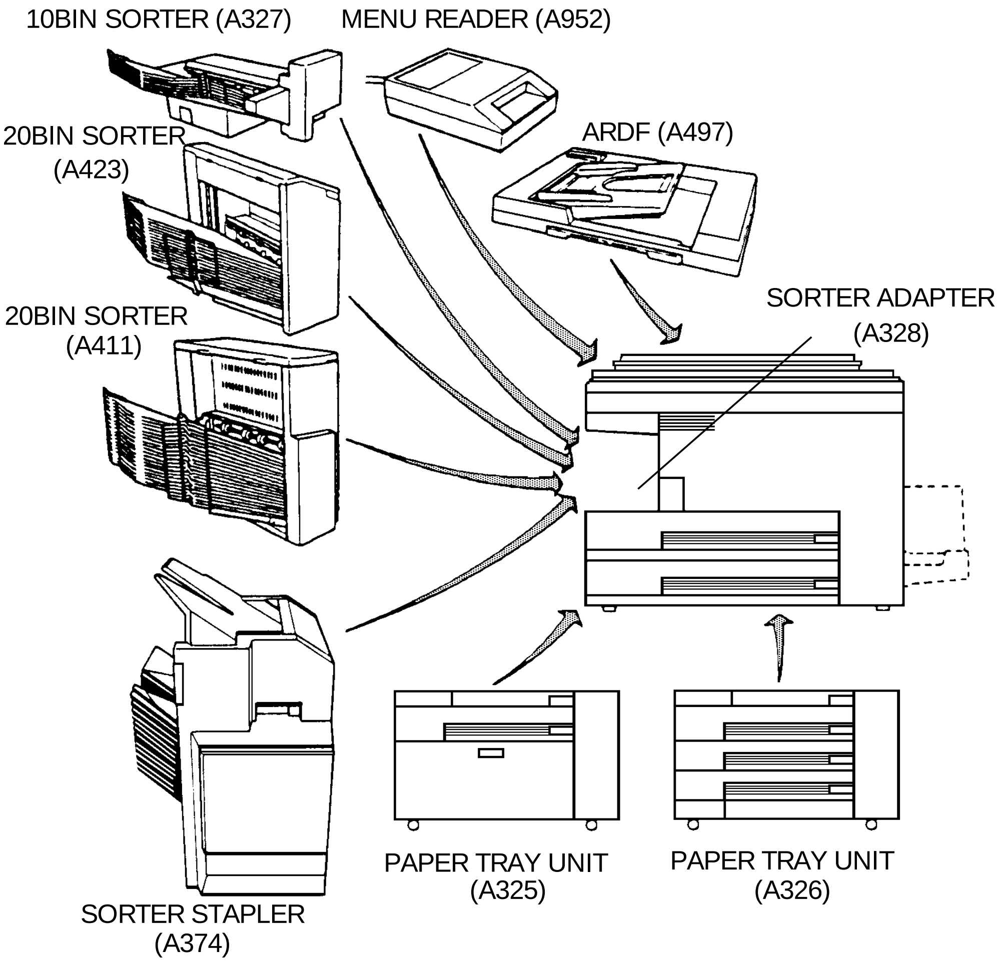
First Copy Time:	5.4 seconds (A4/8½" x 11" sideways) Type 1, 3: (Upper tray feed) 5.8 seconds Type 2: (Large capacity tray feed)
Copy Number Input:	Ten keys, 1 to 999 (count up or count down)
manual Image Density Selection:	7 steps
Automatic Reset:	1 minute standard setting; can also be set to 3 minutes or no auto reset.
Copy Paper Capacity:	• By-pass feed table; approximately 20 sheets • Paper tray: approximately 250 sheets • Large capacity tray; approximately 1000 sheets
Toner Replenishment:	Black: cartridge exchange (320 g/cartridge)
Optional Equipment:	• Platen cover • Document feeder • Paper tray unit with one paper tray • Paper tray unit with three paper trays • 10 bin micro sorter • 20 bin mini sorter • 20 bin midi sorter • 20 bin sorter stapler • Sorter adapter (needed when installing the mini or midi sorter, or the sorter stapler) • Interface PCB (needed when installing the sorter stapler or the menu reader) • Key counter • Menu reader (except for Europe) • A3 counter (service part)

3. MACHINE CONFIGURATION

3.1 COPIER

			
	TYPE 1 (A085)	TYPE 2 (A088)	TYPE 3 (A087)
UPPER TRAY	250	DUPLEX	250
LOWER TRAY	250	250	250
LCT	–	1,000	1,000

3.2 OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT


10BIN SORTER (A327)
MENU READER (A952)
20BIN SORTER (A423)
ARDF (A497)
20BIN SORTER (A411)
SORTER ADAPTER (A328)
SORTER STAPLER (A374)
PAPER TRAY UNIT (A325)
PAPER TRAY UNIT (A326)

		COPIER			REQUIRED OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT	
		TYPE 1 (A085)	TYPE 2 (A088)	TYPE3 (A087)	SORTER ADAPTER (A328)	INTERFACE PCB (A344)
PAPER TRAY UNIT	1 TRAY (A325)	o	o	o		
	3 TRAY (A326)	o	o	o		
SORTER	10 BIN (A327)	o	o	o		
	20 BIN MINI (A423)	o	o	o	*	
	20 BIN MIDI (A411)	o	o	o	*	
	20 BIN STAPLER (A374)	o	o	o	*	**
DOCUMENT FEEDER	ARDF (A497)	o	o	o		
MENU READER (A952)		o	o	o		**

NOTE: * The sorter adapter is required to install the 20 bin mini sorter, 20 bin midi sorter or sorter stapler.

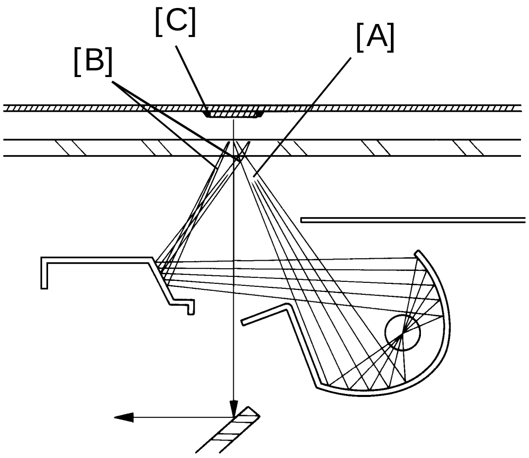
*** * The I/F board is required to install the sorter stapler or Menu Reader.**

SECTION 2

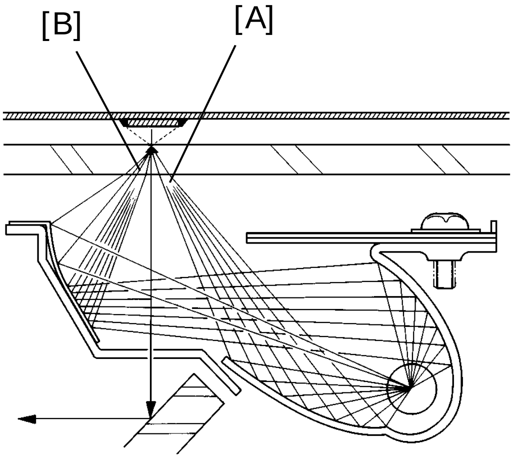
DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTION

1. OPTICS

1.1 FIRST SCANNER



[Fig. 1]



[Fig. 2]

The first scanner of this copier has been re-designed from the one for the base model (A069/A073/A074) to reduce shadows of pasted originals.

Although the exposure lamp’s rating voltage is the same, the shape of the reflectors have been changed, as shown above. Figure 1 is for the base model, and figure 2 is for this copier.

For figure 1, the light intensity [A] reflected from the main reflector is stronger than the light intensity [B] reflected from the sub reflector. The proportion is about 65% to 35%. Under this condition, as the scanner moves under the original, the lead edge shadow [C] of the pasted parts of an original might appear on copies.

For figure 2, the proportion of the light intensity [A,B] reflected from the main and sub reflectors is almost 50% to 50%. Under this condition, both the lead and trail edges of the pasted parts of an original will not make shadows.

Shadows might appear not only at the lead edge, but also the inner side of the pasted parts. The light intensity of the exposure lamp at both ends is slightly stronger than that at the center. This is necessary to have even exposure on the drum surface through the lens. Because of this, eliminating the side edge shadow of pasted parts of an original is very difficult. Although the light intensity distribution of the exposure lamp from end to end has been slightly changed on this model, the side edge shadow might appear on thick pasted originals.

SECTION 3

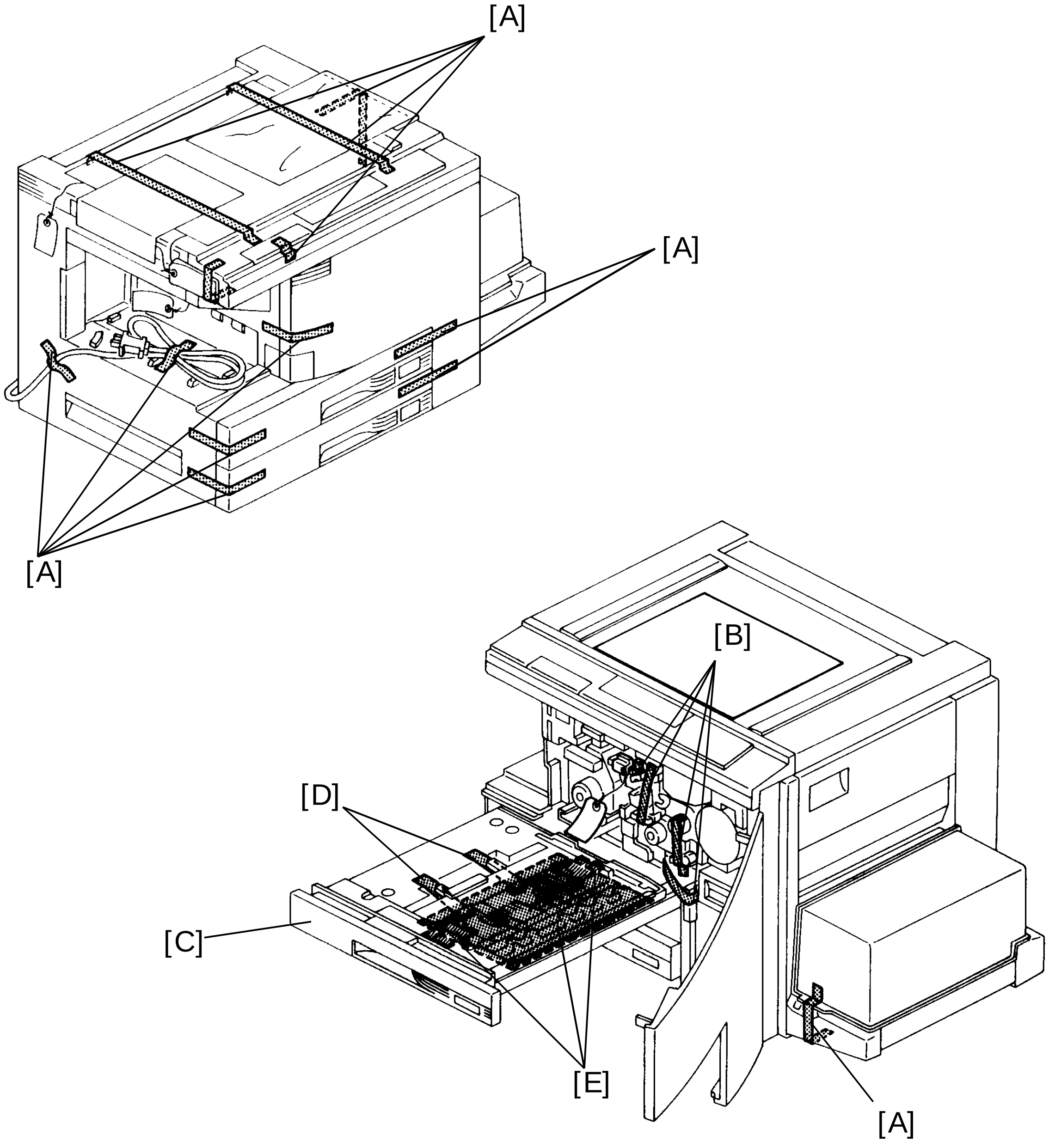
INSTALLATION

1. COPIER INSTALLATION

1.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

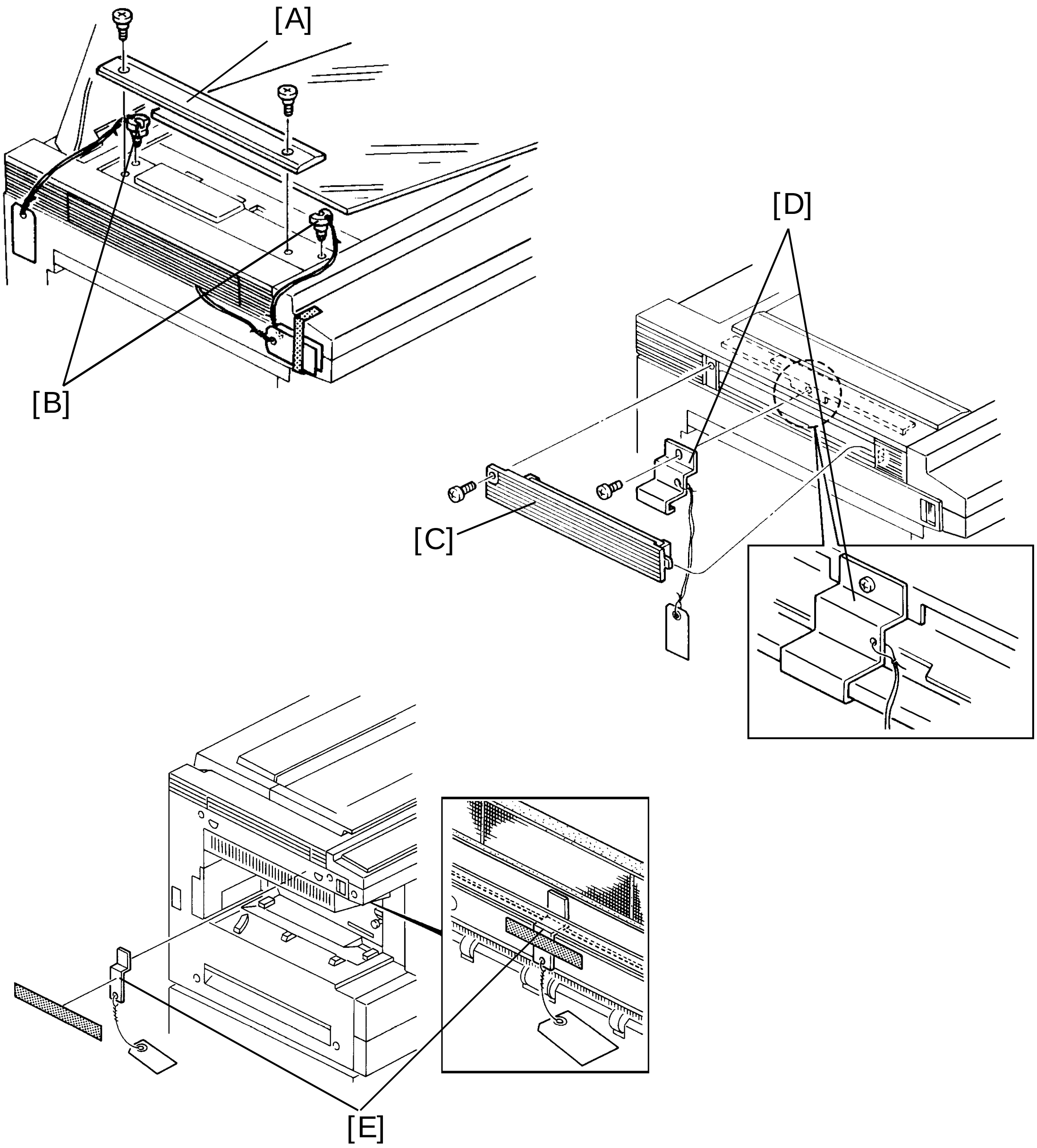
1. Receiving Tray	1
2. Outer Decal - Symbol Explanation	1
3. Sorter Key Top and Cover	1
4. Counter Set Key (–17 machine only)	1
5. Installation Procedure	1
6. Operating Instructions (Except –27 machine)	1
7. New Equipment Condition Report (–17, –19, –27, –29 machine only)	1
8. Envelope for NECR (–17 machine only)	1
9. User Survey Card (–17 machine only)	1
10. Equipment Quality Report (–15 machine only)	1

1.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

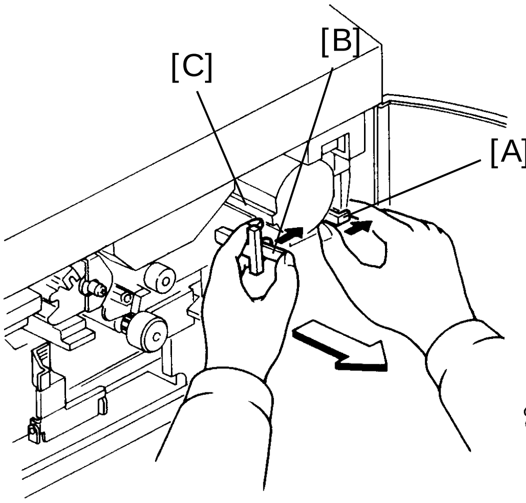


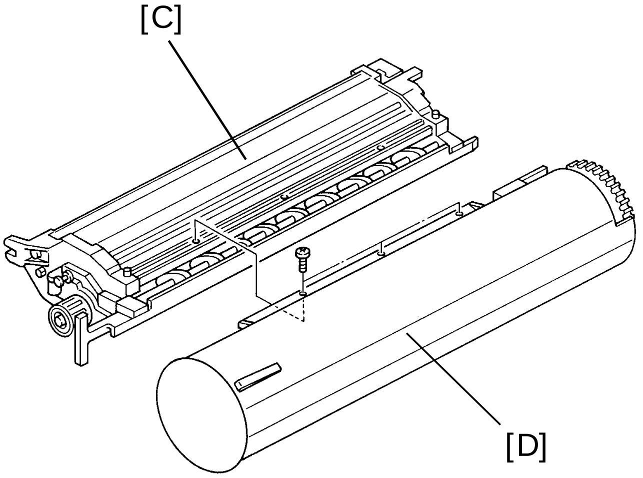
NOTE: Keep the shipping retainers after installing the machine. They will be reused if in the future the machine is transported to an another location.
Proper reinstallation of the shipping retainers is required in order to avoid any transport damage.

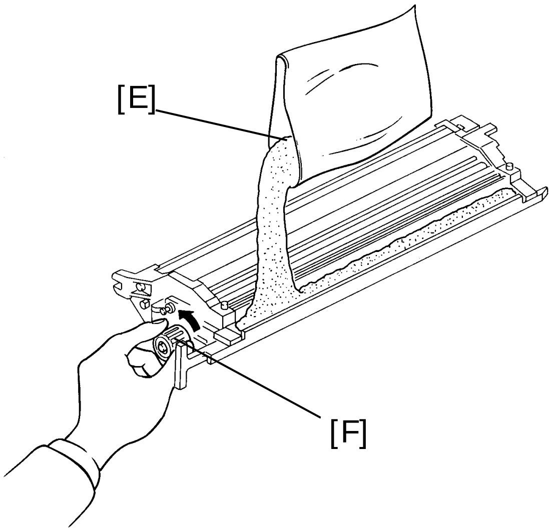
1. Remove the 12 strips of tape [A] as shown.
2. Open the front door and remove 4 strips of tape [B] as shown.
3. Pull out the duplex tray [C] and remove the 2 strips of tape [D] and 3 sheets of paper [E] (duplex machine only).



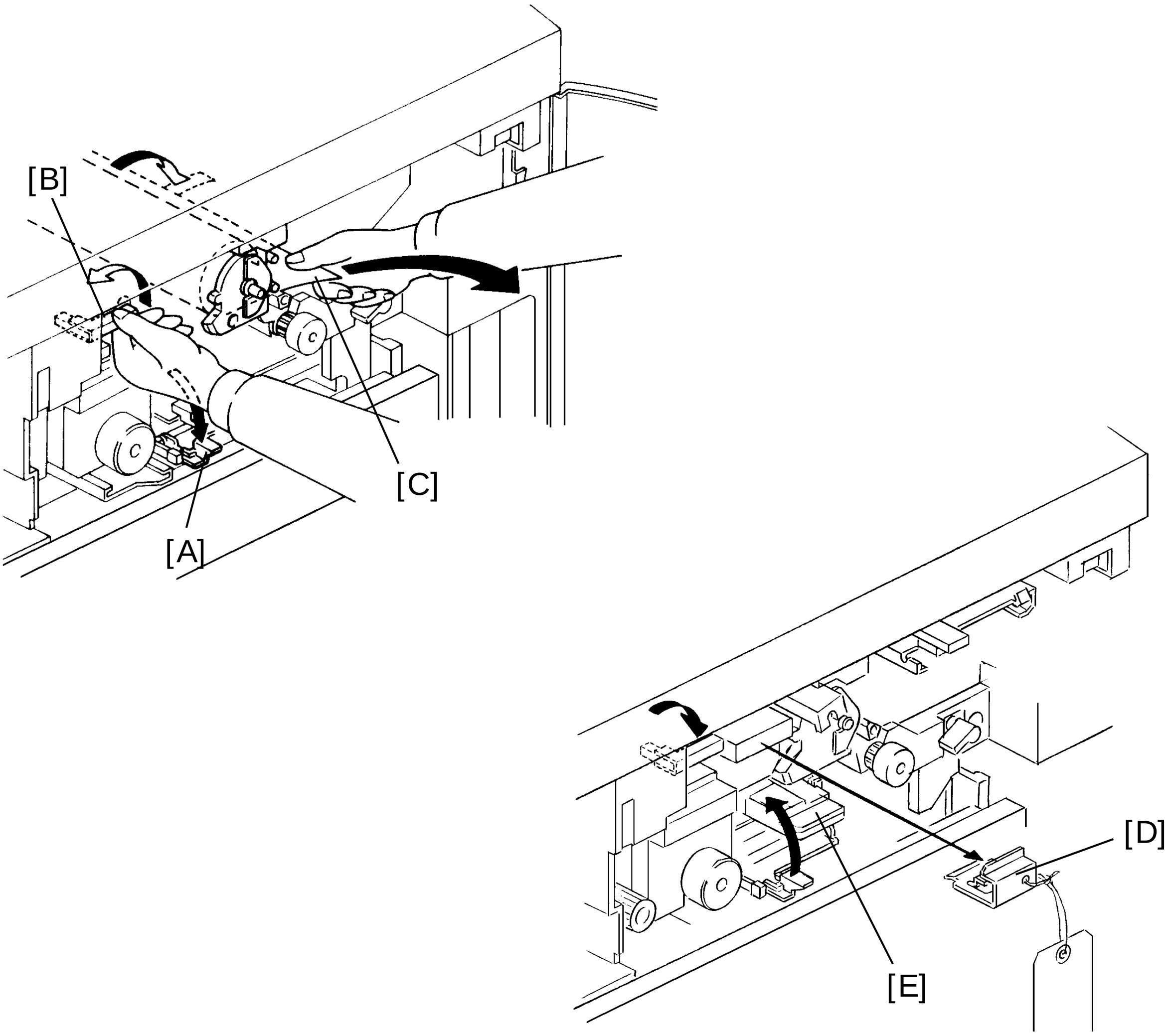
4. Remove the left scale [A] (2 shoulder screws).
5. Remove the scanner lock pin [B] simply by pulling it up from the front and the rear side of the left scale bracket.
6. Reinstall the left scale.
7. Remove the left optics cover [C] (1 screw).
8. Remove the scanner lock plate [D] (1 screw) and reinstall the left optics cover.
9. Remove the shipping retainer [E] holding the ozone filter. The retainer is taped on the upper exit cover.







10. Push the development unit lock lever [A] to the right (to the lock position).
11. Move the development release lever [B] to the right and pull out the black development unit [C] half way. Holding the toner supply unit [D] with your right hand and the bottom of the development unit with your left hand, pull the unit all the way out . Place the unit on a clean sheet of paper.
12. Separate the toner supply unit from the development unit (3 screws).
13. Pour one pack of black developer [E] into the development unit while turning the development roller knob [F] counterclockwise. This will distribute the developer inside the unit.
14. Remount the toner supply unit on the development unit.



15. Lower the transfer & separation corona unit by pulling down the release lever [A].

16. Turn the cleaning unit release lever [B] counterclockwise to the upright position. (The cleaning unit is released from the drum.)

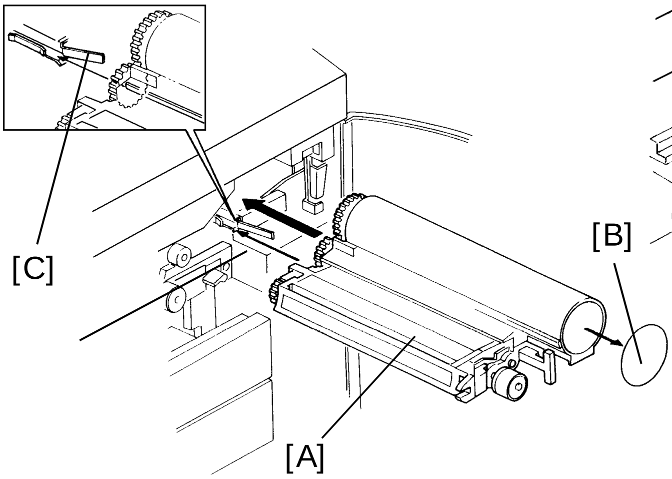
17. Remove the drum protective sheet [C] from the development unit opening.

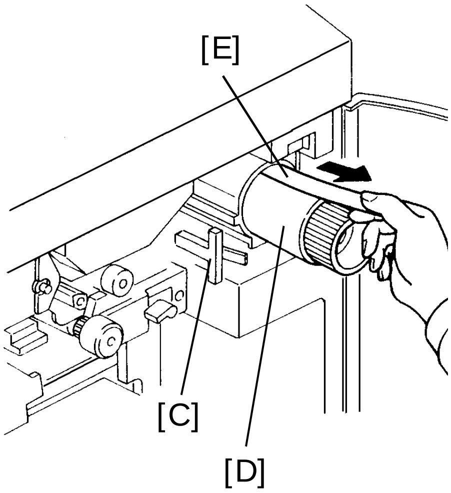
CAUTION:	To avoid damaging the pick-off pawls, remove the drum protective sheet by pulling the lower side as shown in the figure.

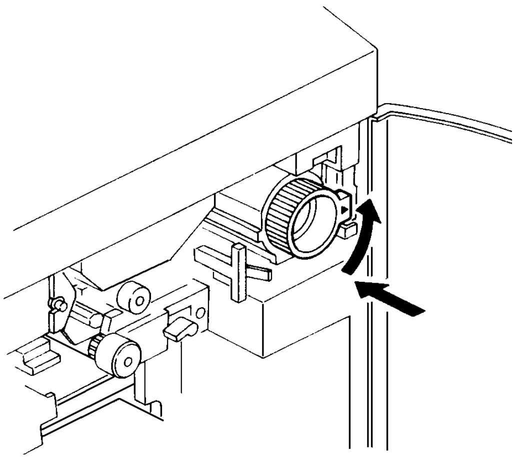
18. Turn the cleaning unit release lever clockwise to the set position.

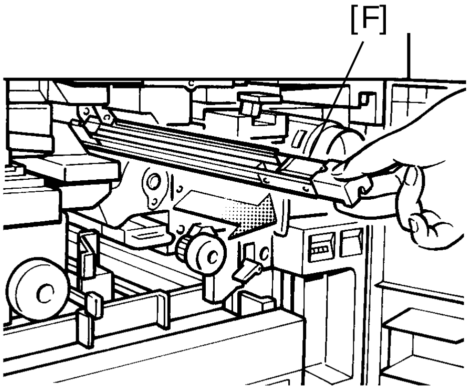
19. Remove the cleaning blade lock plate [D].

20. Reset the transfer & separation corona unit [E].









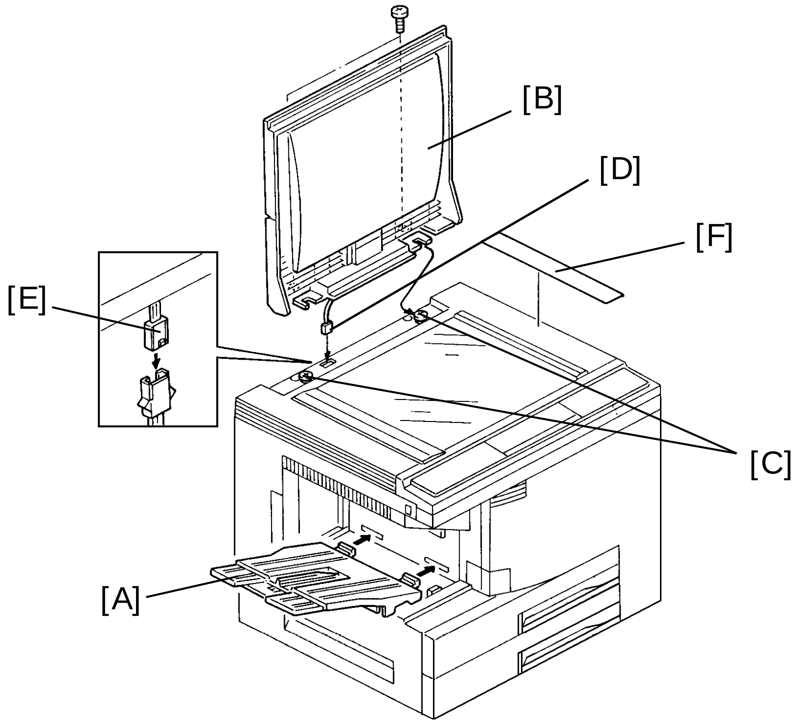
21. Install the black development unit [A] in the copier, and remove the cover sheet [B] from the toner supply unit.

    NOTE:
    - When installing the development unit, be sure that the development unit rail is placed directly on the development unit guide rail.
    - Make sure that the development release lever [C] is in its original position after the development unit is set.

22. Shake the toner cartridge [D] well from side to side. While pushing the toner cartridge in, insert it halfway into the holder with the seal [E] up.

23. As you peel off the seal, insert the cartridge completely. While pushing the toner cartridge in, turn it counterclockwise until it stops.

24. Slide out the charge corona unit [F] until it is fully extended and push it back in to the original position. Repeat this action several times.



25. Close the front door and set the copy tray [A].

NOTE: The following steps from 26 to 29 are required only to install the optional platen cover [B].

26. Remove the rear cover (remove 2 screws and loosen 2 screws).

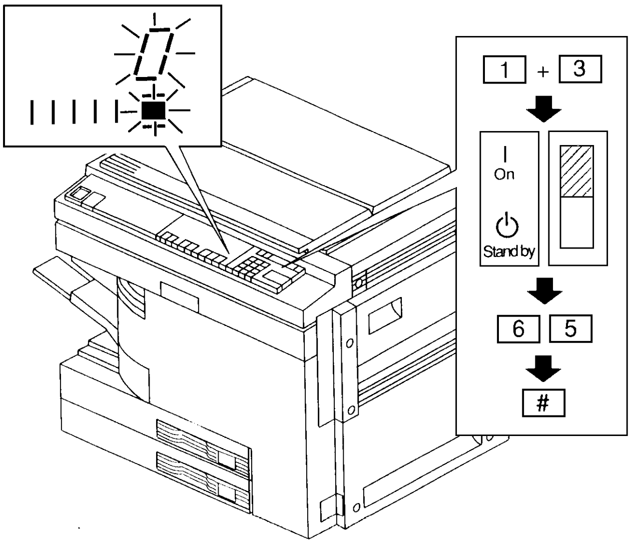
27. Install the 2 shoulder screws [C] on the top cover as shown.

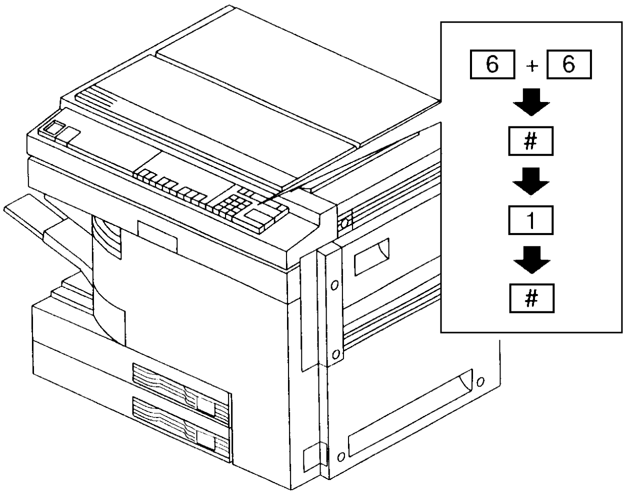
28. Pass the harness [D] through the hole of the top cover and install the optional platen cover (2 screws).

29. Couple the platen cover sensor connector [E] (3P white) with the copier and reinstall the rear cover.

30. Stick the symbols explanation decal [F] on the top cover as shown. (If the ARDF will be installed, stick the decal on the corresponding position of the ARDF.)

31. If local voltage is 230 V or 240 V, perform the voltage change procedure (following the installation procedure).





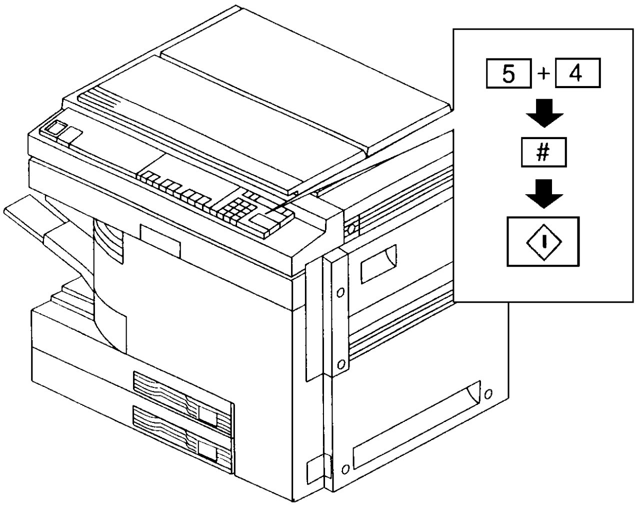
32. Load A3 (11" x 17") paper either in the 1st or the 2nd paper tray and plug in the machine.

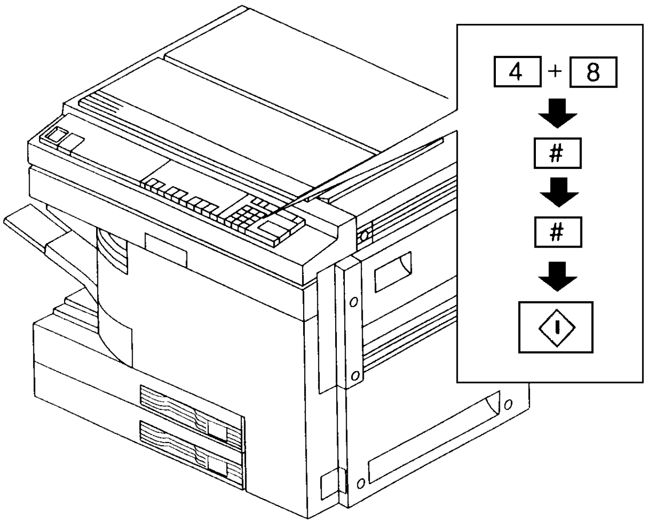
33. While pressing both the "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch in order to access the SP mode.

    NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the auto image density indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.

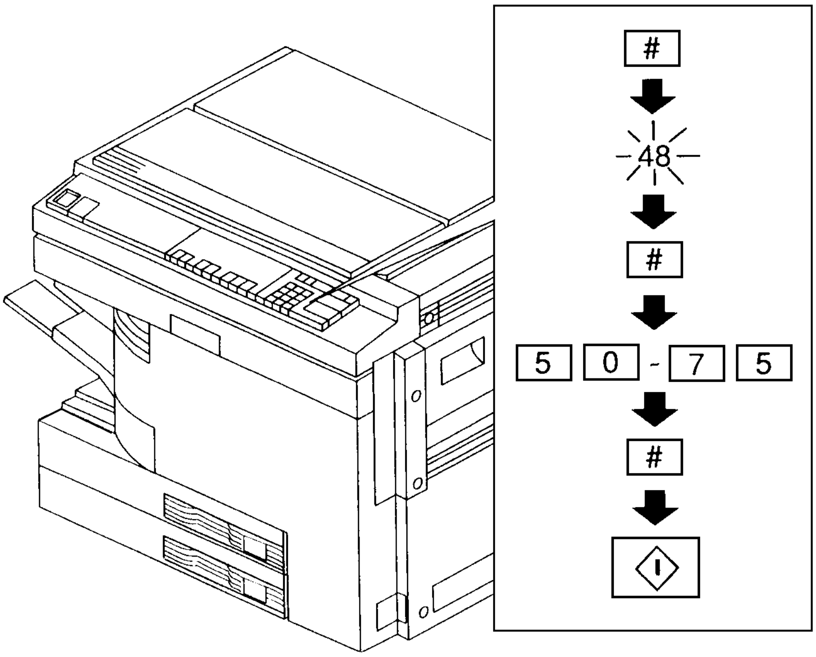
34. Enter "65" using the number keys and then press the enter key. (The copier starts the black developer initialization, and this lasts about 5 minutes.)

35. Enter "66" using the number keys and press the enter key. Press "1", then the enter key. (The copier performs the drum initial setting.)





36. Enter "54" using the number keys and press the enter key, then the start key.
    (The copier performs ID/V sensor adjustments.)
37. Enter "48" using the number keys and then press the enter key twice.
38. Set the test chart on the exposure glass.
39. Make a full size copy at the manual image density level # 4 (center) after the copier has warmed up.



40. Confirm that level 2 of the gray scale is just visible on the copy.

    If the image density is not correct, go through the following steps.

    (1) Press the enter key twice.

    (2) Change the exposure lamp voltage data displayed in the magnification ratio indicator. Use the number keys and follow these rules:

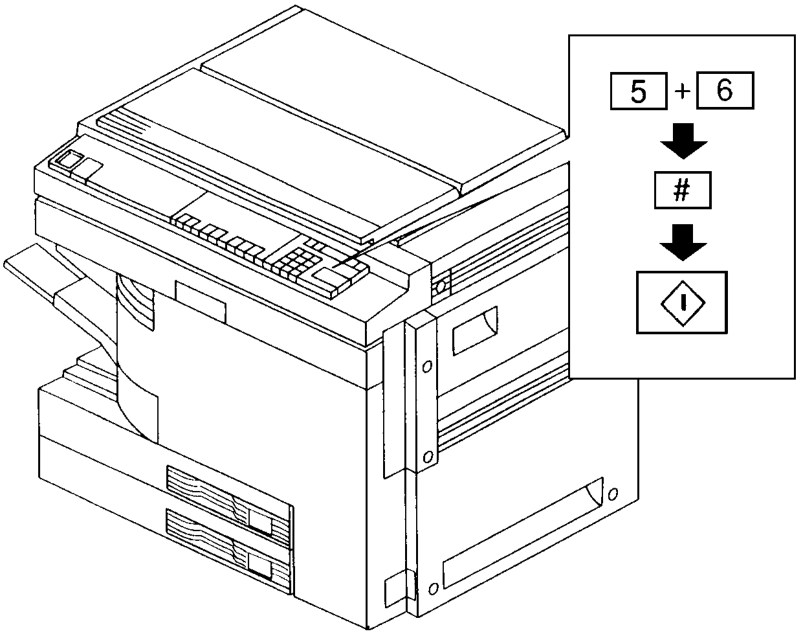
If the image density is too dark:	increase the setting
If the image density is too light:	decrease the setting

    NOTE: The data can be set between 50 and 75 in 0.5 steps.

    (3) Press the enter key and then make a copy.

    (4) Confirm if the image density is correct or not.
    If not, repeat the above steps from (1) to (3).

NOTE: The initial exposure lamp voltage **must** be adjusted in this step. If the adjustment is done after step 43 (the machine performs the initial V_L pattern detection), the reference voltage for the exposure lamp voltage correction will be wrong throughout the drum’s life.



41. Press the enter key and enter "56" using the number keys.

42. Press the enter key, then the start key.
(The copier performs the ADS sensor adjustment.)

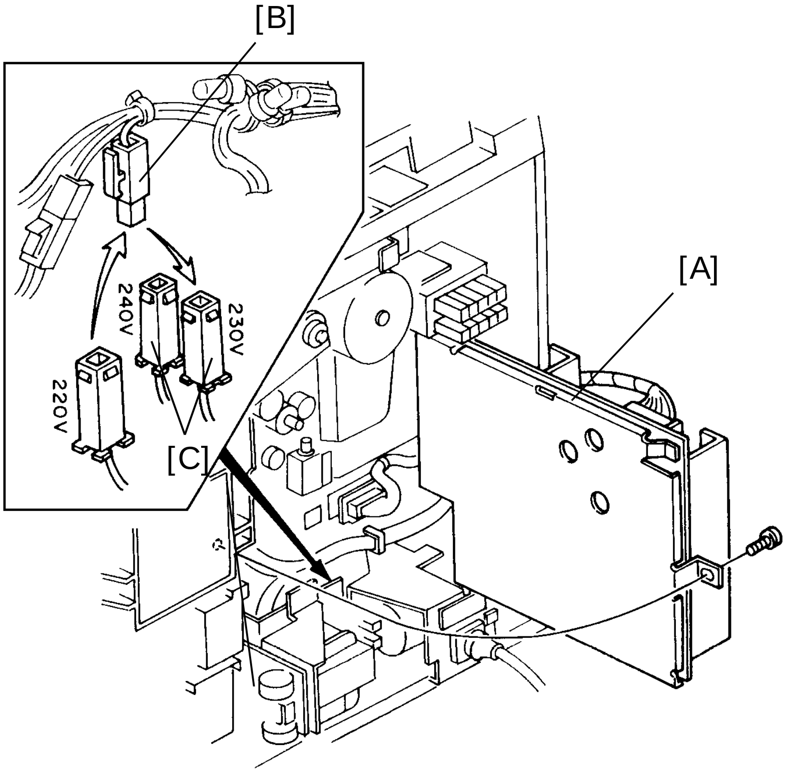
43. Turn the main switch off and on.

44. Enter "6" using the number keys and make copies in the full size mode.
(The copier performs the V_R sensor initial check during the copy cycle. When the copy cycle is finished, the copier performs the V_L sensor initial check by lighting the exposure lamp at the home position.)

45. Check the machine operation and copy quality.

46. Tell the customers that this copier sometimes keeps turning on the exposure lamp at the home position when copy jobs are finished (the same phenomenon as in step 44).
This is normal for this copier, and this also helps maintain good copy quality.

VOLTAGE CHANGE (220V to 230/240V)



NOTE: If the voltage of electrical power supply from wall outlets is 230V or 240V, the following procedure must be done before plugging in the machine.

CAUTION: Make sure that the power cord of the machine is unplugged before starting the following procedure.

1. Remove the rear cover (remove 2 screws and loosen 2 screws).
2. Swing out the dc power supply board assembly [A] (1screw).
3. Disconnect the 1P connector [B] of the ac main harness and reconnect it to the appropriate voltage connector [C] of the main transformer.

   NOTE: Each 1P connector of the main transformer has its voltage rating printed on it.
4. Reassemble the copier.

SECTION 4

SERVICE TABLES

1. SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

1.1 MEMORY ALL CLEAR PROCEDURE (SP99)

CAUTION: Memory all clear mode (SP99) clears all the correction data for process control and software counters, and returns all the modes to the default settings. Normally, this mode should not be performed.

This procedure is required only when the copier malfunctions due to a damaged RAM or when replacing the RAM board for any reason.

1. Access the SP mode through Access Procedure 3. (While pressing both the Clear Modes and Clear/Stop keys on the operation panel, turn on the main switch.)
2. Enter "99" and press the Enter key.
3. Enter "1" and press the Enter key.
4. Enter the factory-set values in the following SP modes:

40:	Jogger span (Duplex machine only)
41:	Lead edge erase
42:	Registration
43:	Vertical magnification
44:	Horizontal magnification
45:	Duplex magnification (Duplex machine only)
47:	Focus adjustment
50:	Lens error correction
62:	Grid reference voltage
161:	Grid volt/M-CH(P)
162:	T-CH PWM
163:	D-CH (AC) PWM
164:	D-CH (DC) PWM

NOTE: There is an SP data table sheet underneath the front upper cover which gives the above factory-set values.

5. Turn off the main switch.
6. Clean the used toner tank because the toner end counter has been cleared.

7. Replace the OPC drum with a new one.

   NOTE: Since the drum counter for the process control has been cleared, the old drum cannot be used. If the old drum is used after all memory is cleared, a dirty background and/or toner scattering will appear on copies sooner or later because proper V_G correction will not be applied to the drum.

8. Clean the optics, sensors, and inside of the machine if necessary.

9. If the high voltage supply board - CTBG and/or - D is not the original one, do the following:
   1) Clean the corona unit casings and replace the corona wires with new ones.
   2) Enter to the SP mode by the access procedure 2.
   3) Enter the grid voltage correction data in SP62 referring to the label on the high voltage supply board - CTBG.
   4) Adjust the transfer corona current if the high voltage supply board - CTBG is not the original one.
   5) Adjust the separation corona current if the high voltage supply board - D is not the original one.

10. Enter the SP mode by access procedure 2. (While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch)

11. Enable optional equipment operation by SP71 (sorter) and SP72 (paper tray unit) as necessary.

12. Perform the following SP modes:
    SP66: Drum initialize
    SP54: Auto Vsg/Vlg adjustment
    SP48: Exposure lamp voltage adjustment
    SP56: Auto ADS gain adjustment

13. Check copy quality and the paper path and do the necessary adjustments.

1.2 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE TABLE

NOTE: 1. A "p" after the mode name means that copies can be made. For these modes, the copier goes automatically into copy mode when an SP mode number is selected by pressing the "# " key, or when the data number for adjustment is entered by pressing the "# " key after selecting the SP mode number.
To make copies, enter desired copy quantity, select ID level and paper tray, then press the Start key.
If you do not wish to make copies, press the "# " key instead of the Start key.

2. A "•" before the mode number means that the mode can be accessed by users and sales representatives.

3. In the *Function* column, comments (extra information) are in italics.

4. In the *Data* column, the default value is printed in bold letters.

Mode No.		**Function**	**Data**
2	Free Run Set	Sets the copier in free run mode. *(The copier runs without paper feeding*. After SP2 is set, press the start key to start free run operation. Before pressing the start key you can select any other SP mode in which copying is possible [p mark]. ["# "→SPNo.→"# "→Start key].)	
3	Free Run Reset p	Resets the copier from free run mode.	
4	Forced Start p	Copies can be made before being the copier is warmed up. *(Copy quality and paper transport are not assured*.)	
5	Lamp OFF p	Copies are made with exposure lamp OFF. *(Black copies are made.)*	
6	No Misfeed Detection p	Copies are made without ON check of jam detection.	
7	Call Service Indicator	Indicates the cause of a blinking indicator. *(Indicates 0, 1, 2, 3, 12, 13, 23, or 123 in the three digit indicator. PM: The three digit indicator blinks. ID sensor failure: ADS or manual ID indicator blinks. Used toner overflow: E70 blinks in the three digit indicator.)*	0: Normal 1: PM 2: ID sensor failure 3: Used toner overflow
8	Input Check p	Displays the input data from sensors and switches. *(For data, see page 4 - 17.)*	
9	Output Check	Electrical components turn on. *(For data, see page 4 - 20.)*	

Mode No.		Function	Data
•11	All Indicators ON	Turns on all the indicators on the operation panel. *(To turn off the indicators, press the "# " key.)*	
13	A3/DLT Double Count	Selects single or double count for the total counter and key counter in A3/11" x 17" copying. *(Double count is not applied for copies from the by-pass feed table. Double count is applied to the user code counter [SP91] and the mechanical counters.)*	**0: Single** 1: Double
•14	Manual Staple Reset	Selects accessible period for manual stapling after completing a copy job in sort mode. *(Only when the sorter stapler is installed.)*	**0: 20 sec.** 1: 1 min. 2: None
•15	Auto Reset	Selects auto reset time of 1 or 3 minutes, or cancels this mode.	**0: 1 min.** 1: 3 min. 2: None
•16	Count Up/Down	Selects count up or count down.	**0: Up** 1: Down
•17	Auto Cassette Shift	Selects auto cassette shift mode. *(Copier automatically shifts to the LCT or paper tray holding the same size paper when paper runs out.)*	**0: Yes** 1: No
•19	ID Mode	Specifies whether the copier defaults to ADS or manual ID mode when the main switch is turned on.	**0: ADS** 1: Manual
•20	LCT Priority	Sets the feed station priority to LCT or the 1st tray.	**0: On** 1: Off
•21	APS Priority (Copier)	Specifies whether the copier defaults to APS or manual mode when the main switch is turned on.	**0: APS** 1: Manual 2: No
22	SADF Auto Reset	Selects auto reset time for SADF mode.	**0: 5 sec.** 1: 60 sec
23	ADF Free Size	Enables originals of various sizes to be fed from the same width stack. (When this mode is enabled, the job interval for each original increases.)	**0: No** 1: Yes
24	Side Edge Erase	Selects the width of the side erase margin in Erase Edge mode (Program key + 7 + #) or Erase Center And Edge mode (Program key + 8 + #). *(0:10 mm (A3, A4, B4, B5 lengthwise)* *15 mm (11"X17", 11"X8 1/2" sideways)* *13 mm (8 1/2"X14", 8 1/2"X11" lengthwise)* *11 mm (F)* *1:5 mm (A3, A4, B4, B5 lengthwise)* *9 mm (11"X17", 11"X8 1/2" sideways)* *8 mm (8 1/2"X14", 8 1/2"X11" lengthwise)* *7 mm (F))*	**0: Normal** 1: Narrow

Mode No.		Function	Data
25	Staple Limit	Sets the staple limit of copies in each bin, in staple mode. *(Only when the sorter stapler is installed.)* Yes: 20 sheets, No: 25 sheets for A4, B5, and 81/2" x 11" Yes: 10 sheets, No: 15 sheets for B4, A3, 81/2" x 14", and 11" x 17"	**0: Yes** 1: No
•26	Auto APS Select (ADF)	Selects the priority of APS mode when originals are set on the ADF. *(Only when the ADF is installed.)*	**0: Yes** 1: No
28	Auto Sort Select (ADF)	Sort Mode is automatically selected when more than 1 original is set on the ADF and the entered copy quantity is greater than 1 and less than 21 (11 for the micro sorter). *(Sorter and ADF must be installed on the machine.* *When in duplex 1 [1-sided original mode], more than 2 originals must be set.)*	**0: Manual** 1: Auto Sort
29	Zero Cross Control	Selects fusing temperature control mode. *(After selecting the control mode and turning the main switch off/on, the fusing temperature control mode changes.)*	**0: Yes (Zero cross)** 1: No (Phase)
30	Black Toner Supply Mode	Selects black toner supply mode. *(See SP 31/SP32 for toner supply amount.)*	**0: Detect Mode** 1: Fixed Mode
31	Black Toner Supply Ratio (Detect Mode)	Determines how much toner is supplied in detect mode.	**0: 15%** 1: 7% 2: 30% 3: 60%
32	Black Toner Supply Ratio (Fixed Mode)	Determines how much toner is supplied in fixed mode.	**0: 7.0%** 1: 3.5% 2: 10.5% 3: 14.0%
33	Black (ID sensor) Pattern Bias	Sets the bias voltage applied to the development roller for the ID sensor pattern. *(0: –200 V= Normal* *1: –160 V= Lighter* *2: –220 V= Darker* *3: –240 V= Darkest)*	**0: N** 1: L 2: H 3: HH
•34	ADS Density	Selects the image density level in ADS mode. *(Data 1: Increases charge grid voltage [–50 V]. Development bias voltage has standard value.* *Data 2: Increases development bias voltage [–40 V]. Charge grid voltage has standard value.)*	**0: N (Normal)** 1: H (Darker) 2: L (Lighter)
35	Black ID Detection	Black ID sensor check is performed every 5 copies or 10 copies. *(If low image density occurs in the toner near end condition, change the data to "1".)*	**0: 10 copies** 1: 5 copies

Mode No.		Function	Data
•36	Image Shift (Duplex 1)	Selects the margin on the right side of the reverse page in duplex 1 mode. *(For type 2 copier only. When duplex 1 [1-sided original mode] is selected, this margin is automatically added.)*	**0: 5 mm** 1: 0 mm 2: 10 mm 3: 15 mm
37	Black Bias	Adjusts black bias voltage if the image density at level 4 cannot be adjusted by (SP48 exposure lamp voltage). This must be done only other replacing the OPC drum. *(0: Vo = Normal* *1: Vo + 40 V= Darkest* *2: Vo + 20 V = Darker* *3: Vo –20 V = Lighter* *4: Vo –40 V = Lightest)*	**0: N** 1: HH 2: H 3: L 4: LL
•38	Lead and Trail Edge Erase	Selects the width of the lead and trail edge erase margins in Erase Edge mode (Program key + 7 + #) or Erase Center And Edge mode (Program key + 8 + #).	**0: 10 mm** 1: 5 mm 2: 15 mm 3: 20 mm
•39	Center Erase	Selects the width of the center erase margin in Erase Center mode (Program key + 6 + #) or Erase Center And Edge mode (Program key + 8 + #).	**0: 20 mm** 1: 10 mm 2: 15 mm 3: 25 mm
40	Jogger Span	Adjusts the stop position of the jogger fences. *(For type 2 copier only. 0.5 mm per step. [max, –4.0 mm to + 3.5 mm].)*	0~ 15 **8 = default**
41	Lead Edge Erase p	Adjusts lead edge erase margin. *(0.5 mm per step [max –4.0 mm to + 3.5 mm].)*	0~ 15 **8 = default**
42	Registration p	Adjusts lead edge registration. *(0.5 mm per step [max –4.0 mm to + 3.5 mm].)*	0~ 15 **8 = default**
43	Vertical Magnification p	Adjusts magnification in the paper travel direction. *(0.2 % per step. [max. –1.6% to + 1.4%].)*	0~ 15 **8 = default**
44	Horizontal Magnification p	Adjusts magnification perpendicular to the direction of paper travel. *(0.2 % per temp. [max. –3.2% to + 3.0%].)*	0~ 31 **16 = default**
45	Duplex Magnification	Adjusts vertical magnification of the first image to equal the second image in the duplex mode.	**0: + 0.4%** 1: No correction 2: + 0.2% 3: + 0.6% 4: + 0.8% 5: + 1.0% 6: + 1.2% 7: + 1.4% 8: + 1.6% 9: + 1.8% 10: + 2.0%

Mode No.		**Function**	**Data**
•46	Highlight Bias (Manual ID Level 7)	Selects the development bias voltage of manual ID level 7. *(0: –240 V= Normal* *1: –200 V= Darker* *2: –280 V= Lighter* *3: –320 V= Lightest)*	**0: N** 1: D 2: L 3: LL
47	Focus Adjustment p	Adjusts the 4th/5th mirror position to correct the fine focus. *(0.6 mm per pulse. SP47 must be done after vertical and horizontal magnification adjustments [SP43 and 44].)*	0~ 80 **40 = default**
48	Lamp Voltage p	Adjusts the exposure lamp voltage. *(50 to 75 V in 0.5 V steps.* *The lamp voltage must be adjusted only after performing SP 66 when replacing the OPC drum.)*	50~ 75V **63V (115V)** **65V (230V)** **= default**
49	Fusing Temperature	Adjusts fusing temperature. *(175 to 190 ℃ in 1 ℃ steps.)*	175~ 190 ℃ **185 ° = default**
50	Lens Error Correction p	Adjusts the lens position to correct magnification in enlarge/reduction mode. *(0.1% per step [max. –0.8%, to + 0.7%].)*	0~ 15 **8 = default**
51	Lamp Voltage Check	Displays the exposure lamp voltage. *(The exposure lamp, main motor, fusing exhaust fan, and exhaust blower turn on for 10 seconds when the Enter key is pressed.* *Press the "• " key to check the target lamp voltage (including corrections). This value always includes -0.5V correction because of the light intensity control program (regarding the first copy cycle).* *Press the C/S key to turn this mode off.* *Do not repeat more than 5 times to avoid overheating the optics cavity.)*	[V]
52	Fusing Temperature Check p	Displays the fusing temperature.	[℃]
53	Drum Temperature Check p	Displays the temperature around the drum.	[℃]
54	Auto Vsg/Vlg Adjustment p	Adjusts the ID sensor Vsg and the V sensor Vlg automatically when the start key is pressed. *(Adjusted ID sensor and V sensor PWM values are displayed in the three digit indicator.* *The adjusted output voltage can be monitored by SP165 (ID sensor) and SP166 (V sensor).)*	
55	Vsp/Vsg Data p	Displays the Vsg and Vsp readings. The Vsg reading is displayed while the "0" key is held down. *(When making copies, the Vsp and Vsg voltage readings are updated every 10 or 5 copies [ID sensor check timing].)*	[V]

Mode No.		Function	Data
56	Auto ADS Gain Adjustment	Adjusts the ADS gain data automatically when the start key is pressed. *(Close the platen cover to prevent external light from reaching the ADS sensor when performing this adjustment.* *The gain data is displayed in the three digit indicator.* *The adjusted ADS sensor output voltage can be monitored by SP167.)*	
58	Toner End Counter Check	Displays the contents of the black toner end counter. *(Toner end condition is not counted if the toner end condition happens within 250 copies after the previous toner end condition.)*	
59	Bias Voltage Check p	Displays bias voltage. Press the Start key to display the bias voltage. Press the C/S key to stop.	[V]
62	Grid Reference Voltage	Sets the grid voltage correction data to correct the output from the high voltage supply board [G]. *(A label on the high voltage supply board gives the correct value.* *When the high voltage supply board [CTBG] is replaced, set the data using SP62.)*	**704**
65	Black Developer Initialize	Agitates new black developer for about 5 minutes. Press the start key to begin operation. *(This mode must be performed when new developer is put in.* *The three digit indicator shows the remaining time of the operation in seconds.)*	
66	Drum Initialize	Used to set new drum condition. *(This must be done when a new drum is installed. The OPC counter, V_R correction level, and Vref [initial Vlp/Vlg] are cleared.* *To set, press "1" then the "# " key.* *The three digit indicator counts down from 100 to 0 as the initialization is done.)*	**0: NO** 1: YES
67	Drum Correction Level (V_R)	Displays the present V_R correction level. *(V_R level [%]= Vrp/Vrg x 100)*	[Display only] 0: 100-84 1: 83-58 2: 57-41 3: 40-28 4: 27-0
68	Lamp Correction Level (V_L)	Displays the present Vdat. *(Vdat = Vlp/Vlg x 100)* The V_L level (%) is displayed while the "• "key is held down. *(V_L level [%] = Vdat/Vref x 100* = [(Vlp/Vlg)/(Initial Vlp/Vlg)] *x 100)*	[Display only] V_L level 0-100 : + 1V 101-150 : 0V 151- : –1V

Mode No.		Function	Data
69	Sense Drum Correction Level (V_R) (Forced V_R Detection)	Detects V_R correction level regardless of the drum counter. Press the start key to set operation. *(The detection will be done in the first 5 copy cycles after exiting the SP mode.* *The three digit indicator counts down from 100 to 0 when this mode is accepted.)*	
70	Sense Lamp Correction level (V_L) (Forced V_L Detection)	Detects V_L correction level regardless of the drum counter. Press the start key to begin operation. *(V_L pattern detection is done 4 times.* *Vdat is displayed in the three digit indicator for each detection.* *The average of the 4 detections can be monitored by SP68.)*	
71	Sorter	Enables sorter operation.	**0: No sorter** 1: Micro sorter 2: Mini sorter 3: Midi sorter 4: Sorter stapler 5: Sorter adapter
72	Option Paper Tray Unit	Enables paper tray unit operation.	**0: No** 1: Yes
73	LCT Paper Size	Selects paper size for the LCT. *(For type 2 and type 3 only)*	**0: A4** 1: B5 **2: LT**
76	Sorter Max	Sets the sort/stack quantity limit. (0: No= No sort/stack limit. 1: Yes= Sort/stack amount is limited, the amount depends on which sorter is installed.)	**0: No** 1: Yes
77	(ADF) Auto Feed Out (Duplex mode)	Sets the copier to eject the final copy if an odd number of originals is set. *(When "Yes", the final sheet is fed out;* *When "No", the sheet stays in the duplex tray.)*	**0: Yes** 1: No
83	Toner End Counter Clear	Resets the used toner overflow condition (E70) and clears the toner end counter (SP58). *(To clear, press "1" then the "# " key.* *The three digit indicator counts down from 100 to 0 when this function is used.* *SP83 must be used when the used toner tank is cleaned.)*	**0: No** 1: Yes
87	PM Interval	Sets the interval of the PM counter.	**0: No PM** 1: 60 K 2: 80 K 3: 100 K 4: 120 k

Mode No.		Function	Data
88	PM Counter	Displays contents of the PM counter. *(When entering this mode by pressing the "# " key, the first three digits are displayed in the three digit indicator.* *Hold down the "• " key to display the second three digits.* *When the PM counter is exceeded, the three digit indicator [reproduction ratio] blinks.)*	
89	PM Counter Clear	Resets the PM counter. *(Use this mode after performing PM.* *The three digit indicator counts down from 100 to 0 when this function is used.)*	
90	User Code Mode	Enables user code mode (The key counter shorting connector must be removed.) *(If this mode is set, users must enter a code to make copies.* *Resets when auto clear mode functions or when C/S and clear modes keys are pressed together.* *The user codes are the following 20 numbers: 1101, 1202, 1303, 1404, 1505, 1606, 1707, 1808, 1909, 2010, 2111, 2212, 2313, 2414, 2515, 2616, 2717, 2818, 2919, 3020).*	**0: No** 1: Yes
•91	User code Counter Check	Displays the contents of each user code counter. use the "+ " and "–" ("up" and "down") keys to select user code. (The last two digits of the user code are displayed in the copy counter.) *(User counters count from 0 to 999999.* *Press "# " key to display the first three digits in the three digit indicator.* *Hold down the "• " key to display the second three digits.)*	
•92	User Code Counter Clear	Resets counters of all the user codes (SP91). *(To reset, press "1" then the "# " key.* *The three digit indicator counts down from 100 to 0 when this function is used.)*	**0: No** 1: Yes
•93	Copy Limit	Limits the maximum copy quantity that can be entered.	1 – 999 **999 = default**
97	SC/Jam Counter Clear	Clears all the service call and jam counters. *(To clear, press "1" then the "# " key.* *The three digit indicator counts down from 100 to 0 when this function is used.)*	**0: No** 1: Yes

Mode No.		Function	Data
98	Counter Clear	Clears the following counters: - Operation Time (motor count only) (SP100) - Copy/Original Counters (SP101) - SC Counters (SP120) - Jam Counters (SP130) - PM Counter (SP88) - User Code Counters (SP91) - User Program *(To clear, press "1" then the "# " key. The three digit indicator counts down from 100 to 0 when this function is used.)*	**0: No** 1: Yes
99	Memory All Clear	Clears all counters and returns all modes to the default setting. *(To access this mode turn on the main switch while pressing both the "Clear Modes" and "C/S" keys. Then enter "99" and press the "# " key. To clear, press "1" then the "# " key. The three digit indicator counts down from 100 to 0 when this function is used.)*	**0: No** 1: Yes
100	Operation Time	Displays the total (accumulated) time that the main motor has operated. (*Time in hours.* *-Motor Count-* *Press the "# " key to display the first three digits in the three digit indicator. Hold down the "• " key to display the second three digits.* *-Drum Count-* *Hold down the "0" key to display the first three digits in the three digit indicator. Hold down the "0" & "• " keys to display the second three digits.* ***NOTE:*** *Drum counter can be cleared by using SP66.)*	
101	Copy/Original Counter	Displays the total number of the following copies or originals. Use the "+ " & "–" ("up" & "down") keys to select the desired number. *(Press the "# " key to enter this mode. When the desired number, displayed in the copy counter, is selected by using the "+ " & "–" keys, the first three digits are displayed in the three digit indicator. Hold down the "• " key to display the second three digits.)*	
101-1	Total Counter	Displays the total number of copies	
101-6	Duplex Counter	Displays the total number of duplex copies made.	
101-7	ADF Counter	Displays the total number of copies made using the ADF.	

Mode No.		Function	Data
101-8	Staple Counter	Displays the total number of sets of stapled copies.	
101-9	Paper Tray Unit Counter	Displays the total number of sheets fed from the paper tray unit.	
101-10	By-pass/LCT Counter	Displays the total number of sheets fed from the by-pass feed table or the LCT.	
101-12	A3/11" x 17" (DLT) Counter	Displays the total number of A3 or 11"x 17" copies.	
101-13	B4/81/2" x 14" (LG) Counter	Displays the total number of B4 or 81/2" x 14" copies.	
101-14	A4/81/2" x 11" (LT) Counter	Displays the total number of A4 or 81/2" x 11" copies.	
101-15	B5 Counter	Displays the total number of B5 copies.	
101-16	Original Total Counter	Displays the total number of originals copied.	
101-17	Original Counter (ADF)	Displays the total number of originals copied using the ADF.	
101-18	Reduction Counter	Displays the total number of copies made in reduction mode.	
101-19	Enlargement Counter	Displays the total number of copies made in enlargement mode.	
110	Supply Counter	Displays the total number of copies made by using the following supplies. Use the "+ " & "–" ("up" & "down") keys to select the desired number. *(Press the "# " key to enter this mode.* *When the desired number displayed in the copy counter is selected by using the "+ " & "–" keys, the first three digits are displayed in the three digit indicator.* *Hold down the "• " key to display the second three digits.)*	
110-1	Drum Counter	Displays the total number of copies made using the present drum.	
110-2	Black Developer Counter	Displays the total number of copies made using the present black developer.	
120	SC Counter	Displays the total number of the following service calls. Use the "+ " & "–" ("up" & "down") keys to select the desired number. *(Press the "# " key to enter this mode.* *When the desired number displayed in the copy counter is selected by using the "+ " & "–" keys, the first three digits are displayed in the three digit indicator.* *Hold down the "• " key to display the second three digits.)*	
120-1	SC Total Counter	Displays the total number of times the service call indicator has turned on.	

Mode No.		Function	Data
120-2	SC Optics Counter	Displays the total number of "Optics" service calls.	
120-3	SC Exposure Counter	Displays the total number of "Exposure" service calls.	
120-4	SC Drive Counter	Displays the total number of "Functional Drive" service calls.	
120-5	SC Fuser Counter	Displays the total number of "Fusing" service calls.	
120-6	SC Communication Counter	Displays the total number of "Interface communication" service calls.	
120-7	SC Duplex Counter	Displays the total number of "Duplex" service calls.	
120-8	SC Feed Counter	Displays the total number of "Paper Feed" service calls.	
120-9	SC Sorter Counter	Displays the total number of "Sorter" service calls.	
130	Jam Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams. Use the "+ " & "–" ("up & "down") keys to select the desired number. *(Press the "# " key to enter this mode.* *When the desired number displayed in the copy counter is selected by using the "+ " & "–" keys, the first three digits are displayed in the three digit indicator.* *Hold down the "• " key to display the second three digits.)*	
130-1	Jam Total Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams excluding original jams in the ADF (SP130-14).	
130-2	Jam 1st Feed Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams from the upper paper tray (Type 1 & 3).	
130-3	Jam 2nd Feed Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams from the lower paper tray.	
130-4	Jam 3rd Feed Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams from the upper tray of the paper tray unit.	
130-5	Jam 4th Feed Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams from the middle tray of the paper tray unit.	
130-6	Jam 5th Feed Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams from the lower tray of the paper tray unit.	
130-7	Jam By-pass/LCT Feed Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams from the by-pass feed table or the LCT.	
130-8	Jam Fuser Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams in the fusing unit area.	
130-9	Jam Inverter Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams in the duplex entrance area.	
130-10	Jam Duplex Stack Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams in the turn gate area during duplex stacking.	
130-11	Jam Duplex Feed Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams from duplex tray.	

Mode No.		Function	Data
130-12	Jam Exit Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams in the copier exit area.	
130-13	Jam Sorter Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams in the sorter.	
130-14	Jam ADF Counter	Displays the total number of original jams in the ADF.	
150	Paper Feed Timing (By-pass/LCT) p	Adjusts the registration paper buckle amount for the paper fed from the by-pass feed table or the LCT. *(The data value is the approximate distance that the paper is fed after the lead edge is detected by the registration sensor.)*	0: 27 mm – 19: 46 mm **20: 47 mm** 21: 48 mm – 24: 51 mm
151	Paper Feed Timing (1st tray) p	Adjusts the registration paper buckle amount for the paper fed from the upper paper tray (Type 1 & 3 only). *(The data value is the approximate distance that the paper is fed after the lead edge is detected by the registration sensor.)*	0: 27 mm – 9: 36 mm **10: 37 mm** 11: 38 mm – 24: 51 mm
152	Paper Feed Timing (2nd~ 5th tray) p	Adjusts the registration paper buckle amount for the paper fed from the lower paper tray or the paper tray unit. *(The data value is the approximate distance that the paper is fed after the lead edge is detected by the registration sensor.)*	0: 27 mm – 6: 33 mm **7: 34 mm** 8: 35 mm – 24: 51 mm
153	Paper Feed Timing (Duplex) p	Adjusts the registration paper buckle amount for the paper fed from the duplex tray. *(The data value is the approximate distance that the paper is fed after the lead edge is detected by the registration sensor.)*	0: 27 mm – 14: 41 mm **15: 42 mm** 16: 43 mm – 24: 51 mm
154	Single Duplex Reverse Timing p	Adjusts the switch-back timing of paper in the duplex tray in single 2-sided copying. *(The smaller the data is, the earlier the switch-back timing becomes.)*	0: –4 mm – 3: –1 mm **4:** 5: + 1 mm – 8: + 4 mm
157	Trail Edge Erase p	Adjusts the trail edge erase start timing. *(When the default value is selected, the trail edge erase starts 2mm after the trail edge of the image.)*	0: –6 mm – 11: –0.5 mm **12:** 13: + 0.5 mm – 15: 1.5 mm

Mode No.		Function	Data
160	Grid Voltage (Image)	Displays the grid bias voltage for the image area in the three digit indicator. *(Grid bias voltage can be changed by using "+ " & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys in 5V steps.)*	**715 V**
161	Grid Voltage (ID sensor pattern)	Displays the grid bias voltage for the ID sensor pattern in the three digit indicator. *(Grid bias voltage can be changed by using "+ " & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys in 5V steps.)*	**480 V**
162	T-CH PWM	Displays the PWM value for the high voltage supply board [T] (transfer corona) in the three digit indicator. *(The PWM value can be changed by using the "+ " & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys in 1 step.)*	
163	D-CH (AC) PWM	Displays the PWM value for the high voltage supply board [D-ac] (separation ac corona) in the three digit indicator. *(The PWM value can be changed by using the "+ " & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys.)*	
164	D-CH (DC) PWM	Displays the high voltage supply board [D- dc] (separation dc corona) in the three digit indicator. *(The PWM value can be changed by using "+ " & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys.)*	
165	ID-sensor PWM/Output Check	Displays the ID sensor output in the three digit indicator. *(When entering this mode by pressing the "# " key, the adjusted PWM value for the ID sensor is displayed.* *Hold down the start key to display the ID sensor output voltage.* *The PWM value can be changed by using the "+ " & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys.)*	
166	V-Sensor PWM/Output Check	Displays the V sensor output in the three digit indicator. *(When entering this mode by pressing the "# " key, the adjusted PWM value for the V sensor is displayed.* *Hold down the start key to display the V sensor output voltage.* *The PWM value can be changed by using the "+ " & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys.)*	

Mode No.		Function	Data
167	ADS Gain/Output Check	Displays the ADS sensor output in the three digit counter. *(When entering this mode by pressing the "# " key, the adjusted gain data for the ADS sensor is displayed.* *Hold down the start key to display the ADS sensor output voltage.* *Do not hold down the start key too long [about 20 sec], otherwise E12 comes up.* *Gain data can be changed by using the "+ " & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys.)*	

1.3 SP-8 SENSOR/SWITCH/SIGNAL DATA CHECK

- How to check sensor/switch/signal -

1. While pressing both 1 and 3 on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch in order to access the SP mode.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the ADS indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.

2. Enter 8 and then press the "# " key.

3. Enter the desired input number using the number keys and press the "# " key.

   NOTE: The input number entered is displayed in the three digit indicator.

4. Enter the number of copies in the copy counter and press the start key if you want to check the input data during the copy cycle.

   NOTE: The on/off status can also be checked manually.

5. The data ("0" or "1") will be displayed in the three digit indicator.

6. To check input data for another sensor, switch, or signal, press the "# " key twice and repeat from step 3.

Input No.	Sensor/Switch/Signal	Data	
		0	1
1	Registration sensor (S11)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
2	Fusing exit sensor(S14)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
4	Upper relay sensor (S10)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
5	Lower relay sensor (S9)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6	Tray relay sensor - 1 (Paper tray unit) (S9)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
7	Tray relay sensor - 2 (Paper tray unit) (S10)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
8	Tray relay sensor - 3 (Paper tray unit) (S11)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
10	Upper tray set sensor (S2)	Tray set	Tray not set
11	Lower tray set sensor (S3)	Tray set	Tray not set
12	Tray set sensor - 1 (Paper tray unit) (S1)	Tray set	Tray not set
13	Tray set sensor - 2 (Paper tray unit) (S2)	Tray set	Tray not set
14	Tray set sensor - 3 (Paper tray unit) (S3)	Tray set	Tray not set
16	Upper tray upper limit sensor (S7)	Down	Up
17	Lower tray upper limit sensor (S8)	Down	Up

Input No.	**Sensor/Switch/Signal**	**Data**	
		0	**1**
18	Tray upper limit sensor - 1 (Paper tray unit) (S4)	Down	Up
19	Tray upper limit sensor - 2 (Paper tray unit) (S5)	Down	Up
20	Tray upper limit sensor - 3 (Paper tray unit) (S6)	Down	Up
22	Upper tray paper end sensor (S5)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
23	Lower tray paper end sensor (S6)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
24	Paper end sensor - 1 (Paper tray unit) (S7)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
25	Paper end sensor -2 (Paper tray unit)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
26	Paper end sensor - 3 (Paper tray unit) (S8)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
28	LCT paper end sensor (S26)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
29	LCT cover switch (S15)	Cover closed	Cover open
30	LCT down switch (S16)	Off	On
31	LCT lower limit sensor (S27)	Off	On
32	LCT upper limit sensor (S28)	Off	On
34	Sorter bin H.P. sensor	Not at H.P.	At H.P.
35	Sorter bin lift sensor	Off	On
36	Sorter cover switch	Cover open	Cover closed
37	Sorter entrance sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
39	By-pass feed table sensor (S1)	Table closed	Table open
40	By-pass feed paper end sensor (S4)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
41	Duplex unit set detection	Off	On
42	Duplex paper end sensor (S24)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
43	Duplex turn gate sensor (S23)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
44	Duplex entrance sensor (S22)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
45	Junction gate sensor (S15)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
47	Platen cover switch (SW11)	Platen cover closed	Platen cover open
48	Scanner H.P. sensor (S16)	Off	On
53	Tray unit door switch (SW13)	Door closed	Door open
54	Exit cover switch (SW10)	Cover open	Cover closed
55	Paper tray unit detection	Tray unit detected	Tray unit not detected
58	Key counter set signal	Not set	Set
59	Total counter micro read switch	Off	On
61	Jogger motor high temperature signal	Off	On
64	Exposure lamp on signal	Off	On

Input No.	Sensor/Switch/Signal	Data	
		0	1
67	Upper tray paper size switches (SW1 - SW4)	Refer to table 1	Refer to table 1
68	Lower tray paper size switches (SW5 - SW8)		
69	Tray paper size switches - 1 (Paper tray unit) (SW1 - SW4)		
70	Tray paper size switches - 2 (Paper tray unit) (SW5 - SW8)		
71	Tray paper size switches - 3 (Paper tray unit) (SW9 - SW12)		
72	Original length&width sensors (S20 & S21)	Refer to tables 2 and 3	Refer to tables 2 and 3

Table 1

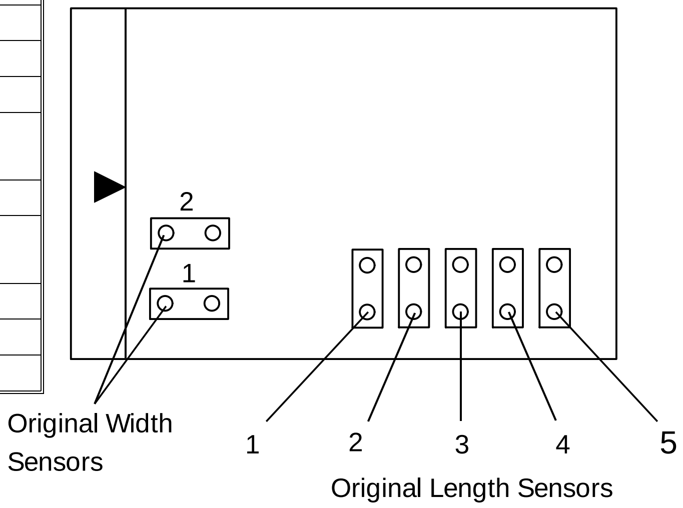
Paper size	Data
A3 / 11" X 17"	1
B4	3
F / 8 1/2" X 14"	2
A4 lengthwise	6
A4 sideways / 8 1/2" X 11" lengthwise	4
B5 lengthwise	12
B5 sideways / 8 1/2" X 11" sideways	8

Table 2

Sensor	Data
Original width 1	1
Original width 2	2
Original length 1	4
Original length 2	8
Original length 3 (A3/A4 type machine only)	10
Original length 4	20
Original length 5	40

Table 3

Original size	Data
A3	7F
11" X 17"	6F
B4	3F
A4 Lengthwise	E
A4 sideways / 8 1/2" X 11" lengthwise	7
B5 lengthwise	6
B5 sideways / 8 1/2" X 11" sideways	3
A5 lengthwise	0
A5 sideways	2
No original	0



1.4 SP-9 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT CHECK

- How to turn electrical component on/off -

1. While pressing both 1 and 3 on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch in order to access the SP mode.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the ADS indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.

2. Enter 9 using the number keys and then press the "# " key.

3. Enter the desired output number using the number keys.

   NOTE: The output number entered will blink in the three digit indicator. The two LEDs at each end of the manual ID level indicator will light.

4. Press the start key to turn on the electrical component.

   NOTE: When the selected electrical component is active, all the manual ID level LEDs will light.
   Pressing the start key while holding down the interrupt key turns on the selected electrical component together with the main motor.

5. Press the Clear/Stop key to turn off the electrical component.

6. To turn on another electrical component, repeat from step 3.

CAUTION:The motors keep turning in this output mode regardless of upper or lower limit sensor signal. Do not keep the electrical component on for a long time to prevent any mechanical or electrical damage.

Output No.	Electrical component
1	Main motor (M1)
2	High voltage supply - Charge corona (PCB7)
3	High voltage supply - Charge corona and grid bias without V_R correction (PCB7)
4	High voltage supply - Charge corona and grid bias for ID sensor pattern (PCB7)
5	High voltage supply - Charge corona and grid bias for V_R pattern (PCB7)
6	High voltage supply - Charge corona and grid bias for V_L pattern (PCB7)
7	High voltage supply - Transfer corona (PCB7)
8	High voltage supply - Separation corona (PCB8)
9	High voltage supply - Development bias (PCB7)
10	ID sensor LED (S12)
11	V sensor LED (S13)
12	Scanner drive motor : Scanner moves forward and returns to the H.P. (M7)
13	Black development unit **(NOTE)**

Output No.	Electrical component
15	Development drive clutch (MC1)
16	Toner supply clutch (MC2)
17	Pre-transfer lamp (L2)
19	Erase lamp unit - All blocks (L5)
20	Erase lamp unit - Designated blocks for ID sensor pattern (L5)
21	Erase lamp unit - Designated blocks for V_L pattern (L5)
22	Sorter drive motor
23	Sorter bin drive motor : Up **(CAUTION)**
24	Sorter bin drive motor : Down **(CAUTION)**
25	Registration clutch (MC5)
27	By-pass feed clutch (MC3)
28	Feed relay clutch (MC4)
29	Tray unit drive clutch (Paper Tray Unit) (MC4)
30	Upper paper feed clutch (MC6)
31	Lower paper feed clutch (MC7)
32	Paper feed clutch - 1 (Paper tray unit) (MC1)
33	Paper feed clutch - 2 (Paper tray unit) (MC2)
34	Paper feed clutch - 3 (Paper tray unit) (MC3)
35	Duplex tray lock solenoid (SOL3)
37	Tray lock solenoid - 1 (Paper tray unit) (SOL1)
38	Tray lock solenoid - 2 (Paper tray unit) (SOL2)
39	Tray lock solenoid - 3 (Paper tray unit) (SOL3)
40	Pick-up solenoid (SOL2)
41	Upper tray lift motor : Up (M3)
42	Lower tray lift motor : Up (M4)
43	Tray lift motor - 1 (Paper tray unit) : Up (M1)
44	Tray lift motor - 2 (Paper tray unit) : Up (M2)
45	Tray lift motor - 3 (Paper tray unit) : Up (M3)
46	Upper tray lift motor : Down (M3)
47	Lower tray lift motor : Down (M4)
48	Tray lift motor - 1 (Paper tray unit) : Down (M1)
49	Tray lift motor - 2 (Paper tray unit) : Down (M2)
50	Tray lift motor - 3 (Paper tray unit) : Down (M3)
51	Jogger motor : Set jogger fences at the H.P. (M12)
52	Duplex feed motor : Normal rotation (M11)
53	Duplex feed motor : Reverse rotation (M11)
54	Duplex turn gate solenoid (SOL7)
56	Junction gate solenoid (SOL6)
57	Exhaust blower motor (M2)
58	Fusing exhaust fan motor : High speed (M6)
59	LCT lift motor : Up (M13) **(CAUTION)**
60	LCT lift motor : Down (M13) **(CAUTION)**

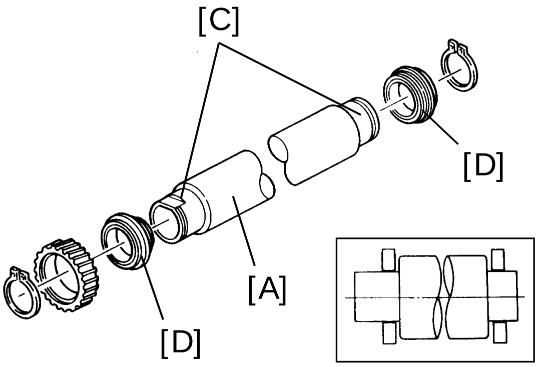
NOTE : When the start key is pressed, the main motor starts turning. While the "•" key is held down, the development drive and toner supply clutches turn on to supply **black** toner.

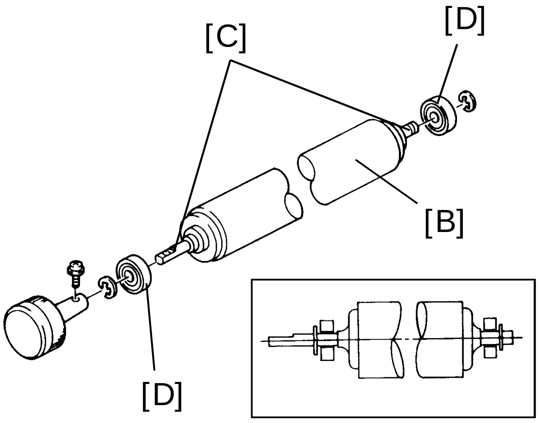
2. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

2.1 PM TABLE (NOTE)

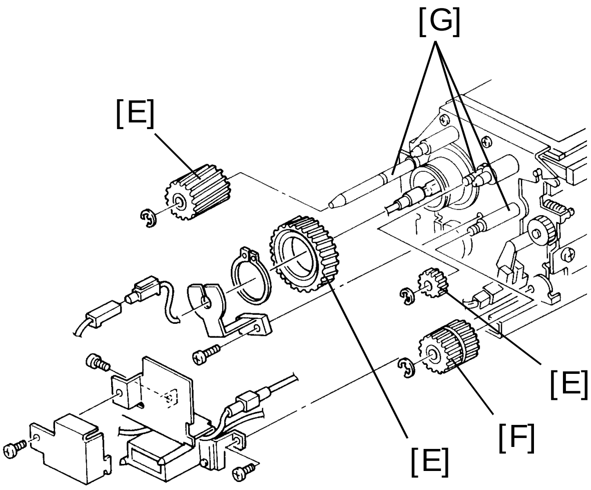
Note3: Fusing Section

(1)Hot and Pressure Rollers
Replace the hot [A] and pressure [B] rollers every 160K if necessary.
Then, lubricate the roller shaft [C] and bearings [D] with BARRIERTA L55/2 grease.





(2)Fusing Drive Gears
Replace the fusing drive gears [E] every 160K.
Then, lubricate the gears [E, F] and their shafts [G] with Grease G501.

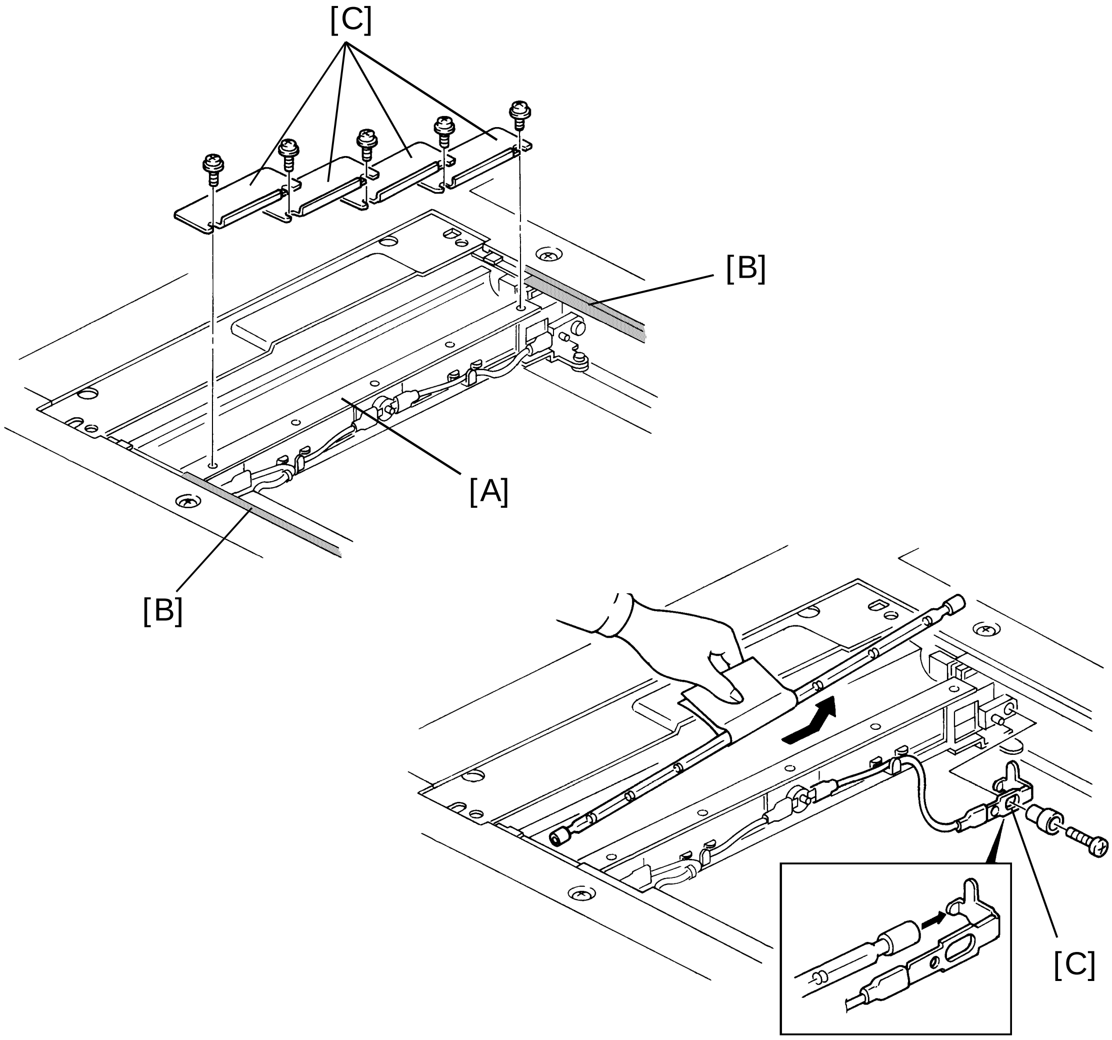


SECTION 5

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

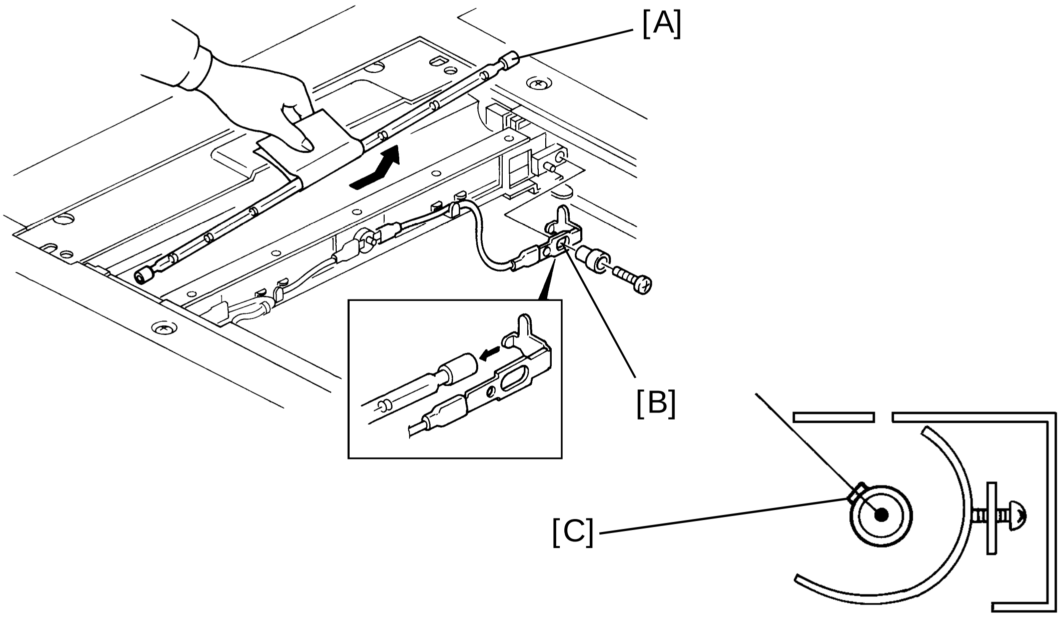
1. OPTICS

1.1 EXPOSURE LAMP REPLACEMENT



NOTE: Do not touch the reflector or the new exposure lamp with your bare hands. Use a strip of paper as shown. (Oil marks from your fingers on the lamp or reflectors will be affected by heat from the lamp and will cause discoloration.)

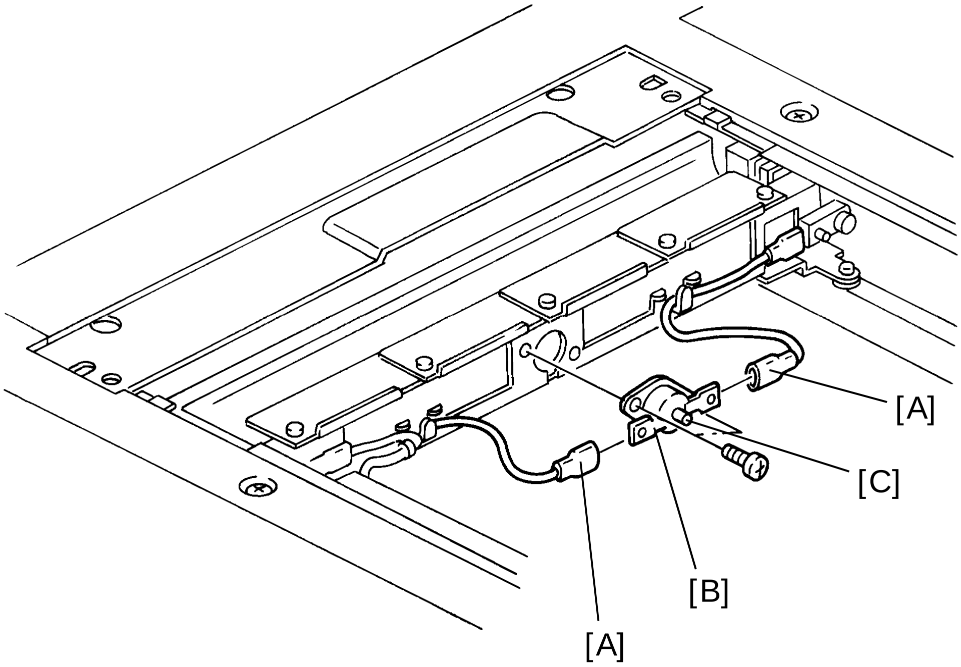
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
3. Move the first scanner [A] to the cutout position at the front and rear frames [B]. (See illustration.)
4. Remove the adjusting plates [C] (loosen 5 screws).
5. Remove the rear terminal bracket [D] (1 screw).



6. Remove the exposure lamp [A] from the fror
   lamp towards the rear.
7. Install a new lamp. Use a strip of paper to hold the lamp as shown. Reassemble the rear terminal bracket [B].

   NOTE: Make sure that the blister [C] on the lamp points towards the reflector opening (left side of the copier) as shown.
8. Reassemble the copier.
9. Check the exposure lamp voltage setting [X] by SP48.
10. Check the target lamp voltage [Y] by SP51 (press the "●" key for reading).
11. Perform forced V_L detection (SP70) [Y-X] times.
12. Check the target lamp voltage by SP51.
13. Perform forced V_L detection (SP70) a few more times.
14. Check the target lamp voltage [Z] by SP51 again and confirm that the voltage [Z] is the same as that in step 12. If not, repeat the forced VL detection (SP70) until the voltage [Z] stabilizes.
15. Perform the auto ADS gain adjustment (SP56).
16. Adjust ADS density (SP34) if necessary.

1.2 OPTICS THERMOSWITCH REPLACEMENT

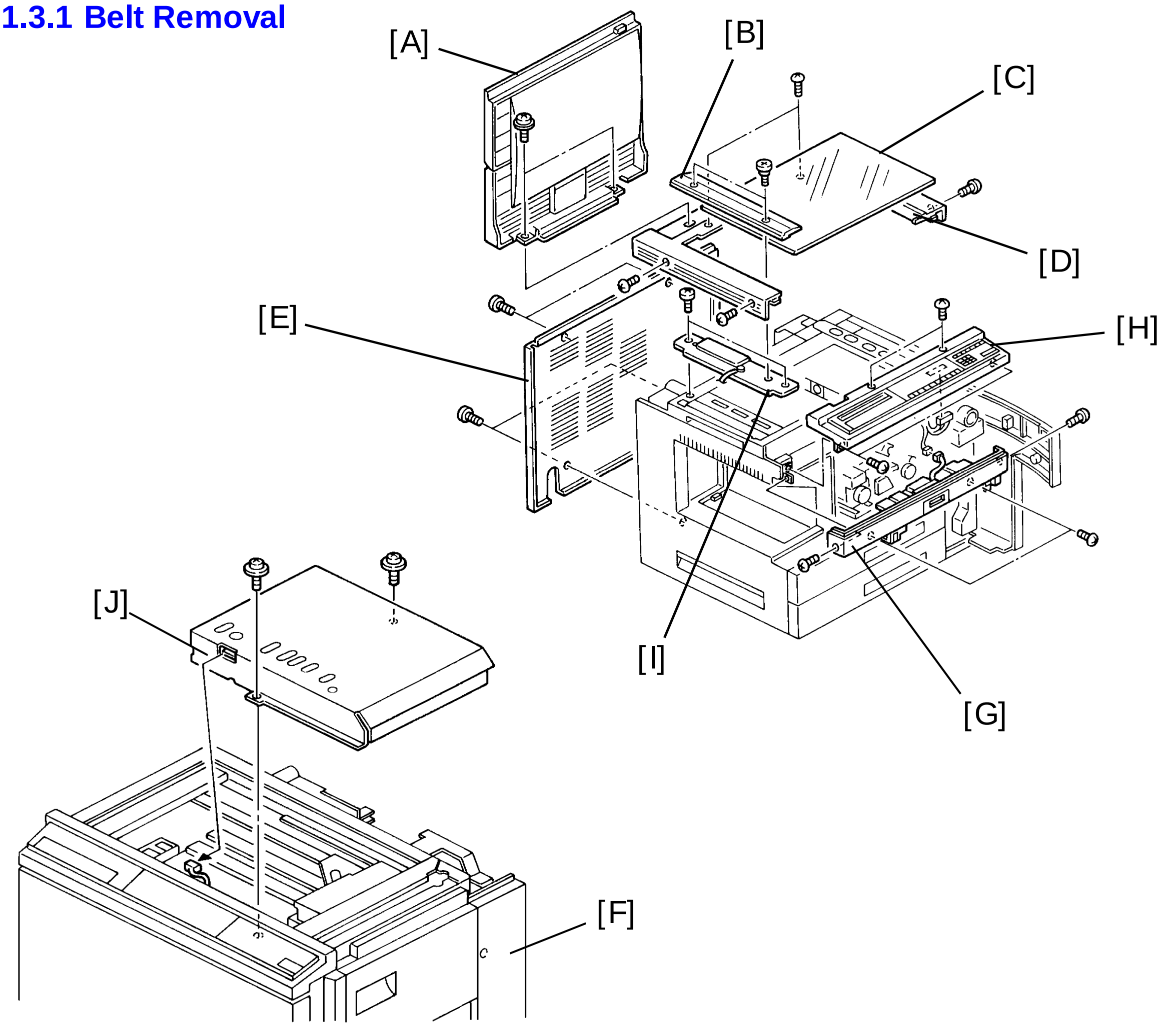


NOTE: The thermoswitch can be reset manually by pushing the red button [C] when the exposure lamp area cools.

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the exposure glass.
3. Remove the exposure lamp leads [A] from the terminals on both sides of the thermoswitch [B].
4. Remove the thermoswitch from the bracket (2 screws), and replace it.

1.3 SCANNER DRIVE BELT REPLACEMENT

1.3.1 Belt Removal

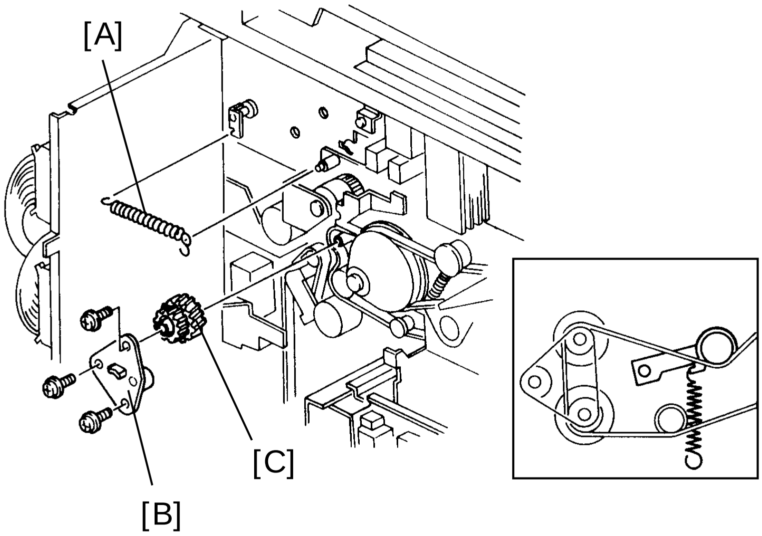


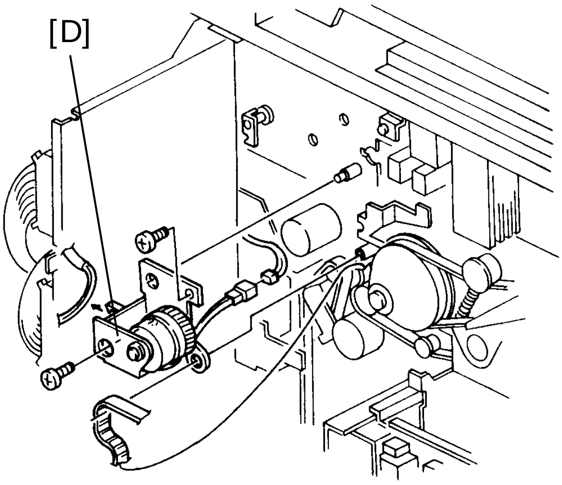
1. Remove the following parts:
   Platen cover or ADF [A]
   Left scale [B] (2 shoulder screws)
   Exposure glass [C]
   Top cover [D] (6 screws)
   Rear cover [E] (loosen 2 screws and remove 2 screws)
   Right upper cover [F] (4 screws)
   Front upper cover [G] (3 screws)
   Operation panel [H] (4 screws and 2 connectors)
   Left scale bracket [I] (2 screws, 1 connector and 1 harness clamp)
   Lens cover [J] (2 screws and 1 connector)

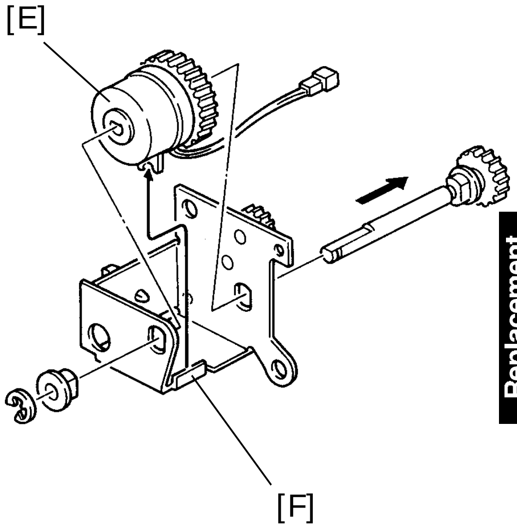
* The rest of procudure is the same as for A069/A073/A074.

2. TONER SUPPLY

2.1 TONER SUPPLY CLUTCH REMOVAL





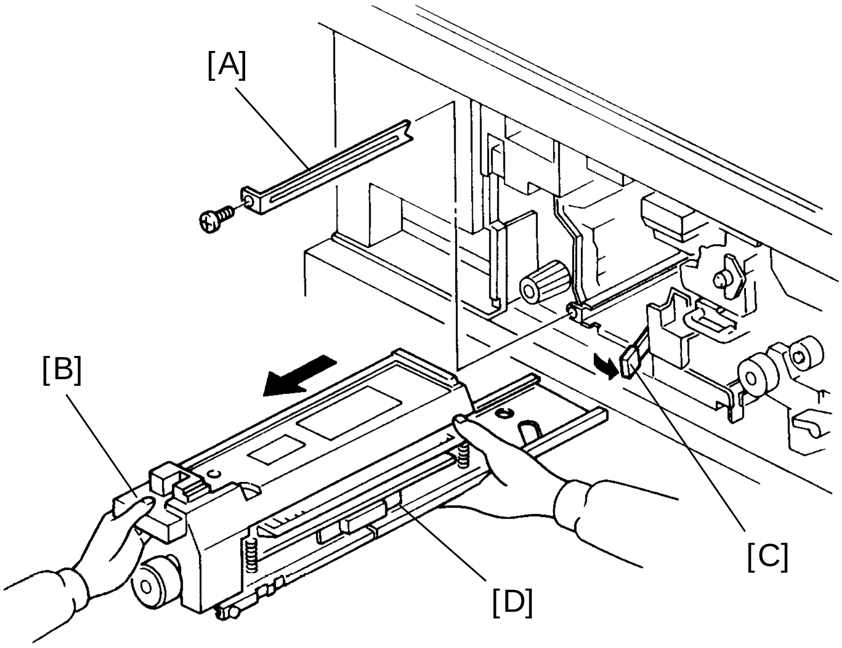


1. Turn off the main switch and remove the rear cover.
2. Swing out the main control board assembly.
3. Remove the tension spring [A].
4. Remove the support bracket [B] (3 screws) and gear [C].
5. Remove the toner supply clutch assembly [D] (2 screws, 1 wire saddle, and 1 connector).
6. Remove the toner supply clutch [E] (1 E-ring).

   NOTE: When reinstalling the clutch, make sure that the clutcch stopper groove engages with the stopper [F].

3. FUSING

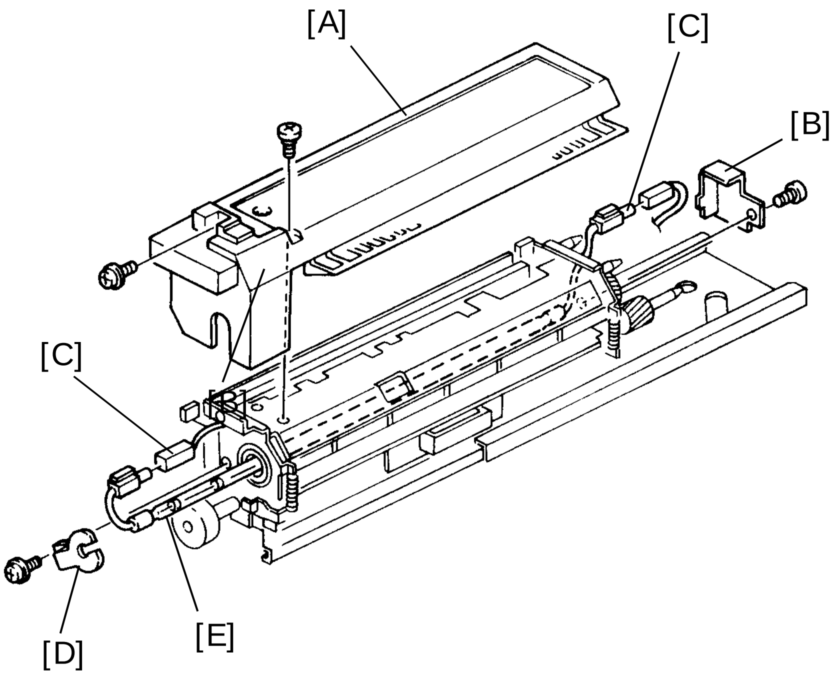
3.1 FUSING UNIT REMOVAL



1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the fusing unit lock plate [A] (1 screw).
3. Hold the fusing unit cover [B] while pushing the release lever [C], and pull out the fusing unit [D] until it stops.
4. Remove the fusing unit completely while pushing the release lever.

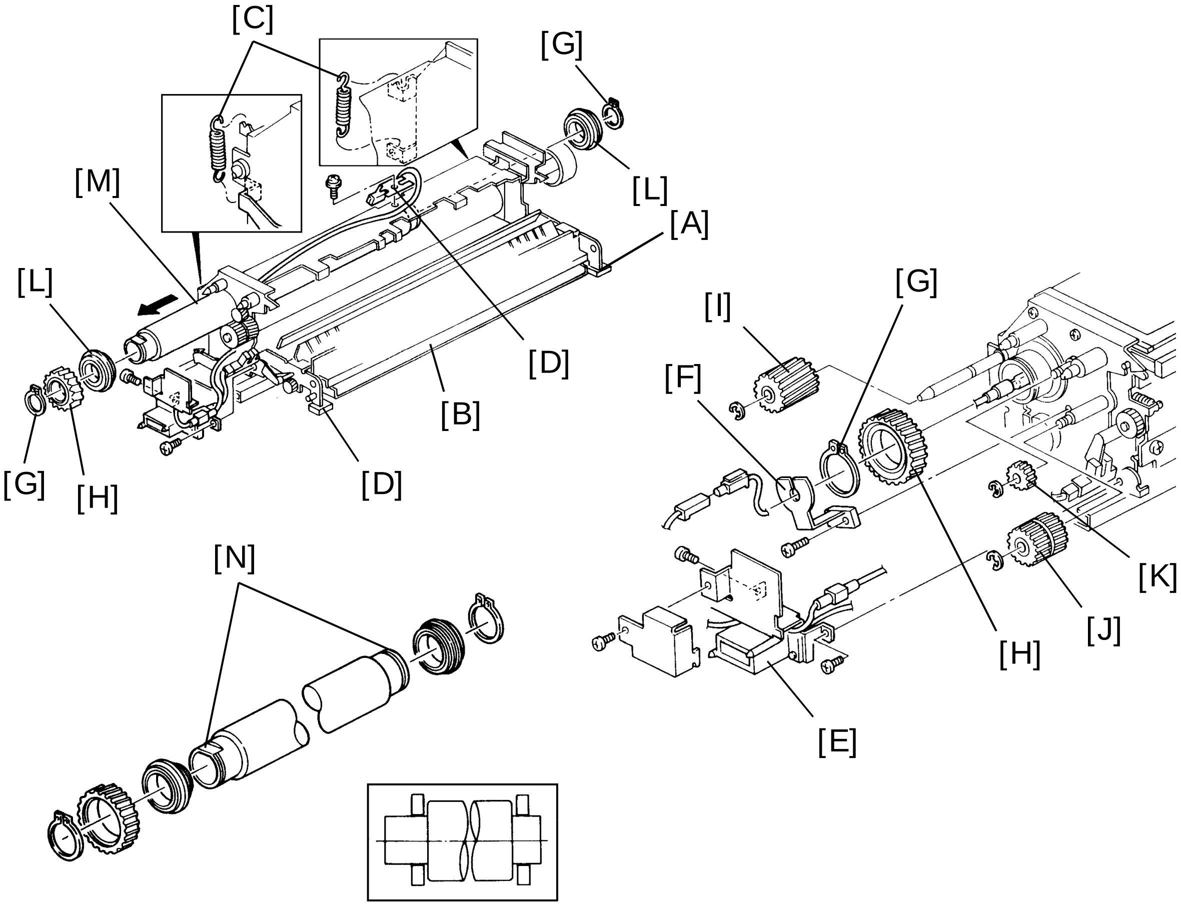
   NOTE: Support the bottom of the fusing unit, before completely removing it.

3.2 FUSING LAMP REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the fusing unit (see Fusing Unit Removal).
2. Remove the fusing unit cover [A] (1 shoulder screw, 1 screw).
3. Remove the harness cover [B] (1 screw) and disconnect the fusing lamp harness [C] (1 connector each).
4. Remove the front lamp holder [D] (1 screw) and replace the fusing lamp [E].

3.3 HOT ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the fusing lamp (see Fusing Lamp Replacement).
2. Press both release levers [A] and lower the fusing exit assembly [B].
3. Remove the front and rear pressure springs [C].
4. Remove the fusing thermistor [D] (1 screw).
5. Remove the harness bracket [E] (2 screws) and rear heater holder [F] (1 screw).
6. Remove the front and rear C-rings [G], 4 gears [H, I, J, K], front fusing bearings [L], and then remove the hot roller [M].

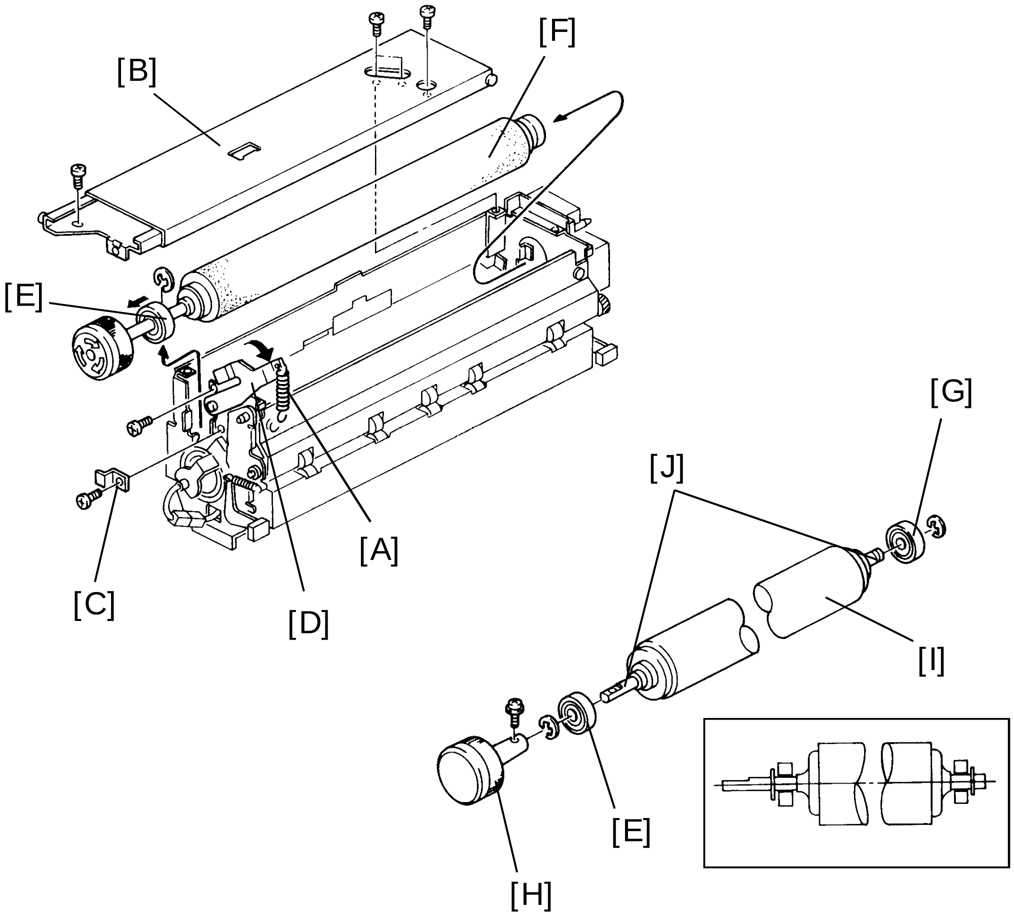
   NOTE: a) Lubricate the roller shaft [N] with BARRIERTA L55/2 grease.

   b) Peel off 3 cm (1 inch) from both ends of the protective sheet, and install the hot roller.

   c) Before setting the pressure springs, remove the rest of the protective sheet.

   d) Lubicate the fusing drive gears and their shafts with grease G501.

3.4 PRESSURE ROLLER REPLACEMENT

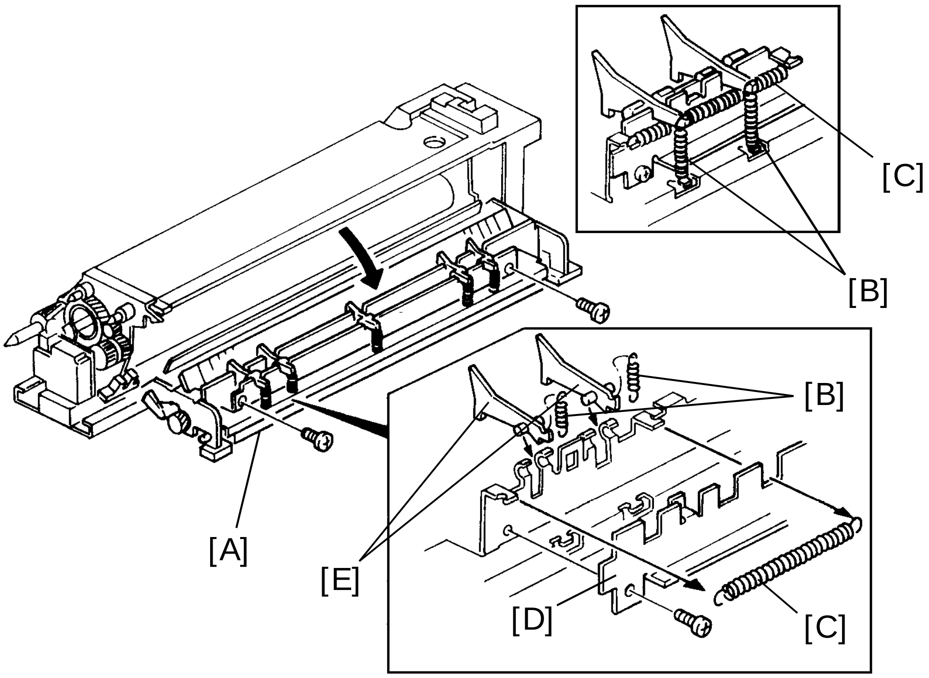


1. Unhook the fusing pressure springs [A].
2. Place the fusing unit up side down.
3. Remove the bottom plate [B] (5 screws).
4. Remove the bearing stopper [C] (1 screw) and swing the pressure arms [D] as shown.
5. Slide the bearing [E] (1 E-ring) to front and remove the pressure roller assembly [F].
6. Remove the rear bearing [G] (1 E-ring) and the fusing knob [H] (1 screw).
7. Replace the pressure roller [I].

   NOTE: When installing a new pressure roller:

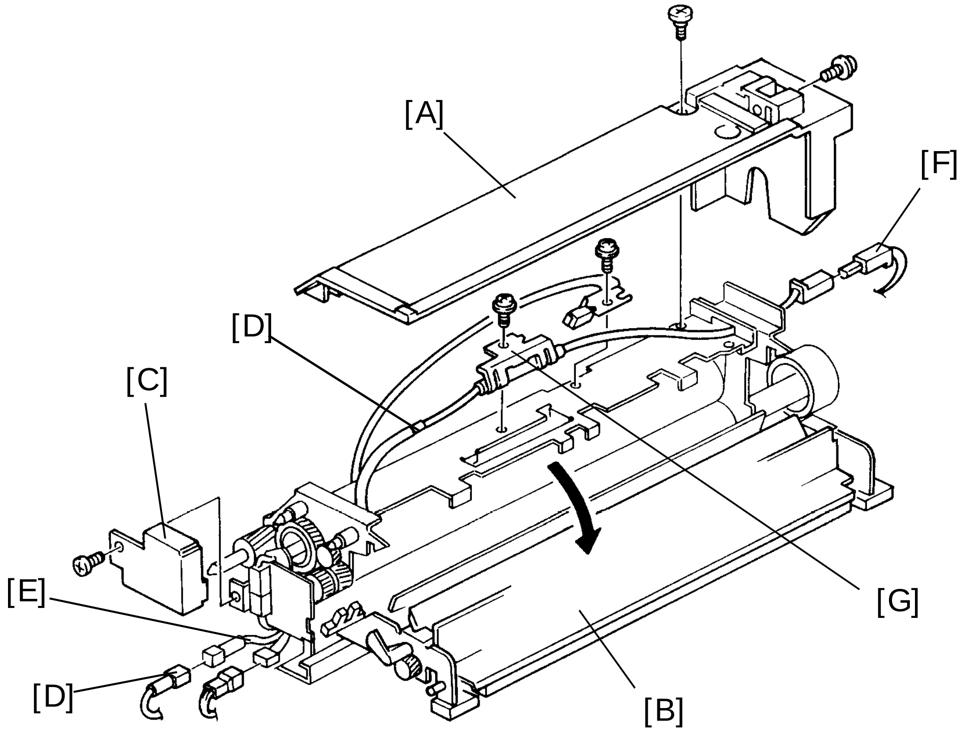
   a) Lubricate the roller shaft [J] and bearings [E, G] with BARRIERTA L55/2 grease.

3.5 FUSING STRIPPER PAWL REPLACEMENT



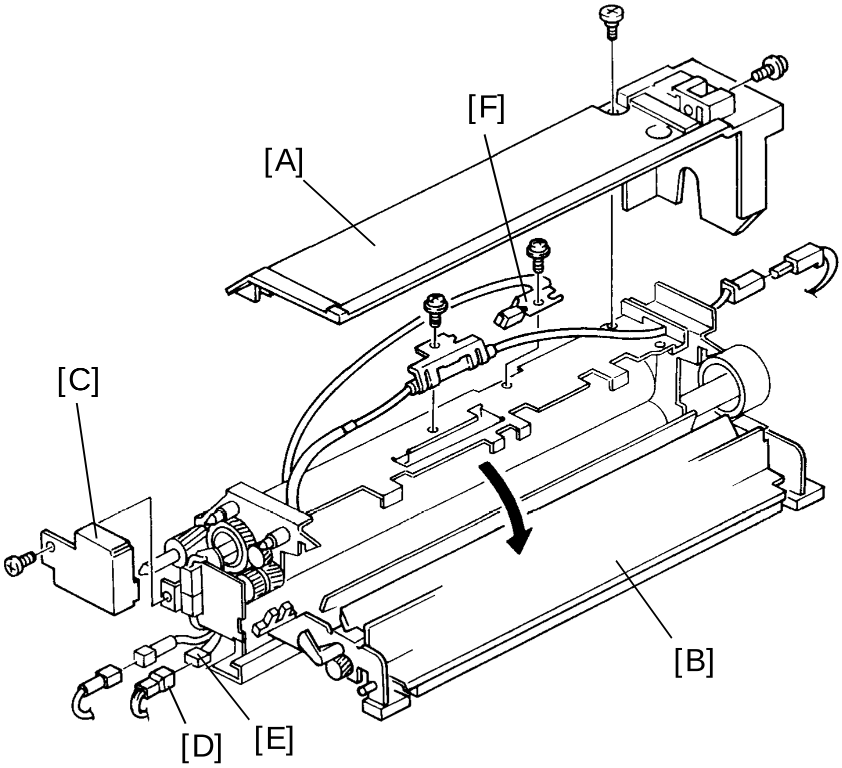
1. Remove the fusing unit (see Fusing Unit Removal).
2. Lower the fusing exit assembly [A].
3. Remove the pawl pressure springs [B] and pawl release springs [C].
4. Remove the fusing pawl bracket [D] (2 screws).
5. Remove the fusing stripper pawls [E] and replace.

3.6 THERMOFUSE HARNESS REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the fusing unit (see Fusing Unit Removal).
2. Remove the fusing unit cover [A] (1 shoulder screw, 1 screw).
3. Lower the fusing exit assembly [B], and remove the harness cover [C] (1 screw).
4. Disconnect the thermofuse harness [D] from the fusing harness [E] and the fusing lamp lead [F].
5. Remove the thermofuse holder [G] (1 screw) then remove the thermofuse harness (2 plate clamps).

3.7 FUSING THERMISTOR REPLACEMENT

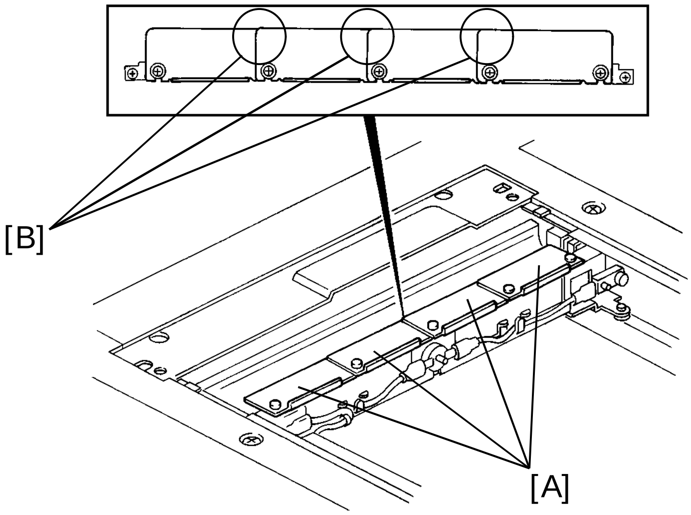


1. Remove the fusing unit (see Fusing Unit Removal).
2. Remove the fusing unit cover [A] (1 shoulder screw, 1 screw).
3. Lower the fusing exit assembly [B], and remove the harness cover [C] (1 screw).
4. Disconnect the thermistor harness [D] from the fusing harness [E].
5. Remove the fusing thermistor [F] (1 screw, 2 plate clamps).

4. COPY QUALITY ADJUSTMENT

4.1 UNEVEN EXPOSURE ADJUSTMENT

When:	If the exposure is uneven.
Purpose:	To maintain even exposure.
Adjustment standard:	The side-to-side variation of the gray scales on the test chart should be less than one level.
How:	Change the position of the exposure adjusting plates to make the light intensity from the exposure lamp even across its length.

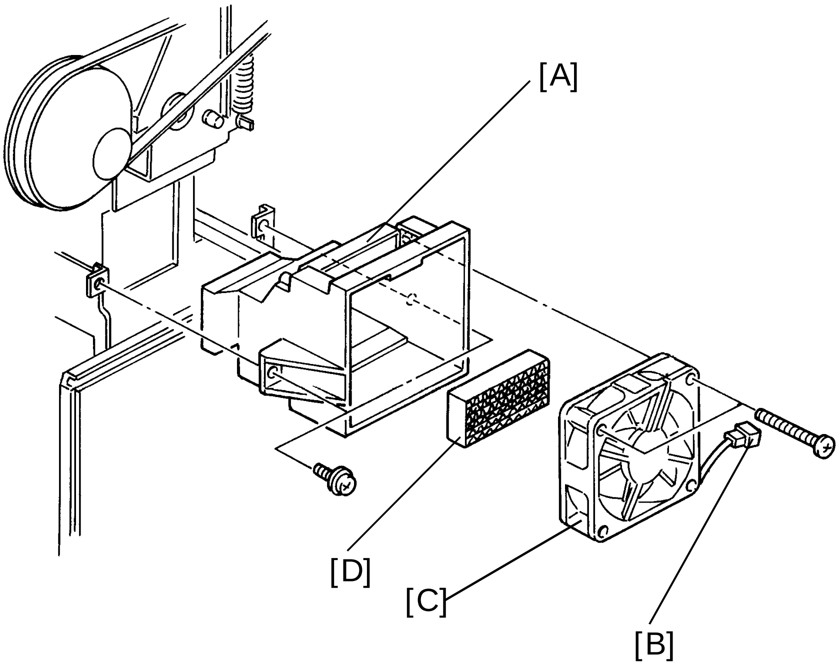


NOTE:
- Do not adjust the charge corona wire height to correct uneven image density on the copy. Otherwise, the total charge corona current will change, causing incorrect toner density control.
- Adjust the side-to-side light intensity based on the intensity at the rear side to maintain proper V_L correction.
- If it is necessary to adjust light intensity at the rear, do it before V_L initial detection (before exiting SP mode and after doing SP66).

1. Clean the optics components and the charge corona wire.
2. Place a test chart on the exposure glass and make an A3/11" x 17" copy.
3. If the side-to-side variations of the gray scales is not within the adjustment standard, turn off the main switch and remove the exposure glass.
4. Position the adjusting plates [A] so that the copy image meets the adjustment standard. The leading edges [B] of the four adjusting plates must be aligned to avoid white streaks.

5. OTHERS

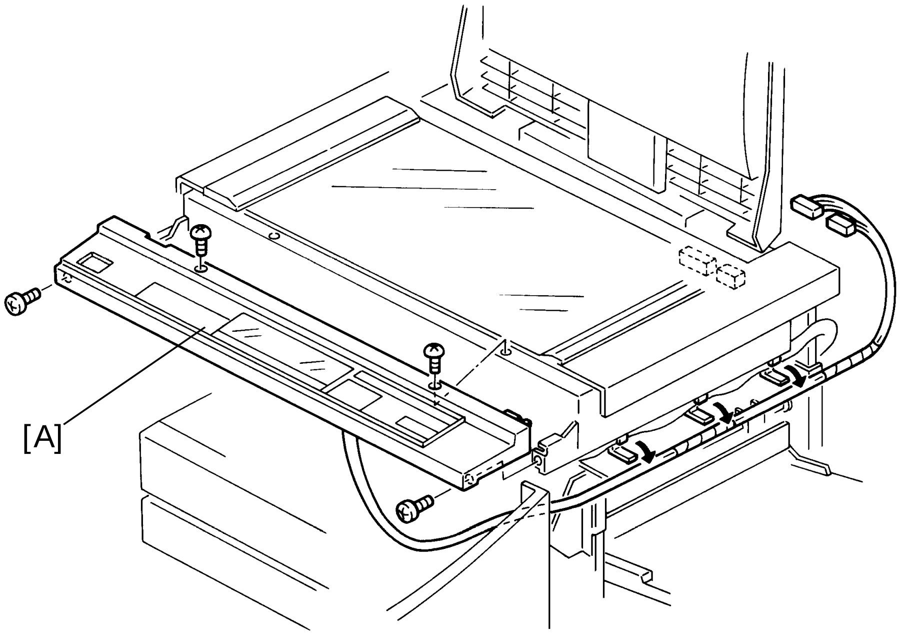
5.1 EXHAUST BLOWER FILTER (OZONE FILTER) REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Swing out the dc power supply board.
4. Unhook the high voltage cables from the vacuum fan bracket [A] and disconnect the vacuum fan harness [B] (1 connector).
5. Remove the vacuum fan bracket (2 screws).
6. Remove the vacuum fan [C] (2 screws).
7. Replace the ozone filter [D].

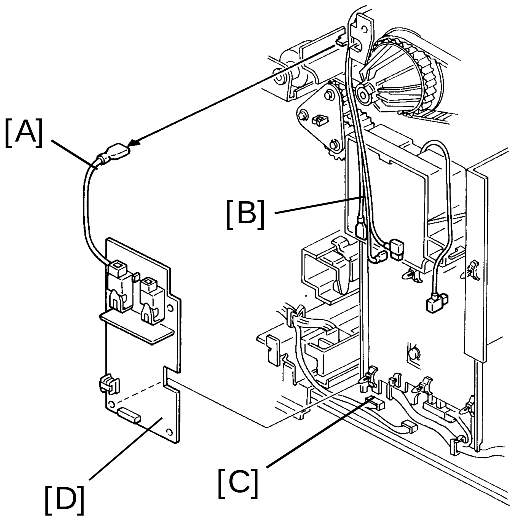
   NOTE: The PM interval of this ceramic ozone filter is 400K copies.

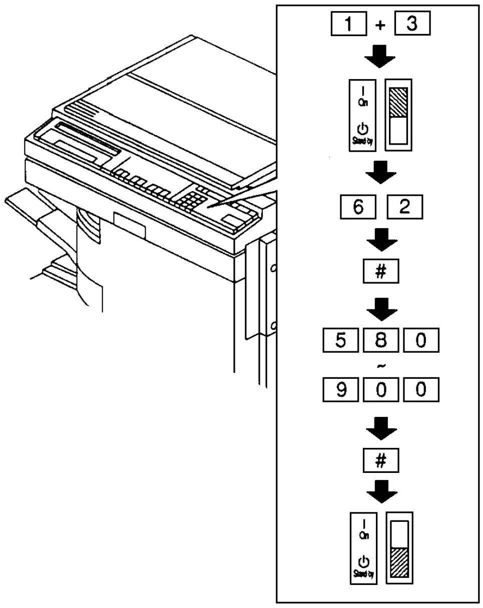
5.2 OPERATION PANEL REMOVAL



1. Remove the rear cover, right upper cover and front upper cover.
2. Remove the operation panel [A] (4 screws and 2 connectors).

5.3 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD - CTBG REPLACEMENT

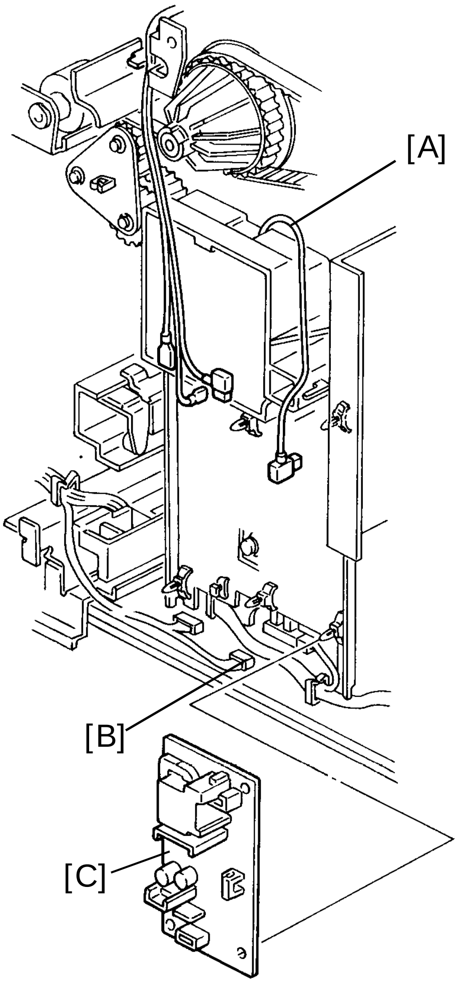




1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power cord.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Swing out the main control board assembly (1 screw).
4. Disconnect the bias cable [A] (1 connector, 2 harness clamps).
5. Disconnect the 3 high-voltage cables [B] and the harness [C].
6. Replace the high voltage supply board - CTBG power pack [D] (3 locking supports).
7. Reassemble the machine.
8. Plug in the power cord.
9. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch in order to access the SP mode.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the ADS indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.
10. Enter "62" (grid voltage setting mode) using the number keys and press the enter key.
11. Enter the new grid voltage correction data labeled on the board using the number keys and press the enter key.
12. Adjust the transfer corona current.
    (See Transfer and Separation Corona Current Adjustment.)

5.4 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD – D REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power cord.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Disconnect the high-voltage cable [A] and the harness [B] (2 connectors).
4. Replace the high voltage supply board – D [C] (3 locking supports).
5. Adjust the separation corona current.
   (See Transfer and Separation Corona Current Adjustment.)

5.5 TRANSFER AND SEPARATION CORONA CURRENT ADJUSTMENT

NOTE: The corona current varies with environmental conditions such as humidity and atmospheric pressure. The corona current is adjusted at the factory and is suitable under a wide range of environmental conditions.
The transfer corona current adjustment will be required only when the high voltage supply board - CTBG is replaced.
The separation corona current adjustment will be required only when the high voltage supply board - D is replaced.

CAUTION: Make sure that SP9 (output mode) is not active before you change the range on the digital multimeter. If SP9 is active, the multimeter may be damaged.
Be careful as high voltage is applied to the corona wires.

[Special Tools]

The following special tools are required for the transfer and separation corona current adjustment.

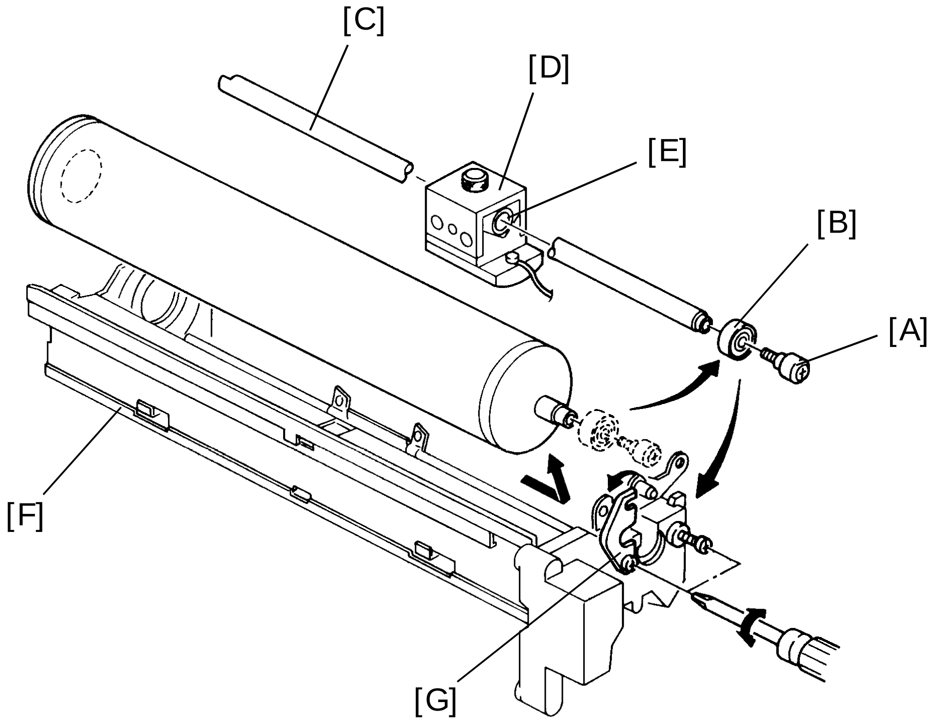
- P/N A0069105 Drum shoe shaft
- P/N 54429106 Drum shoe
- P/N 54479104 Shoe adapter
- P/N 54209507 Digital multimeter

[Preparation]

1. Turn off the main switch and remove the following parts:
   Development unit
   Cleaning unit
   Charge corona unit
   Drum unit
   T&S corona unit

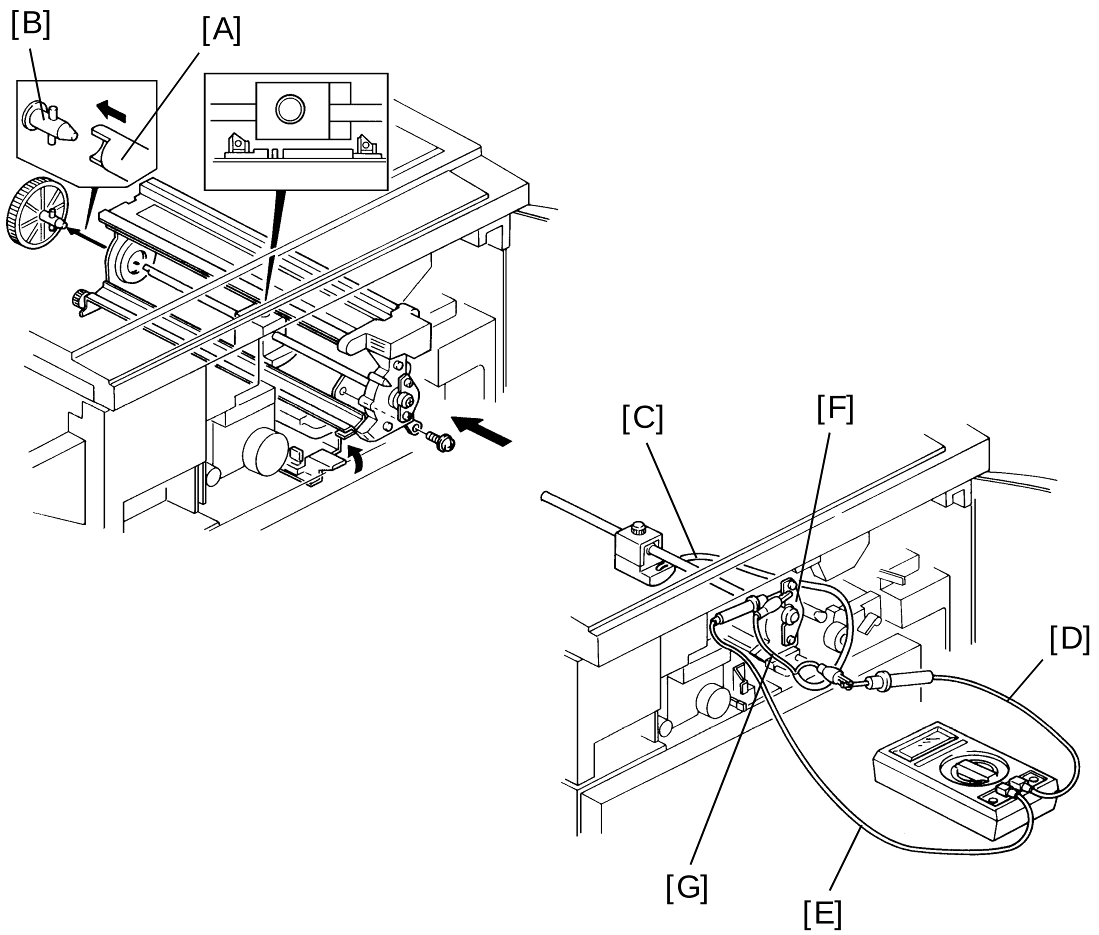
2. Clean the T&S corona unit with water or alcohol and replace the transfer and separation corona wires with new ones.

3. Remove the drum from the drum unit (see Drum Replacement). Cover the drum with a shielding sleeve.



4. Remove the bearing screw [A] and the bearing [B] from the drum, then install them on the drum shaft [C].
5. Install the drum shoe [D] and the shoe adapter at [E] the middle of the drum shaft.
6. Install the drum shaft on the drum unit [F] as shown and secure the bearing holder [G] (2 screws).

   NOTE: Be careful not to injure your hand on the edge of the pick-off pawls.



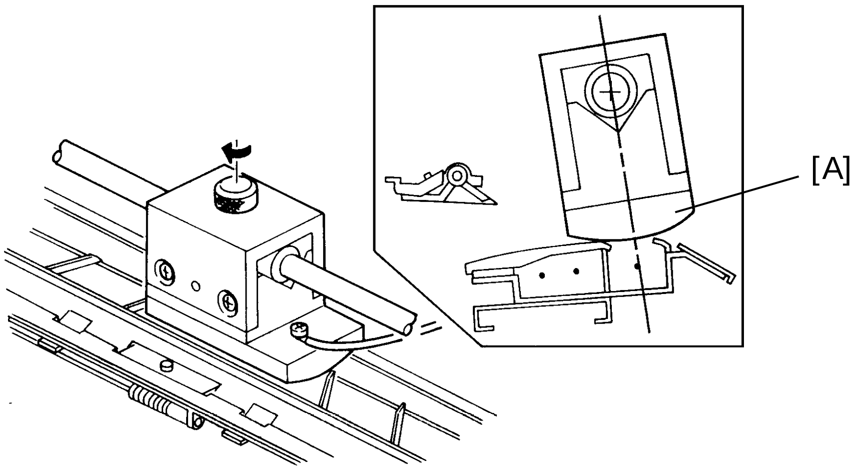
7. Install the drum unit in the copier while connecting the rear end of the drum shaft [A] with the drum drive shaft [B] as shown.

8. Secure the drum unit with a screw and run the drum shoe harness [C] through the development unit cavity.

9. Connect the digital multimeter and shoe adapter leads as follows:
   Positive multimeter lead [D] : Current terminal "A" of the multimeter and the positive lead of the drum shoe
   Negative multimeter lead [E]: Common terminal "COM" of the multimeter and the bearing holder [F]
   Negative drum shoe lead [G]: Bearing holder (ensuring the contact with the negative multimeter lead and the bearing holder)

10. Reinstall the T&S corona unit and actuate the front door safety switch.

[Transfer Corona Current Adjustment]



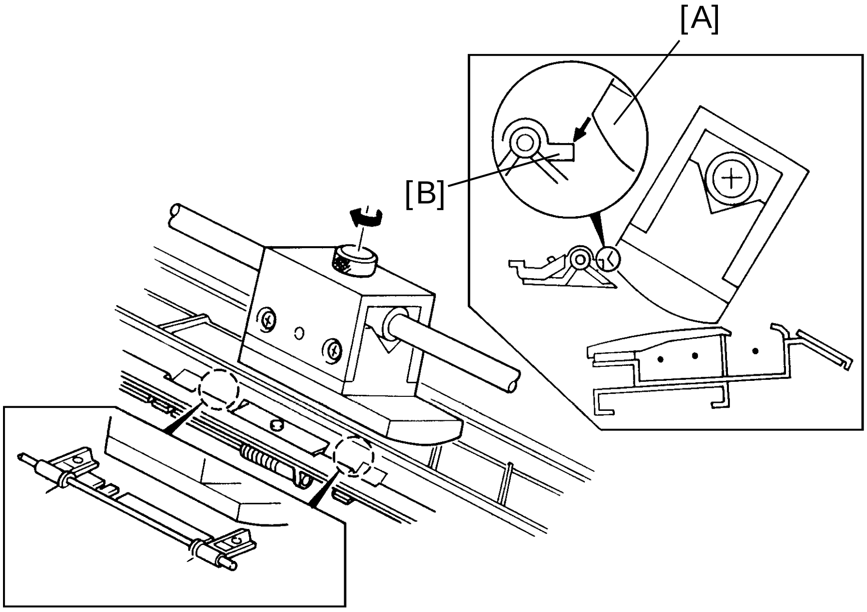
Adjustment standard: –19.5± 0.5 µA

1. Position the drum shoe at the center of the drum shaft so that the axis of the current sensing plate [A] is aligned with the transfer corona wire as shown.
2. Select the dc 200µA range on the digital multimeter.
3. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch to access the SP mode.
4. Enter "9" (output check) using the number key and then press the enter key.
5. Enter "7" (high voltage supply - transfer corona); "7" will blink in the three digit indicator.
6. Press the start key and read the transfer corona current on the digital multimeter when it is stabilized.
7. Press the clear/stop key to turn off the transfer corona current, then the enter key.

8. If the transfer corona current is out of the adjustment standard, do the following steps.
9. Enter "162" (T-CH PWM) by using the number keys, then press the enter key.
10. Change the PWM value displayed in the three digit indicator by using the number keys as follows:
    To increase the corona current (absolute value): increase the PWM value.
    To decrease the corona current (absolute value): decrease the PWM value.

    NOTE: You may use the following rule as reference:
    Changing the PWM value by 16 will change the transfer corona current by about 1µA.
11. Press the enter key.
12. Repeat steps 4 to 11 until the proper transfer corona current is obtained.
13. Turn off the main switch.

[Separation Corona Current Adjustment]



Adjustment standard: **ac 46.0± 1.2 µA**
dc + 6.3± 0.8 µA

1. Position the drum shoe at the center (between the pick-off pawls) of the drum shaft so that the upper edge [A] of the current sensing plate is aligned with the pick-off pawl bracket [B] as shown.
2. Select the ac 200µA range on the digital multimeter.
3. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch to access the SP mode.
4. Enter "9" (output check) using the number key, and then press the enter key.
5. Enter "8" (high voltage supply - separation corona); "8" will blink in the three digit indicator.
6. Press the start key and read the separation ac corona current on the digital multimeter when it is stabilized.
7. Press the clear/stop key to turn off the separation corona current, then the enter key.
8. If the separation ac corona current is out of the adjustment standard, do the following steps.
9. Enter "163" (D-CH(AC) PWM) by using the number keys, then press the enter key.

10. Change the PWM value displayed in the three digit indicator by using the number keys as follows:
    To increase the corona current (absolute value): increase the PWM value.
    To decrease the corona current (absolute value): decrease the PWM value.

    NOTE: You may use the following rule as reference:
    Changing the PWM value by 6 will change the separation ac corona current by about 1µA.
11. Press the enter key.
12. Repeat steps 4 to 11 until the proper separation ac corona current is obtained.
13. Select the dc 200µA range on the digital multimeter.
14. Enter "9" (output check) using the number key and then press the enter key.
15. Enter "8" (high voltage supply - separation corona); "8" will blink in the three digit indicator.
16. Press the start key and read the separation dc corona current on the digital multimeter when it is stabilized.
17. Press the clear/stop key to turn off the separation corona current, then the enter key.
18. If the separation dc corona current is out of the adjustment standard, do the following steps.
19. Enter "164" (D-CH(DC) PWM) by using the number keys then press the enter key.
20. Change the PWM value displayed in the three digit indicator by using the number keys as follows:
    To increase the corona current (absolute value): increase the PWM value.
    To decrease the corona current (absolute value): decrease the PWM value.

    NOTE: You may use the following rule as reference:
    Changing the PWM value by 100 will change the separation dc corona current by about 1µA.

21. Press the enter key.
22. Repeat steps 14 to 21 until the proper separation dc corona current is obtained.
23. Check the separation ac corona current again by repeating steps 2 to 7 to make sure that it is still within the adjustment standard.
24. Turn off the main switch.

FT5233/5433/5733

SERVICE MANUAL

IMPORTANT SAFETY NOTICES

PREVENTION OF PHYSICAL INJURY

1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the copier and peripherals, make sure that the copier power cord is unplugged.
2. The wall outlet should be near the copier and easily accessible.
3. Note that some components of the copier and the paper tray unit are supplied with electrical voltage even if the main switch is turned off.
4. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.
5. If the hot roller temperature is low when the main switch is turned on, the copier starts idling automatically when the warm-up period is completed. Keep hands away from the mechanical and the electrical components to avoid any injury.
6. If the start key is pressed before the copier completes the warm-up period (Ready indicator starts blinking), keep hands away from the mechanical and the electrical components as the copier starts making copies as soon as the warm-up period is completed.
7. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the copier is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.

HEALTH SAFETY CONDITIONS

1. Never operate the copier without the ozone filters installed.
2. Always replace the ozone filters with the specified ones at the specified intervals.
3. Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Try to remove with eye drops or flush with water as first aid. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.

OBSERVANCE OF ELECTRICAL SAFETY STANDARDS

1. The copier and its peripherals must be installed and maintained by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.
2. The RAM board on the main control board has a lithium battery which can explode if replaced incorrectly. Replace the battery only with an identical one. The manufacturer recommends replacing the entire RAM board. Do not recharge or burn this battery. Used batteries must be handled in accordance with local regulations.

SAFETY AND ECOLOGICAL NOTES FOR DISPOSAL

1. Do not incinerate the toner cartridge or the used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to open flame.
2. Dispose of used toner, developer, and organic photoconductor according to local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.
4. When keeping used lithium batteries in order to dispose of them later, do not put more than 100 batteries per sealed box. Storing larger numbers or not sealing them apart may lead to chemical reactions and heat build-up.

SECTION 1

OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1. SPECIFICATIONS

Configuration:	Desktop
Copy Process:	Dry electrostatic transfer system
Originals:	Sheet/Book
Original Size:	Maximum A3/11" x 17"
Copy Paper Size:	Maximum A3/11" x 17" Minimum B5/11" x 8 1/2" - Paper tray (lengthwise) A6/5 1/2" x 8 1/2" -By-pass feed table (LCT B5/A4/11" x 8 1/2" sideways only)
(Duplex Copying)	
Multiple:	A4 and B5/8 1/2" x 11" (sideways)
Single/Overlay:	Maximum A3/11" x 17" Minimum B5/8" x 13"

Copy Paper Weight:

- 250-sheet paper tray and 1000-sheet large capacity tray:
  52 –128g/m^2, 14 –34lb
- By-pass feed table:
  52 –157g/m^2, 14 –43lb
- Duplex and overlay:
  64 –105 g/m^2, 17 –28lb

Reproduction Ratios: 4 Enlargement and 6 Reduction

	A4/A3 Version	LT/LDG Version
Enlargement	200% 141% 122% 115%	200% 155% 129% 121%
Full Size	100%	100%
Reduction	93% 82% 75% 71% 65% 50%	93% 85% 77% 74% 65% 50%

Receiving Tray Capacity: 250 sheets (B4/8 1/2" x 14" and smaller)
100 sheets (A3/11" x 17")

Power Source:	115V, 60Hz, more than 12A (for N.A) 110V, 60Hz, (for Taiwan) 220/230/240V, 50Hz/60Hz, more than 7A (for EU and AA)
Power Consumption:	Maximum: 1.5 KW Warm-up: 0.77 KW Stand-by: 0.14 KW Copy Cycle (average): 1.2 KW
Noise Emission:	Stand-by: less than 40 dB Copy Cycle (average): less than 57 dB (copier only) less than 59 dB (full system) Maximum: less than 62 dB (copier only) less than 63 dB (full system)

Dimensions:

	Width	Depth	Height
Type 1	697 mm (1035 mm) 27.4" (40.7")	600 mm 23.6"	542 mm (574 mm) 21.3" (22.6")
Type 2	871 mm (1075 mm) 34.3" (42.2")	600 mm 23.6"	542 mm (574 mm) 21.3" (22.6")
Type 3	871 mm (1075 mm) 34.3" (42.2")	600 mm 23.6"	542 mm (574 mm) 21.3" (22.6")

( ): When the by-pass feed table is opened, the copy tray is extended, and the platen cover is installed.

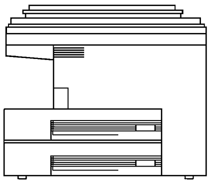
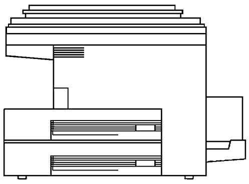
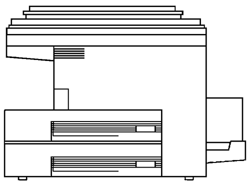
Weight:	Copier only (Without the optional platen cover=Approximately 2 kg) Type 1: approximately 78 kg (172.0 lb) Type 2: approximately 88 kg (194.0 lb) Type 3: approximately 84 kg (185.2 lb)
Zoom:	From 50% to 200% in 1% steps
Copying Speed:	33 copies/minute (A4/8 1/2" x 11" sideways) 19 copies/minute (A3) 18 copies/minute (11" x 17")
Warm-up Time:	Less than 110 seconds (20°C)

First Copy Time:	Black copy: 4.5 seconds (A4/8 1/2" x 11" sideways) Type 1, 3: (Upper tray feed) 4.9 seconds Type 2: (Large capacity tray feed) Color copy: 6.6 seconds Type 1, 3: (Upper tray feed) 7.0 seconds Type 2: (Large capacity tray feed)
Copy Number Input:	Ten keys, 1 to 999 (count up or count down)
manual Image Density Selection:	7 steps
Automatic Reset:	1 minute standard setting; can also be set to 3 minutes or no auto reset.
Copy Paper Capacity:	• By-pass feed table; approximately 20 sheets • Paper tray: approximately 250 sheets • Large capacity tray; approximately 1000 sheets
Toner Replenishment:	Black: cartridge exchange (320 g/cartridge) Color: manual exchange (red, blue, & green 60 g/cartridge)
Optional Equipment:	• Platen cover • Document feeder • Paper tray unit with one paper tray • Paper tray unit with three paper trays • 10 bin micro sorter • 20 bin mini sorter • 20 bin midi sorter • 20 bin sorter stapler • Sorter adapter (needed when installing the mini or midi sorter, or the sorter stapler) • Interface PCB (needed when installing the sorter stapler or the menu reader) • Editor (only for A074) • Editing interface adapter (needed when installing the editor)

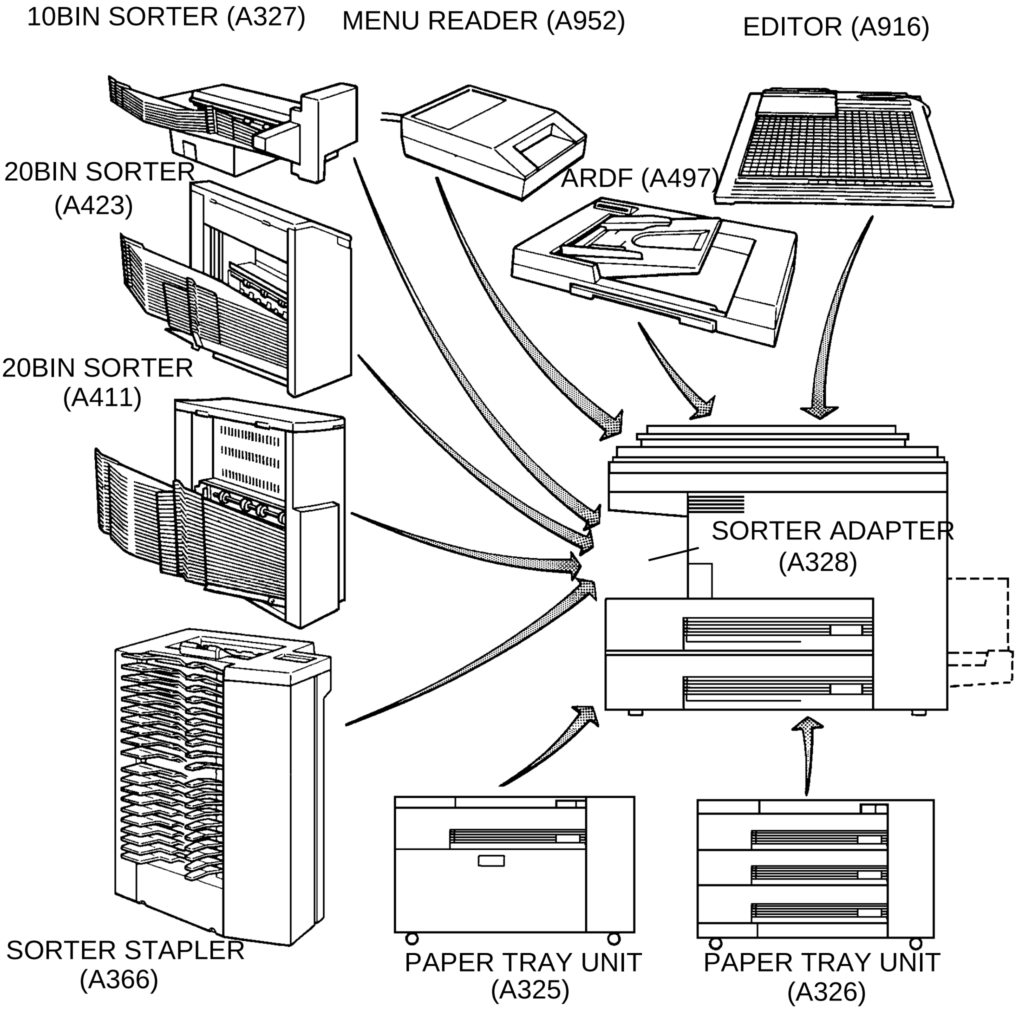
- Color development unit
- Key counter
- Menu reader (except for Europe)
- A3 counter (service part)

2. MACHINE CONFIGURATION

2.1 COPIER

			
	TYPE 1 (A069)	TYPE 2 (A074)	TYPE 3 (A073)
UPPER TRAY	250	DUPLEX	250
LOWER TRAY	250	250	250
LCT	–	1,000	1,000

2.2 OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT


10BIN SORTER (A327)
MENU READER (A952)
EDITOR (A916)
20BIN SORTER (A423)
ARDF (A497)
20BIN SORTER (A411)
SORTER ADAPTER (A328)
SORTER STAPLER (A366)
PAPER TRAY UNIT (A325)
PAPER TRAY UNIT (A326)

		COPIER			REQUIRED OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT		
PAPER TRAY UNIT	1 TRAY (A325)	TYPE 1 (A069)	TYPE 2 (A074)	TYPE3 (A073)	SORTER ADAPTER (A328)	INTERFACE PCB (A344)	EDITING INTERFACE ADAPTER (A345)
	3 TRAY (A326)	o	o	o			
SORTER	10 BIN (A327)	o	o	o			
	20 BIN MINI (A423)	o	o	o	*		
	20 BIN MIDI (A411)	o	o	o	*		
	20 BIN STAPLER (A366)	o	o	o	*	**	
DOCUMENT FEEDER	ARDF (A497)	o	o	o			
EDITOR (A916)		x	o	x			* **
MENU READER (A952)		o	o	o		**	
COLOR DEVELOPMENT UNIT (A337)		o	o	o			

NOTE1: ***** **The sorter adapter is required to install the 20 bin mini sorter, 20 bin midi sorter or sorter stapler.**

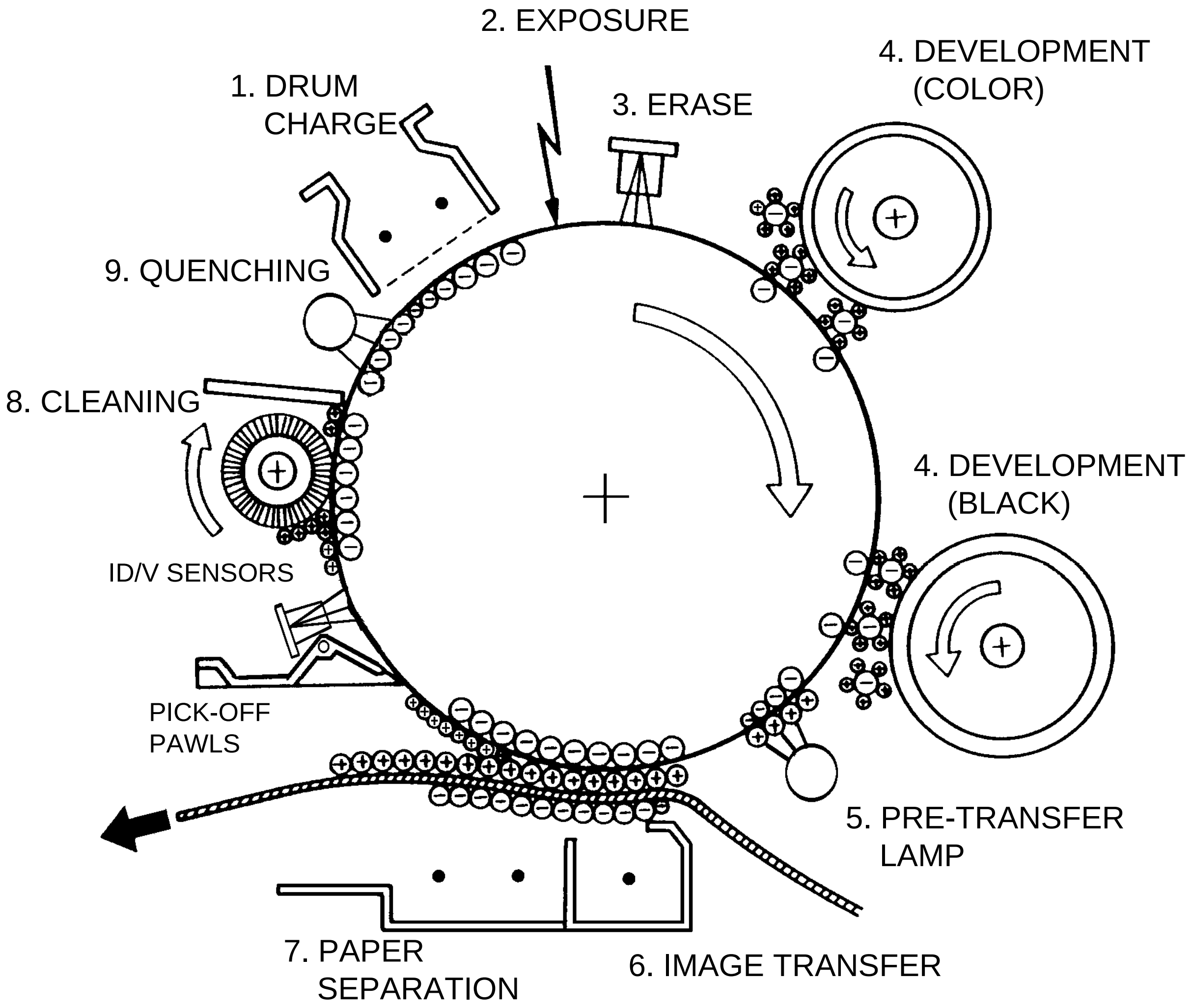
*** *** **The I/F board is required to install the sorter stapler or Menu Reader.**

**** * (1)** **The editing interface adapter is required to install the editor.**

(2) **The editing interface adapter can be installed independently when more precise erasing is desired.**

NOTE 2: **When installing the sorter stapler, the copier must be placed on the paper tray unit or a table of exactly the same height.**

3. COPY PROCESS AROUND THE DRUM


2. EXPOSURE
1. DRUM CHARGE
3. ERASE
4. DEVELOPMENT (COLOR)
9. QUENCHING
8. CLEANING
4. DEVELOPMENT (BLACK)
ID/V SENSORS
PICK-OFF PAWLS
5. PRE-TRANSFER LAMP
7. PAPER SEPARATION
6. IMAGE TRANSFER

1. DRUM CHARGE

In the dark, the charge corona unit gives a uniform negative charge to the organic photo conductive (OPC) drum. The charge remains on the surface of the drum because the OPC layer has a high electrical resistance in the dark. The amount of negative charge on the drum is proportional to the negative grid bias voltage applied to the grid plate on the charge corona unit.

2. EXPOSURE

An image of the original is reflected to the OPC drum surface via the optics assembly. The charge on the drum surface is dissipated in direct proportion to the intensity of the reflected light, thus producing an electrical latent image on the drum surface.

The amount of remaining charge as a latent image on the drum depends on exposure lamp intensity controlled by the exposure lamp voltage.

3. ERASE

The erase lamp illuminates the areas of the charged drum surface that will not be used for the copy image. The resistance of the drum in the illuminated areas drops and the charge on those areas dissipates.

4. DEVELOPMENT

Positively charged toner is attracted to the negatively charged areas of the drum, thus developing the latent image. (The positive triboelectric charge is caused by friction between the carrier and toner particles.)

The development bias voltage applied to the development roller shaft controls two things:

1) The threshold level if toner is attracted to the drum or toner remains on the development roller.
2) The amount of toner to be attracted to the drum.

The higher the negative development bias voltage is, the less toner is attracted to the drum surface.

5. PRE-TRANSFER LAMP (PTL)

The PTL illuminates the drum to remove almost all the negative charge from the exposed areas of the drum. This prevents the toner particles from being reattracted to the drum surface during paper separation and makes paper separation easier.

6. IMAGE TRANSFER

Paper is fed to the drum surface at the proper timing so as to align the copy paper and the developed image on the drum surface. Then, a strong negative charge is applied to the reverse side of the copy paper, producing an electrical force which pulls the toner particles from the drum surface onto the copy paper. At the same time, the copy paper is electrically attracted to the drum surface.

7. PAPER SEPARATION

A strong ac corona discharge is applied to the reverse side of the copy paper, reducing the negative charge on the copy paper and breaking the electrical attraction between the paper and the drum. Then, the stiffness and the weight of the copy paper causes it to separate from the drum surface. The pick-off pawls help to separate paper and drum.

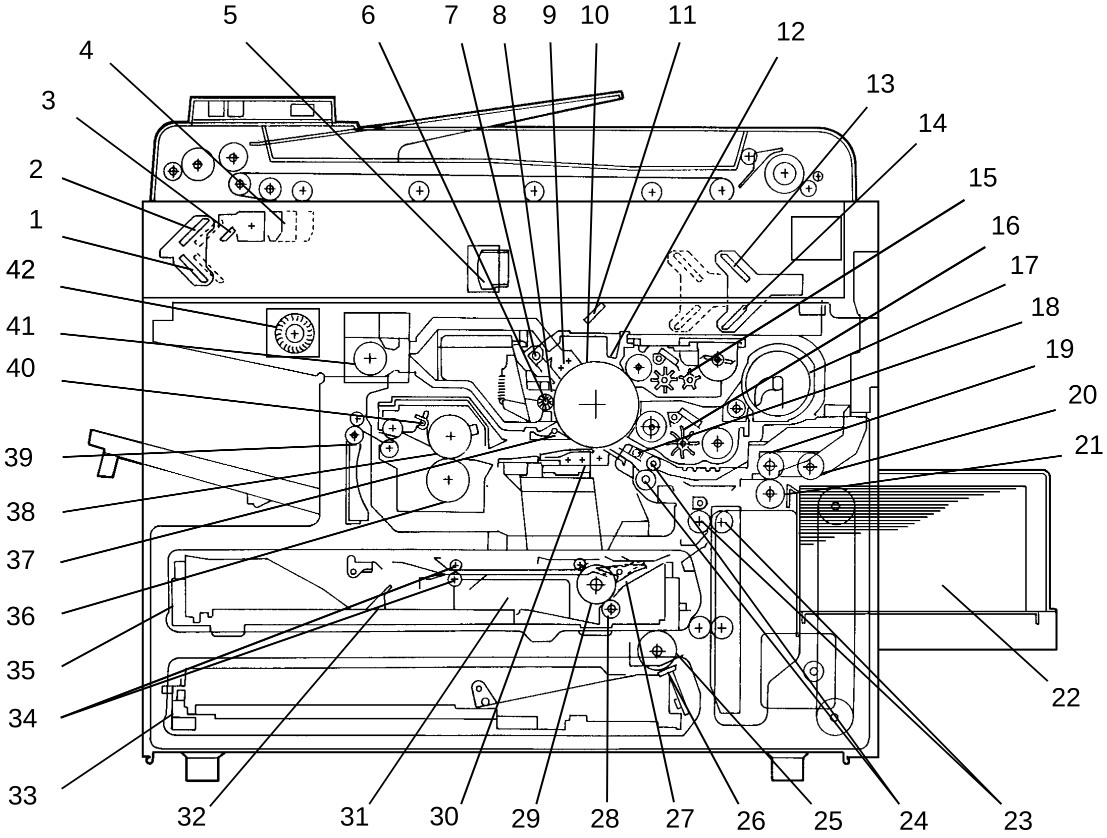
8. CLEANING

The cleaning brush removes toner remaining on the drum after image transfer and the cleaning blade scrapes off all the remaining toner.

9. QUENCHING

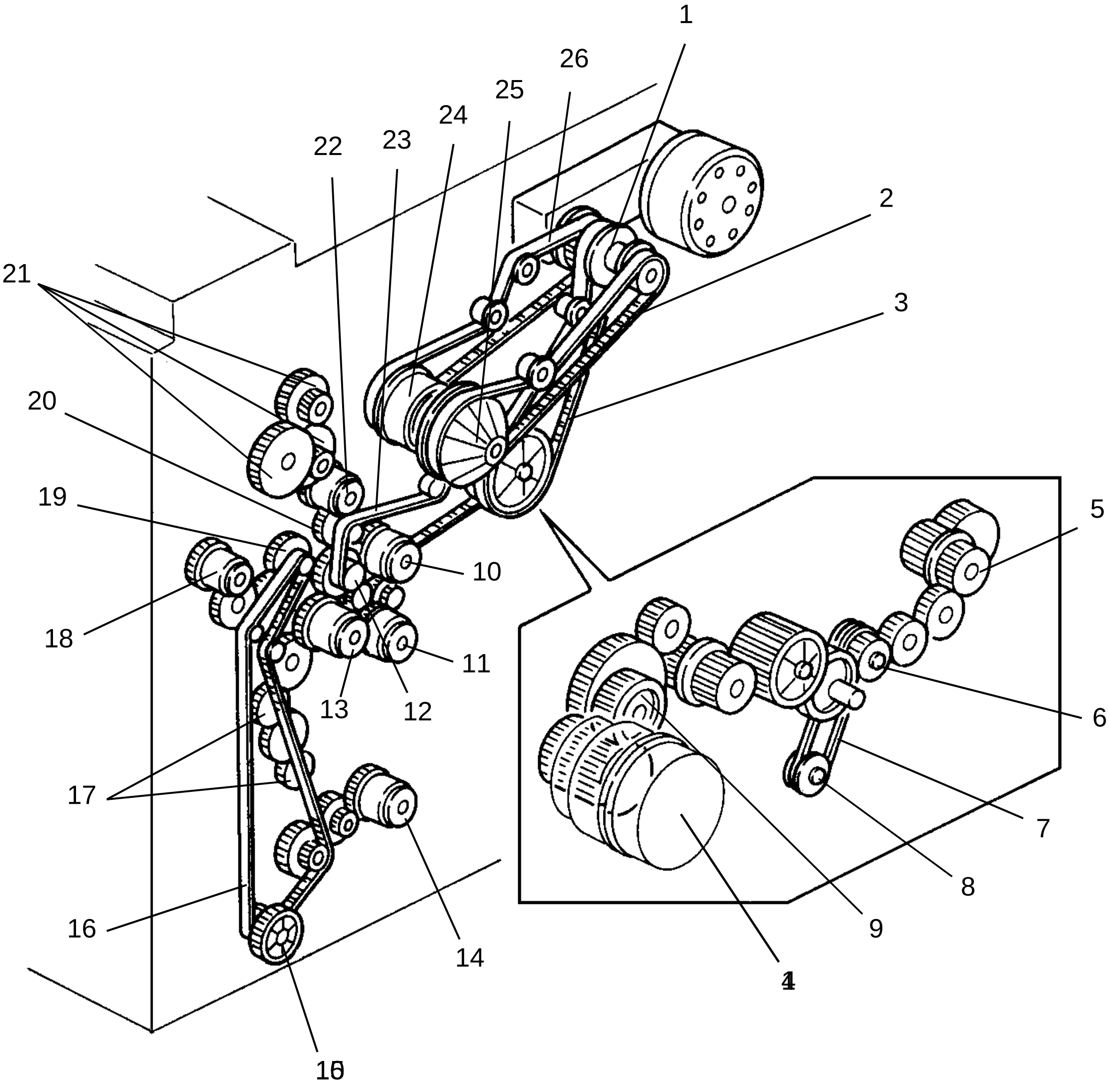
Light from the quenching lamp electrically neutralizes the charge potential of the drum surface.

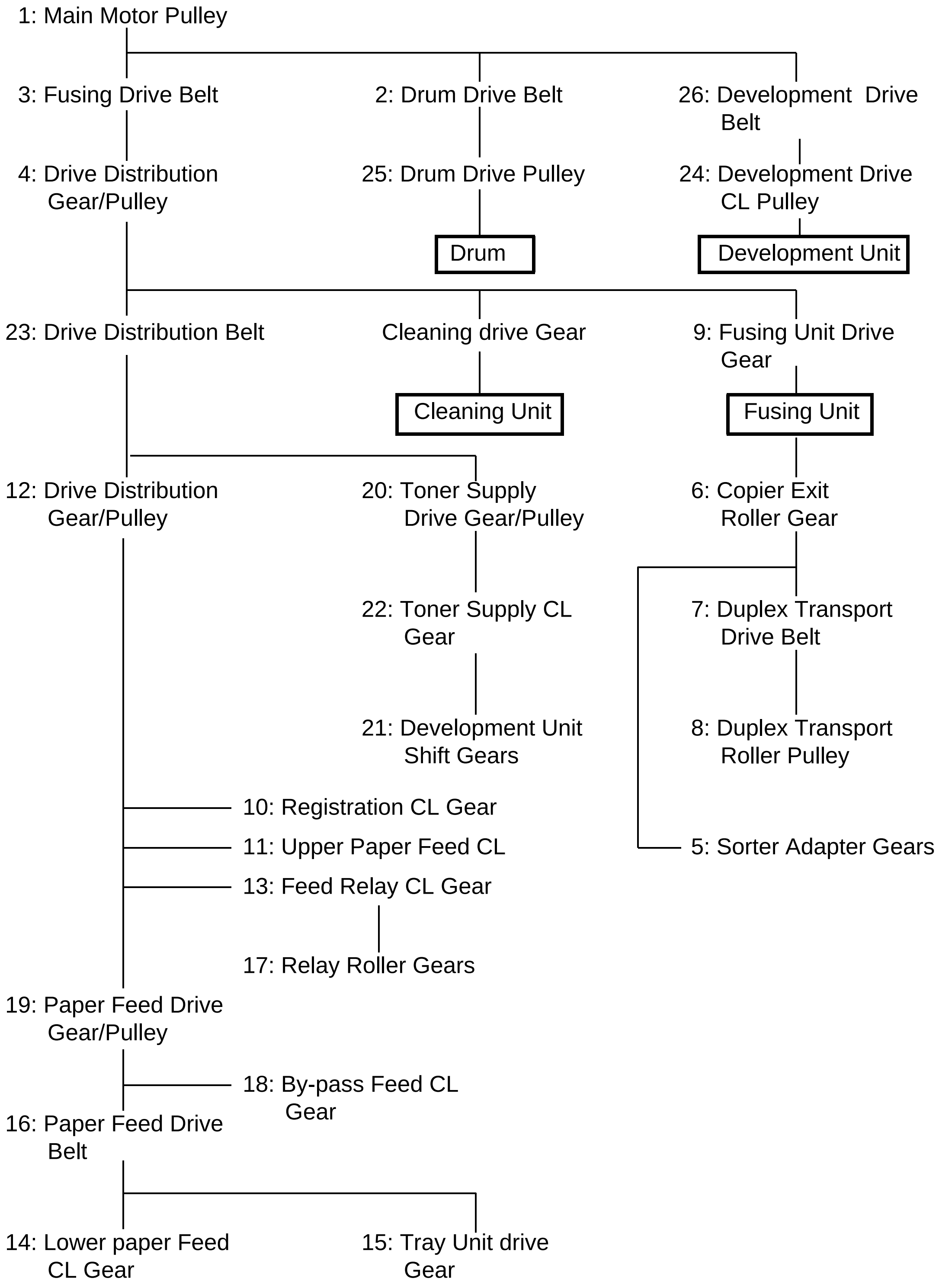
4. MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. 3rd Mirror
2. 2nd Mirror
3. 1st Mirror
4. Exposure Lamp
5. Lens
6. Cleaning Brush
7. Quenching Lamp
8. Cleaning Blade
9. Change Corona Unit
10. OPC Drum
11. 6th Mirror
12. Erase Unit
13. 4th Mirror
14. 5th Mirror
15. Color Development Unit
16. Black Development Unit
17. Black Toner Supply Unit
18. Pre-Transfer Lamp
19. Feed Roller
20. Pick-up Roller
21. Separation Roller
22. Large Capacity Tray
23. Relay Rollers
24. Registration Rollers
25. Paper Tray Feed Roller
26. Friction Pad
27. Turn Gate
28. Duplex Friction Roller
29. Duplex Feed Roller
30. Transfer & Separation Corona Unit
31. Jogger Fences
32. End Fence
33. Lower Paper Tray
34. Entrance Rollers
35. Duplex Tray
36. Pressure Roller
37. Pick-off Pawls
38. Hot Roller
39. Junction Gate
40. Hot Roller Strippers
41. Transport Fan
42. Fusing Exhaust Fan

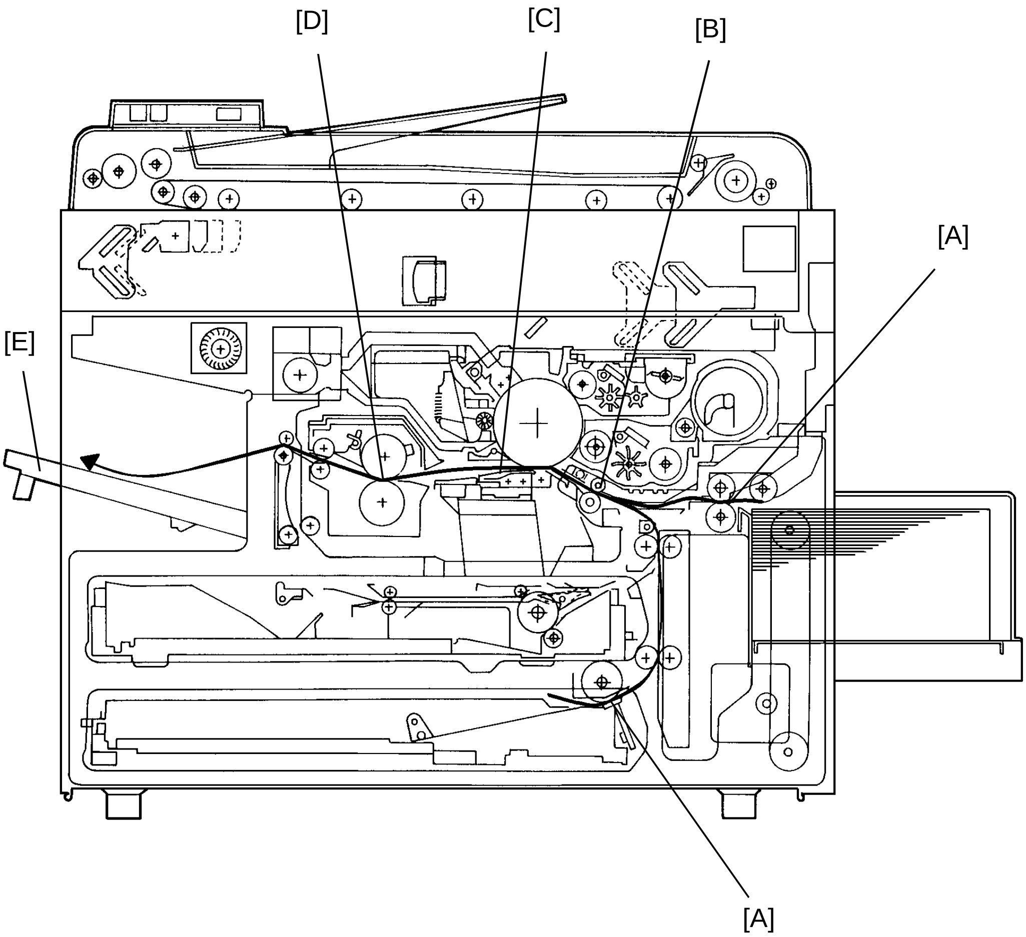
5. DRIVE LAYOUT


1
26
25
24
23
22
2
21
3
20
19
10
5
18
11
13
12
6
17
7
8
16
9
14
4
15


1: Main Motor Pulley
3: Fusing Drive Belt
2: Drum Drive Belt
26: Development Drive Belt
4: Drive Distribution Gear/Pulley
25: Drum Drive Pulley
24: Development Drive CL Pulley
Drum
Development Unit
23: Drive Distribution Belt
Cleaning drive Gear
9: Fusing Unit Drive Gear
Cleaning Unit
Fusing Unit
12: Drive Distribution Gear/Pulley
20: Toner Supply Drive Gear/Pulley
6: Copier Exit Roller Gear
22: Toner Supply CL Gear
7: Duplex Transport Drive Belt
21: Development Unit Shift Gears
8: Duplex Transport Roller Pulley
10: Registration CL Gear
11: Upper Paper Feed CL
5: Sorter Adapter Gears
13: Feed Relay CL Gear
17: Relay Roller Gears
19: Paper Feed Drive Gear/Pulley
18: By-pass Feed CL Gear
16: Paper Feed Drive Belt
14: Lower paper Feed CL Gear
15: Tray Unit drive Gear

6. PAPER PATH

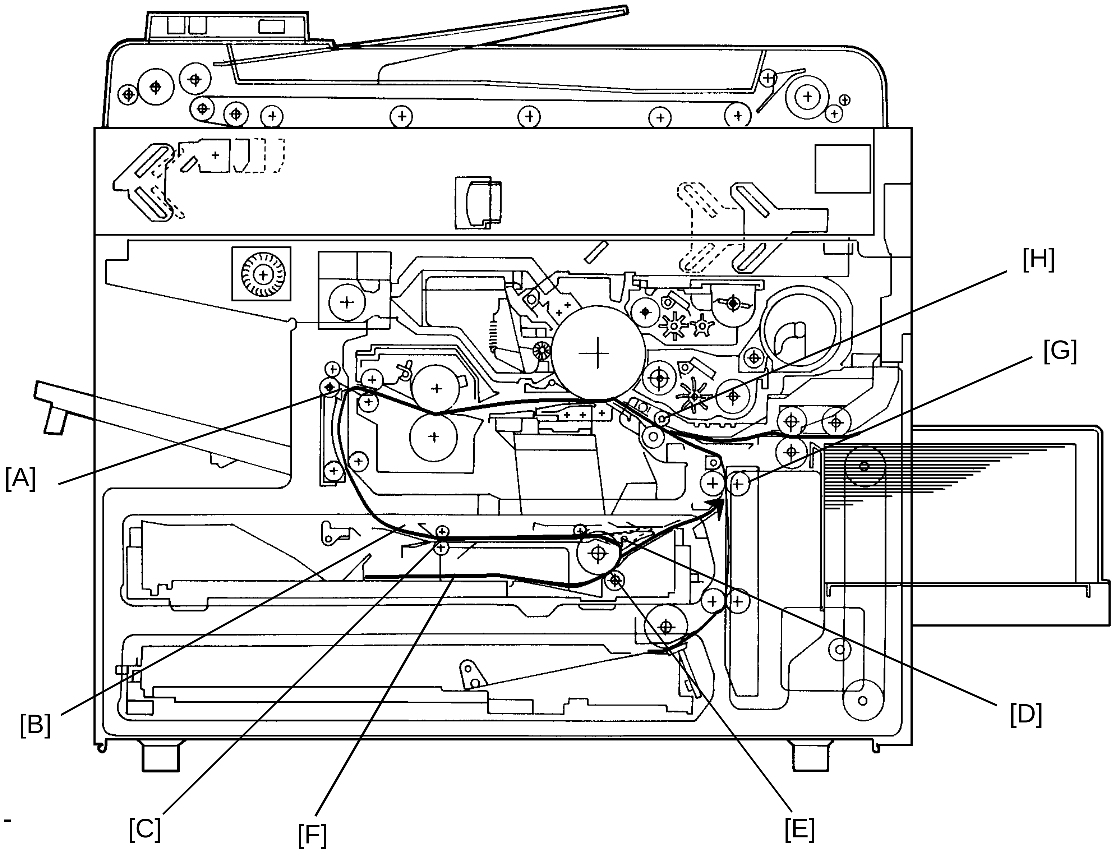
6.1 NORMAL COPYING



-

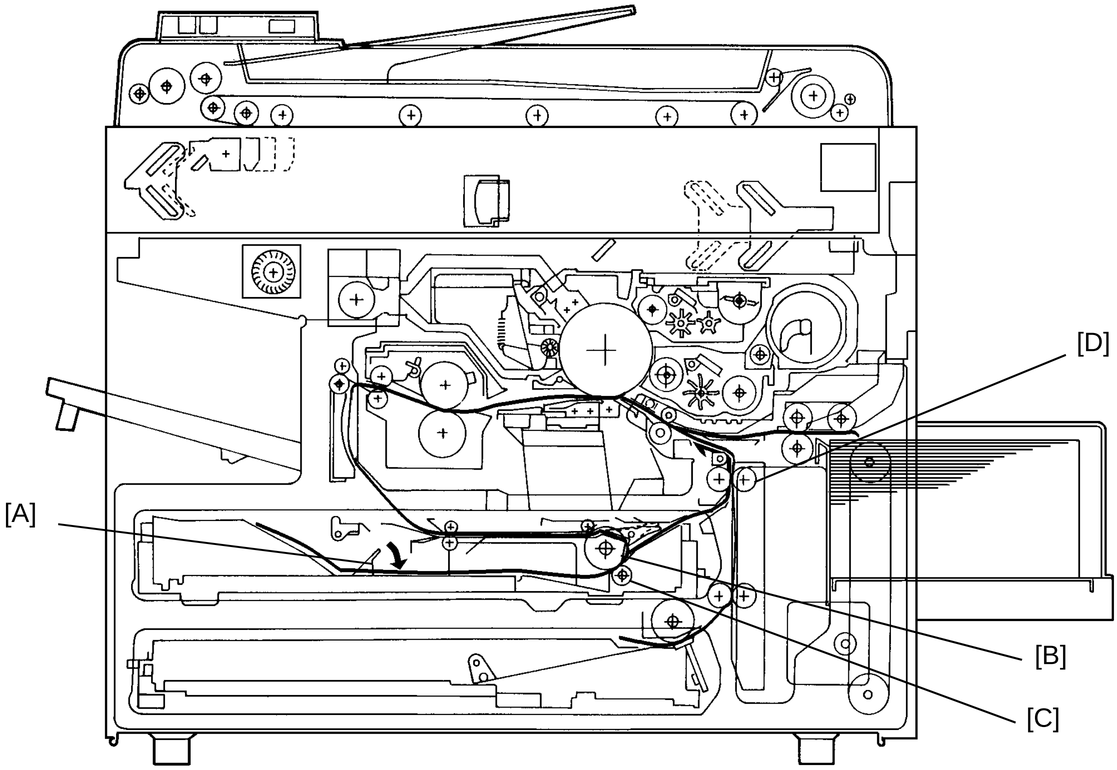
Paper feed begins from the LCT or paper tray unit paper feed stations. The copy paper then follows one of two paths inside the copier. The path followed depends on which mode the operator has selected. For copy processing, all sheets follow the same path from the paper feed mechanism [A] through the registration [B], T & S corona [C], and fusing unit [D]. After that, normal copies are delivered to the copy tray [E], however, 2 sided copies and overlay copies are diverted for further processing.

6.2 MULTIPLE 2-SIDED COPYING



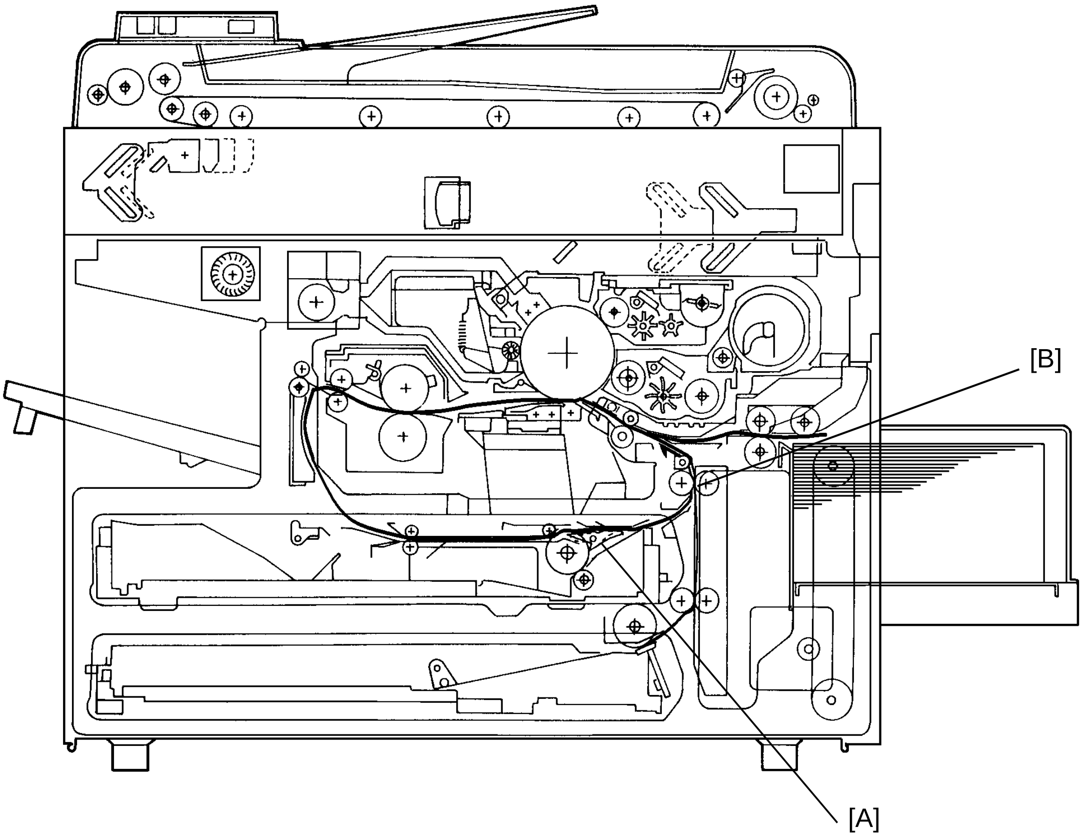
Paper that is A4, B5, and 8½" X 11" sideways can be used for multiple 2-sided copying. In this mode the junction gate [A] directs sheets exiting the fusing unit to the duplex tray entrance [B]. After that, all sheets follow the path through the entrance rollers [C], and the turn gate [D]. The turn gate directs paper through the duplex feed mechanism [E] to the duplex tray [F]. After all sheets are stacked in the duplex tray, these sheets follow the path through the duplex feed mechanism and relay rollers [G] to the registration rollers [H]. After that, these sheets follow the same path as normal copying from the registration rollers to the copy tray.

6.3 SINGLE 2-SIDED COPYING



Any sheet up to A3\11" x 17" but except for A4, B5, or 81/2" X 11" sideways can be used for single 2-sided copying. In this mode, the sheet follows the same path as in multiple 2-sided copying to the duplex tray. However, the end fence [A] of the duplex tray lowers. The sheet advances over the lowered end fence. The sheet is stopped by the friction between the duplex feed and friction rollers [B,C]. It is directed to the relay rollers [D] by the reversed duplex feed roller. It stays there once. After that, the sheet follows the same path as in multiple 2-sided copying from the relay rollers to copy tray.

6.4 SINGLE IMAGE OVERLAY COPYING



In this mode, the sheet follows the same path as in multiple 2-sided copying to the turn gate [A]. The turn gate directs the sheet to the relay rollers [B]. The sheet stays there once. After that, the sheet follows the same path as in multiple 2-sided copying from the relay rollers to the copy tray.

7. ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

Refer to the electrical component layout on the reverse side of the Point to Point (Water proof paper) for symbols and index numbers.

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	Main	Drives the main unit components.	1
M2	Exhaust blower	Blows the ozone built up around the charge section through the ozone filter.	6
M3	Upper tray lift (non-duplex machine only)	Raises the bottom plate in the upper paper tray.	31
M4	Lower tray lift	Raises the bottom plate in the lower paper tray.	28
M5	Transport fan	Provides air flow to the transport section so that paper is held on the transport guide. Also the air flow isolates the toner collection tank from fusing heat. Provides air flow to the charge corona section as well.	65
M6	Fusing exhaust fan	Removes the heat from around the fusing unit.	66
M7	Scanner drive	Drives the 1st and 2nd scanners (dc stepper).	67
M8	3rd scanner drive	Drives the 3rd scanner (dc stepper).	75
M9	Optics cooling fan	Removes heat from the optics unit.	77
M10	Lens drive	Positions the lens.	100
M11	Duplex feed (duplex machine only)	Drives the feed roller and moves the bottom plate up and down (24 V dc stepper).	103
M12	Jogger (duplex machine only)	Drives the jogger fences to square the paper stack in the duplex tray (dc stepper).	107
M13	LCT lift	Lifts up and lowers the LCT bottom plate.	79

Symbol	**Name**	**Function**	**Index No.**
Circuit Board			
PCB1	dc power supply	Drives the exposure and fusing lamps and rectifies 100 Vac or 220/230/240 Vac input and outputs dc voltages.	44
PCB2	Main control	Controls all copier functions both directly and through the other control boards.	10
PCB3	Scanner motor control	Controls the speed of the scanner drive motor.	69
PCB4	Main motor control	Controls the rotation of the main motor.	71
PCB5	Operation panel	Controls the LED matrix, and monitors the key matrix.	93
PCB6	ADS sensor	Senses the background density of the original.	90
PCB7	High voltage supply - CTBG	Supplies high voltage for the charge corona, grid bias, transfer corona, and development bias.	9
PCB8	High voltage supply - D	Supplies high voltage for the separation corona.	8
PCB9	PTL/QL stabilizer	Provides high voltage for the quenching and pre-transfer lamps.	73
PCB10	Duplex control (duplex machine only)	Controls the rotation of the duplex feed motor.	106
PCB11	LCT interface (LCT machine only)	Interfaces the LCT control signal between the main control board and the LCT.	80
PCB12	Guidance display control (duplex machine only)	Controls the guidance display board.	92
PCB13	Guidance display (duplex machine only)	Displays guidance for machine operation.	94

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
PCB14	Interface - type G (option for sorter stapler and menu reader)	Interfaces the sorter stapler and menu reader with the main control board.	16
PCB15	Nose filter (230 V machine only)	Removes electrical noise	35
Switches			
SW1	Upper paper size - 1 (non-duplex machine only)	Determines what size paper is in the upper paper tray.	2
SW2	Upper paper size - 2 (non-duplex machine only)	Determines what size paper is in the upper paper tray.	3
SW3	Upper paper size - 3 (non-duplex machine only)	Determines what size paper is in the upper paper tray.	4
SW4	Upper paper size - 4 (non-duplex machine only)	Determines what size paper is in the upper paper tray.	5
SW5	Lower paper size - 1	Determines what size paper is in the lower paper tray.	36
SW6	Lower paper size - 2	Determines what size paper is in the lower paper tray.	34
SW7	Lower paper size - 3	Determines what size paper is in the lower paper tray.	33
SW8	Lower paper size - 4	Determines what size paper is in the lower paper tray.	32
SW9	Color detection	Detects if color development unit is set or not and which color toner development unit is installed.	13
SW10	Exit cover (Duplex machine only)	Cuts the ac power line.	64
SW11	Platen cover	Informs the CPU when the platen cover is closed.	88

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
SW12	Front door safety	Cuts the ac power line through RA1 and detects if the front door is open or not.	91
SW13	Main	Supplies power to the copier.	95
SW14	LCT cover - 1 (LCT machine only)	Detects if the LCT cover is open or not.	83
SW15	LCT cover - 2 (LCT machine only)	Cuts the dc power line of the LCT lift motor.	84
SW16	LCT down (LCT machine only)	Sends a signal to the CPU to lower the LCT bottom plate.	85
Lamps			
L1	Quenching	Neutralizes any charge remaining on the drum surface after cleaning.	47
L2	Pre-transfer	Reduces the charge on the drum surface before transfer.	49
L3	Fusing	Provides heat to the hot roller.	60
L4	Exposure	Applies high intensity light to the original exposure.	99
L5	Erase	Eliminates the charge for unnecessary areas of the image on the drum surface before exposure.	48
Magnetic Clutches			
MC1	Development drive	Drives the development roller.	11
MC2	Toner supply	Drives the toner supply roller.	14
MC3	By-pass feed	Starts paper feed from the by-pass feed table or LCT.	17
MC4	Feed relay	Drives the relay rollers.	19
MC5	Registration	Drives the registration rollers.	20

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
MC6	Upper paper feed (non-duplex machine only)	Starts paper feed from the upper paper tray.	22
MC7	Lower paper feed	Starts paper feed from the lower paper tray.	24
Solenoids			
SOL1	Development unit change	Changes the position of the black development unit and color development unit.	12
SOL2	Pick-up roller	Picks paper up from the by-pass feed table or LCT.	18
SOL3	Duplex tray lock (duplex machine only)	Locks the duplex tray in the main copier.	29
SOL4	Upper tray lock (non-duplex machine only)	Locks the upper paper tray in the main copier.	39
SOL5	Lower tray lock	Locks the lower paper tray in the main copier.	37
SOL6	Junction gate (duplex machine only)	Moves the junction gate to direct copies to the duplex tray or to the paper exit.	43
SOL7	Duplex turn gate (duplex machine only)	Moves the duplex turn gate to direct copies to the duplex tray or to the relay rollers.	105
Sensors			
S1	By-pass feed table	Detects if the by-pass feed table is open or closed.	15
S2	Upper tray set (non-duplex machine only)	Detects if the upper paper tray is set or not.	21
S3	Lower tray set	Detects if the lower paper tray is set or not.	26
S4	By-pass feed paper end	Informs the CPU that there is no paper in the by-pass feed table.	53
S5	Upper tray paper end (non-duplex machine only)	Informs the CPU when the upper paper tray runs out of paper.	23

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
S6	Lower tray paper end	Informs the CPU when the lower paper tray runs out of paper.	25
S7	Upper tray upper limit (non-duplex machine only)	Detects the upper position of the paper stack in the upper tray to stop the upper lift motor.	30
S8	Lower tray upper limit	Detects the upper position of the paper stack in the lower tray to stop the lower lift motor.	27
S9	Lower relay	Detects the lead edge of paper from the lower paper tray to determine the stop timing of the lower paper feed clutch and detects misfeeds.	51
S10	Upper relay	Detects the lead edge of paper from the upper paper tray to determine the stop timing of the upper paper feed clutch and detects misfeeds.	50
S11	Registration	Detects the lead edge of paper to determine the stop timing of the feed relay clutch and detects misfeeds.	52
S12	Image density (ID)	Detects the density of the ID sensor pattern on the drum to control the toner density.	57
S13	V	Detects the VR and VL patterns.	58
S14	Fusing exit	Detects misfeeds.	62
S15	Junction gate (duplex machine only)	Detects misfeeds.	63
S16	Scanner H.P.	Informs the CPU when the 1st scanner is at the home position.	68
S17	Lens H.P.	Informs the CPU when the lens is at the full-size position.	72
S18	Platen position	Informs the CPU when the platen cover is positioned. When the angle between, the platen cover and the exposure glass is about 30 degrees.	74
S19	3rd scanner H.P.	Informs the CPU when the 3rd scanner is in the full size position.	76
S20	Original length	Detects the original length.	89

Symbol	**Name**	**Function**	**Index No.**
S21	Original width	Detects the original width.	96
S22	Duplex entrance (duplex machine only)	Detects misfeed.	109
S23	Duplex turn gate (duplex machine only)	Detects the trail edge of paper to determine the reverse timing of the duplex motor and detects misfeed.	101
S24	Duplex paper end (duplex machine only)	Detects copy in the duplex tray.	102
S25	Jogger H.P. (duplex machine only)	Detects if the jogger fences are at home position.	108
S26	LCT paper end (LCT machine only)	Informs the CPU when the LCT runs out of paper.	82
S27	LCT lower limit (LCT machine only)	Sends signal to CPU to stop lowering the LCT bottom plate.	81
S28	LCT upper limit (LCT machine only)	Sends signal to CPU to stop lifting up the LCT bottom plate.	78
Heaters			
H1	Drum	Turns on when the main switch is off to prevent moisture around the drum.	54
H2	Optics anti-condensation (option)	Turns on when the main switch is off to prevent moisture from forming on the optics.	97
H3	Upper tray (option)	Turns on when the main switch is off to keep paper dry in the upper paper tray.	55
H4	Lower tray (option)	Turns on when the main switch is off to keep paper dry in the lower paper tray.	87
Thermistor			
TH1	Drum	Monitors the temperature around the drum.	56
TH2	Fusing	Monitors the temperature of the hot roller.	59

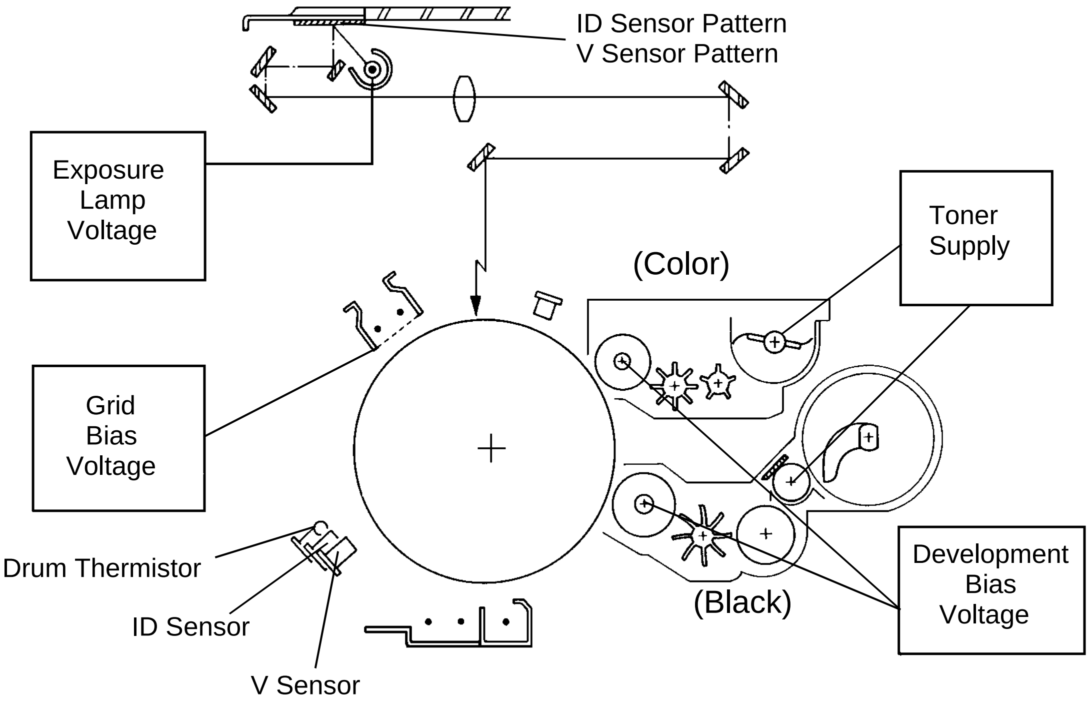
Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
TH3	Optics	Monitors the temperature of the optics cavity.	98
TH4	Duplex motor (duplex machine only)	Monitors the temperature of the duplex motor.	104
Thermofuse			
TF1	Fusing	Provides back-up overheat protection in the fusing unit.	61
Thermoswitch			
TS1	Optics	Provides overheat protection in the optics unit.	70
Noise filter			
NF1		Removes electrical noise.	40
Fuse			
FU1	Main (115 V machine only)	Provides back-up high current protection in the electrical components.	42
FU2	Sorter line (115 V machine only)	Provides back-up high current protection in the electrical components of the sorter.	46
FU3	DF line (115 V machine only)	Provides back-up high correct protection in the electrical components of the ARDF.	7
Circuit Breaker			
CB1	(230 V machine only)	Provides back-up high current protection in the electrical components.	41
Relay			
RA1	Main power	Controls main power.	45
Transformer			
TR1	Main	Steps down the wall voltage to 100 V ac.	38
Counter			
CO1	Total	Keeps track of the total number of copies made.	86

SECTION 2

DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

1. PROCESS CONTROL

1.1 OVERVIEW


ID Sensor Pattern
V Sensor Pattern
Exposure Lamp Voltage
Toner Supply
(Color)
Grid Bias Voltage
Drum Thermistor
ID Sensor
V Sensor
(Black)
Development Bias Voltage

As seen in section 1 the copy process around the drum and the copy image (image and background density) are controlled by many factors.

On this copier, the following items are controlled during the copy process to maintain good copy quality:

The exposure lamp voltage of the optics section
The grid bias voltage of the drum charge section
The development bias voltage and toner supply of the development section

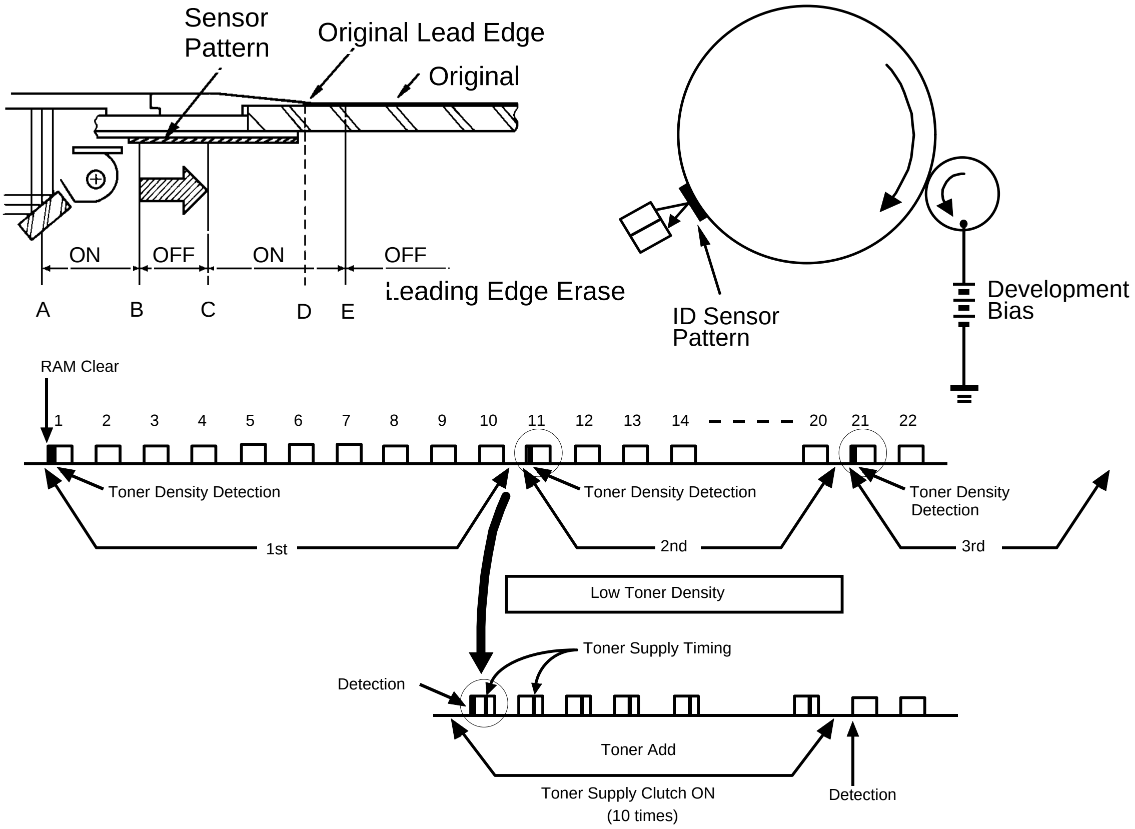
The items above use the following electrical components:

The operation panel (manual ID selection and reproduction ratio), ADS sensor, ID sensor, V sensor, drum thermistor, paper size switches, color detection switches, and RAM board (drum rotation time and SP mode data)

Refer to the process control table in the supplement sheet bag for the details on which electrical component controls which controlled item.

In the following sections, we will explain briefly how the major electrical components are controlled in the copy process.

1.2 ID SENSOR CONTROL


Sensor Pattern
Original Lead Edge
Original
ON
OFF
ON
OFF
Leading Edge Erase
A
B
C
D
E
ID Sensor Pattern
Development Bias
RAM Clear
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
20
21
22
Toner Density Detection
Toner Density Detection
Toner Density Detection
1st
2nd
3rd
Low Toner Density
Toner Supply Timing
Detection
Toner Add
Toner Supply Clutch ON
(10 times)
Detection

1.2.1 Overview

An ID (Image Density) sensor is used to control toner supply.

The sensor is located on the drum unit, under the cleaning unit. Placing the sensor under the cleaning unit, instead of the development unit, reduces the risk of scattered toner getting on the sensor.

The CPU checks toner density through the ID sensor by directly sensing the image density on the drum. This is done every 10 copy cycles (every 5 copy cycles for the color development unit). Turning the main switch off and on has no effect because the count is stored in RAM. If the drum initialization is performed (SP mode #66) or the RAM is cleared (SP mode #99), the CPU starts counting for the toner density check from the beginning of the first copy cycle.

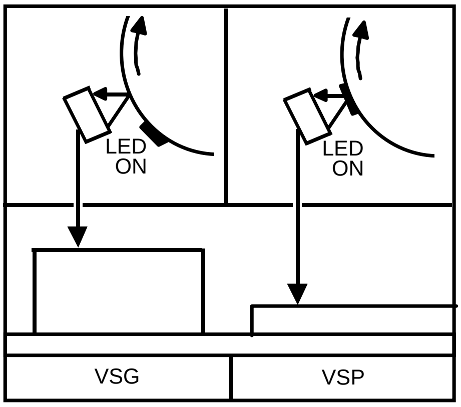
The ID sensor pattern (black) is stuck on the operator side of the bottom of the left scale bracket. During the check cycle, the ID sensor pattern is exposed prior to exposure of the original.

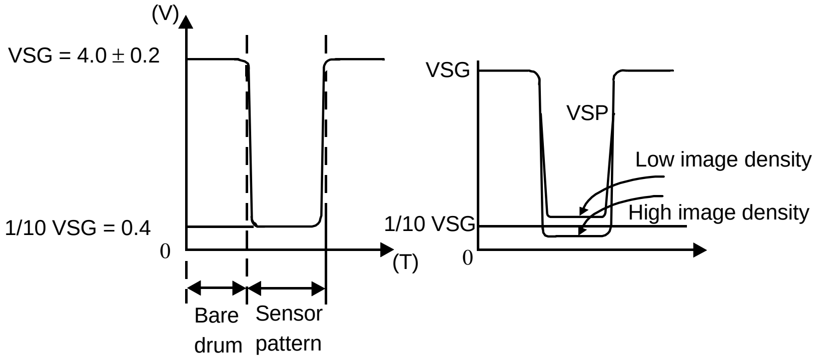
After the ID sensor pattern is developed, the ID sensor checks the pattern's reflectivity and the CPU notes it. If the reflected light is too strong, indicating toner density is too low, toner is added to the development unit.

The toner is not added all at once. The CPU energizes the toner supply clutch solenoid for the proper amount of time to add a calculated amount of toner over the next 10 copy cycles (5 copy cycles for color toner).

Such toner supply control through the ID sensor is called a detect supply mode. On this copier, this mode is used to control both black and color toner supply.

1.2.2 ID Sensor Output



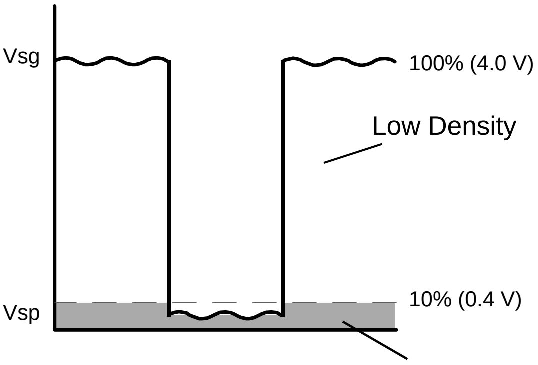


When in the toner density check cycle, the CPU receives two voltage values directly from the ID sensor: Vsg and Vsp. Vsg is the voltage value for the area of the drum made bare by the erase lamp unit before the ID sensor pattern is exposed. Vsp is the voltage value for the developed ID sensor pattern. The CPU compares these two values to monitor the image density on the drum and with this controls the toner supply.

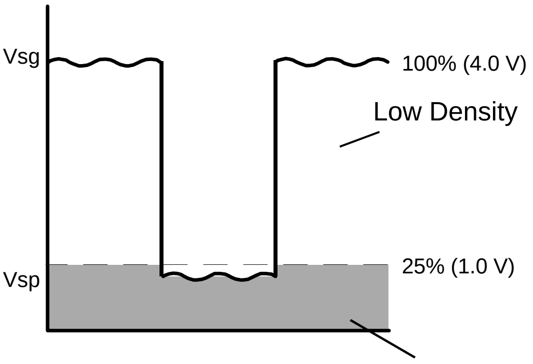
[Standard setting]	0 to 500 copies	Over 500 copies
Black toner	– 220 V	– 200 V
Red/Blue toner	– 200 V	– 180 V
Green toner	– 240 V	– 220 V

Vsg is the reference voltage of the ID sensor output and is automatically adjusted to 4V whenever SP mode #54 is called.

The development bias for the ID sensor pattern is fixed for each toner color. This is to avoid any influence from the manual ID level setting on toner density control. (See chart.)



[Black Toner]



[Color Toner]

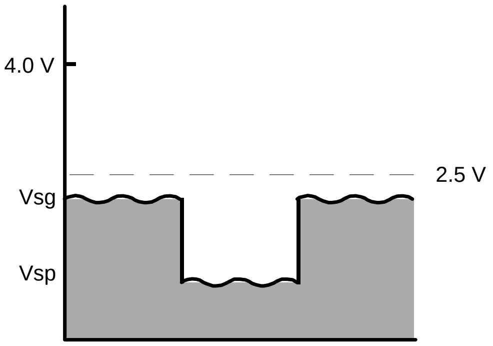
(1) Detect supply mode

In the detect supply mode toner will be supplied under the following conditions:

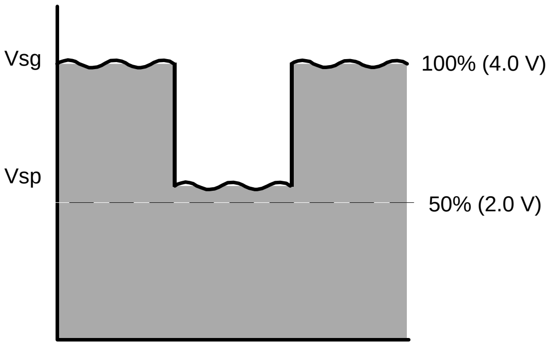
Black toner ....Vsp/ Vsg x 100 ≥ 10
Color toner ....Vsp/ Vsg x 100 ≥ 25

(2) Fixed supply mode

A fixed amount of toner is supplied every copy cycle when the fixed supply mode is selected (when the data of SP mode #30 is "1").
On this copier, this mode can be selected only for black toner.
The CPU monitors Vsp and Vsg once every 10 copy cycles even in the fixed supply mode.
To avoid over toning, the CPU stops toner supply when Vsp becomes 1/10 Vsg or less.



[Vsg abrormal]



[Vsp abnormal]

(3) ID Sensor Abnormal Conditions

The following ID sensor abnormal conditions apply to both the detect and fixed supply modes.

a. Vsg abnormal

When Vsg falls under 2.5V, the CPU stops the toner supply and continues the ID sensor pattern detection (every 10 copies for black and every 5 copies for color). If this abnormal value of Vsg is detected 5 times in a row under this condition (without any toner supply), the CPU makes the call service indicator blink. Then the CPU shifts the toner supply to the abnormal fixed supply mode. But in this condition the CPU never stops the toner supply as it does to avoid overtoning in the normal fixed supply mode.

b. Vsp abnormal

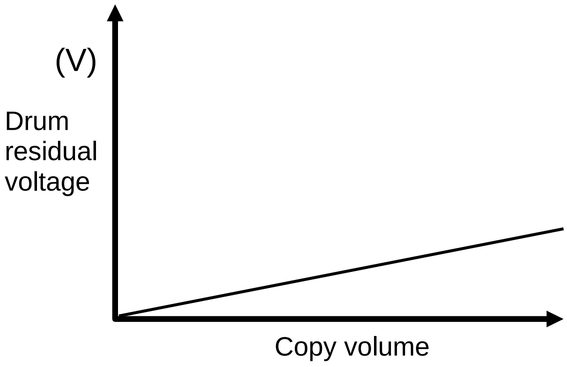
When [Vsp/Vsg X 100] goes to 50 or more, the CPU changes the toner supply amount to the ID sensor abnormal level and continues toner supply and ID sensor pattern detection. If this abnormal value of Vsp is detected 5 times in a row, the CPU makes the call service indicator blink. Then the CPU shifts the toner supply to the abnormal fixed supply mode, as it does under a Vsg abnormal condition.

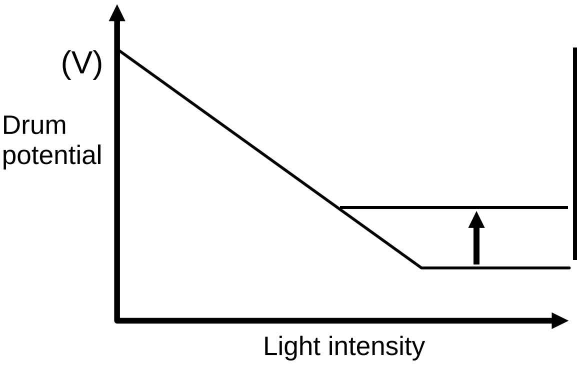
NOTE: The CPU continues the ID sensor pattern detection even under the ID sensor abnormal conditions.

For both black and color toners, if Vsg and Vsp return to the normal range at any of the subsequent toner density check cycles, the CPU will return the toner supply control to normal.

1.3 VR PATTERN CONTROL

1.3.1 Overview





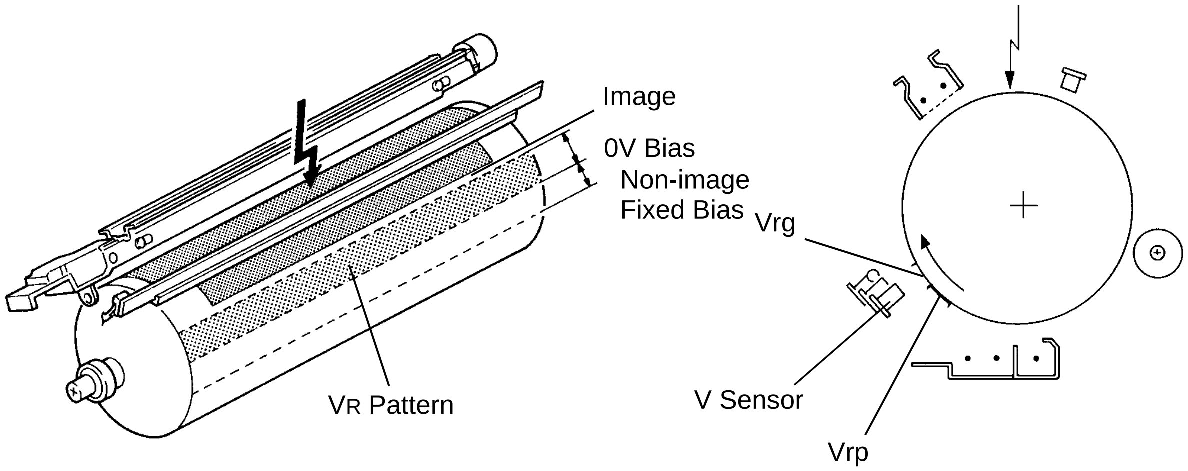
During the OPC drum’s life, drum residual voltage gradually increases due to electrical fatigue. This may cause dirty backgrounds on copies. The V sensor is used to avoid this problem.

The V sensor is located on the drum unit, on the same frame as the ID sensor. The ID sensor is located on the non-operator side and the V sensor is on the operator side.

The CPU checks the drum residual voltage through the V sensor by directly sensing the VR pattern on the drum surface. This VR pattern detection is performed after the drum initial setting (SP mode #66). After this, the CPU will do one VR pattern detection every 200 copies for the next 2,000 copies, and every 1,000 copies after that. Also when VR data correction (See 1.5 Drum Temperature Control) is applied and the drum temperature goes over 25°C, this detection is performed.

According to the data of the VR pattern detection, the CPU applies VR correction to the grid bias voltage and the development bias voltage.

1.3.2 VR Pattern Detection



The VR pattern is made on the drum before the original latent image, as in the case of the ID sensor pattern.

During VR pattern detection, the drum surface is charged with a fixed grid bias voltage: – 500V + VG correction (see 1.6 Drum Rotation Time Control). At the same time all the blocks of the erase lamp unit turn on to illuminate this charged area of the drum.

The exposed area of the drum is developed with a fixed bias voltage for non-image area: – 160V + VR correction + VR Data correction (See 1.5 Drum Temperature Control) + Black Bias correction (SP mode #37). The V sensor checks the reflectivity of the bare area of the drum and this sensor output voltage is called Vrg. (The meaning of Vrg is the same as that of Vsg detected by the ID sensor.)

Just next to this bare drum area, the drum is developed with VR pattern bias voltage (0V). If there is residual voltage on the drum, this area of the drum will attract some toner, making a VR pattern. The V sensor checks the reflectivity of the VR pattern and this sensor output voltage is called Vrp.

The CPU notes the ratio, Vrp/Vrg. This VR pattern check is done 5 times in a row during the copy cycle (among 5 copies) and the CPU takes their average.

During the 5 VR pattern check cycles, if color copies are made, or if a toner density check is done, the CPU skips the VR pattern check and will do it in the next copy cycles.

If an ID sensor abnormal condition occurs, the CPU does not perform the VR pattern detection because toner density may not be proper.

1.3.3 VR Correction

VR level	Vrp/Vrg x 100(%)	Grid bias correction voltage	Development bias correction voltage
0	100~84	± 0 V	± 0 V
1	83~58	– 40 V	– 40 V
2	57~41	– 80 V	– 80 V
3	40~28	– 120 V	– 120 V
4	27~0	– 160 V	– 160 V

When calling SP mode #54, the reference voltage of the V sensor output Vrg, is automatically adjusted to 4V at the same time as Vsg is adjusted.

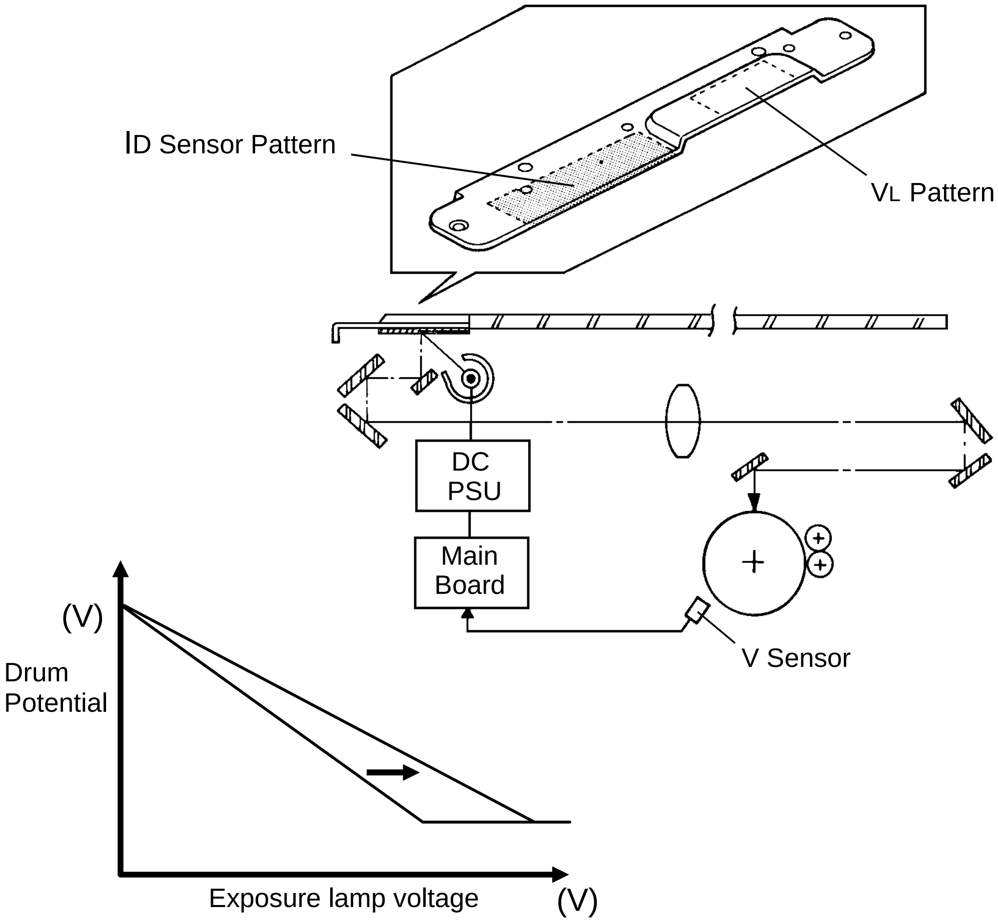
The grid bias voltage and the development bias voltage are corrected (VR correction) according to the ratio between Vrp and Vrg as shown in the above table.

(ex. If there is no residual voltage on the drum, Vrp=4V and Vrg=4V. Then the proportion is: Vrp/Vrg x 100 = 4/4 x 100 = 100%)

When the drum residual voltage increases, the VR pattern becomes darker. The value of Vrp decreases and also the Vrp/Vrg ratio decreases. Then the CPU increases the negative development bias voltage to prevent a dirty background, and simultaneously increases the negative grid bias voltage to prevent low image density.

1.4 VL PATTERN CONTROL

1.4.1 Overview

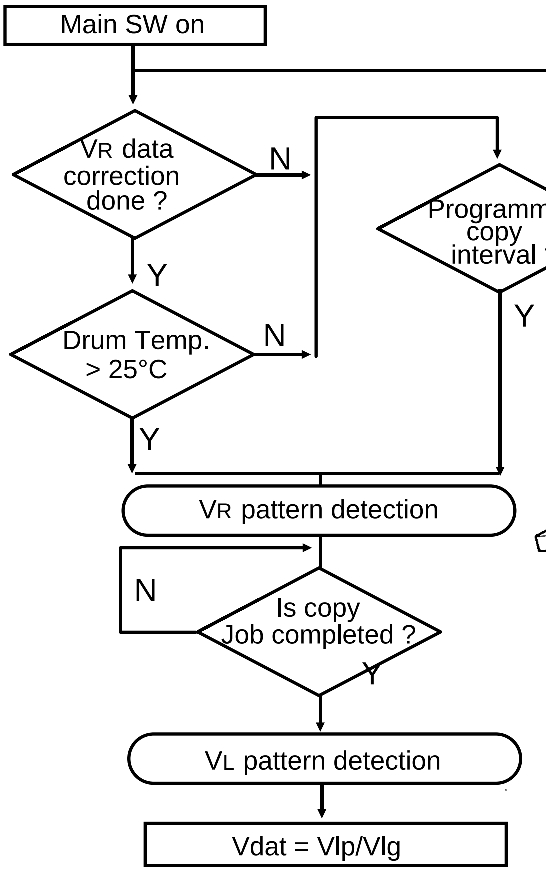


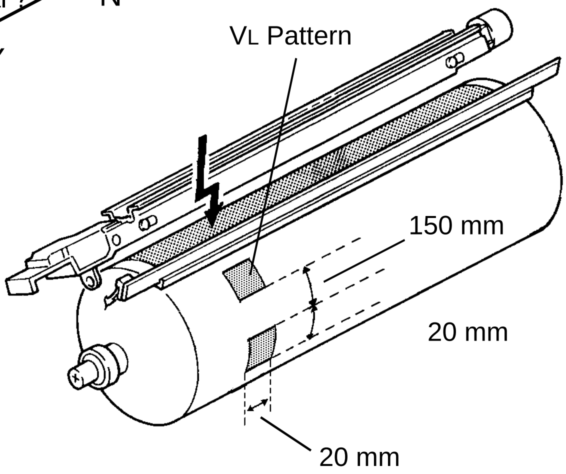
Dirty optics or deterioration of the exposure lamp decreases the intensity of the light that reaches the drum via the optics cavity. As more copies are made during the drum's life, the photo conductive layer gets worn and drum sensitivity drops. The drum sensitivity also drops under low temperature condition.

VL pattern control is performed on this copier to prevent dirty backgrounds caused by the factors mentioned above. The V sensor is also used for VL pattern control as well as for VR pattern control.

The VL pattern (light gray) is located on the non-operator side of the bottom of the left scale bracket. When a copy job finishes in VL pattern detection timing, the exposure lamp stays on for about 6 seconds while at the home position. The VL pattern is lit and a latent image of it is made on the drum. After this image is developed, its reflectivity is checked by the V sensor. The CPU notes the strength of reflectivity, and if the reflected light is too weak, the exposure lamp voltage is increased.

1.4.2 VL Pattern Detection


Main SW on
VR data correction done ?
N
Y
Drum Temp. > 25°C
N
Y
Programmed copy interval ?
N
Y
VR pattern detection
N
Is copy Job completed ?
Y
VL pattern detection
Vdat = Vlp/Vlg


VL Pattern
150 mm
20 mm
20 mm

VL pattern detection is done after VR pattern detection, but unlike VR pattern detection it is done after the copy job is finished. This means after the drum initial setting (SP mode #66), every 200 copies for the first 2,000 copies, every 1,000 copies after exceeding 2,000 copies, and when the drum temperature goes over 25°C under the VR data correction condition.

When VL pattern detection starts, the exposure lamp turns on, the main motor stays, on together with other fan motors, to rotate the drum. The charge corona, grid bias, all the blocks of the erase lamp, the pre-transfer lamp, and the quenching lamp turn on.

After about one revolution of the drum, the appropriate blocks of the erase lamp turn off and on to make a VL pattern (20 x 20 mm) on the drum surface. The drum surface is developed with non-image area bias for both the bare drum and VL pattern.

The V sensor checks the reflectivity of the bare drum (Vlg) and that of the VL pattern (Vlp). The CPU calculates the ratio between Vlp and Vlg (Vlp/Vlg). The VL pattern is made 4 times with 150 mm distance between each pattern. The CPU takes the average of Vlp/Vlg (=Vdat).

When the drum initial setting (SP mode #66) is performed and more than 7 black copies are made, the initial V_L detection is performed at the end of the copy job and the CPU stores the V_L reference value (initial Vlp/Vlg = Vref) in memory. ID sensor pattern detection and V_R pattern detection is done prior to this initial V_L detection.

ID sensor pattern and V_R pattern detections are performed when black copies are made even in the SP mode. However, V_L pattern detection is performed when a black copy is made in enlarge or full size mode and not in the SP mode.

1.4.3 V_L Correction

V_L Level (%)	Lamp correction voltage
151~	–1 V
101~150	±0 V
0~100	+1 V

The V sensor output is automatically adjusted to 4V (for Vlg=Vrg) by calling SP mode #54 as we mentioned in 1.3.3 V_R Correction.

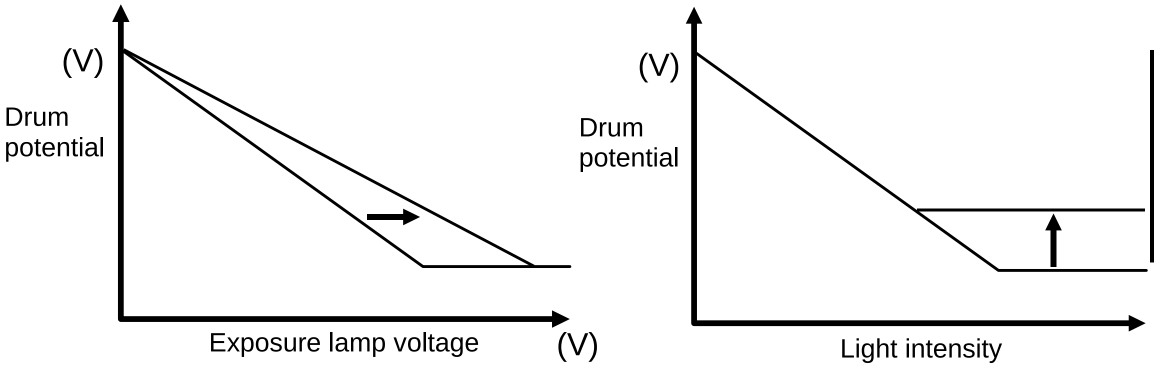
When the V_L pattern detection is performed during the operation, the CPU compares the Vdat with the Vref. According to the ratio between Vdat and Vref, the CPU applies the voltage correction to the exposure lamp (V_L Correction) as shown in the above table.

Vdat/Vref x 100 = V_L level (%)

The exposure lamp voltage for V_L pattern detection depends on all previous correction factors, and the new V_L correction factor is added to them. This result is then applied to the exposure lamp voltage till the next V_L pattern detection.

1.5 DRUM TEMPERATURE CONTROL

1.5.1 Overview



Under low temperature conditions drum sensitivity drops and drum residual voltage increases. This is a characteristic of the drum and may cause dirty backgrounds on copies.

To compensate for this, a drum thermistor is installed on the ID sensor board to monitor the temperature around the drum.

When the main switch is turned on, the CPU checks the temperature through the drum thermistor. If the temperature is 25°C or less, the CPU applies appropriate corrections to the exposure lamp voltage (low temp. correction), to the grid bias voltage (V_R data correction), and to the development bias voltage (V_R data correction).

When the temperature goes over 25°C, the V_R pattern detection and V_L pattern detection are performed and the above corrections are canceled.

If the temperature is already over 25°C when the main switch is turned on, no correction is applied.

	Low Temp. correction	VR Data correction	
	Exposure lamp voltage	Grid bias voltage	Development bias voltage
Over 25°C	No correction	No correction	No correction
25°C or lower	Lamp voltage + 1V	VR level + 1	VR level + 1

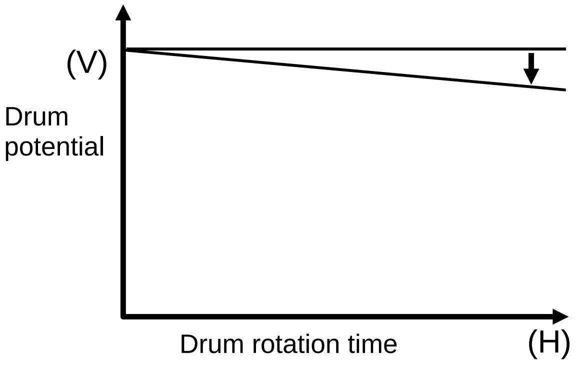
1.5.2 Low Temp. Correction

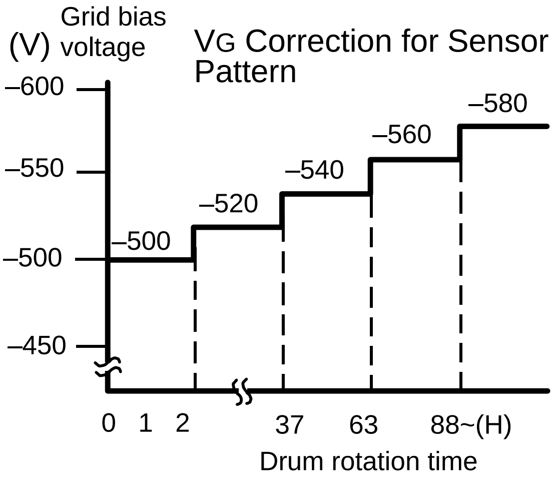
When a correction is required under low temperature conditions, the CPU increases the exposure lamp voltage by 1V.

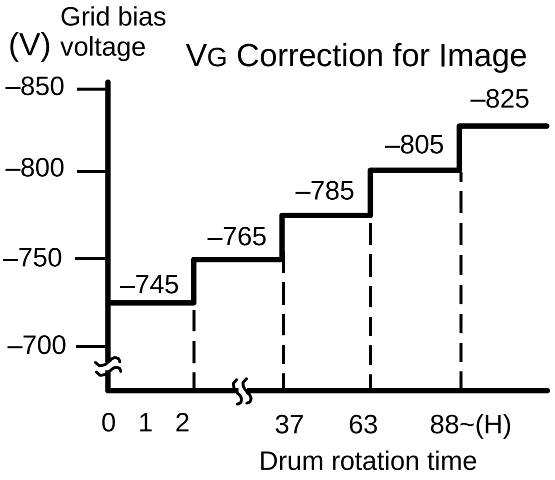
1.5.3 VR Data Correction

When the low temp. correction is applied, VR data correction is applied simultaneously. The VR correction level for both the grid bias voltage and the development bias voltage is stepped up by 1. This means the negative voltage for the charge grid and the development bias is increased by 40V.

1.6 DRUM ROTATION CONTROL







1.6.1 Overview

During the OPC drum’s life the photo conductive layer gets worn and this causes a drop in drum sensitivity and a decrement in the drum potential after the drum charge.

The CPU keeps track of the drum rotation time (main motor on time) that corresponds to the wear of the drum surface. The grid bias voltage is increased at set intervals (VG correction).

1.6.2 VG Correction

If drum potential decreases after the drum charge, the ID sensor pattern on the drum becomes lighter, causing higher toner concentration in the developer. Also, copy image density becomes slightly lighter.

To control toner density properly and to keep copy image density, drum potential is maintained by increments of the grid bias voltage at set intervals. (See graph above)

The drop of drum sensitivity due to the drum wear is compensated by V_L correction. V_L correction is performed more often than V_G correction, therefore, V_G correction is not applied to the exposure lamp voltage, only to the grid bias voltage.

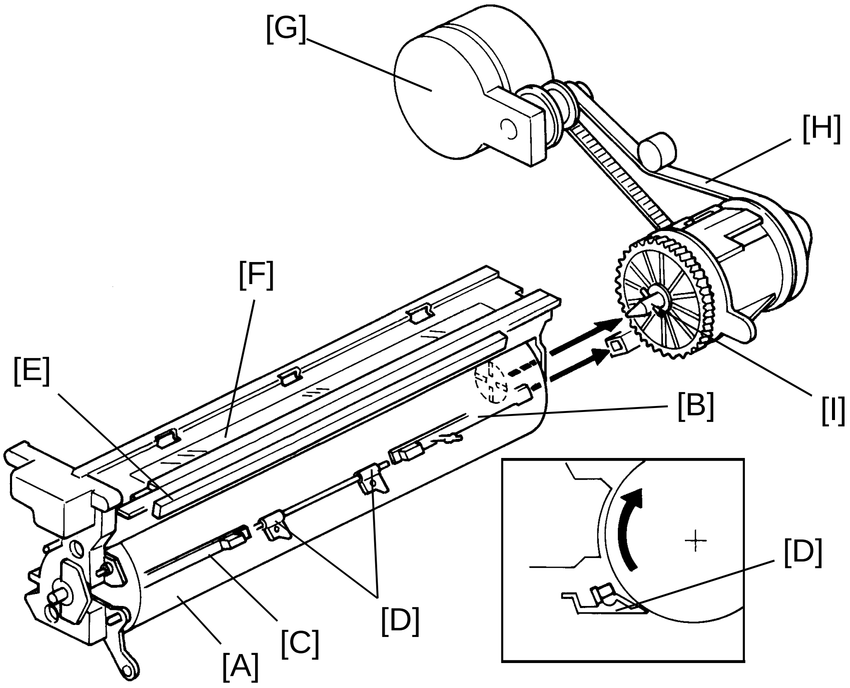
2. DRUM

2.1 OPC DRUM CHARACTERISTICS

An OPC has the characteristics of:

1. Being able to accept a high negative electrical charge in the dark. (The electrical resistance of a photoconductor is high in the absence of light.)
2. Dissipating the electrical charge when exposed to light. (Exposure to light greatly increases the conductivity of a photoconductor.)
3. Dissipating an amount of charge in direct proportion to the intensity of the light. That is, where stronger light is directed to the photoconductor surface, a smaller voltage remains on the OPC.
4. Being less sensitive to changes in temperature (when compared to selenium F type drums).
5. Being less sensitive to changes in rest time (light fatigue). This makes it unnecessary to compensate development bias voltage for variations in rest time.

2.2 DRUM UNIT



An organic photoconductor drum is used on this model.

To prevent stress on the drum, a drum unit is used to hold the drum without a drum shaft.

The drum unit consists of an OPC drum [A], ID sensor board with a drum thermistor [B], V sensor board [C], pick-off pawls [D], erase lamp unit [E], and toner shield glass.

The pick-off pawls are always in contact with the drum surface with weak spring pressure. They move side to side during the copy cycle. This movement is made via a worm gear and an eccentric cam gear.

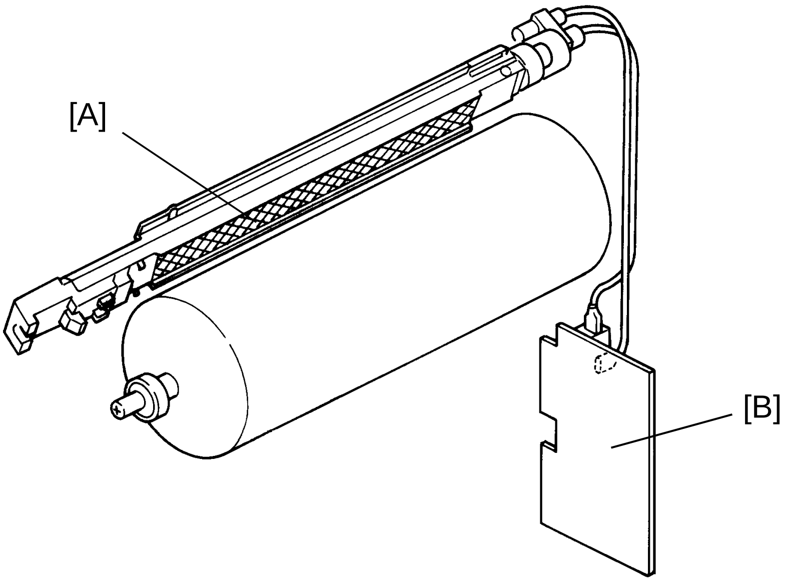
The ID sensor is used to control the toner density in the developer. The V sensor is used for V_R and V_L pattern detections. The drum thermistor is used for drum temperature control.

A green color filter [F] is stuck just above the toner shield glass on the drum unit top plate to decrease the sensitivity of the OPC layer against red light.

The drum is driven by the main motor [G] through a timing belt [H], and a drum drive shaft [I].

3. DRUM CHARGE

3.1 OVERVIEW



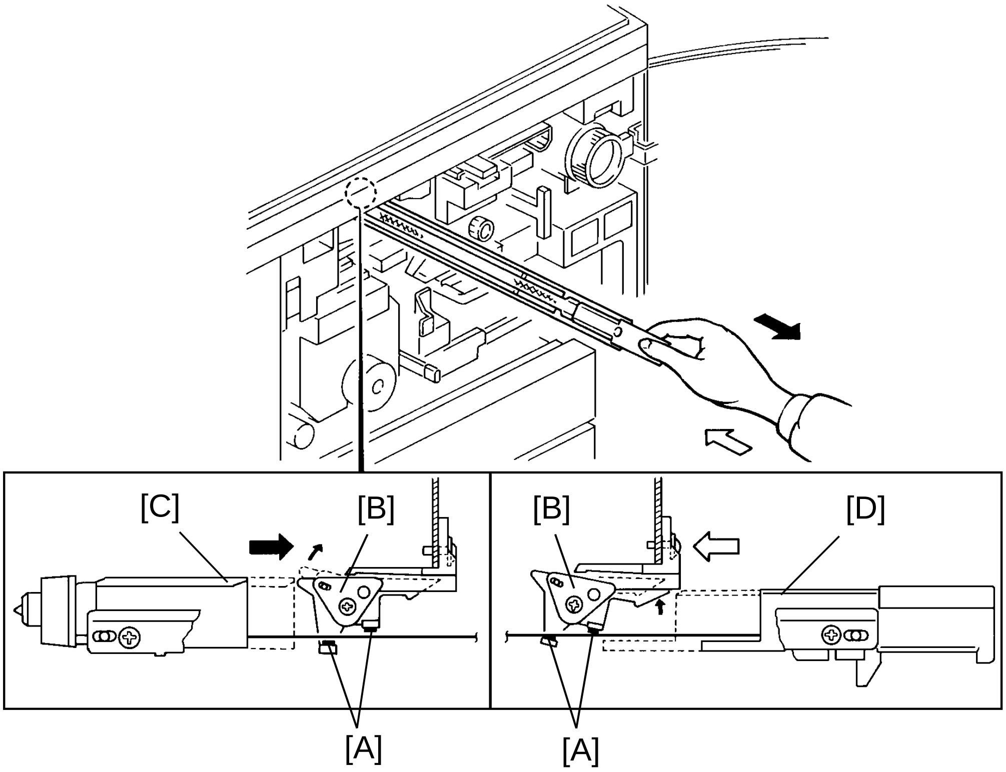
This copier uses a double corona wire scorotron system for drum charge. Two corona wires are required to give sufficient negative charge on the drum surface because of a rather high drum speed (180 mm/sec.). The stainless steel grid plate [A] makes the corona charge uniform and controls the amount of negative charge on the drum surface by applying the negative grid bias voltage.

The high voltage supply board - CTBG [B] gives a constant corona current to the corona wires (– 500 µA (– 5.6 kV)) and a constant bias voltage to the grid plate (– 745 V: for image, – 500 V: for sensor pattern). The corona current is controlled by the variable resistor in the circuit and the grid bias voltage is controlled by a PWM (Pulse Width Modulation) system.

The transport fan located above the fusing unit provides an air flow to the charge corona unit to prevent uneven built-up of negative ions that can cause an uneven charge of the drum surface.

The air around the drum is exhausted outside of the copier by the exhaust blower located on the rear side frame. The exhaust blower assembly has two ozone filters (ceramic type and paper type) to absorb the ozone (O_3) around the drum generated by the corona discharge.

3.2 CHARGE CORONA WIRE CLEANER MECHANISM



The flow of air around the charge corona wire may deposit paper dust or toner particles on the corona wires. These particles may interfere with charging and cause low density bands on copies.

The wire cleaner pads [A] above and below the charge corona wires clean the wires as the charge corona unit is manually slid in and out.

The cleaner pad bracket [B] rotates when the charge unit is fully extended and the bracket is pulled up against the rear block [C]. This moves the pads against the corona wire (see illustration). If the charge unit is not fully extended, the pads do not touch the corona wires.

The pads move away from the wire when the charge unit is fully inserted and the cleaning bracket is pushed against the front block [D].

After copier installation, the key operator should be told how to use this mechanism when white streaks appear on copies.

3.3 GRID BIAS VOLTAGE CORRECTION

The grid bias voltage differs depending on the modes and correction factors (see the process control section).

3.3.1 Base Grid Bias Voltage

There are two base grid bias voltages, one for image and the other for sensor patterns (ID sensor pattern and VR pattern).

Grid bias voltage for image (Vgi):	-745 V
Grid bias voltage for sensor pattern (Vgp):	-500 V

The high voltage supply board - CTBG is adjusted at the factory to output the correct Vgi and Vgp. When the high voltage supply board - CTBG is replaced in the field, the variation of the grid bias output should be corrected by entering the grid voltage correction data in SP mode #62.

3.3.2 Manual ID Correction

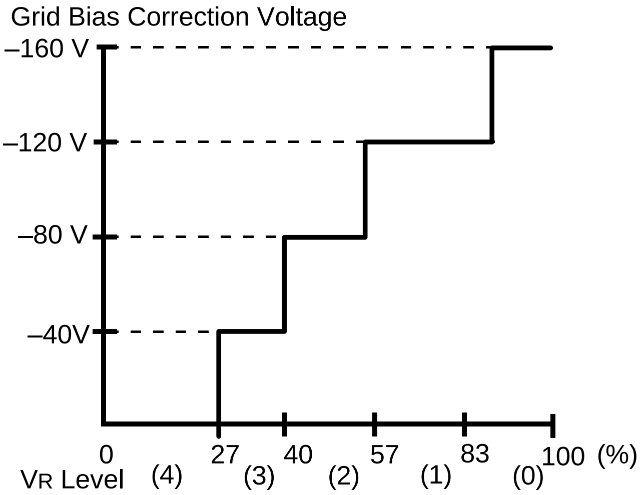
ID Level	Grid Bias Voltage
1	Vgi ±0V
2	Vgi ±0V
3	Vgi ±0V
4	Vgi ±0V
5	Vgi ±0V
6	Vgi +50V
7	Vgi +50V

NOTE: Vgi (Grid bias voltage for image)= –745V

When the image density is selected by the manual image density keys on the operation panel, the grid bias voltage is changed as shown in the above table.

The image density for each manual ID level is also controlled by the exposure lamp voltage and the development bias voltage. The manual ID correction for the grid bias voltage is applied only to levels 6 and 7. This is to expand the difference of image density at levels 6 and 7 from the other manual ID levels.

3.3.3 VR Correction



VR Level	Vrp/Vrg x 100 (%)	Grid Bias Correction Voltage
0	100~84	±0V
1	83~58	–40V
2	57~41	–80V
3	40~28	–120V
4	27~0	–160V

According to the results of the VR pattern detection, the grid bias voltage is corrected as shown in the above table.

The VR correction is also applied to the development bias voltage.

3.3.4 VR Data Correction

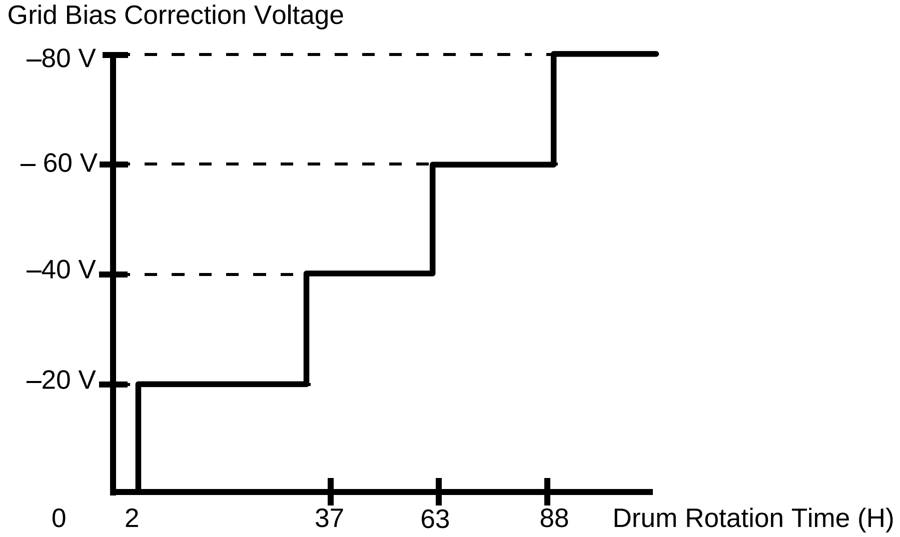
Drum Temperature	Grid Bias VR Correction
Over 25°C	No correction
25°C or lower	VR level +1

NOTE: VR level (max.)=4

If the temperature around the drum is 25°C or less when the main switch is turned on, the VR data correction is applied to the grid bias voltage as shown in the above table.

VR data correction is also applied to the development bias voltage and the low temp. correction is applied to the exposure lamp voltage simultaneously under this condition.

3.3.5 VG Correction



SP100: Drum Rotation Time (H)	Grid Bias Correction Voltage
0~1	±0V
2~36	–20V
37~62	–40V
63~87	–60V

According to the drum rotation time after performing SP mode #66 when a new drum is installed, VG correction is applied to the grid bias voltage as shown in the above table.

3.3.6 SP Mode Data Setting

SP34: ADS Density

Data	Density	Grid Bias Correction Voltage
0	Normal	±0V
1	Darker	–50V
2	Lighter	±0V

When the darker setting for ADS (data "1") is selected in SP mode #34 (ADS density), the negative grid bias voltage is increased by –50 V.

When the lighter setting is selected, the negative development bias voltage is increased.

3.3.7 Total Grid Bias Voltage

The total grid bias voltage for each mode is determined by the CPU as follows:

(1) ADS Mode

Vgi(–745 V) + V_R Correction + V_R Data Correction + V_G Correction + ADS Density(SP34)

(2) Manual ID Mode

Vgi(–745 V) + Manual ID Correction + V_R Correction + V_R Data Correction + V_G Correction

(3) ID Sensor Pattern Detection

Vgp(–500 V) + V_G Correction

(4) V_R Pattern Detection

Vgp(–500 V) + V_G Correction

(5) V_L Pattern Detection

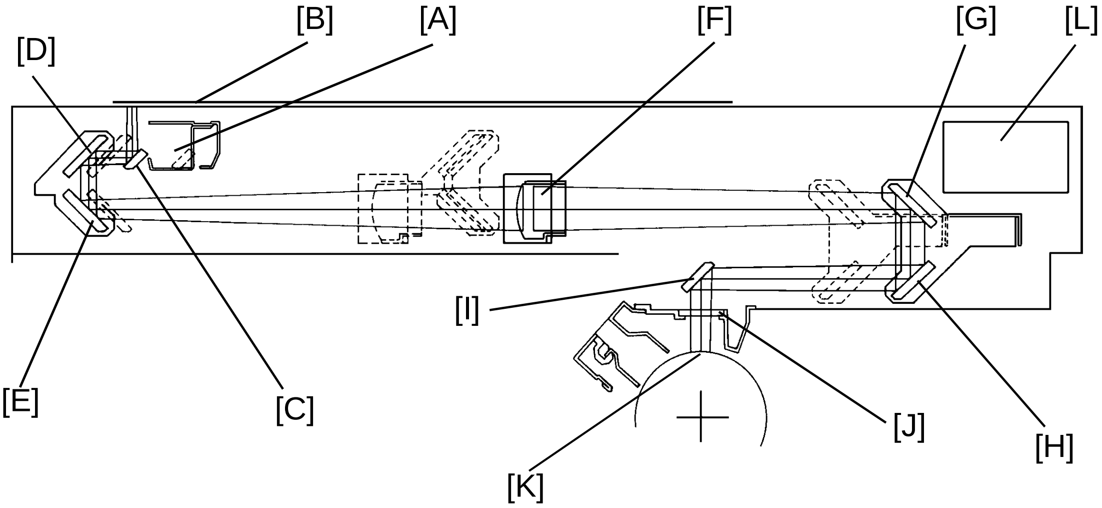
Vgi(–745 V) + V_R Correction + V_R Data Correction + V_G Correction

(6) Non-Image Area

0 V

4. OPTICS

4.1 OVERVIEW



During the copy cycle, an image of the original is reflected onto the drum surface via the optics assembly as follows.

Light Path:

Exposure Lamp [A] → Original [B] → 1st Mirror [C] →
→ 2nd Mirror [D] → 3rd Mirror [E] → Lens [F] →
→ 4th Mirror [G] → 5th Mirror [H] → 6th Mirror [I] →
→ Toner Shield Glass [J] → OPC Drum [K]

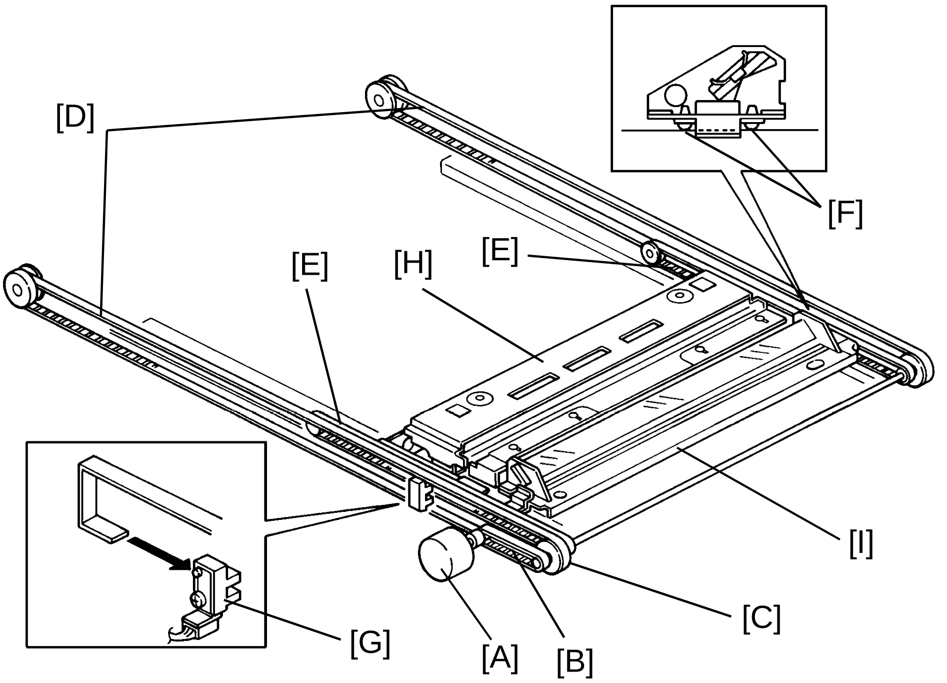
The optics cooling fan [L] removes warm air (heated by the exposure lamp) from the optics cavity. This blower operates if the optics thermister installed on the left scale bracket senses 40°C or more. This operation reduces the possibility of the optics unit becoming dirty by the optics cooling fan.

The 1st scanner (lamp and 1st mirror), 2nd scanner (2nd and 3rd mirrors), 3rd scanner (4th and 5th mirrors), and the lens function together to achieve a wide range of reproduction ratios (50 –200%).

The auto density selection (ADS) sensor board is mounted on the optics bottom plate in the lens housing cover. The ADS sensor board collects light reflected from the original in ADS mode. Original length and width sensors are mounted in the optics cavity for the original size detection.

A thermoswitch (turning off at 130°C) is installed on the back of the exposure lamp reflector as a back-up safety for preventing the optics unit overheating.

4.2 SCANNER DRIVE



This model uses a stepper motor [A] to drive the scanners via a timing belt [B], scanner drive pulley [C], and 2 long & short scanner drive belts [D, E]. Both ends of each scanner are driven to prevent skewing. The scanners have sliders [F], which ride on guide rails.

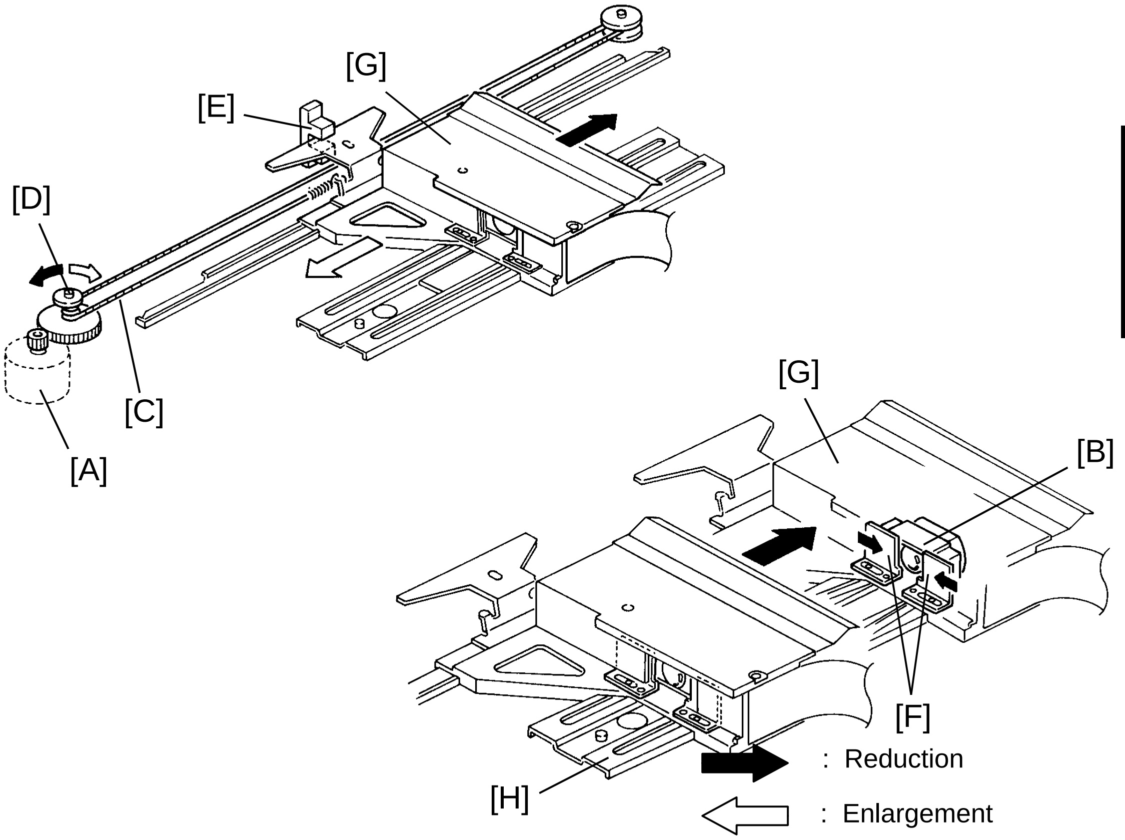
The scanner home position is detected by the home position sensor [G]. The main CPU sends the appropriate pulses to the scanner drive motor to determine the scanner return position.

The first scanner [H], which consists of the exposure lamp and the first mirror, is connected to 2 long scanner drive belts by the belt clamps. The second scanner [I], which consists of the second and third mirrors, is connected to 2 short scanner drive belts by belt clamps.

The relay pulley moves the second scanner at half the velocity of the first scanner. The diameter of the pulley for the short belts is half that for the long belts. This is to maintain the focal distance between the original and the lens during scanning. This relationship can be expressed as:

V_{1r} = 2 (V_{2r}) = V_D/r
where r = Reproduction ratio
V_{1r} = First scanner velocity (when the reproduction ratio is "r")
V_{2r} = Second scanner velocity (when the reproduction ratio is "r")
V_D = Drum peripheral velocity (180 mm/s)

4.3 LENS DRIVE



4.3.1 Lens Drive

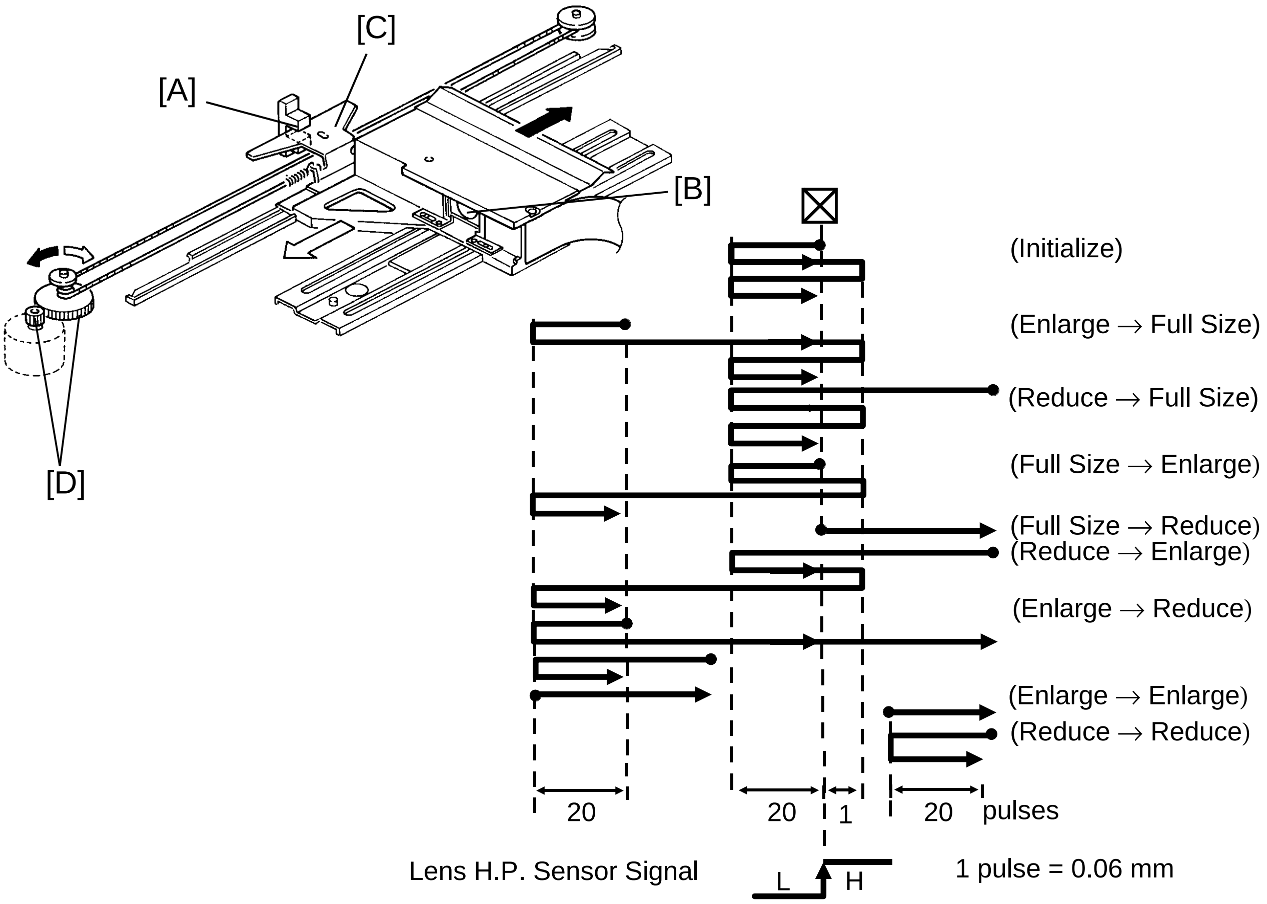
The lens motor [A] (stepper motor) changes the lens [B] position through the lens drive wire [C] in accordance with the selected reproduction ratio to provide the proper optical distance between the lens and the drum surface.

The rotation of the lens drive pulley [D] moves the lens back and forth in discrete steps. The home position of the lens is detected by the home position sensor [E]. The main board keeps track of the lens position based on the number of pulses sent to the lens motor.

4.3.2 Shading Mechanism

The shading plates [F] are installed on the lens housing [G] and are slid open and shut by the shading cam [H]. This shading mechanism adjusts the horizontal light intensity, which becomes uneven in reduction mode, when the light at the sides of the image is more intense. The shading plates close in reduction mode to even out the light intensity.

4.3.3 Lens Positioning


[C]
[A]
[B]
[D]
(Initialize)
(Enlarge → Full Size)
(Reduce → Full Size)
(Full Size → Enlarge)
(Full Size → Reduce)
(Reduce → Enlarge)
(Enlarge → Reduce)
(Enlarge → Enlarge)
(Reduce → Reduce)
20
20
1
20
pulses
Lens H.P. Sensor Signal
L
H
1 pulse = 0.06 mm

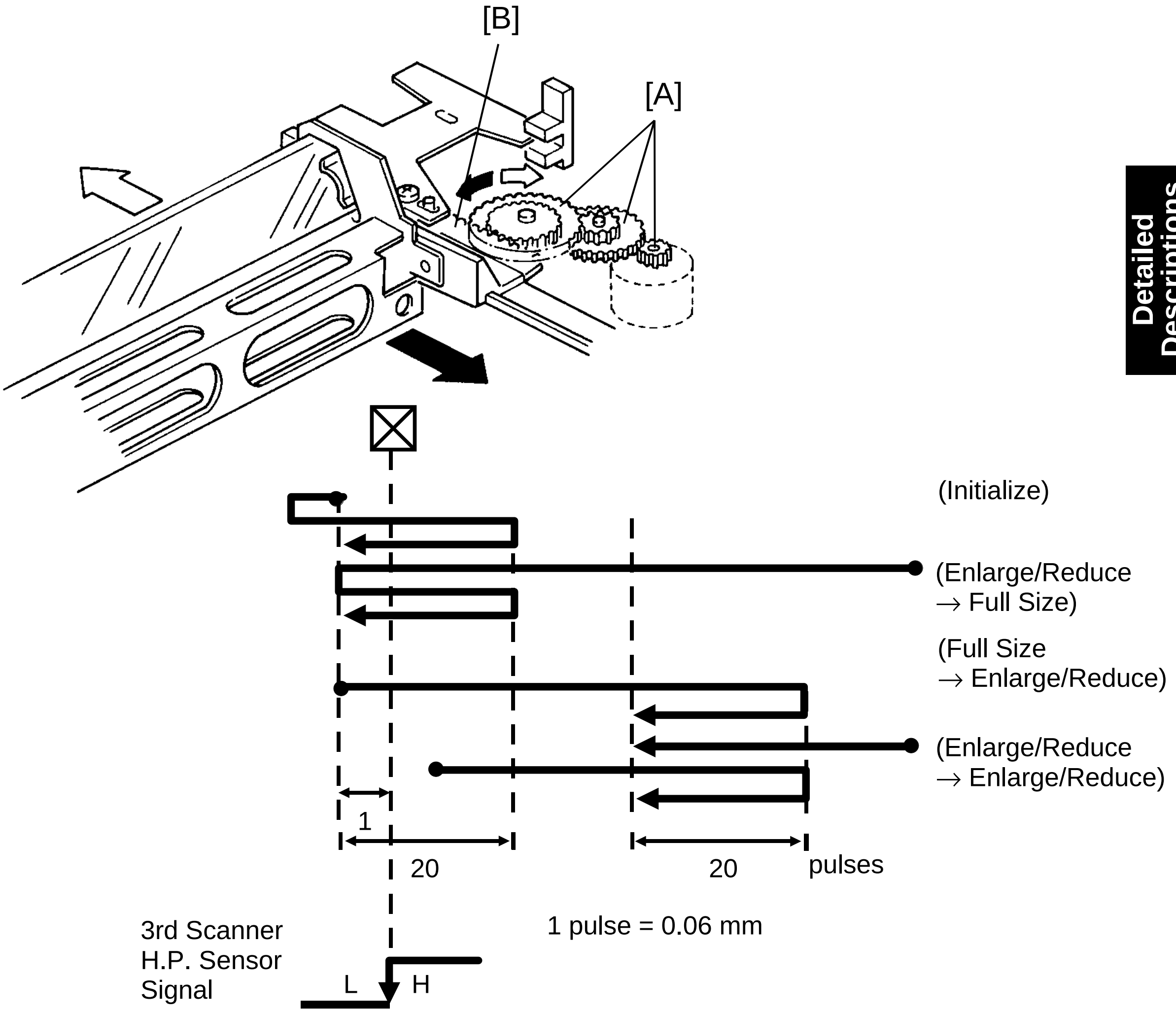
The lens home position sensor [A] informs the main board when the lens is at full size position (home position). The main board determines the lens stop position in reduction and enlargement modes by counting the number of steps the motor makes with reference to the lens home position. When a new reproduction ratio is selected, the lens [B] moves directly to the selected magnification position.

The lens home position is registered each time the lens starts from or passes through the lens home position sensor. As the lens moves from the enlargement side to the reduction side, the sensor registers the home position. This occurs when the actuator plate [C] enters the lens home position sensor.

The lens can be seen to go back and forth when the lens moves through the home position from the reduction side to the enlargement side. The lens is going in the wrong direction to register the home position. The lens overshoots the home position by 20 pulses before going back to register the home position and it then overshoots it by 1 pulse before finally settling there.

The lens always stops while moving from left to right (as viewed from the front) to minimize the error caused by mechanical play in the drive gears [D].

4.4 3RD SCANNER DRIVE


[B]
[A]
(Initialize)
(Enlarge/Reduce
→ Full Size)
(Full Size
→ Enlarge/Reduce)
(Enlarge/Reduce
→ Enlarge/Reduce)
1
20
20
pulses
1 pulse = 0.06 mm
3rd Scanner
H.P. Sensor
Signal
L
H

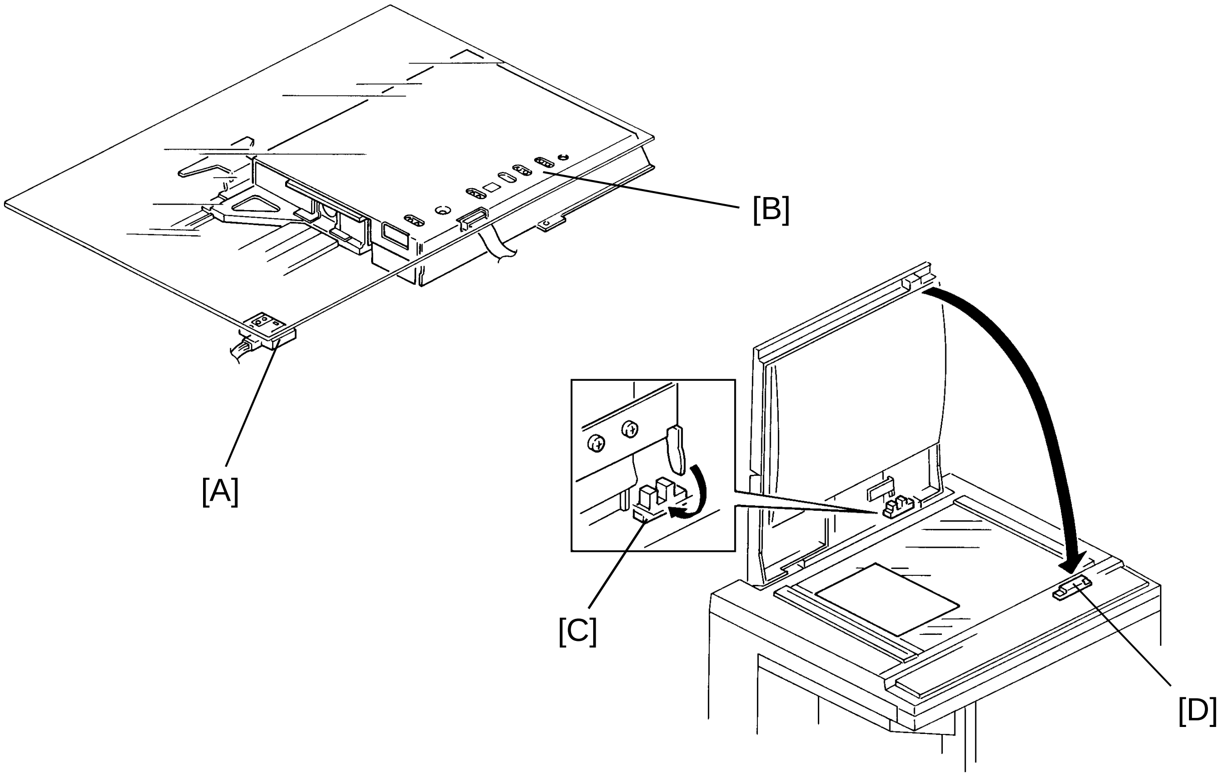
4.4.1 Drive

The 3rd scanner drive motor (stepper motor) changes the 3rd scanner position through the pinion gears [A] and the rack gear [B] in accordance with the selected reproduction ratio to provide the proper optical distance between the lens and drum surface.

4.4.2 Positioning

The positioning mechanism is similar to that for lens positioning, as shown in the above positioning chart. The scanner always stops while moving from right to left (as viewed from the front).

4.5 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION



There are six (for LT version) or seven (for A4 version) reflective sensors in the optics cavity for the original size detection. Two of them [A] are used for sensing the original width and the other four/five [B] are for the original length.

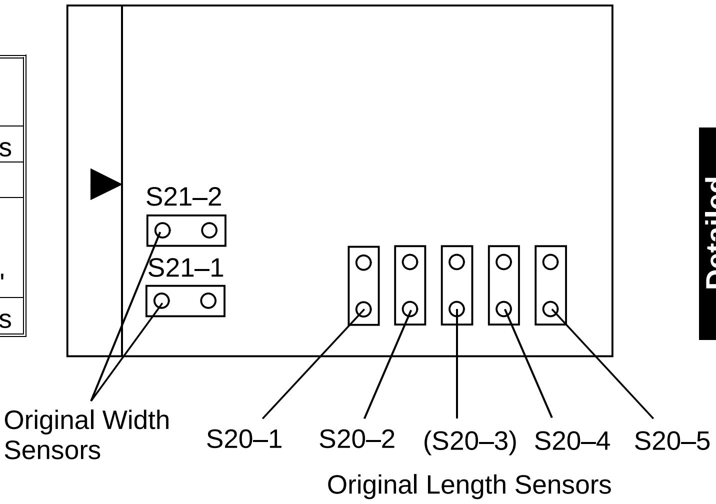
While the main switch is on, these sensors are active and the original size data is always sent to the main CPU. You can recognize this by the changes of the original size indicator when moving an original on the exposure glass. However, the CPU checks the data only twice in platen mode for determining the original size for actual copying in APS or AMS modes.

First check is done when the platen (or DF) position sensor [C] is activated. At this time the angle between the platen cover and the exposure glass is about 30 degrees. Only the sensor(s) underneath the original receive the reflective light and output a low signal. The other sensor(s) output a high signal. The CPU sends an original size signal to the operation panel board and stores this data.

A second check is done when the platen cover (or DF) is closed and the platen cover switch [D] turns on. The CPU compares the second check with the first one to confirm if the detected original size is correct or not.

If there is any difference between the first and second check, the CPU judges if the original exists above the respective sensor or not according to the following table.

First data	Second data	Judgment
High	High	Paper exists
High	Low	No paper
Low	High	Indicates "Check paper size"
Low	Low	Paper exists



The CPU finally determines the original size from the above judgments. The following table shows how the original size is determined with information of each sensor.

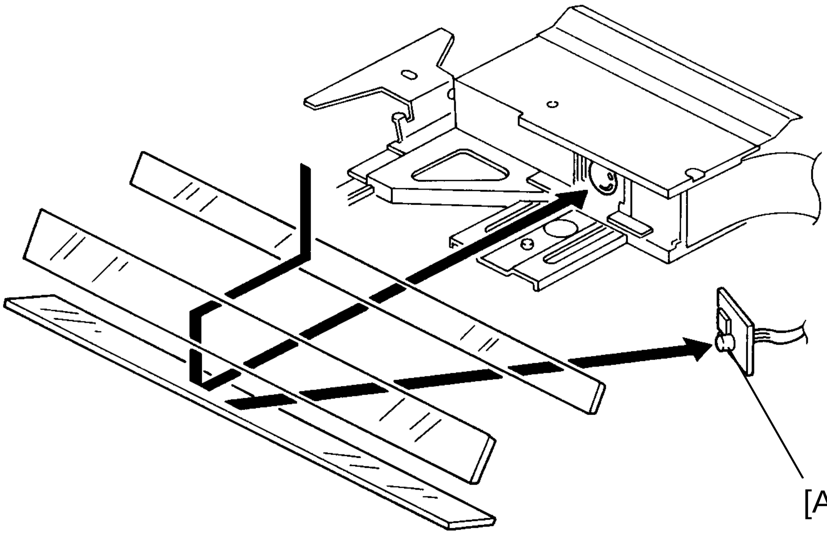
Sensors / Original Size		Original Width Sensor		Original Length Sensor				
		S21–1	S21–2	S20–1	S20–2	(S20–3)	S20–4	S20–5
A3	11" x 17"	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
B4	11" x 15" 10" x 14"	O	O	O	O	O	O	X
—	8½" x 14"	X	O	O	O	O	O	X
F4	—	X	O	O	O	O	X	X
A4 lengthwise	8½" x 11"	X	O	O	O	X	X	X
B5 lengthwise or smaller	8" x 10"	X	O	O	X	X	X	X
A5 lengthwise	5½" x 8½" or smaller	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
A4 sideways or smaller	11" x 8½"	O	O	O	X	X	X	X
B5 sideways	8½" x 5½"	O	O	X	X	X	X	X
A5 sideways or smaller	8½" x 5½" or smaller	X	O	X	X	X	X	X

O: Paper exists X: No paper

If the start key is pressed with the platen cover open, the CPU uses the original size data detected when the start key is pressed.

If an original is fed on to the exposure glass through the ARDF, the CPU uses the original size data from the ARDF.

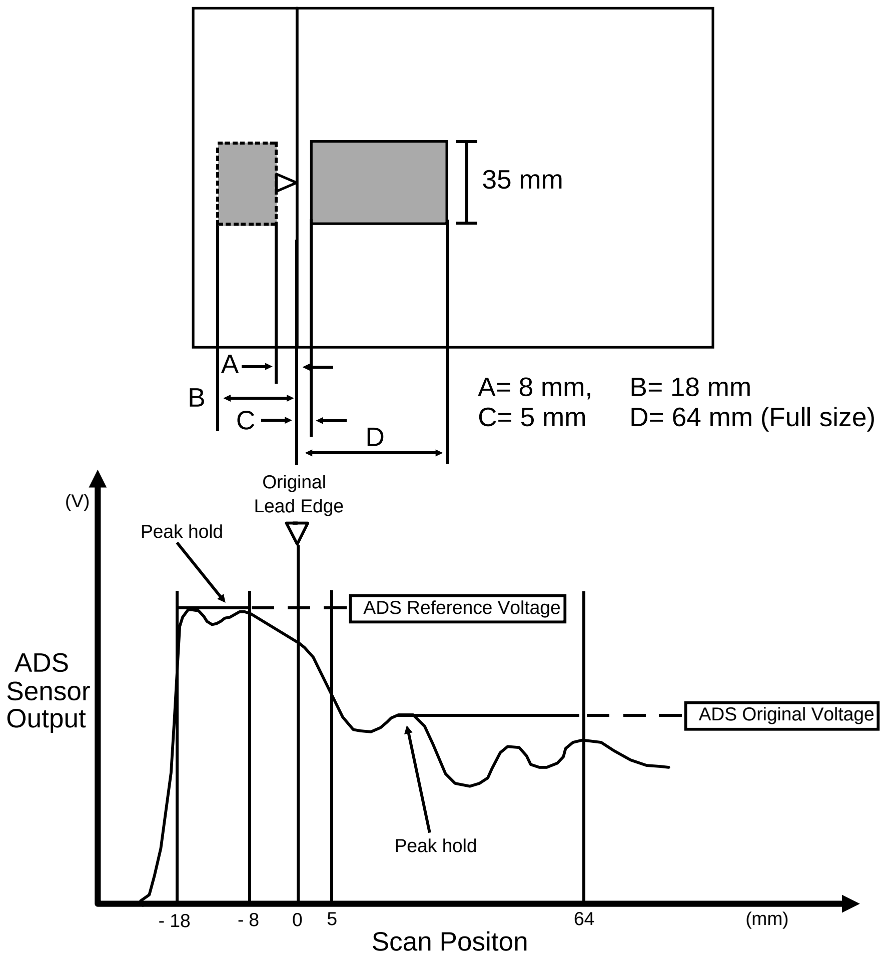
4.6 AUTOMATIC IMAGE DENSITY CONTROL SYSTEM (ADS)



In ADS mode the original background density is sensed by the ADS sensor [A] and the CPU determines an appropriate development bias voltage for the original to prevent the background from appearing on copies.

The ADS sensor board is mounted on the front side of the optics base plate. The sensor board is covered by the lens housing cover which has a small hole to direct the reflected light from the original to the ADS sensor.

The ADS sensor standard voltage is adjusted to 1.5V when SP mode #56 is performed. The exposure lamp turns on with 64V (fixed voltage) at the home position and the light reflected by the middle part of the reverse side of the left scale bracket (white painted) reaches the ADS sensor. The CPU adjusts the ADS gain data automatically to make the output to 1.5V. This gain data is stored in the RAM board.



For the first scanning of an original in ADS mode, the CPU starts sampling of the ADS sensor output from when the scanner moves from -18mm to -8mm from the original lead edge. Then the CPU memorizes the maximum ADS sensor output as a reference voltage. This means that every ADS check cycle, the first scanning for the original, the ADS reference voltage is renewed by the latest exposure light reflected by the white left scale bracket.

In the full size mode, the CPU samples the ADS sensor output for the original when the scanner moves from 5mm to 64mm from the original lead edge. The CPU takes the maximum ADS sensor output during the sampling period and compares it with the ADS reference voltage to determine the proper development bias voltage. (See ADS Data Correction in development bias control section for the detail.)

The sampling length of ADS sensor output for the original differs depending on the reproduction ratio because the scanner speed is different. It also differs when color copies are made because the latent image on the drum surface comes to the development point faster.

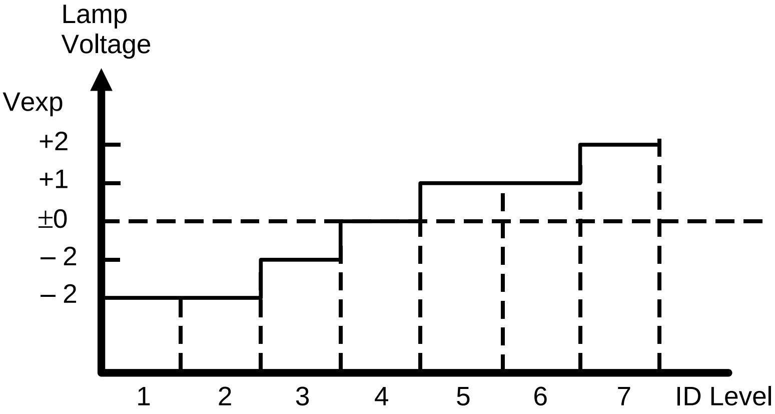
4.7 EXPOSURE LAMP CONTROL

The base exposure lamp voltage (Vexp) is determined by SP mode #48 according to the actual copy image when the drum initial setting (SP66) is performed. Based on this Vexp, the exposure lamp voltage differs depending on the modes and correction factors.

4.7.1 Manual ID Correction

ID Level	Lamp Voltage
1	Vexp –2V
2	Vexp –2V
3	Vexp –1V
4	Vexp ±0V
5	Vexp +1V
6	Vexp +1V
7	Vexp +2V

SP48: **Lamp Voltage**
0~75 V=Vexp
(63V=Default)



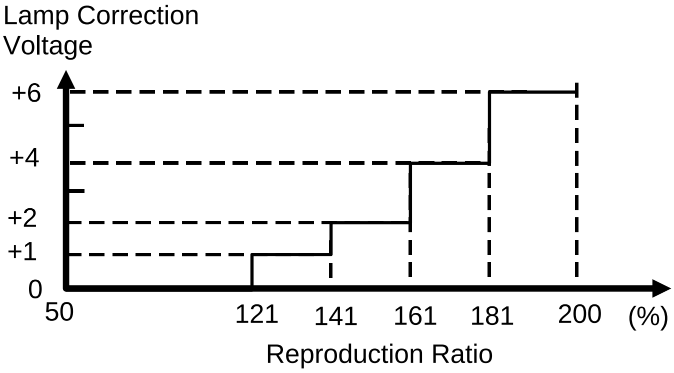
When an image density level is selected by the manual image density keys on the operation panel, the exposure lamp voltage is changed as shown in the above table.

The voltage changes ±2V within manual ID levels 1 to 7.

The grid bias voltage and the development bias voltage also change to make the appropriate image density graduation for each ID level.

4.7.2 Reproduction Ratio Correction

Reproduction Ratio (%)	Lamp Correction Voltage
50~120	±0V
121~140	+1V
141~160	+2V
161~180	+4V
181~200	+6V



In the reduction and enlargement modes the light path is longer than the full size mode. The light intensity for a unit square in enlargement mode is less than that in the full size mode and that in the reduction mode is more.

To compensate, the exposure lamp voltage is increased in the enlargement mode according to the reproduction ratios, as shown in the above table.

The compensation in the reduction mode is done by the light shading mechanism (see 4. 3. 2).

4.7.3 VL Correction

VL level (%)	Lamp Correction Voltage
151~	–1V
101~150	±0V
~100	+1V

NOTE: Lamp correction voltage is added to the previous correction voltage.

According to the result of the VL pattern detection, the exposure lamp voltage is corrected as shown in the above table.

When the VL level (= Vdat/Vref X 100) corresponds to the level less than 100%, meaning that the intensity of the light reaching the drum surface is less than the initial condition, the lamp voltage is increased by 1V. If the VL level is within the range of 101 and 150%, no correction is applied because the light intensity is strong enough. If the VL level is more than 150%, the lamp voltage is decreased by 1V to compensate for too intense light.

This voltage correction is applied to the exposure lamp voltage till the next VL pattern detection. This means that the lamp voltage increases more and more by 1V steps if the optics section gets dirty.

4.7.4 Low Temperature Correction

Drum Temperature	Lamp Correction Voltage
Over 25°C	±0V
25°C or lower	+1V

If the temperature around the drum is 25°C or less when the main switch is turned on, low temperature correction is applied to the exposure lamp voltage as shown in the above table.

Under this condition V_R data correction is also applied to both the grid bias and development bias voltage.

4.7.5 Total Exposure Lamp Voltage

The total exposure lamp voltage for each mode is determined by the CPU as follows:

(1) ADS Mode
Vexp(SP48) + Reproduction Ratio Correction + V_L Correction + Low Temp. Correction

(2) Manual ID Mode
Vexp(SP48) + Manual ID Correction + Reproduction Ratio Correction + V_L Correction + Low Temp. Correction

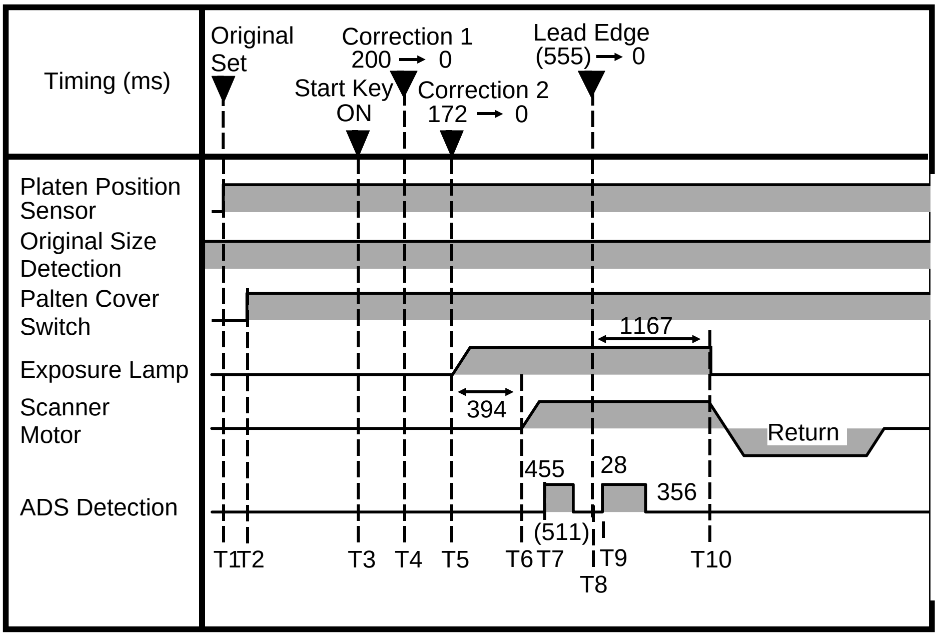
(3) ID Sensor Pattern Detection
The same as the ADS mode or the manual ID mode depending on which mode is being set for making the ID sensor pattern.

(4) V_L Pattern Detection
Vexp(SP48) + V_L Correction + Low Temp. Correction

(5) Auto ADS Gain Adjustment (SP56)
64V (fixed)

4.8 OPTICAL COMPONENT CONTROL TIMING

4.8.1 Normal Copying (A4 sideways, full size)


Timing (ms)
Original Set
Correction 1 200 → 0
Lead Edge (555) → 0
Start Key ON
Correction 2 172 → 0
Platen Position Sensor
Original Size Detection
Palten Cover Switch
Exposure Lamp
Scanner Motor
ADS Detection
1167
394
Return
455
28
356
(511)
T1
T2
T3
T4
T5
T6
T7
T9
T10
T8

T1: When the platen cover is being closed after positioning an original, the platen position sensor is activated and the original size data is stored by the CPU (first check).

T2: When the platen cover is completely closed, the platen cover switch is activated. The CPU takes the second original size data and determines the original size by comparing the fist and the second data.

T3: When the start key is pressed, the copier starts the copy job if the appropriate paper is loaded in paper trays. If there is no paper of the appropriate size, the copier stops and "check paper size" indicator blinks.

T4: The drum idling period for the preparation of paper feed after the start key is pressed. At this timing, paper feeding starts. This period differs depending on the paper feeding station.

		By-pass feed table	Upper paper tray	Lower paper tray
After the start key is pressed	Black	255ms	200ms	27ms
	Color	3,922ms	3,867ms	3,394ms

(The drum idling period for color is much longer than for black because of the development unit change time.)

T5: The exposure lamp turns on 172ms after the drum idling period is
- completed. This period differs depending on the selected paper feeding
- station.

	By-pass feed table	Upper paper tray	Lower paper tray	Duplex Tray
After the drum idling period is completed	305ms	172ms	728ms	683ms

T6: The scanner motor starts the forward rotation 394ms after the exposure lamp turns on. This timing differs depending on the reproduction ratio.

	200%	100%	50%
After the exposure lamp turns on	280ms	394ms	405ms

T7: The CPU starts sampling the ADS sensor output for the reverse side of the left scale bracket (ADS reference voltage) 455ms after the exposure lamp turns on.

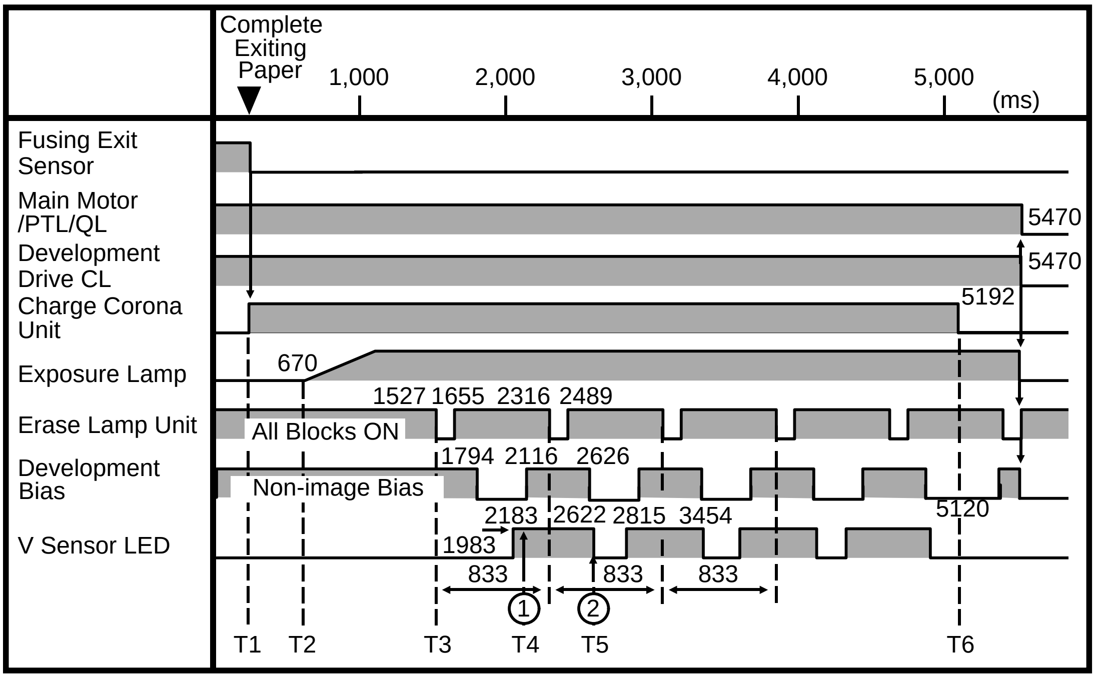
T8: The lead edge signal is sent from the I/O CPU to the main CPU about 555ms after the exposure lamp turns on.

T9: The CPU starts sampling the ADS sensor output for the original 28ms after the lead edge signal is sent to the main CPU. The sampling period differs depending on the reproduction ratio and the selected development unit.

T10: The exposure lamp turns off and the scanner motor starts the reverse rotation 1,167 ms after the lead edge signal is sent to the main CPU. This timing differs depending on the original size and the reproduction ratio.

	A3	B4	A4 lengthwise	A4 sideways
After the lead edge signal is sent	2,333ms	2,022ms	1,650ms	1,167ms

4.8.2 VL Pattern Detection



T1: When the last paper is exited at the programmed copy counter for the VL pattern detection, the VL pattern detection cycle starts. The main motor, PTL, QL, development drive clutch, erase lamp unit, development bias continue on condition. The charge corona turns on.

T2: The exposure lamp turns on 670ms after the VL pattern detection stars.

T3: The erase lamp unit changes its mode from the trail edge erase to the VL pattern erase 1527ms after the VL pattern erase starts, making the VL patterns on the drum surface. The development bias changes from the non-image bias (about -160V) to the VL pattern bias (VB0-20V) 1794ms after the VL pattern detection starts. The V sensor LED starts lighting (pulse) for the sensing Vlg and Vlp 1983ms later.

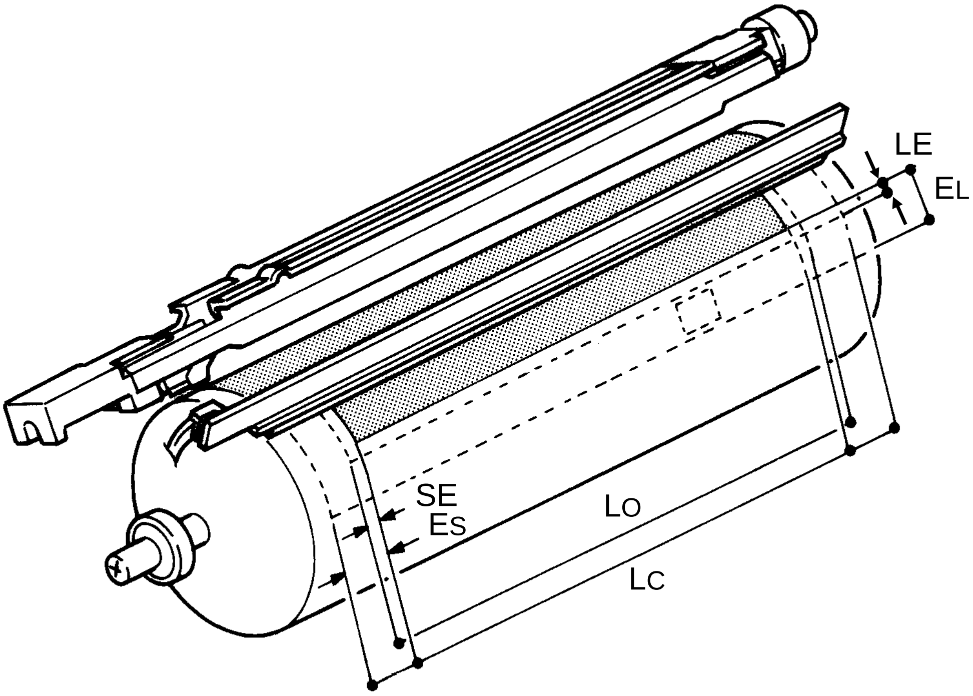
T4: The CPU takes the Vlg data 2183ms after the VL pattern detection starts. The CPU takes the Vlp data during the period between 1 and 2 in the above timing chart.

T5: The CPU detects the Vlg and Vlp data 4 times with 833ms intervals.

T6: The charge corona output turns off 5192ms after the VL pattern detection starts and all the other electrical components turn off 5470ms. This timing difference is to reduce the remaining drum potential.

5. ERASE

5.1 OVERVIEW



LE: Lead edge erase margin 2.5 ± 1.5 mm
SE: Side erase margin 1.5 ± 1.5 mm on each side;
total of both sides 4 mm or less
LO: Original width
LC: Charged width of drum
EL: Lead edge erase
ES: Side erase

The erase lamp unit consists of a line of LEDs extending across the full width of the drum.

The erase lamp unit has four functions: lead edge erase, trail edge erase, side erase, and pattern erase.

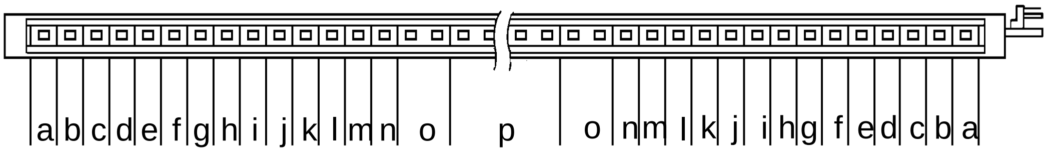
This copier has two types of erase lamp unit. One is a standard type with 31 blocks (48 LEDs). The other is an edit type with 120 blocks (120 LEDs) which should be used when the editor board is installed.

5.2 LEAD EDGE AND TRAIL EDGE ERASE

The entire line of LEDs turns on when the main motor turns on. They stay on until the erase margin slightly overlaps the lead edge of the original image on the drum (lead edge erase margin). This prevents the ID sensor pattern and the V_L pattern from being developed every copy cycle. It also prevents the shadow of the original lead edge from appearing on the copy paper. This lead erase margin is also necessary for the lead edge of the copy paper to separate from the hot roller. The width of the lead edge erase margin can be adjusted by SP mode #41.

When the scanner reaches the return position, the charge corona, the grid bias, and the exposure lamp turn off. However, the charged area on the drum surface is a little longer than the actual original length in order to have the entire latent image of the original.
The entire line of LEDs turn on when the trail edge of the latent image has passed by 2 mm under the erase lamp unit. This prevents developing unnecessary parts of the drum surface, reducing toner consumption and drum cleaning load.
The LEDs stay on to erase the lead edge of the latent image in the next copy cycle. After the final copy, the erase lamps turn off at the same time as the main motor.
Normally, there is no trail edge erase margin on copies. But we can make a trail edge erase margin using SP mode #157, if necessary (see troubleshooting section).

5.3 SIDE ERASE


a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a

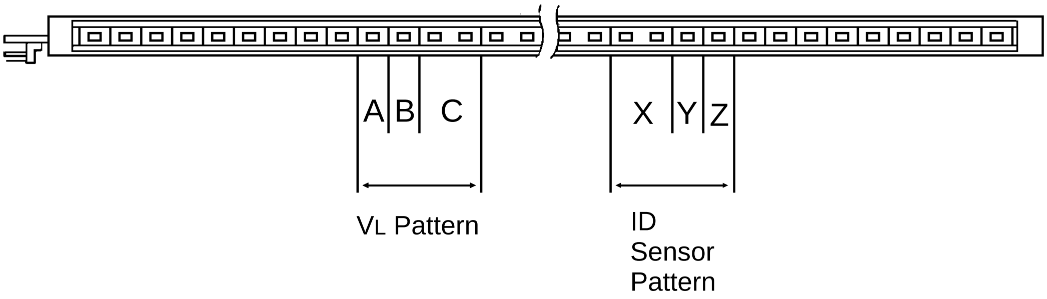
Based on the combination of copy paper size and the reproduction ratio data, the LEDs turn on in blocks. This prevents the shadow of the original side edge and unexposed front and rear sides of the drum surface in reduction mode from being developed. This reduces toner consumption and drum cleaning load.

The following table shows which blocks of erase lamp LEDs turn on depending on the paper size and the reproduction ratio:

Blocks ON	Paper Size	Reproduction Ratio(%)
None	A3, A4 Sideways, 11" x 17", 11" x 81/2" by-pass feed	99–200
a		95–98
a–b		91–94
a–c	B4, B5 Sideways	86–90
a–d		82–85
a–e		78–81
a–f	81/2" x 11", 81/2" x 51/2", F4	74–77
a–g	A4 Lengthwise	70–73
a–h		66–69
a–i		63–65
a–j		60–62
a–k		57–59
a–l		54–56
a–m		52–53
a–n	A5 Lengthwise, 51/2" x 81/2"	50–51
All (a–p)	Lead Edge and Trail Edge Erase	

Although no erase lamp LEDs turn on when paper size is A3/11"X17" or A4/8 1/2"X11" sideways and when the reproduction ratio is 99 to 200 %, there are side erase margins because the charged area is limited by the charge corona end block covers.
When the ARDF is used, one more inner block of erase lamp LEDs on the front and the rear sides turn on. This is one more block turning on than for normal side erase to erase the shadow of the ARDF transport belt.

5.4 PATTERN ERASE



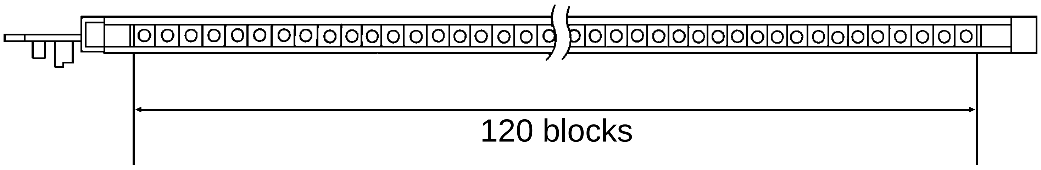
The erase lamp unit has another task besides the lead edge erase, trail edge erase, and side erase which is making the ID sensor pattern, V_R pattern, and V_L pattern.

When in the ID sensor pattern detection cycle, the lead edge erase period is a little longer to make the ID sensor pattern before the original latent image. The ID sensor pattern is made by turning off the LED blocks X, Y, Z on the rear side for 133 msec. before making the lead edge erase margin.

When in the V_R pattern detection cycle, the entire line of the erase lamp LEDs turn on a little longer than the normal lead edge erase period. The V_R pattern is made by applying a development bias of 0 V for the erased drum surface before the original latent image.

When in the V_L pattern detection cycle, the trail edge erase stays longer than the normal copy cycle. The exposure lamp turns on at the scanner home position and the LED blocks A, B, C of the front side turn off for 111 msec. 4 times at 833 msec. intervals. (4 times a 20 X 20 mm V_L pattern at 150 mm intervals)

5.5 EDIT ERASE LAMP UNIT



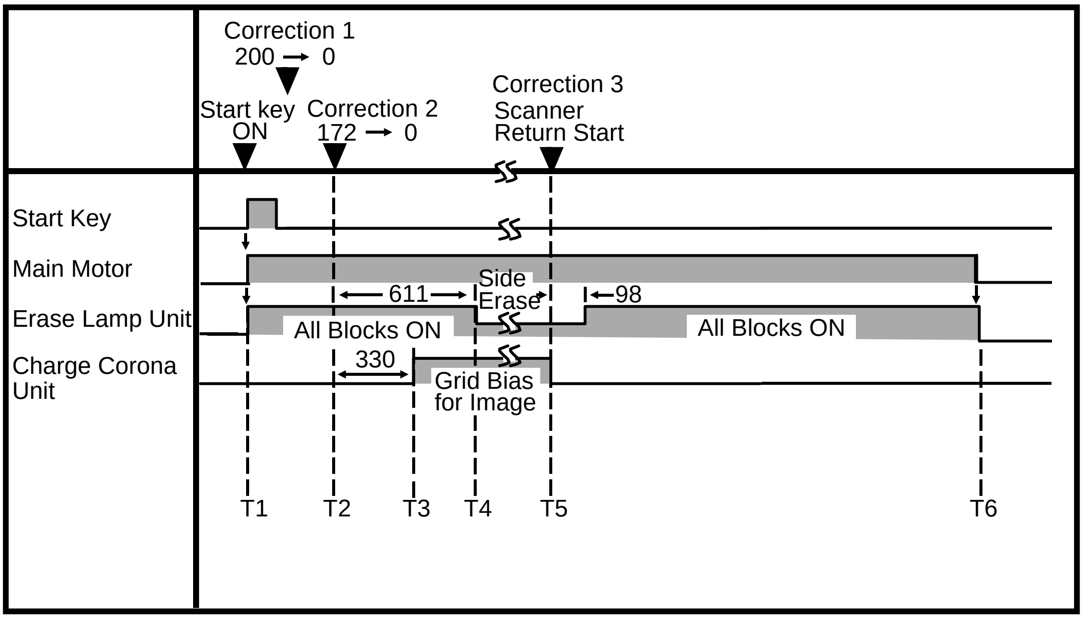
The edit erase lamp unit has 120 blocks the width of each being about 2 mm. When the editor is installed, this erase lamp unit must be used for the editing function. If a customer wants side erase margins narrower than standard ones, the edit erase lamp unit can be used independently without the editor board.

If the erase lamp unit is replaced with another type, the data of SP mode #84 (editing eraser) should be changed accordingly. (When the editor is installed, the copier CPU automatically changes the data of SP84 to 1.)

SP84:	Editing Eraser
0:	No (Standard erase lamp unit)
1:	Yes (Edit erase lamp unit)

If this data setting is wrong, incorrect side erase margins appear on copies, and the ID sensor pattern is not made correctly, causing the ID sensor abnormal condition.

5.6 ERASE LAMP CONTROL TIMING (Upper paper tray, black development unit)


Correction 1
200 → 0
Start key ON
Correction 2
172 → 0
Correction 3
Scanner Return Start
Start Key
Main Motor
Erase Lamp Unit
Charge Corona Unit
611
Side Erase
98
All Blocks ON
All Blocks ON
330
Grid Bias for Image
T1
T2
T3
T4
T5
T6

T1: When the start key is pressed, the main motor and all the blocks of the erase lamp unit turn on simultaneously.

T2: The timing is corrected twice according to the combination of the selected development unit and the paper feeding station. (The above timing is for the combination of the black development unit and the upper paper tray.)

T3: The charge corona turns on for the original image 330ms after correction 2.

T4: The erase lamp unit changes its mode from the lead edge erase to the side erase 611ms after correction 2. This side erase period differs depending on the paper size. (In case of the full size mode):

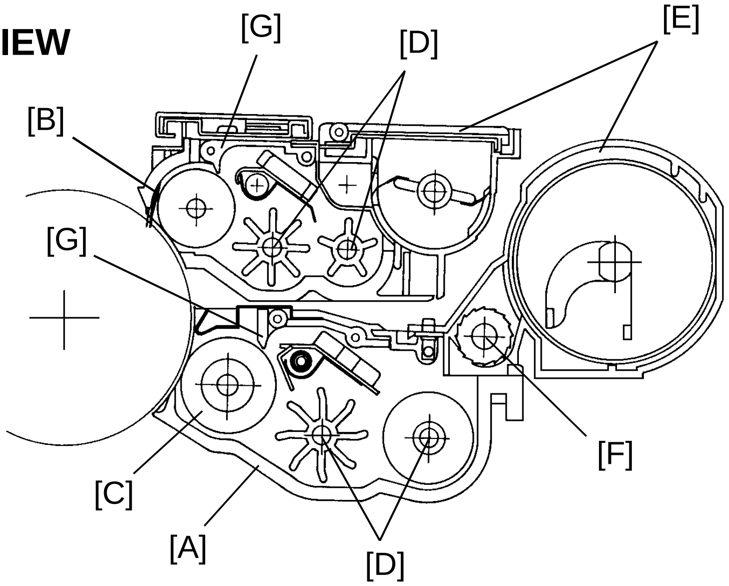
Paper size	Period
A3	2,355ms
B4	2,044ms
A4 lengthwise	1,650ms
A4 sideways	1,189ms

T5: The charge corona turns off when the scanner starts the return movement. 98ms after that the erase lamp changes its mode from the side erase to the trail edge erase.

T6: The erase lamp and the main motor turn off simultaneously.

6. DEVELOPMENT

6.1 OVERVIEW



The development section is composed of a black development unit [A] and a color development unit [B] (option). Normally, the black development roller [C] is in contact with the drum. When color copy mode is selected, the color development unit moves against the drum and the black development unit is pulled back.

Both development units have a development roller, two paddle rollers [D], and a toner hopper [E].

The black development unit has a toner supply roller [F] but the color development unit does not.

The paddle rollers pick up developer in their paddles and transport it to the development roller. Internal permanent magnets in the development roller attract the developer to the development roller sleeve.

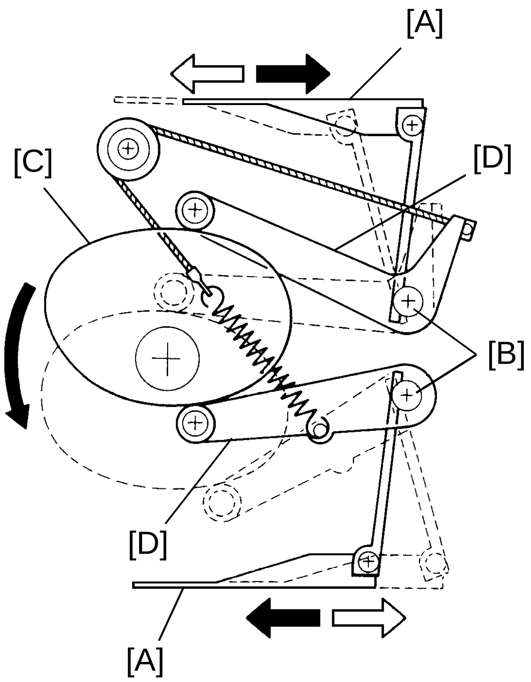
The turning sleeve of the development roller then carries the developer past the doctor blade [G]. The doctor blade trims the developer to the desired thickness and creates a backspill for the cross-mixing mechanism.

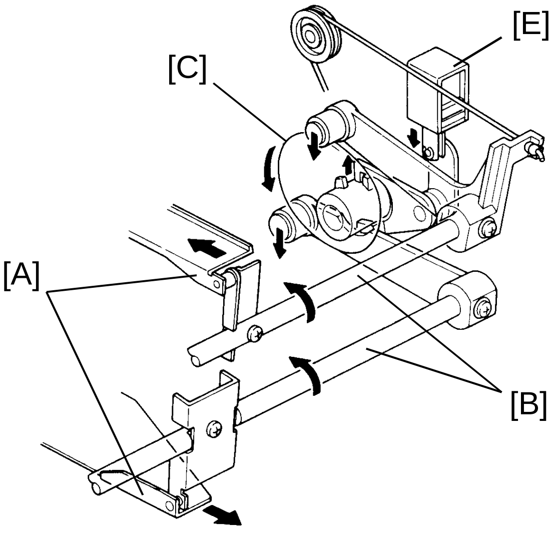
The development roller continues to turn, carrying the developer to the drum.

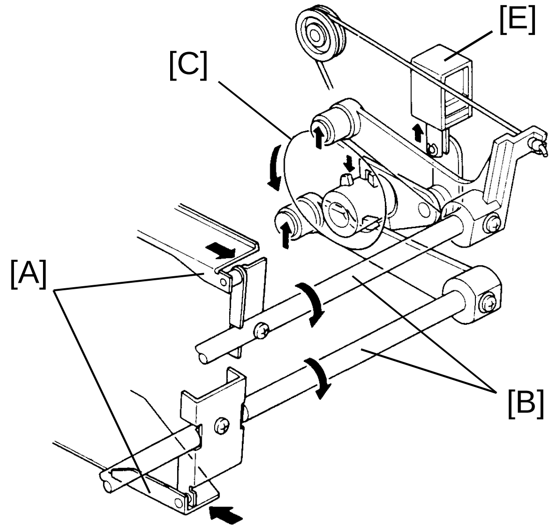
When the developer brush contacts the drum surface, the negatively charged areas of the drum surface attract and hold the positively charged toner. In this way, the latent image is developed.

Negative bias is applied to the development roller to prevent toner from being attracted to non-image areas on the drum that may have a residual negative charge. Negative bias also controls image density.

6.2 DEVELOPMENT UNIT CHANGE MECHANISM



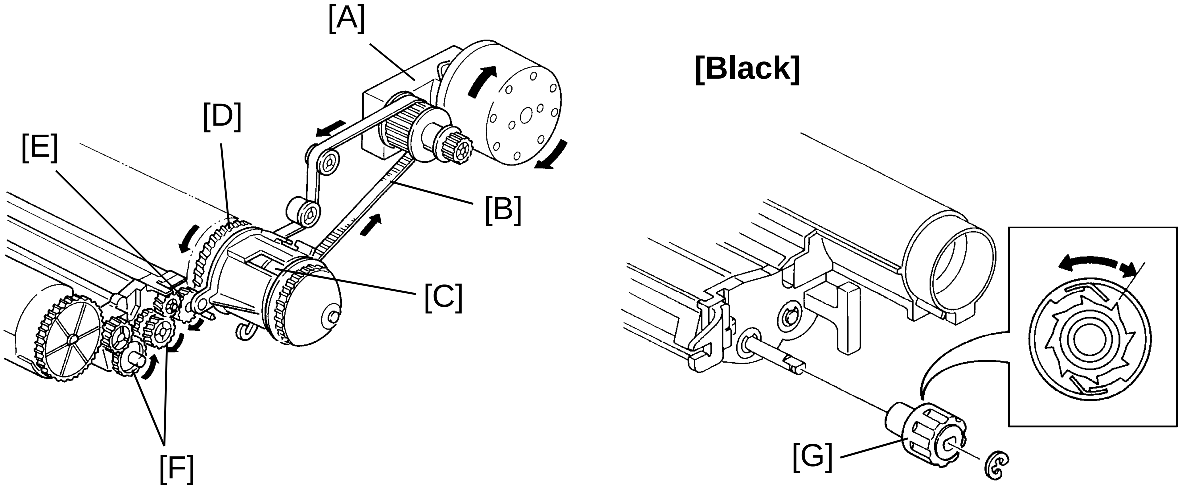


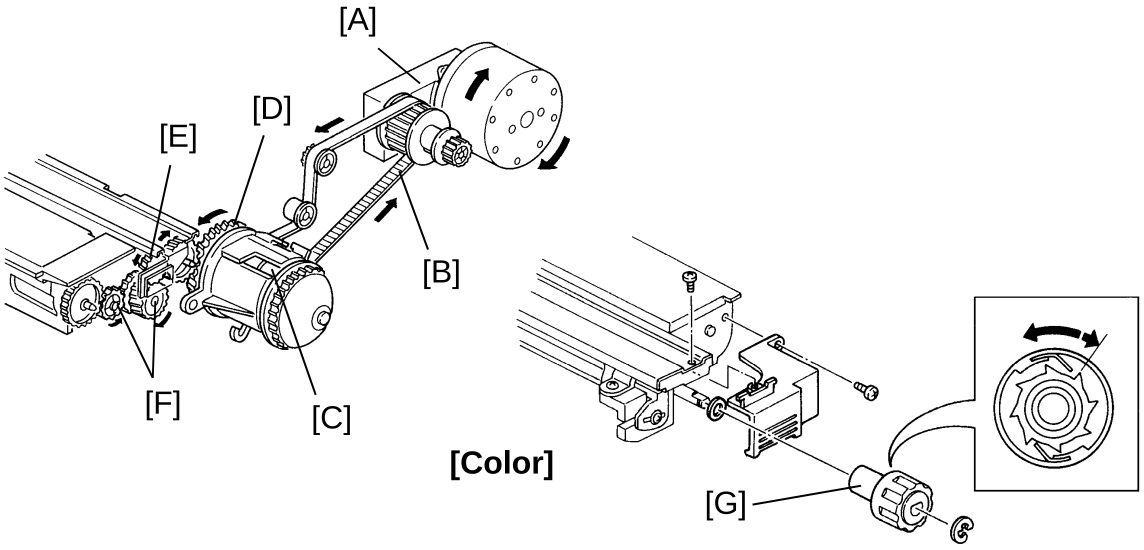


The development guide rails [A] are slid back and forth by the color development change shaft [B].

The change shafts are turned by the development change cam [C] through the change lever [D]. The cam is driven by the main motor through gears and timing belts. The development change solenoid [E] controls the spring clutch to set the cam position.

6.3 DRIVE MECHANISM


[Black]

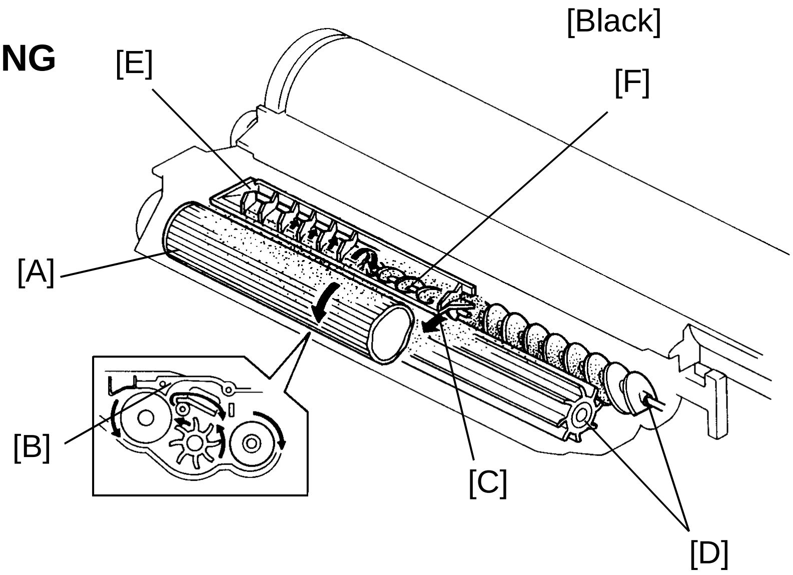

[Color]

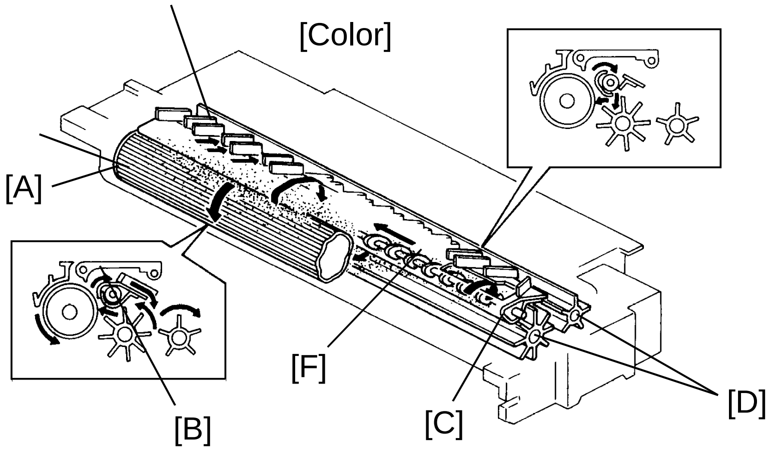
The main motor [A] rotation is transmitted to the development unit drive gears through a timing belt [B] and the development drive clutch [C]. When the drive clutch is energized, the rotation of the clutch gear [D] is transmitted to the development roller gear [E] and the paddle roller gears [F].

The paddle roller shaft has a knob [G] on the front end so that it can be turned manually to exchange developer.

The knob has a one-way clutch inside. The one-way clutch prevents the development roller from turning in the wrong direction.

6.4 CROSS MIXING





This copier uses a standard cross-mixing mechanism to keep the toner and developer evenly mixed. It also helps agitate the developer to prevent developer clumps from forming and helps create the triboelectric charge.

The developer on the rotating development roller [A] is split into two parts by the doctor blade [B]. The part that stays on the development roller forms the magnetic brush and develops the latent image on the drum. The part that is trimmed off goes to the backspill plate.

The rest of the developer slides down the backspill plate [C] to the paddle roller [D]. The mixing vanes [E] move it slightly toward the rear (toward the front for the color development unit) of the unit. Part of the developer falls into the auger inlet and is transported to the front of the development unit (rear of the color unit) by the mixing auger [F].

The agitator moves the developer slightly to the front as it turns, so the developer stays level in the development unit.

6.5 DEVELOPMENT BIAS CONTROL

The base development bias voltage for image is –160 V. However, it differs depending on the modes and correction factors (see the process control section).

6.5.1 Manual ID Correction

Manual ID Correction

ID Level	Development Bias voltage
1	–120V
2	–160V
3	–160V
4	–160V
5	–160V
6	–200V
7	SP46

SP46: Highlight Bias

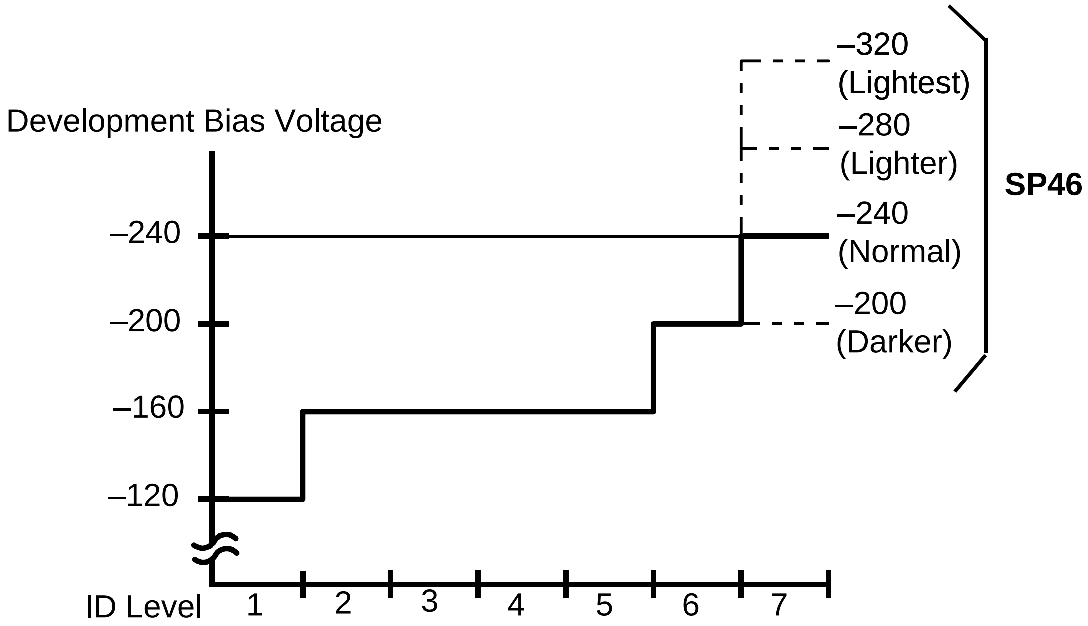
Data	Density	Development Bias Correction Voltage
0	Normal	–240V
1	Darker	–200V
2	Lighter	–280V
3	Lightest	–320V

When the image density is selected by the manual image density keys on the operation panel, the development bias voltage is changed as shown in the above table.

The image density for each manual ID level is also controlled by the exposure lamp voltage and the grid bias voltage.

The manual ID correction for the development bias voltage is applied to levels 1, 6, and 7.

The development bias for level 7 can be adjusted by SP mode #46 (highlight bias) to meet customer requests.

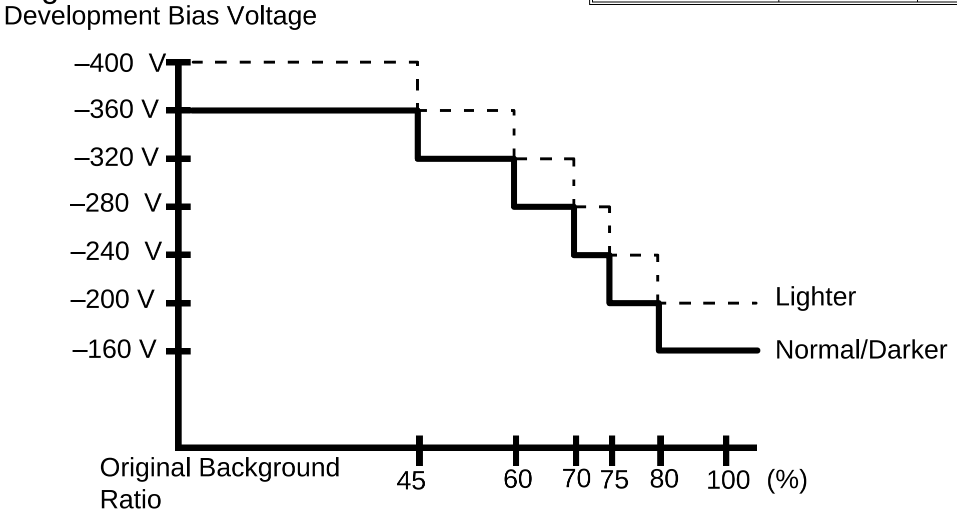


6.5.2 ADS Data Correction

When in the ADS mode, original background density is detected by the ADS sensor board. According to the original background ratio, the CPU decides the appropriate development bias voltage, as shown in the table at right.
This is to prevent the original background from appearing on copies. The image and background density on copies in the ADS mode are controlled only by changing the development bias voltage.

ADS Data Correction

Original Background Ratio (%)	Development Bias Voltage	
	SP34: ADS Density	
	0: Normal 1: Darker	2: Lighter
80~	–160V	–200V
75~79	–200V	–240V
70~74	–240V	–280V
60~69	–280V	–320V
45~59	–320V	–360V
0~44	–360V	–400V



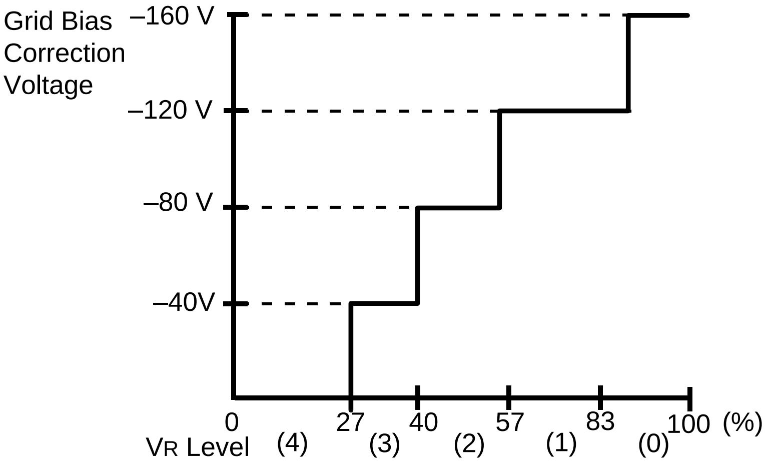
Copy image and background density in the ADS mode can be selected from three levels by SP mode #34.

The normal and darker settings have the same development bias voltage table and the difference is made through the grid bias voltage (–50V). The development bias voltage difference between the lighter and normal settings is 40V.

6.5.3 VR Correction

VR Correction

VR Level	Vrp/Vrg x 100 (%)	Development Bias Correction Voltage
0	100~84	±0V
1	83~58	–40V
2	57~41	–80V
3	40~28	–120V
4	27~0	–160V



According to the results of the VR pattern detection, the development bias voltage is corrected as shown in the above table.

VR correction is also applied to the grid bias voltage.

6.5.4 VR Data Correction

VR Data Correction

Drum Temperature	Development Bias VR Correction
Over 25°C	No correction
25°C or lower	VR level +1

NOTE: VR level (max.)=4

If the temperature around the drum is 25°C or less when the main switch is turned on, the VR data correction is applied to the development bias voltage as shown in the above table.

VR data correction is also applied to the grid bias voltage and the low temperature correction is applied to the exposure lamp voltage simultaneously under this condition.

6.5.5 Bias Voltage Selection by SP Mode

SP37: Black Bias
SP79: Color Bias

Data	Density	Develpment Bias Correction Voltage
0	Normal	±0V
1	Darkest	+40V
2	Darker	+20V
3	Lighter	–20V
4	Lightest	–40V

The development bias for original image can be selected from among four levels by SP mode #37 for black and SP mode #79 for color as shown in the above table.

The selected development bias voltage does not affect the toner density control because the development bias for the ID sensor patterns have a different table.

Since the V_R pattern and V_L pattern detections are performed in black copy cycles, the setting of SP37 is applied to the development bias voltage for the V_R and V_L patterns. Therefore, if you change the black development bias after the initial V_L detection, the difference will be gradually neutralized by the exposure lamp voltage when the subsequent V_L detections are performed. (Ex. If you decrease the negative development bias voltage by +40V to get a darker image, the V_L pattern will also become darker and the exposure lamp voltage increases by 1V. After several V_L pattern detections, the image darkened by the development bias voltage will return to the initial image density as a result of V_L pattern detections.) The development bias voltage adjustment should be done with the exposure lamp voltage adjustment (SP48) only when the drum initial setting (SP66) is performed.

The color development bias voltage can be adjusted any time.

6.5.6 Bias for Sensor Patterns

(1) Development bias voltage for ID sensor pattern

SP33: Black Pattern Bias

Data	Black Toner Density	Development Bias Voltage for ID sensor Pattern	
		0~500	501~
0	Normal	–220V	–200V
1	Lighter	–180V	–160V
2	Darker	–240V	–220V
3	Darkest	–260V	–240V

SP75: Red/Blue/Green Pattern Bias

Data	Color Toner Density	Development Bias Voltage for ID sensor Pattern			
		0~500		501~	
		Red/Blue	Green	Red/Blue	Green
0	Normal	–200V	–240V	–180V	–220V
1	Lighter	–160V	–200V	–140V	–180V
2	Darker	–220V	–260V	–200V	–240V
3	Darkest	–240V	–280V	–220V	–260V

The development bias voltage for the ID sensor patterns (both Vsg and Vsp) are shown in the above table. They differ depending on color because the relation between the reflected light intensity and developed sensor pattern density is different from color to color. The difference of development bias voltage for each color's ID sensor pattern compensates them.

The development bias voltage for ID sensor pattern is –20V more for the first 500 copies than that for the rest. This is to compensate a tendency of the developer to have a slightly higher toner density until it stabilizes.

The toner density can be adjusted by changing the setting of SP33 for black and that of SP75 for color, as shown in the table.

(2) Development bias voltage for V_R pattern

The development bias voltage for non-image area is applied to the bare drum where Vrg output is sampled.
0V is applied for the V_R pattern which gives Vrp output, as explained in the process control section.

(3) Development bias voltage for V_L pattern

The base development bias voltage (VB0–20V) for the V_L pattern (both Vlg and Vlp) is decided in the process of the initial V_L pattern detection.
The actual bias voltage for the V_L pattern has some corrections.

6.5.7 Total Development Bias Voltage

The total development bias voltage for each mode is determined by the CPU as follows:

(1) ADS Mode
–160V + ADS Data Correction + VR Correction + VR Data Correction + SP Mode Data Setting (SP34:ADS Density / SP37:Black Bias / SP79:Color Bias)

(2) Manual ID Mode
–160V + Manual ID Correction + VR Correction + VR Data Correction + SP Mode Data Setting (SP37:Black Bias / SP46:Highlight Bias / SP79:Color Bias)

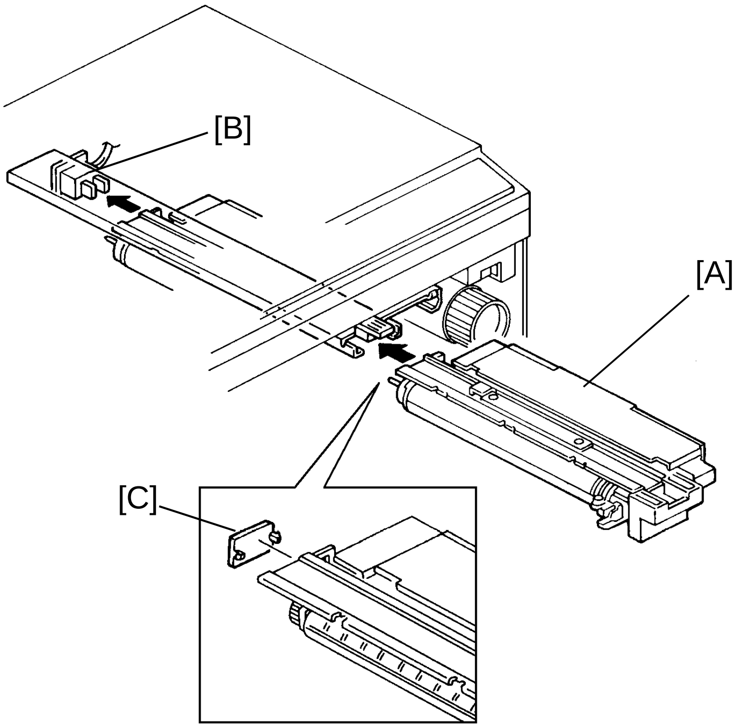
(3) ID Sensor Pattern Detection
SP Mode Data Setting (SP33:Black Pattern Bias / SP75:Red/Blue/Green Pattern Bias)

(4) VR Pattern Detection
Vrg: –160V + VR Correction + VR Data Correction + SP Mode Data Setting (SP37:Black Bias)
Vrp: 0V

(5) VL Pattern Detection
VB0–20V + VR Correction + VR Data Correction + SP Mode Data Setting (SP37:Black Bias)

(6) Non-image Area
–160V + VR Correction + VR Data Correction + SP Mode Data Setting (SP37:Black Bias / SP79:Color Bias)

6.6 COLOR DEVELOPMENT UNIT DETECTION



Color Development unit detection table

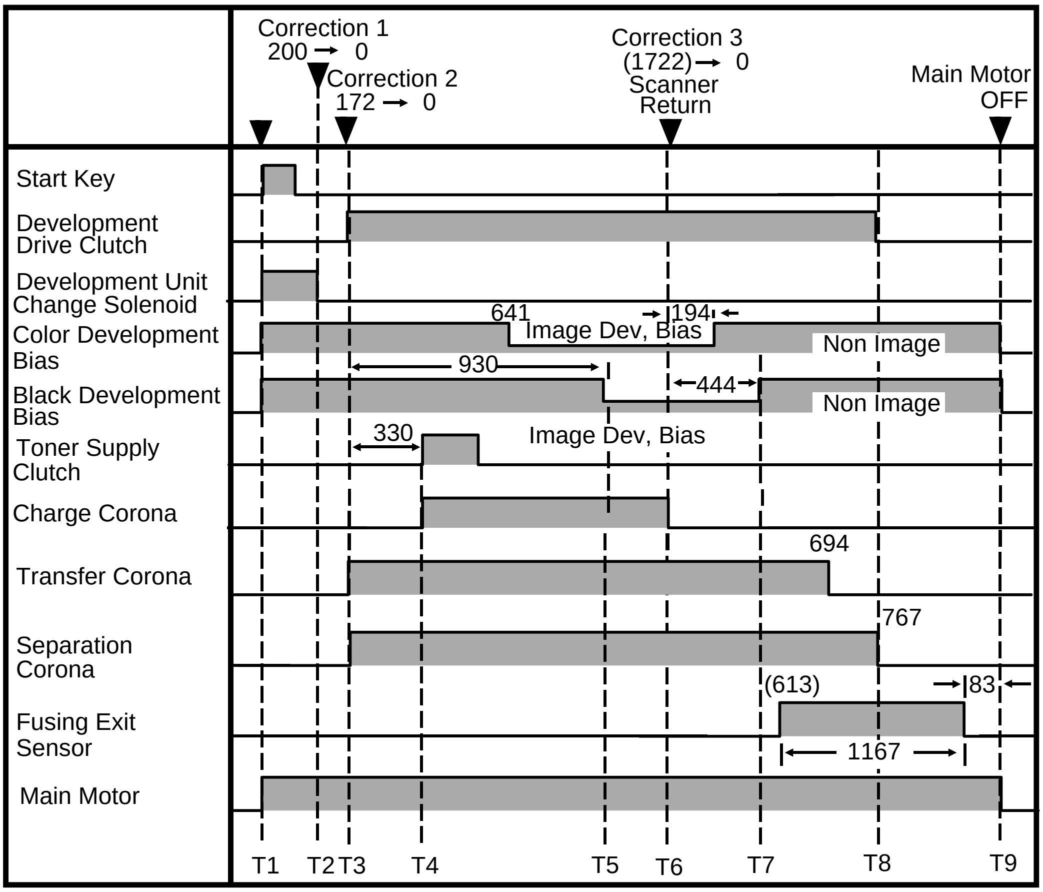
Color	SW 1	SW 2
Red	ON	ON
Blue	ON	OFF
Green	OFF	ON
No Dev. Unit	OFF	OFF

When a color development unit [A] is installed in the copier, the color switch [B] is activated by a color detect plate [C] at the development unit.

The color switch has two microswitches inside.

The CPU receive a LOW signal from the micro switch activated by the color detect plate and determines which color unit has been installed.

6.7 DEVELOPMENT COMPONENT CONTROL TIMING (A4 sideways, upper paper tray, black development unit)


Correction 1
200 → 0
Correction 2
172 → 0
Correction 3
(1722) → 0
Scanner Return
Main Motor OFF
Start Key
Development Drive Clutch
Development Unit Change Solenoid
Color Development Bias
Black Development Bias
Toner Supply Clutch
Charge Corona
Transfer Corona
Separation Corona
Fusing Exit Sensor
Main Motor
641
194
Image Dev, Bias
Non Image
930
444
Non Image
330
Image Dev, Bias
694
767
(613)
83
1167
T1
T2
T3
T4
T5
T6
T7
T8
T9

T1: When the start key is pressed, the main motor turns on and the non-image development bias (about -160V) is applied to the development roller. If color copy mode is selected, the development unit change solenoid turns on to shift the development unit to the color one.

T2: The timing is corrected to 0 (correction 1) depending on a combination of the selected development unit and the paper feeding station.

Paper Feeding Station		Black Dev. Unit	Color Dev. Unit
Upper Paper Tray		200 ms	3867 ms
Lower Paper Tray		27ms	3339 ms
By-pass Feed Table		255 ms	3922 ms
Paper Tray Unit	Paper Tray - 1	27 ms	2394 ms
	Paper Tray - 2	27 ms	1839 ms
	Paper Tray - 3	27 ms	1283 ms

The development change solenoid turns off 200ms after it turned on.

T3: The timing is corrected to 0 again (correction 2) when the image process preparation period starts. This timing differs depending on the selected paper feeding station.

Paper Feeding Station		Black Dev. Unit
Upper Paper Tray		172ms
Lower Paper Tray		728ms
By-pass Feed Table		305ms
Paper Tray Unit	Paper Tray - 1	1,728ms
	Paper Tray - 2	2,284ms
	Paper Tray - 3	2,840ms

T4: The charge corona turns on 330ms after correction 2. If the toner density is low, the toner supply clutch turns on at this timing.

T5: The development bias changes from the non-image bias to the image bias 930ms (641ms for color) after correction 2.

T6: According to the original size and the reproduction ratio, the scanner return timing is decided. The timing is corrected to 0 and the charge corona turns off.

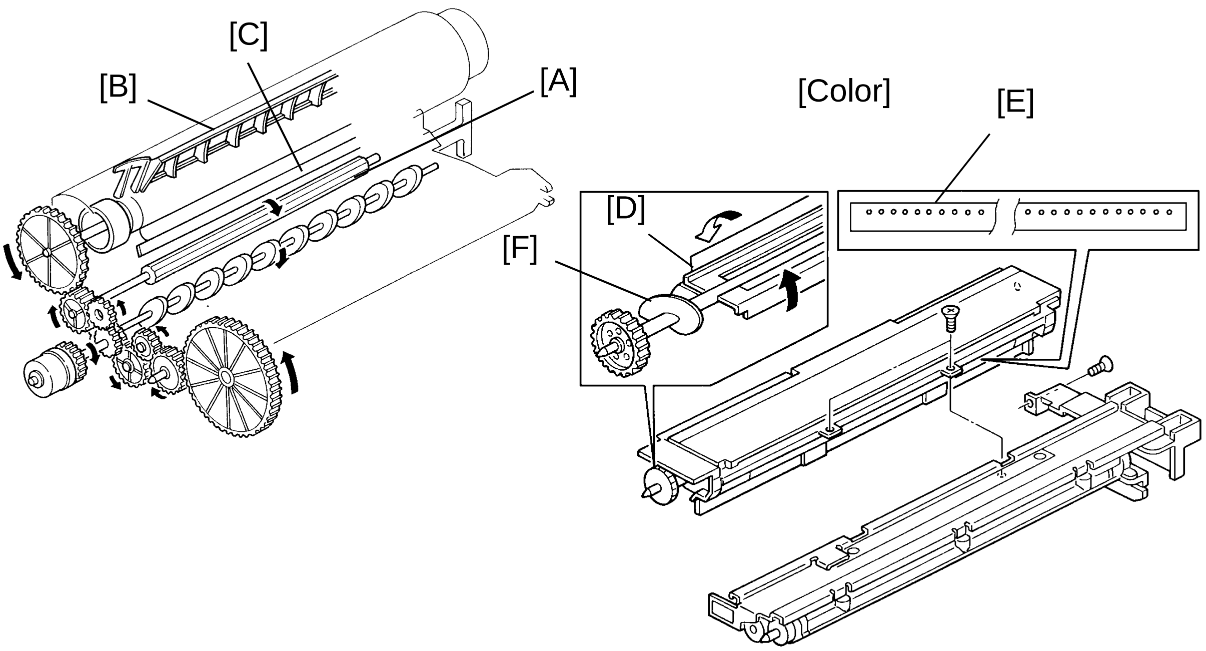
T7: The development bias changes from the image bias to the non-image bias 444ms (194ms for color) after correction 3.

T8: The separation corona turns off 767ms after correction 3. Then the development unit drive clutch turns off.

T9: The main motor and non-image development bias turn off 83ms after the fusing exit sensor detects the trailing edge of the copy paper.

7. TONER SUPPLY

7.1 OVERVIEW



The black toner supply roller [A] has 16 grooves. Toner is caught in these grooves and trimmed by the toner supply shaft plate located on one side of the toner supply roller. This toner then enters the development unit.

The black toner agitator [B] is in the toner cartridge and prevents toner from clumping. The black toner agitator is knocked each rotation by the arm [C] to prevent toner from building up.

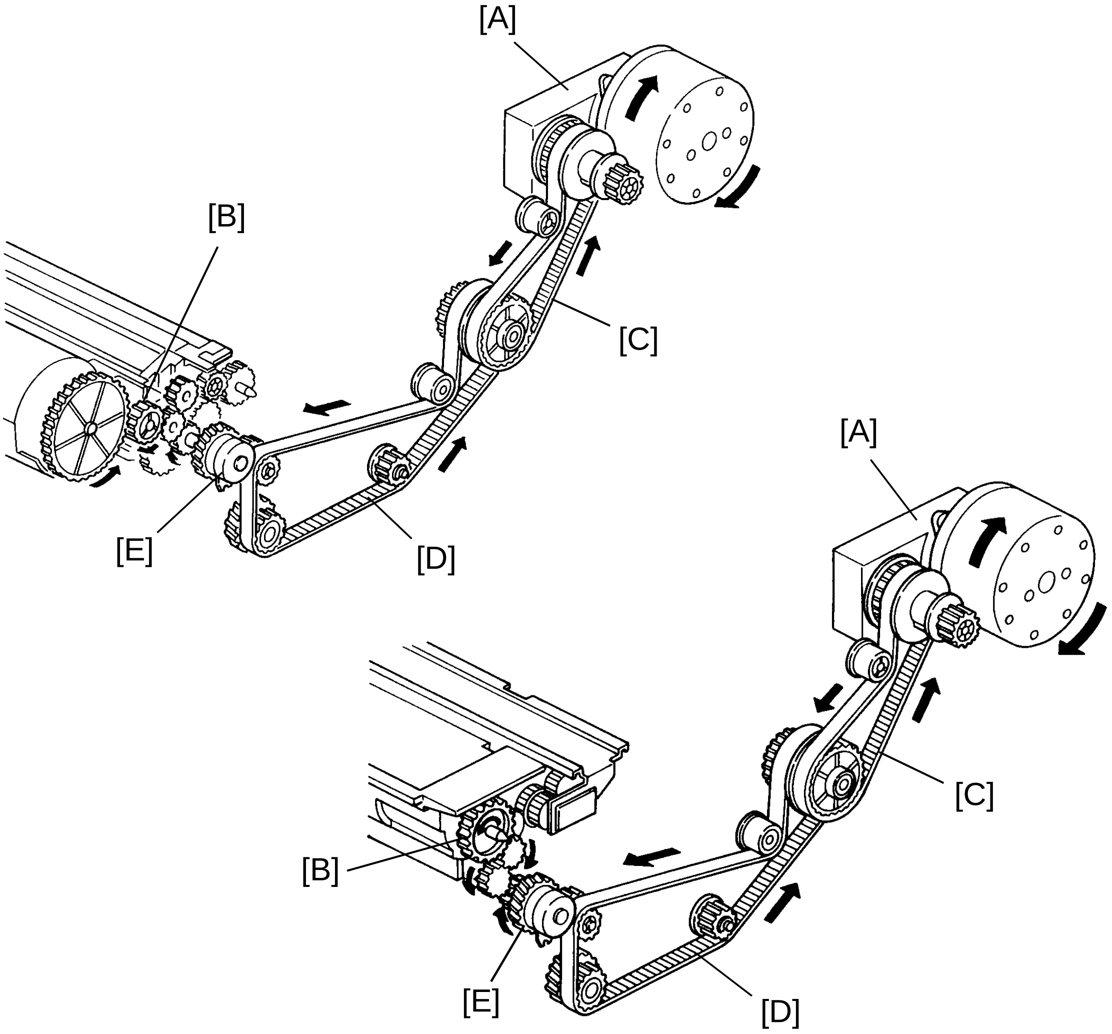
The color toner is supplied by rotating the color toner agitator [D] through the toner supply mylar [E]. The toner supply mylar has 50 holes (0.6 mm ϕ)

The color toner agitator is in the toner hopper and also prevents toner from clumping. Both ends of the color agitator have an auger [F] to transport the toner to the middle where the toner supply mylar is located.

This copier has two different ways of controlling the amount of toner supplied. Normally, the detect supply mode controls toner supply for the black and color development units: however, a fixed supply mode can be selected by SP mode #30 for the black development unit.

The amount of toner supplied depends on the ID sensor data, the detect toner supply ratio data, the paper size data and color data.

7.2 TONER SUPPLY DRIVE MECHANISM



The main motor [A] rotation is transmitted to the toner supply gears [B] through timing belts [C,D] and the toner supply clutch [E]. When the toner supply clutch is energized, the rotation of the clutch gears is transmitted to the toner supply gears.

The black toner agitator rotates at the same speed as the toner supply roller.

7.3 TONER SUPPLY CONTROL

7.3.1 Detect Supply Mode (SP #30 = 0)

The amount of toner supplied depends on the ID sensor data, the detect toner supply ratio data, the paper size data, and color data. The toner supply clutch on time in each copy cycle is calculated as explained below.

Toner Supply Clutch ON Time:

ON time (msec.)= 2.777 x 1/20 x [Toner Supply Ratio Parameter]
x [ID Sensor Level Parameter] x [Paper Size parameter]
x [Color Parameter]

Example:

- SP mode #31 is set to "0".
  Toner supply ratio parameter =2
- Vsp=0.44V, Vsg= 4.0 V.
  ID sensor level parameter=1/2
- Paper size is A3 or DLT.
  Paper size parameter=49
- Copies are made by black toner mode.
  Color parameter=24

ON time = 2.777 x 1/20 x 2 x 1/2 x 49 x 24
= 163 (msec.)

Toner Supply Ratio: This ratio can be selected by following SP modes. When select the color toner supply ratio, the color development unit must be installed the machine.

SP31: Black Toner Supply Ratio (Detect Mode)

Data	0	1	2	3
Supply Ratio	15%	7.5%	30%	60%
Toner Supply Ratio Parameter	2	1	4	8

SP81: Red/Blue/Green Toner Supply Ratio (Detect Mode)

Data	0	1	2	3
Supply Ratio	14%	7%	21%	28%
Toner Supply Ratio Parameter	2	1	3	4

ID Sensor Data (Detect Mode): The amount of toner supplied depends on the ID sensor data. When the ID sensor data is abnormal, the ID sensor level parameter decreases to 1/2.

ID Sensor Level	Vsp/Vsg x 100 (%)		ID Sensor Level Parameter
	Black	Color	
No Toner Supply	0~9.9	0~24.9	0
Toner Supply 1	10.0~10.4	25.0~26.9	1/4
Toner Supply 2	10.5~11.9	27.0~28.9	1/2
Toner Supply 3	12.0~14.9	29.0~30.9	1
Toner End	15.0~49.9	31.0~49.9	2
ID Sensor Abnormal	50.0~	50.0~	1/2

Paper Size Data: The amount of toner supplied depends on paper size.

Paper Size	A3	A4	B4	B5	F4	DLT	LG	LT	By-pass Feed
Paper Size Parameter	49	24	37	18	29	48	42	24	50

Color Data: The amount of toner supplied depends on color data.

Color	Black	Red	Blue	Green
Color Parameter	24	52	40	40

7.3.2 Fixed Supply Mode (SP mode #30 = 1)

The amount of toner supplied depends on the ID sensor data, the fixed toner supply ratio data the paper size data and the color data (black only). The toner supply clutch on time in each copy cycle is calculated as explained below:
The fixed supply mode is used for black toner only.

Toner supply Clutch ON Time:

ON time (msec.)= 2.777 x 1/20 x [Toner Supply Ratio Parameter]
x [ID Sensor Level Parameter] x [Paper Size parameter]
x [Color Parameter]

Example:

- SP mode #32 is set to "0".
  Toner supply ratio parameter =2
- Vsp=0.44 V, Vsg= 4.0 V.
  ID sensor level parameter=1/2
- Paper size is A4 or LT.
  Paper size parameter=24
- Color parameter=24

ON time = 2.777 x 1/20 x 2 x 1/2 x 24 x 24
= 80 (msec.)

Toner Supply Ratio: The amount of toner supplied depends on the toner supply ratio.

SP32: Black Toner Supply Ratio (Fixed Mode)

Data	0	1	2	3
Supply Ratio	7%	3.5%	10.5%	14.0%
Toner Supply Ratio Parameter	2	1	3	4

ID Sensor Data (Fixed Mode): The ID sensor level parameter is fixed to 1/2.

ID Sensor Level	Vsp/Vsg x 100 (%)	ID Sensor Level Parameter
No Toner Supply	0~9.9	0
Toner Supply	10.0~24.9	1/2
Toner End	25.0~49.9	1/2
ID Sensor Abnormal	50.0~	1/2

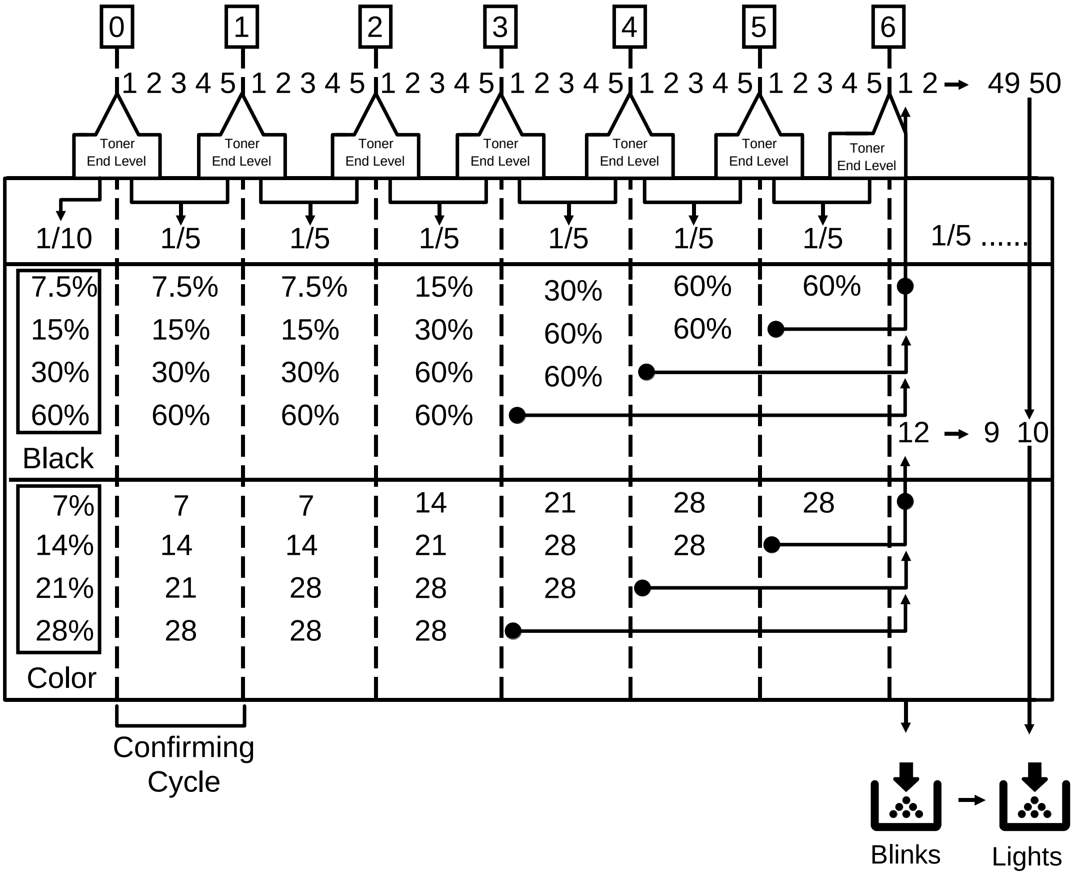
Paper Size Data: The amount of toner supplied depends on paper size.

Paper Size	A3	A4	B4	B5	F4	DLT	LG	LT	By-pass Feed
Paper Size Parameter	49	24	37	18	29	48	42	24	50

Color Data: The amount of toner supplied depends on color data.

Color	Black
Color Parameter	24

7.4 TONER END DETECTION


0
1
2
3
4
5
6
1 2 3 4 5 1 2 3 4 5 1 2 3 4 5 1 2 3 4 5 1 2 3 4 5 1 2 3 4 5 1 2 → 49 50
Toner End Level
1/10
1/5
1/5 ......
7.5% 15% 30% 60%
Black
7.5% 15% 30% 60%
7.5% 15% 30% 60%
15% 30% 60% 60%
30% 60% 60%
60% 60%
60%
12 → 9 10
7% 14% 21% 28%
Color
7 14 21 28
7 14 28 28
14 21 28 28
21 28 28
28 28
28
Confirming Cycle
Blinks
Lights

This copier uses an ID sensor to detect the toner end condition for black and color toner.

When the CPU detects the toner end level from the ID sensor data, the copier goes to toner end detect mode.

		ID Sensor Data (Vsp/Vsg x 100%)
Toner End Level	Black	15.0~49.9
	Color	31.0~49.9

The process of the toner end detect mode is shown above.

When the ID sensor data reaches the toner end level, the detection mode changes from once every 10 to once every 5 copies.

Also the ID sensor level parameter increases by 1 step (1→2).

After the second check if the ID sensor data is still at the toner end level on every check, the toner supply ratio increases by 1 step until it reaches the maximum toner supply ratio (60%: black, 28%: color).

If the CPU detects the toner end level twice at maximum toner supply ratio, the Add Toner indicator starts blinking.

50 more black copies (or 10 more color copies) can be made before the "Add Toner" indicator turns on continuously and the Start key turns red.

If the main switch is turned off and on while "Add Toner" is indicated (blinking or lighting) the main motor starts turning and toner is supplied for about 10 seconds.

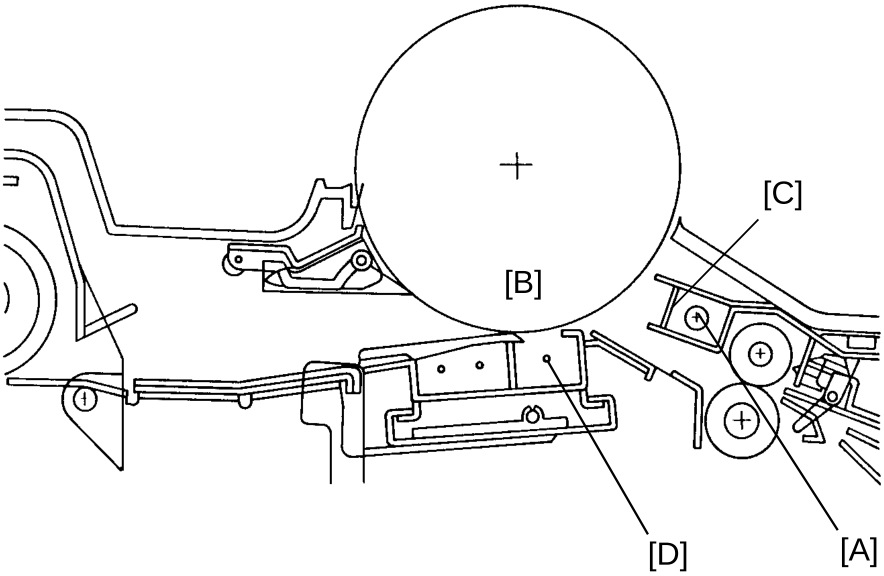
After 10 seconds an ID sensor pattern is made 4 times.

If the average of the ID sensor data is in the toner end range , the Add Toner indicator turns on continuously and the start key turns red.

Opening and closing the front door is the same as turning the main switch off and on.

These main switch and front door operations are for black toner mode only.

8. IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION



8.1 PRE-TRANSFER LAMP (PTL)

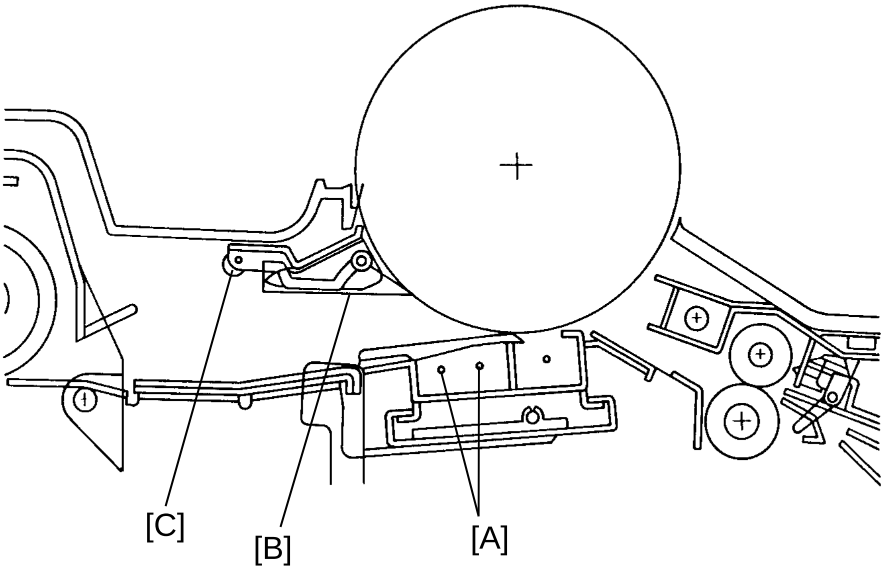
After the latent image is developed but before the image is transferred to the copy paper, the drum surface is illuminated by the pre-transfer lamp [A]. This illumination reduces the negative potential on the drum surface [B]. This prevents toner particles from being re-attracted to the negatively charged drum during the paper separation process. It also makes image transfer and paper separation easier.

A cold cathode tube is used for the pre-transfer lamp to provide sufficient light intensity. A yellow filter [C] is installed for the PTL to reduce ultraviolet light which would cause light fatigue on the OPC drum.

8.2 IMAGE TRANSFER

A high negative voltage (–5 kV) is applied to the transfer corona wire [D], the corona wire generates a negative charge, and attracts the positively charged toner away from the drum and onto the paper. In addition, the paper is held against the drum by the positive countercharge on the drum.

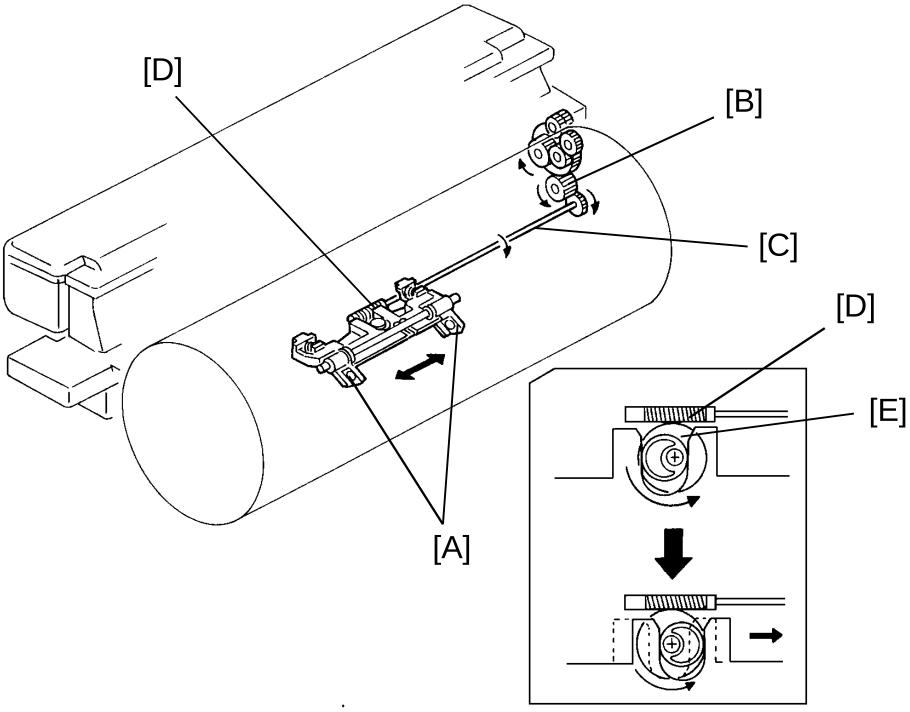
8.3 PAPER SEPARATION



After image transfer the copy must be separated from the drum. To break the attraction between the paper and the drum, the separation corona wire [A] applies an ac corona to the reverse side of the paper. The stiffness and weight of the paper causes it to separate from the drum.

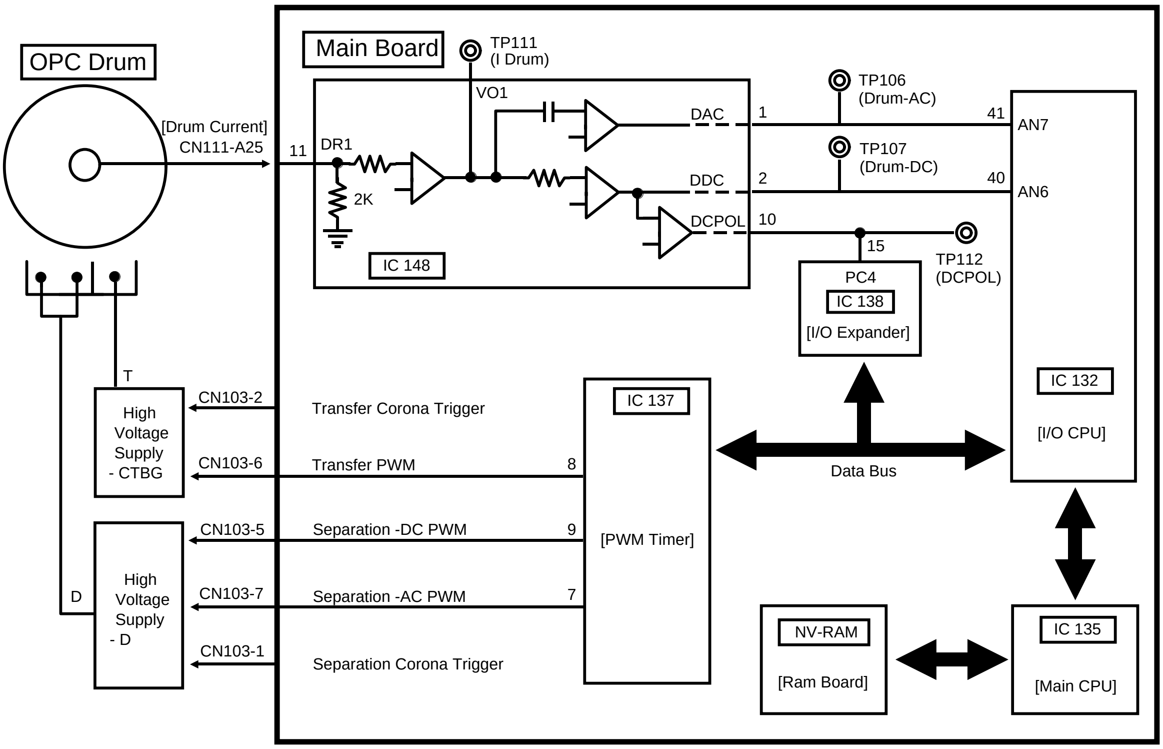
The negative charge on the paper (from the transfer corona) is not completely discharged until the paper is far enough from the drum that the toner will not be reattracted to the drum. The two pick-off pawls [B] ensure that thin, low stiffness paper and upward curled paper separate completely.

The spurs [C] prevents the unfused toner on the paper from being smeared by the pick-off pawls.



The pick-off pawls [A] are always in contact with the drum. They have a side to side movement mechanism to prevent the parts of the drum surface touched by the pick-off pawls from wearing faster than other parts.
The cleaning brush drive gear [B] drives the pick-off pawl drive shaft [C] which has a worm gear [D] on the other end. The worm gear drives the cam gear [E] which provides the side to side movement to the pick-off pawl assembly.

8.4 AUTOMATIC DRUM CURRENT ADJUSTMENT


OPC Drum
[Drum Current]
CN111-A25
Main Board
TP111
(I Drum)
VO1
11
DR1
2K
IC 148
DAC
DDC
DCPOL
1
2
10
TP106
(Drum-AC)
TP107
(Drum-DC)
41
40
AN7
AN6
15
TP112
(DCPOL)
PC4
IC 138
[I/O Expander]
IC 132
[I/O CPU]
T
D
High Voltage Supply - CTBG
High Voltage Supply - D
CN103-2
CN103-6
CN103-5
CN103-7
CN103-1
Transfer Corona Trigger
Transfer PWM
Separation -DC PWM
Separation -AC PWM
Separation Corona Trigger
8
9
7
IC 137
[PWM Timer]
Data Bus
NV-RAM
[Ram Board]
IC 135
[Main CPU]

This copier has an automatic drum current adjustment circuit for the transfer and separation corona outputs.

8.4.1 Drum Current Detection

The drum current detection circuit is shown in the above circuit diagram.

The drum current on the drum surface produced by the transfer or the separation corona output is sent at CN111-A25 of the main board through the drum front shaft, drum shaft bearing, and drum unit connector. Inside the IC148 (hybrid IC), the drum current is grounded via the resistor (2 KOhm) and the voltage produced between both ends of the resistor corresponds to the amount of the drum current. This voltage is separated into ac and dc components and these are amplified in the IC148. The amplified components are sent to the analog input port of IC132 (I/O CPU) and are converted into an 8 bit digital signal. The I/O CPU detects the drum current from this digital signal.

8.4.2 Automatic Drum Current Adjustment

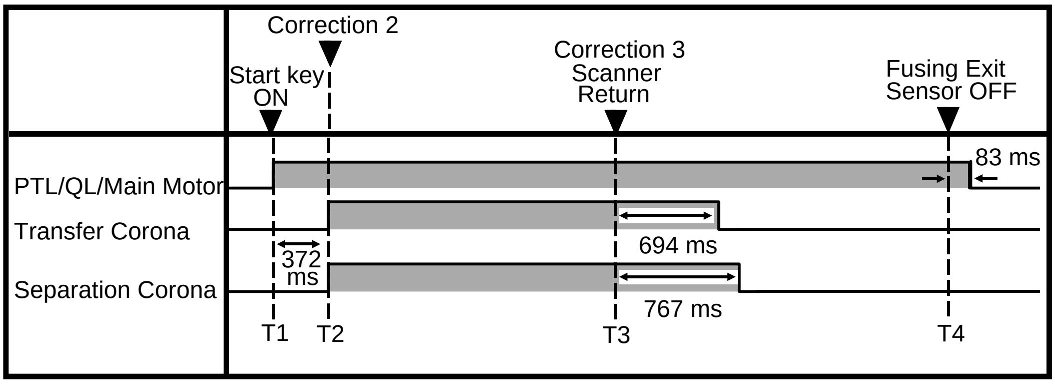
When SP mode #57 (auto drum current adjustment) is performed, the high voltage supply for transfer corona turns on first. The I/O CPU detects the drum current and compares it with the target current. If it is different, the I/O CPU changes PWM value which is sent to IC137 (PWM timer) by an 8 bit signal through data bus line. Then the PWM timer generates pulses with a new width and send then to the high voltage supply board - CTBG. The new drum current is fed back to the I/O CPU and it determines the final PWM value by repeating this feedback routine. The determined PWM value is stored in the RAM board through IC135 (main CPU).

Second, the high voltage supply for separation corona turns on and the I/O CPU determines the proper PWM values for the separation (- ac and -dc) by doing the same routine as for the transfer corona. These PWM values are also stored in the RAM board.

For the charge corona output, this automatic drum current adjustment is not applied because the drum current is determined by setting the charge grid bias voltage. (The grid bias voltage is set by inputting a voltage correction data for individual high voltage supply board -CTBG in SP mode #62.)

NOTE: This automatic drum current adjustment must be done with a new drum, new corona wires, and a clean corona unit casing. The production line adjusts the drum currents more precisely with a special tool and the factory setting has wider margin against the variation of each OPC drum characteristics than this adjustment procedure. Therefore, the manufacturer recommends not to perform this automatic drum current adjustment unless the high voltage supply board is replaced.

8.5 T&S CORONA CONTROL TIMING (A4 sideways, upper paper tray, black development unit)


Correction 2
Start key ON
Correction 3 Scanner Return
Fusing Exit Sensor OFF
PTL/QL/Main Motor
Transfer Corona
Separation Corona
83 ms
372 ms
694 ms
767 ms
T1
T2
T3
T4

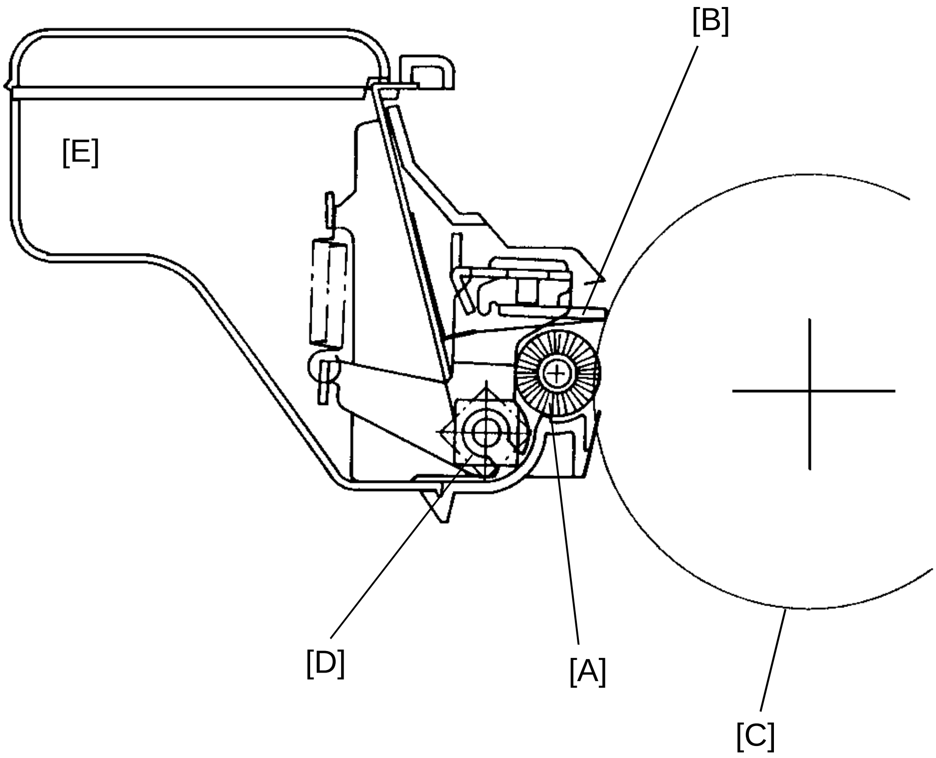
T1: When the start key is pressed, the PTL, QL, and main motor turn on together.

T2: The transfer and separation corona turn on 372ms after the start key is pressed. This timing differs depending on the selected development unit and the paper feeding station.

T3: The transfer corona turns off 694ms after the scanner starts the return movement (correction 3) and the separation corona turns off 767ms after correction 3.

9. DRUM CLEANING

9.1 OVERVIEW

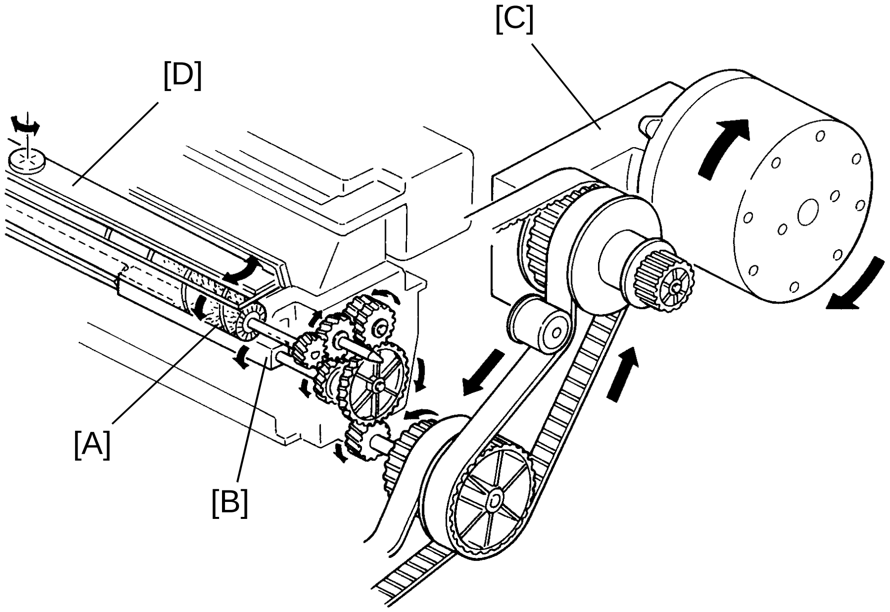


The cleaning brush [A] and cleaning blade [B] remove any toner remaining on the drum [C] after the image is transferred to the paper.

The cleaning brush and the drum move in opposite directions at their point of contact. The cleaning brush removes paper dust and nearly half of the toner from the drum surface to reduce the cleaning load placed on the blade.

The cleaning blade removes the remaining toner. The falling toner catches in the fibers of the cleaning brush and is carried inside the cleaning unit. The toner collection roller [D] carries the used toner to the used toner tank [E].

9.2 DRIVE MECHANISM

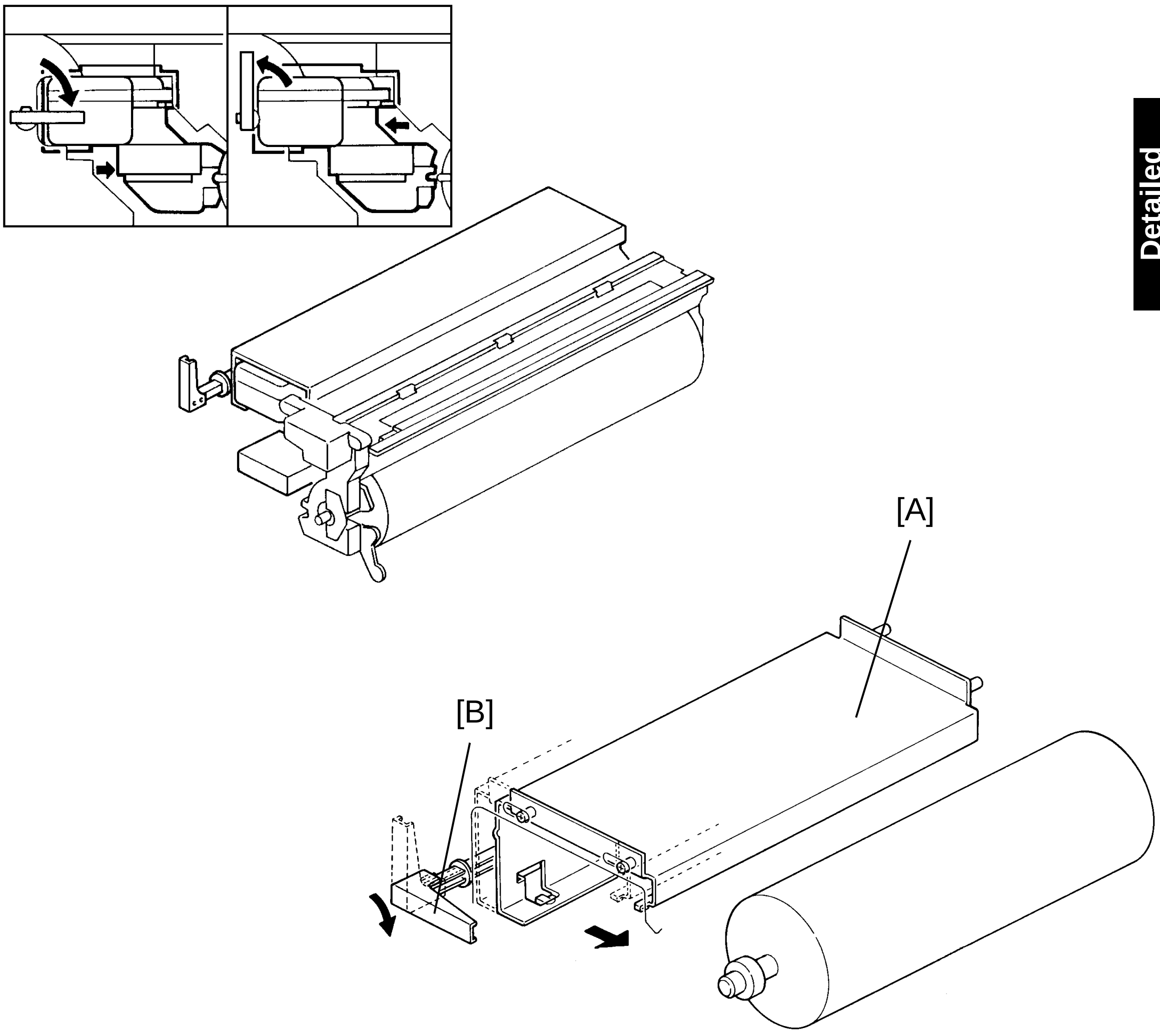


The cleaning brush [A] and the toner collection roller [B] are driven by the main motor [C] through a timing belt and gears. The cleaning brush and the cleaning blade [D] are always touching the drum surface.

The toner collection roller rotates at the same time as the cleaning brush to collect used toner. The cleaning blade is mounted in the center of the blade and is tilted to apply even pressure.

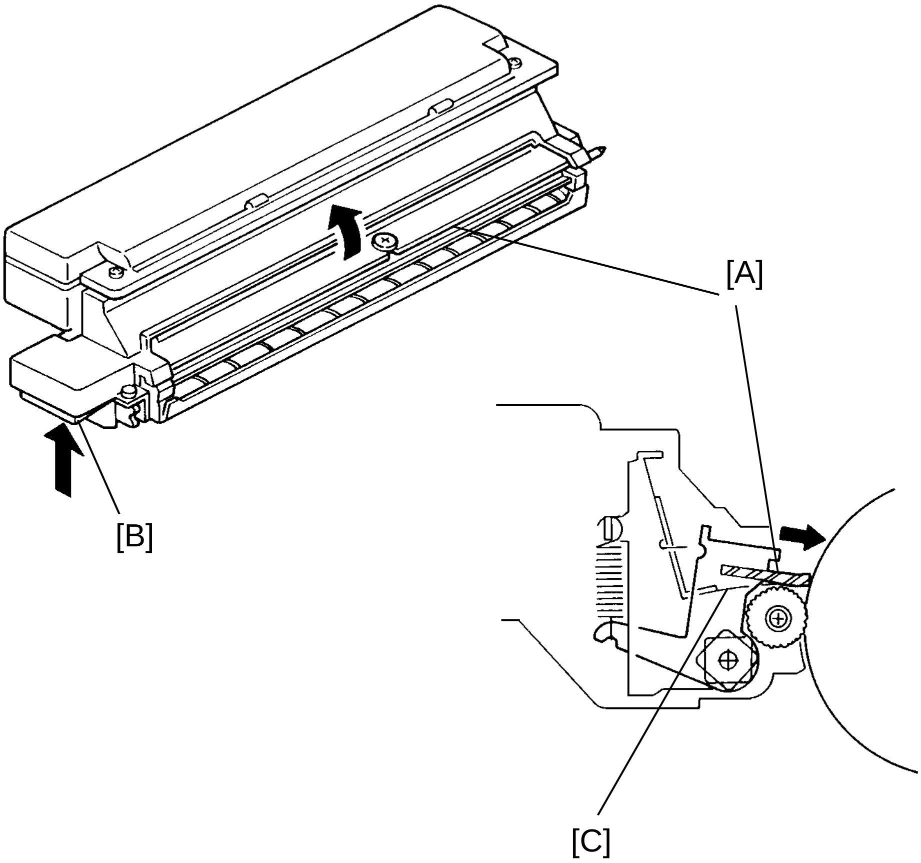
9.3 RELEASE MECHANISM

9.3.1 Cleaning unit Release



The cleaning unit releases with the cleaning unit guide rail [A] when the cleaning unit release lever [B] is turned counterclockwise. This prevents the drum from being scratched by the cleaning unit, when the cleaning unit is pulled out.

9.3.2 Cleaning Blade Release



The cleaning blade [A] releases when the cleaning blade release lever [B] is held up. This cleans the edge of the cleaning blade using the blade scraper [C], which is mounted underneath the cleaning blade.

9.4 USED TONER DETECTION

This copier does not use a sensor to detect used toner overflow.
Instead, this is determined by software counters.

When the CPU has counted 10 black toner end occurrences meaning that 10 cartridges have been used, the CPU calculates the number of copies per toner cartridge $\bar{n}$.

$$\bar{n} = \frac{\text{Total number of copies (black and color)}}{10}$$

The number of copies per toner cartridge $(\overline{n})$ is used to determine when the used toner tank indicator should be made to blink.

1) $\bar{n} \geq 7{,}975$
   After 250 copies are made, the used toner indicator starts blinking, after another 250 copies are made, it lights continuously.

2) $7975 > \bar{n} \geq 7{,}500$
   After 5,000 copies are made, the used toner indicator starts blinking. After another 250 copies are made, it lights continuously.

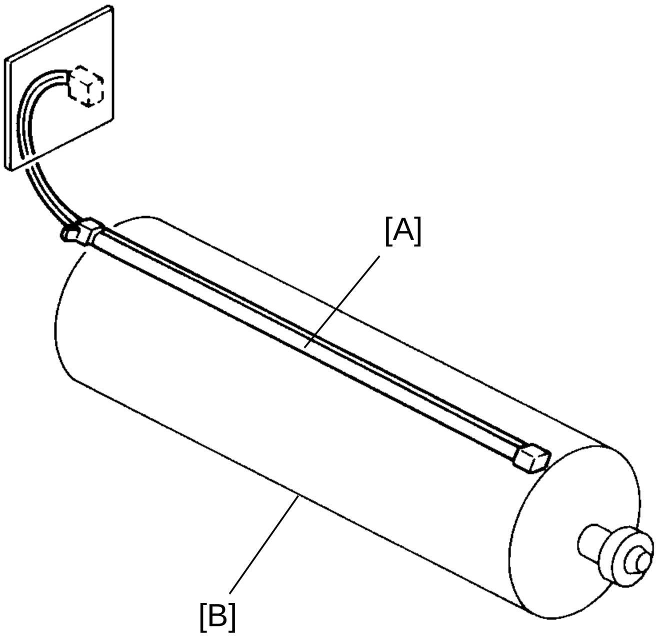
3) $\bar{n} < 7{,}500$
   After $\bar{n} \times 0.67$ copies are made, the used toner indicator starts blinking. After another 250 copies are made, it lights continuously.

4) Total number of copies (black and color) = 80,250
   The used toner indicator starts blinking, after 250 copies are made, it lights continuously.

When the used toner tank indicator lights, the start key turns to red and no more copy is made.

NOTE: Under the following conditions, the used toner tank must be emptied and the counter for the number of black toner end occurrences must be reset by SP mode # 83.
1) When performing PM.
2) When an abnormal condition occurs in toner density detection.
(The toner end cannot be detected in abnormal condition.)

10. QUENCHING

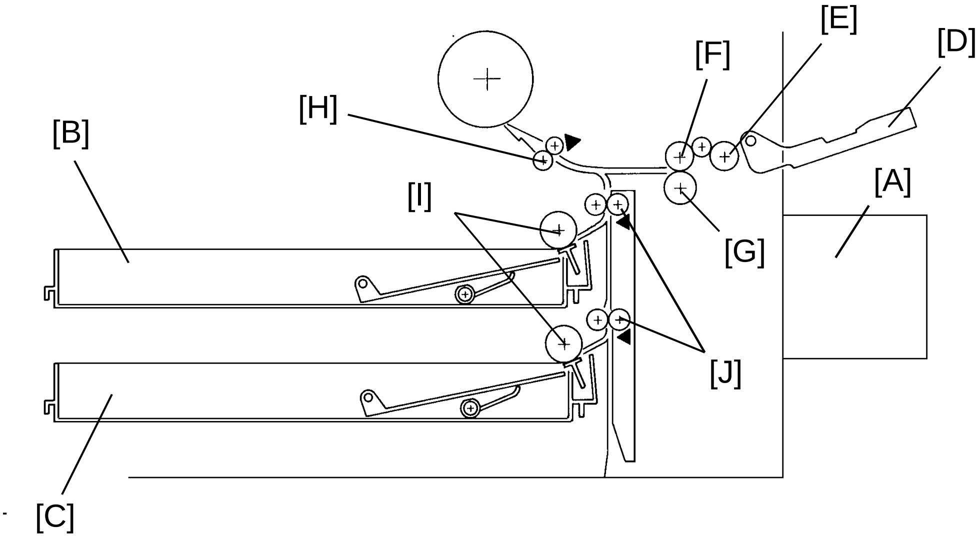


In preparation for the next copy cycle, light from the quenching lamp (QL) [A] neutralizes any charge remaining on the drum [B].

A cold cathode lamp is used for quenching and it is turned on whenever the main motor rotates.
A yellow filter is installed for the QL to reduce ultraviolet light which would cause light fatigue on the OPC drum.

11. PAPER FEED AND REGISTRATION

11.1 OVERVIEW

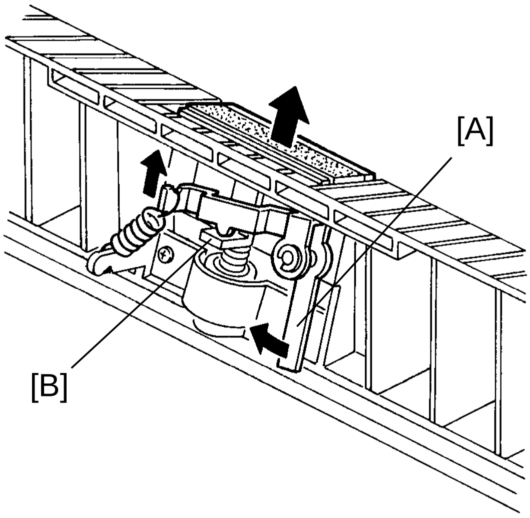


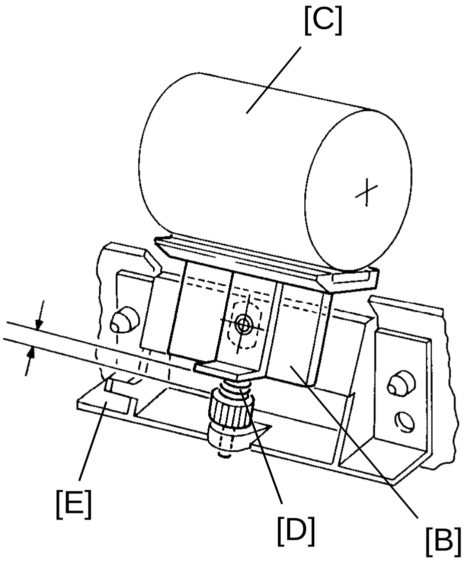
This model has three paper feed stations. The large capacity tray feed station [A] (1000 sheets) is located on the right side of the copier (LCT machine only) and the upper paper tray [B] (non- duplex machine only) and lower paper tray [C] feed stations are located inside the copier. The upper and lower paper trays are drawer trays that holds 250 sheets of paper. Paper can also be fed using the by-pass feed table [D] which utilizes the feed mechanism of the LCT feed station. The by-pass feed table can hold 20 sheets of paper.

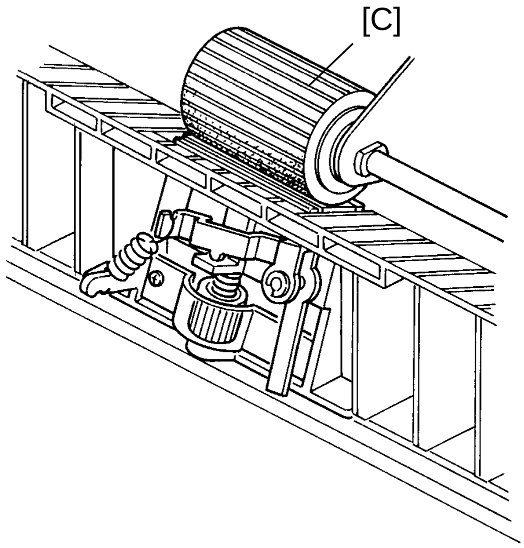
The LCT feed station uses an FRR feed system. Rotation of the pick-up roller [E] drives the top sheet of paper from the LCT to the feed and the separation rollers. The feed [F] and separation [G] rollers then take over the paper drive. If more than one sheet is fed by the pick-up roller, the separation roller rotates in the opposite direction and prevents all but the top sheet from passing through to the registration rollers [H].

The upper and lower paper tray stations use the feed roller [I] and friction pad feed mechanism. During paper feed, the top sheet of paper separates from the stack and is fed to the relay rollers [J] then to the registration rollers. The friction pad prevents all but the top sheet from going in.

11.2 FRICTION PAD SYSTEM

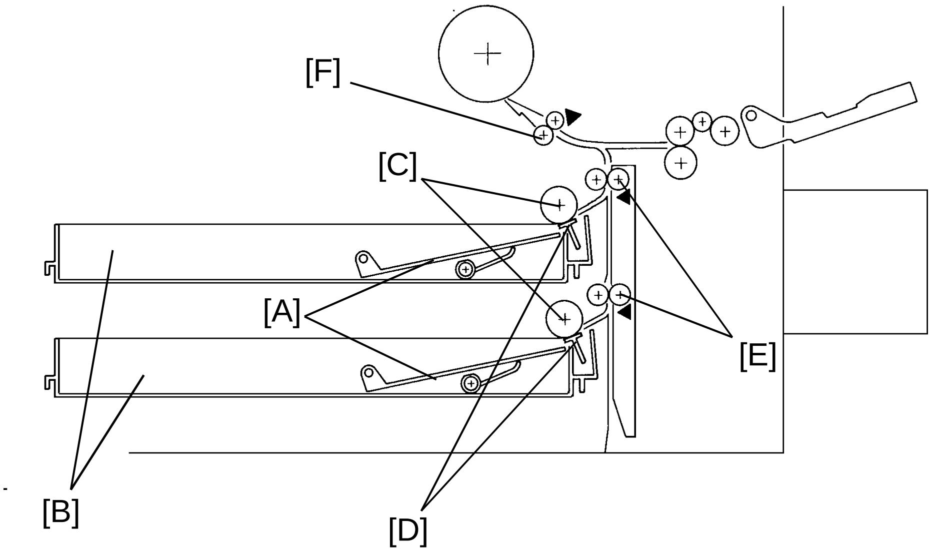






This copier uses a feed roller and friction pad feed system for paper feed from the paper trays. When the paper tray is set in the copier, the pressure release lever [A] is pushed and turns clockwise. Then the friction pad holder [B] is pressed up against the paper feed roller [C]. The friction pad pressure against the paper feed roller is determined by the friction pad pressure spring [D].

This friction pad pressure is applied evenly to the paper feed roller because the friction pad holder is mounted on the mounting bracket [E] with a swivel bushing.



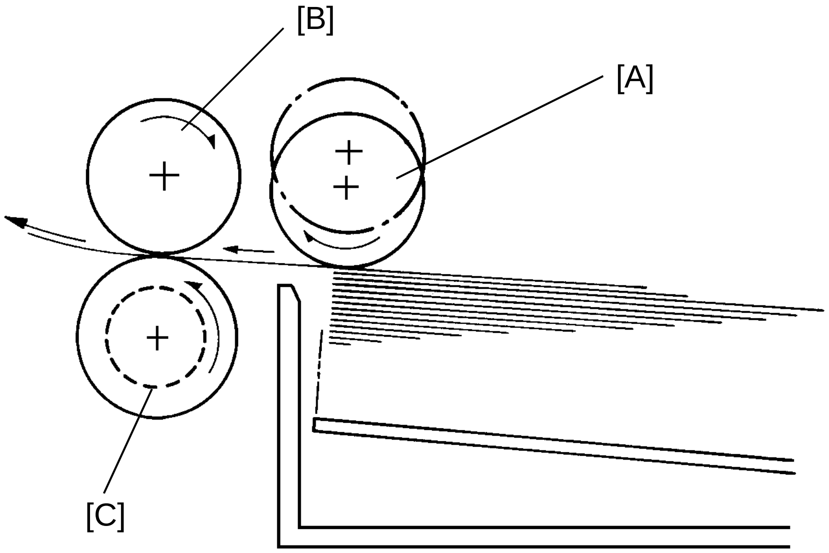
The tray bottom plate [A] is also lifted up when the paper tray [B] is set, and the lead edge of the paper stack is pressed against the paper feed roller [C].

When the feed roller starts turning, it forces the top sheet of the paper stack across the friction pad [D]. The relay rollers [E] which start turning at the same time as the feed roller also transport the paper. The feed roller keeps driving the paper until all but a 50mm trailing edge of paper has passed. Then the relay rollers take over the paper transport until the paper reaches the registration rollers [F]. At that time, the paper slightly buckles; and although the paper feed roller does not have its own driving force (paper feed clutch is off), the feed roller keeps turning as it is driven by the friction between the roller and the moving paper. As the trailing edge clears the lead edge of the paper stack, the feed roller catches the next sheet and starts moving it forward. The feed roller stops turning when the trailing edge of the first sheet leaves the feed roller. The leading edge of the next sheet is then held ready for feeding between the friction pad and feed roller.

Sometime sheets of paper tend to stick together (perhaps due to static electricity or poorly cut edges). When this happens, two sheets may feed between the feed roller and friction pad. However, the friction between the friction pad and the lower sheet is much greater than that between the two sheets of paper; so, the top sheet slips through while the pad holds the lower sheet.

The friction pad edge of the paper entrance side is covered by a thin guide mylar to prevent the lead edge of some paper from being folded by the friction pad.

11.3 FRR FEED SYSTEM



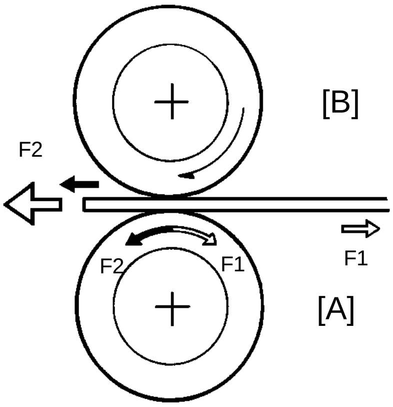
This copier uses an FRR paper feed system which utilizes three rollers.

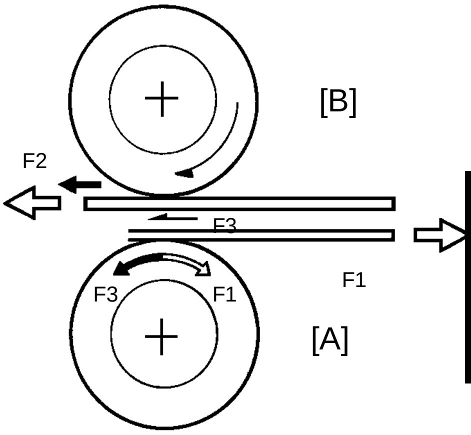
11.3.1 Pick-up Roller

The pick-up roller [A] is not in contact with the paper stack before it starts feeding paper. Shortly after the Start key is pressed, the pick-up roller drops down and feeds the top sheet between the feed [B] and the separation rollers [C]. At almost the same time that the paper's leading edge arrives at the feed roller, the pick-up roller lifts off the paper stack so that it does not interfere with the operation of the feed and separation rollers. The feed and separation rollers then take over the paper feed process.

11.3.2 Feed and Separation Rollers

There is a one-way bearing inside the feed roller so it can turn only in one direction. The separation roller is driven in the opposite direction to the feed roller. The separation roller, however, is driven through a slip clutch (torque limiter clutch) which allows it to turn in either direction depending on the friction between the rollers. A spring keeps the separation roller in contact with the feed roller.



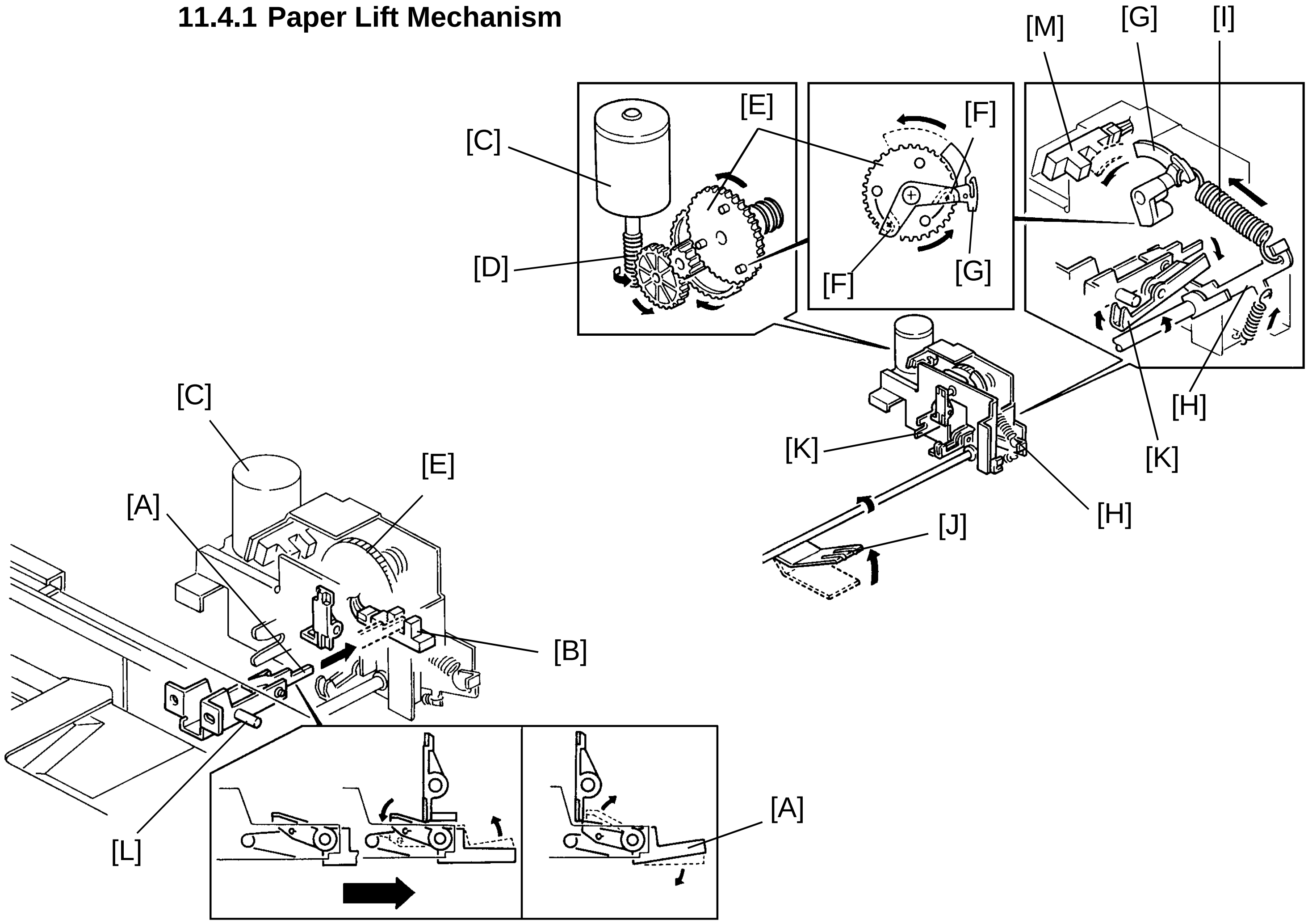


The direction in which the separation roller [A] turns depends on the frictional forces acting on it. The slip clutch applies a constant clockwise force (F1). When there is a single sheet of paper being driven between the rollers, the force of friction between the feed roller [B] and the paper (F2) is greater then F1. So, the separation roller turns counterclockwise.

If two or more sheets are fed between the rollers, the forward force on the second sheet (F3), becomes less than F1 because the friction between the two sheets is small. So, the separation roller starts turning clockwise and drives the second sheet back to the tray.

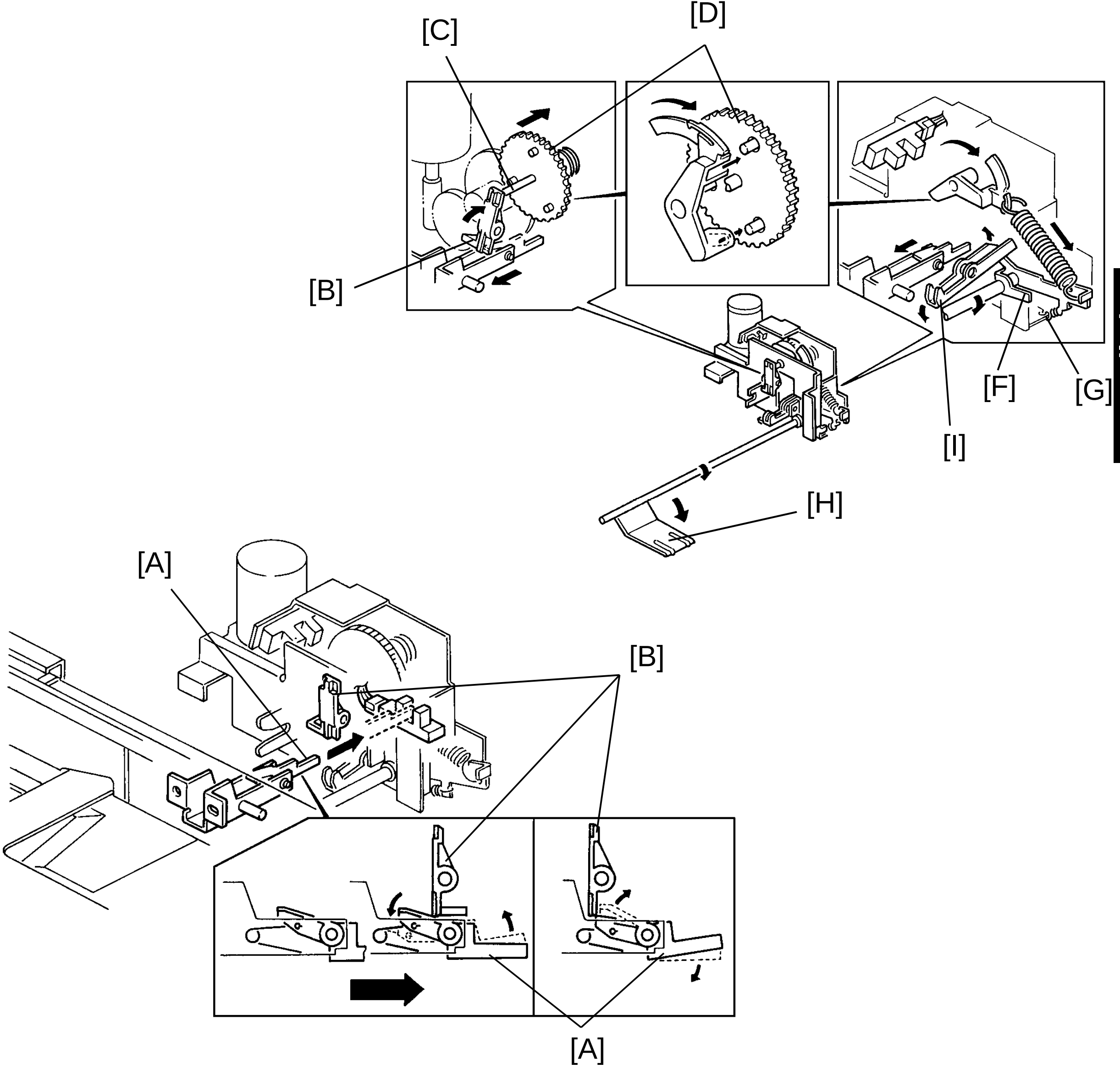
11.4 PAPER TRAY

11.4.1 Paper Lift Mechanism



– when setting the paper tray –

When the paper tray is set in the copier, the tray set feeler [A] activates the tray set sensor [B] and the tray lift motor [C] starts turning the worm gear[D]. The rotation is transmitted to the tray lift gear [E] via 2 coupled idle gears. The tray lift gear has 3 projections on its disc surface. As the tray lift gear rotates, 2 of the 3 projections are caught by the coupling hooks [F] of the limit feeler disc [G]. Then the limit feeler disc rotates counterclockwise to pull the tray lift lever [H] via the bottom plate pressure spring [I]. The tray lift arm [J] rotates counterclockwise to lift up the tray bottom plate. At the same time, as the tray lift lever rotates, the tray lock lever [K] rotates up by its own weight and is located at the safety lock position against the tray lock pin [L]. When the limit feeler disc activates the tray upper limit sensor [M], the tray lift motor stops.

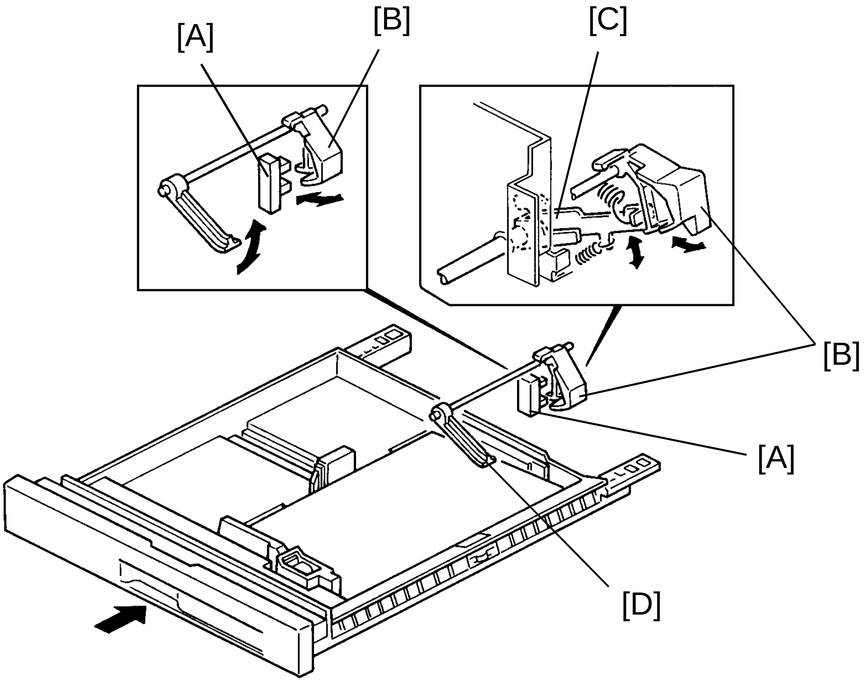


– when pulling out the paper tray –

While the paper tray is being set in position, the operator side of the tray set feeler [A] is pushed down by the tray release lever [B]. When the tray is completely set in position, the operator side of the tray set feeler rotates up and is positioned behind the tray release lever.

When the paper tray is pulled out, the operator side of the tray set feeler pulls the bottom end of the tray release lever. The tray release lever rotates and its upper end pushes back the tray lift gear shaft [C] which is pressed towards the front by the spring. As the coupling between the tray lift gear [D] and the limit feeler disc [E] is released, the tray lift lever [F] rotates back to its lower position by the lever return spring [G] and the weight loaded to the tray lift arm [H]. As the tray lift lever rotates back, it lifts the rear end of the tray lock lever [I] to move it away from the safety lock position.

11.4.2 Paper End Detection

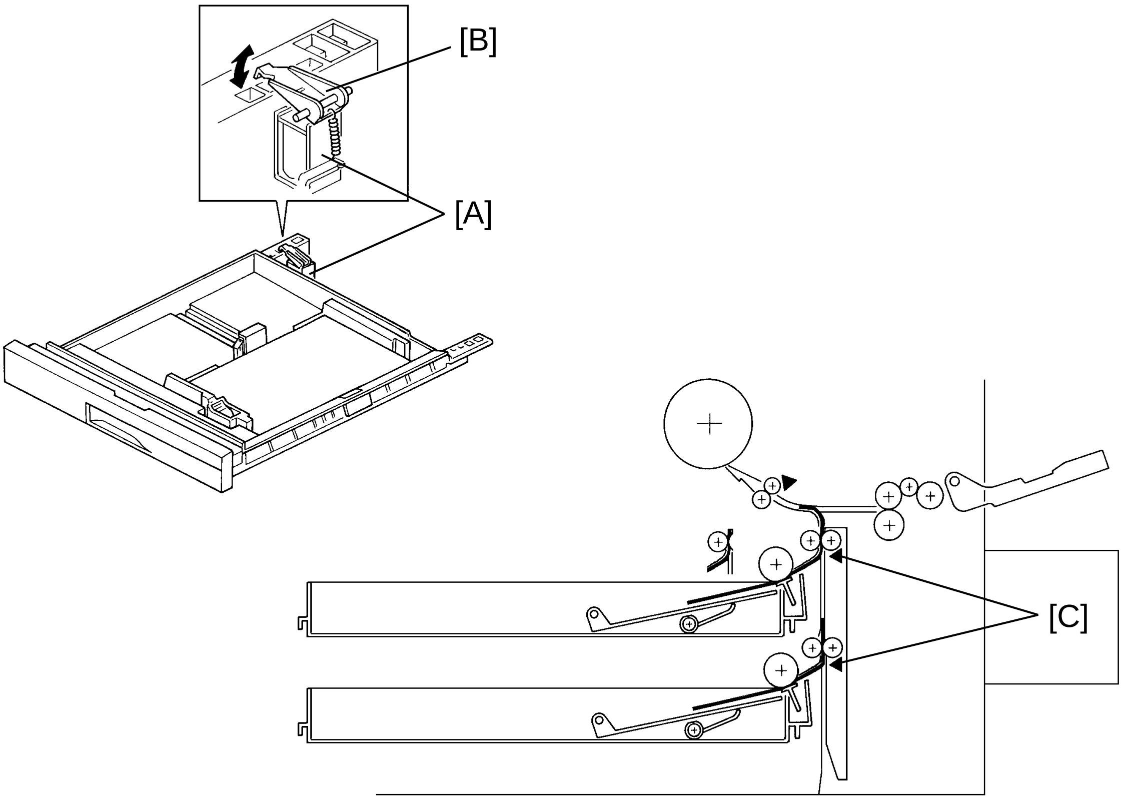


The paper end sensor [A] (photointerruptor) is located on the rear side frame next to the tray lift assembly for each paper tray. When the paper tray is not set in position, the paper end actuator [B] is pushed away from the paper end sensor by the tray lift lever [C].

When the paper tray is set, the tray lift lever rotates and the paper end actuator turns towards the sensor by its own weight. If paper is loaded in the paper tray, the paper end feeler [D] is raised by the paper stack and the paper end sensor is deactivated.

When the paper tray runs out of paper, the paper end feeler drops in the cut out of the tray bottom plate and the paper end sensor is activated. Then the tray lift motor starts the reverse rotation and lowers the tray bottom plate. The tray lift motor stops when the paper end sensor becomes deactivated.

11.4.3 Tray Lock Mechanism



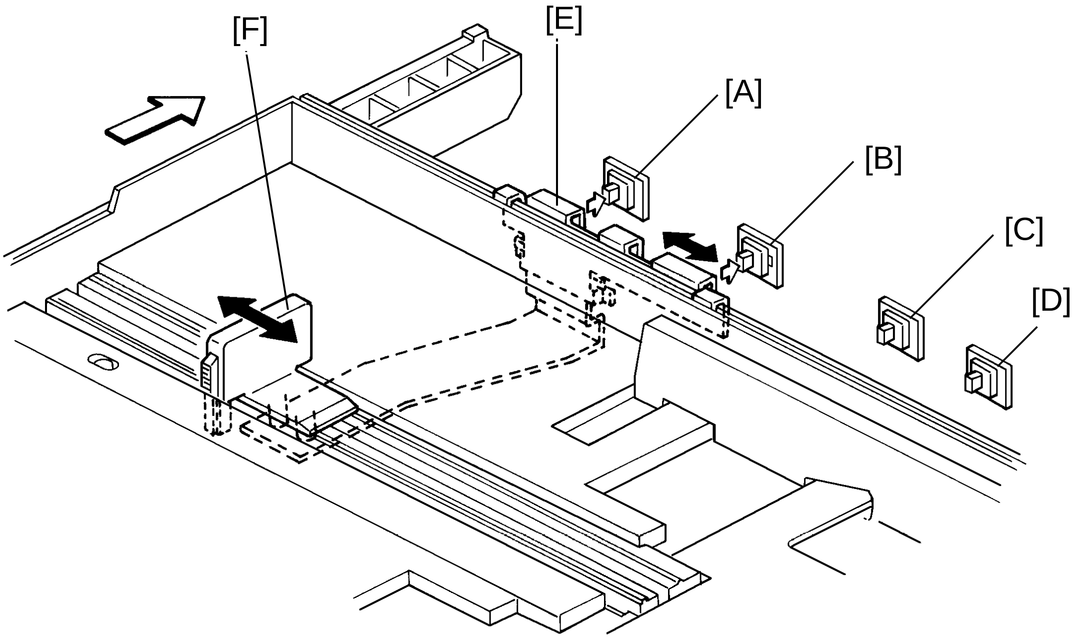
A tray lock solenoid [A] is installed on the rear side frame for each paper tray.

When the start key is pressed, the tray lock solenoid for the selected paper tray is energized and the tray lock lever [B] catches the rear part of the left tray rail. This is to prevent the paper tray from being pulled out while the paper is being fed out.

Also, when a paper jam happens between the paper tray and the relay rollers (the nearest relay sensor [C] is activated) the tray lock solenoid turns on. This is to prevent the jammed paper from being torn to pieces by pulling out the paper tray before clearing the jammed paper.

When jammed paper is cleared and the relay sensor is deactivated, the tray lock solenoid is deenergized even when the front door is open. Then the paper tray can be drawn out.

11.4.4 Paper Size Detection



Four paper size switches (SW-A [A], SW-B [B], SW-C [C], SW-D [D]) on the rear side frame are used for detecting the paper size loaded in the paper tray. The paper size switches are actuated by actuator plate [E] on the rear of the paper tray. The paper end guide [F] is connected to the actuator plate. When the paper end guide is pushed against the paper stack loaded in the tray, the actuator plate slides into position and actuates the appropriate paper size switches.

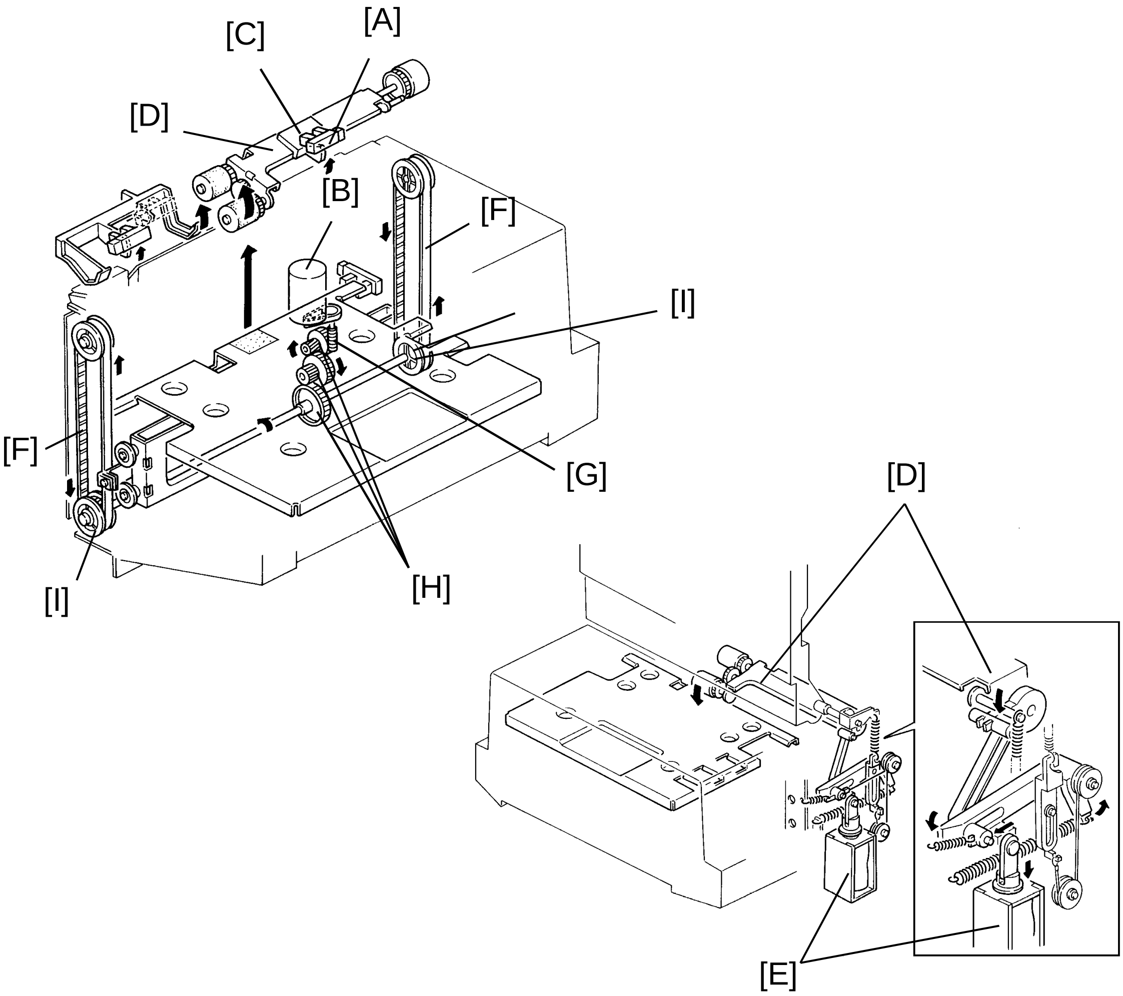
[Paper Size Detection Table]

Paper Size	Switch				Size Indication
	4	5	6	7	
A3	0	1	1	1	A3
F (8" x 13")	1	0	1	1	F
A4 lengthwise	1	0	0	1	A4
A4 sideways	1	1	0	1	A4
B4	0	0	1	1	B4
11" x 17"	0	1	1	1	11" x 17"
11" x 8 1/2"	1	1	1	0	11" x 8 1/2"
8 1/2" x 11"	1	1	0	1	8 1/2" x 11"
8 1/2" x 14"	1	0	1	1	8 1/2" x 14"

0: Low (ON)
1: High (OFF)

11.5 LARGE CAPACITY TRAY

11.5.1 Paper Lift Mechanism



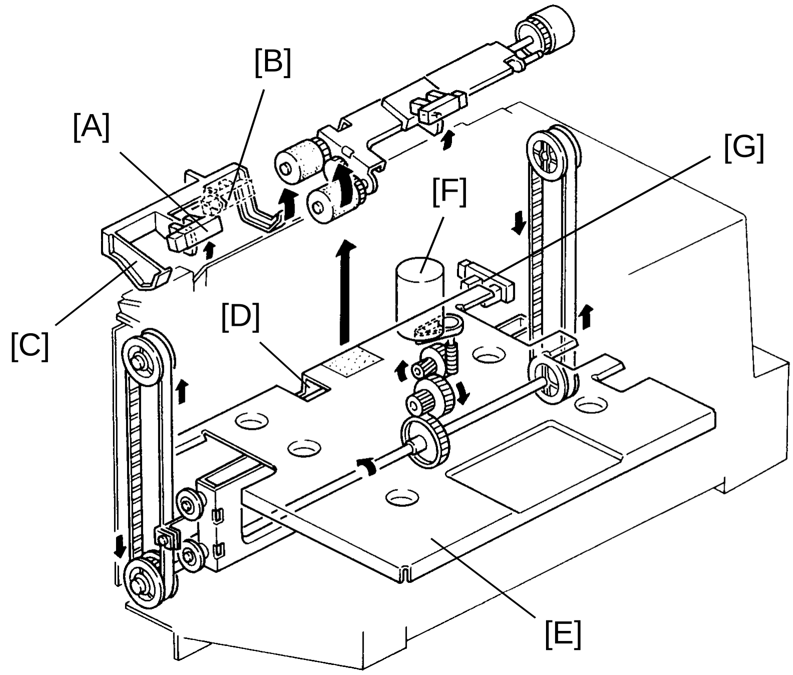
There is an LCT upper limit sensor [A] above the paper feed upper guide plate to control the LCT lift motor[B]. The actuator [C] for the sensor is located on the pick-up roller bracket [D]. Normally the pick-up solenoid [E] is off and the pick-up roller bracket stays in the up position. At this time the LCT upper limit sensor is activated.

When the LCT top cover is closed, the LCT cover switches turn on and the pick-up solenoid is energized. The pick-up roller bracket lowers and the LCT upper limit sensor is deactivated. Then the LCT lift motor starts turning and the rotation is transmitted to the LCT drive belt [F] via worm gear [G], diagonal gears[H], and belt drive pulleys [I]. The LCT bottom plate, which is fixed on the LCT drive belts by belt clamps, is lifted up.

When the top sheet of the paper stack raises the pick-up roller, the LCT upper limit sensor is activated and the LCT lift motor stops. Shortly after, the pick-up solenoid turns off and the pick-up roller goes back to the up position.

During the copy cycle the pick-up roller is lowered to prepare for feeding the next sheet of paper. If the top sheet level of the paper stack lowers, the LCT upper limit sensor becomes deactivated and the LCT lift motor turns on to maintain the top sheet level.

11.5.2 Paper End Detection

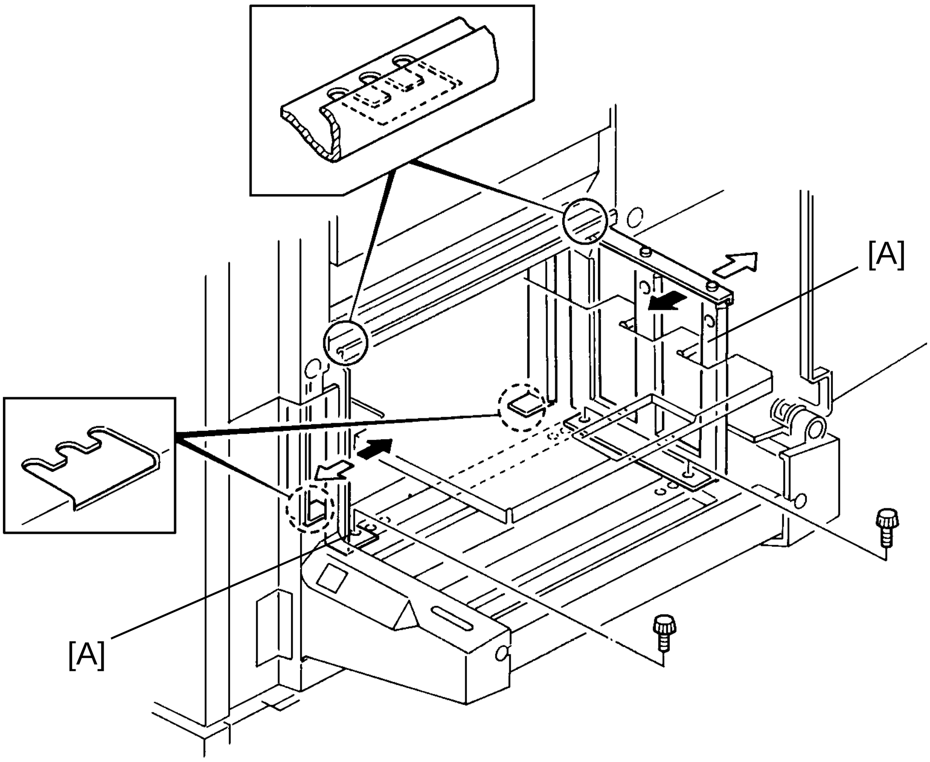


There are two paper end sensors for the FRR feed station above the paper feed upper guide plate. One [A] is for the LCT and the other [B] is for the by-pass feed table. The paper end feeler plate [C] is common for both paper end sensors and it has two actuators for them.

When there is paper in the LCT, the paper end feeler is kept up by the paper and the LCT paper end sensor is activated.

When the LCT runs out of paper, the paper end feeler drops into the cut out [D] of the LCT bottom plate [E] and the LCT paper end sensor is deactivated. Then the LCT lift motor [F] starts the reverse rotation to lower the LCT bottom plate. When the LCT lower limit sensor [G] is activated by the bottom plate, the LCT lift motor stops.

11.5.3 Paper Size Setting



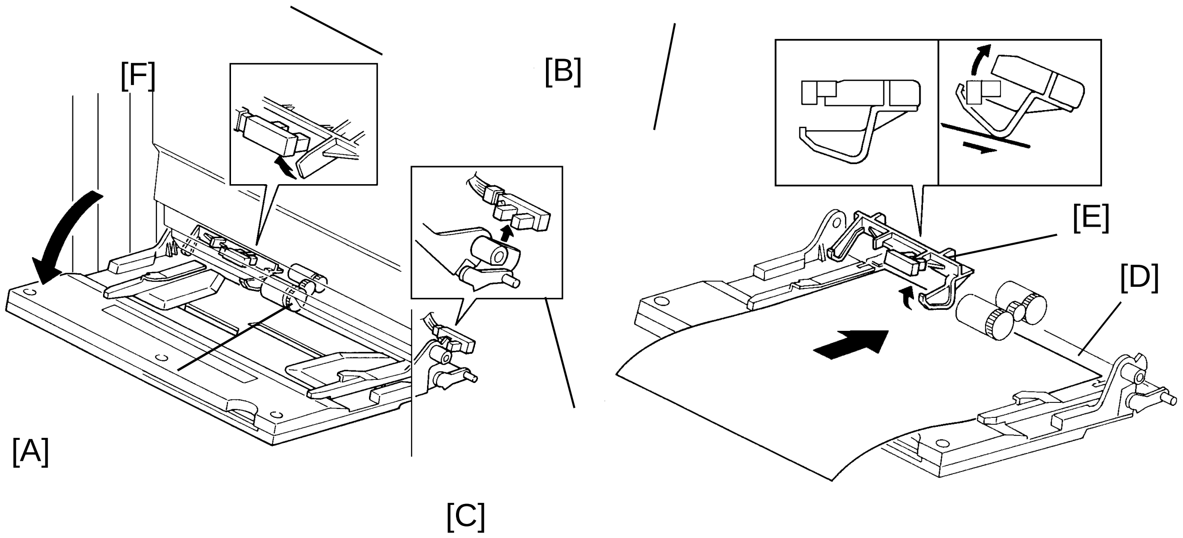
The LCT can hold three paper sizes (A4 sideways, B5 sideways, and 11" X 8 1/2") by changing the side fence [A] position. However, there is no paper size switches for the LCT. The paper size of the LCT is set by SP mode #73.

SP73: LCT Paper Size

0: A4   1: B5   2: LT (11" X 81/2")

The default setting for A3/A4 machine is "0" and that for LT/DLT machine is "2".

11.6 BY-PASS FEED TABLE



The by-pass feed table [A] uses the FRR feed system for feeding non-standard sized paper, thick paper, and application paper such as OHP sheet, translucent paper, etc.

When the by-pass feed table is opened, the by-pass feed table sensor [B] is activated by the by-pass feed side plate [C]. Then the CPU lights the by-pass feed indicator on the operation panel.

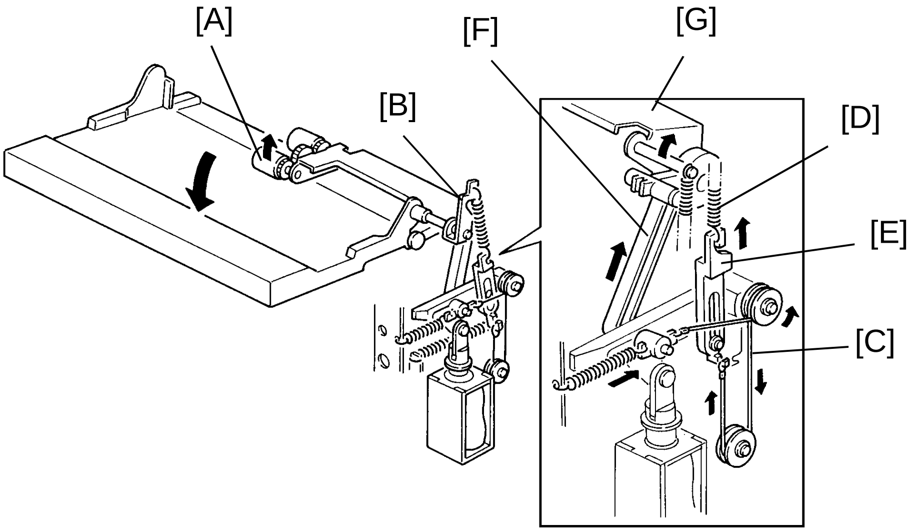
On this model, opening the by-pass feed table does not shift the mode into the interrupt mode. The selected modes and input data from before opening the by-pass feed table remain. Also other paper trays can be selected while the by-pass feed table is open.

While the by-pass feed table is being opened, the front side of the by-pass feed lower guide plate [D] lifts up the paper end feeler [E] to the detect position. When there is no paper on the by-pass feed table, the paper end feeler is positioned in the cut out of the lower guide plate and the by-pass feed paper end sensor [F] is deactivated. When the paper is set on the by-pass feed table, the paper end feeler is raised by the paper and the paper end sensor becomes activated. The CPU turns off the paper end indicator, turns the start key from red to green, and sounds the beeper once.

11.6.1 Pick-up Roller Position for Non-LCT Machine

The pick-up roller position of the non-LCT machine is higher than that of the LCT machine when the by-pass feed table is closed. The position is designed only for the by-pass feed table. Therefore, there is no pick-up roller lift mechanism while opening the by-pass feed table.

11.6.2 Pick-up Roller Position for LCT Machine

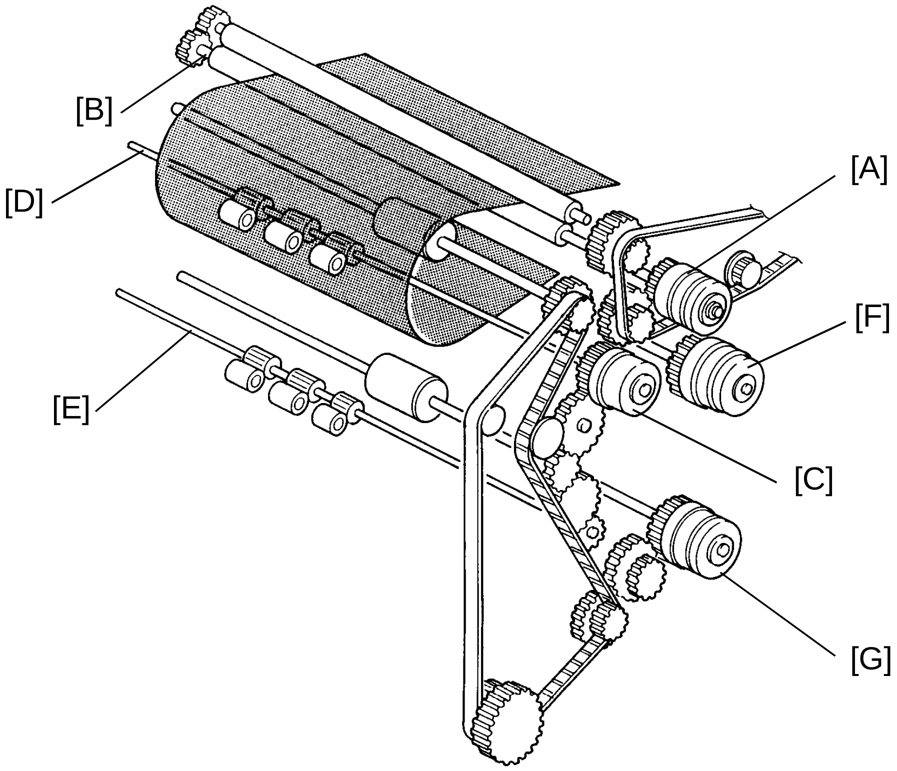


For the LCT machine the pick-up roller [A] is positioned for feeding paper from the LCT when the by-pass feed table is closed.

When the by-pass feed table is opened, the pick-up roller lift lever [B] fixed on the by-pass feed table shaft rotates counterclockwise. This rotation lifts up the wire [C] through the lift spring [D] and the junction plate [E]. The other end of the wire pulls the lower end of the pick-up roller lift slider [F]. This movement lifts up the pick-up roller bracket [G] and the pick-up roller is positioned to be ready for feeding paper from the by- pass feed table.

11.7 PAPER FEED AND REGISTRATION DRIVE MECHANISM

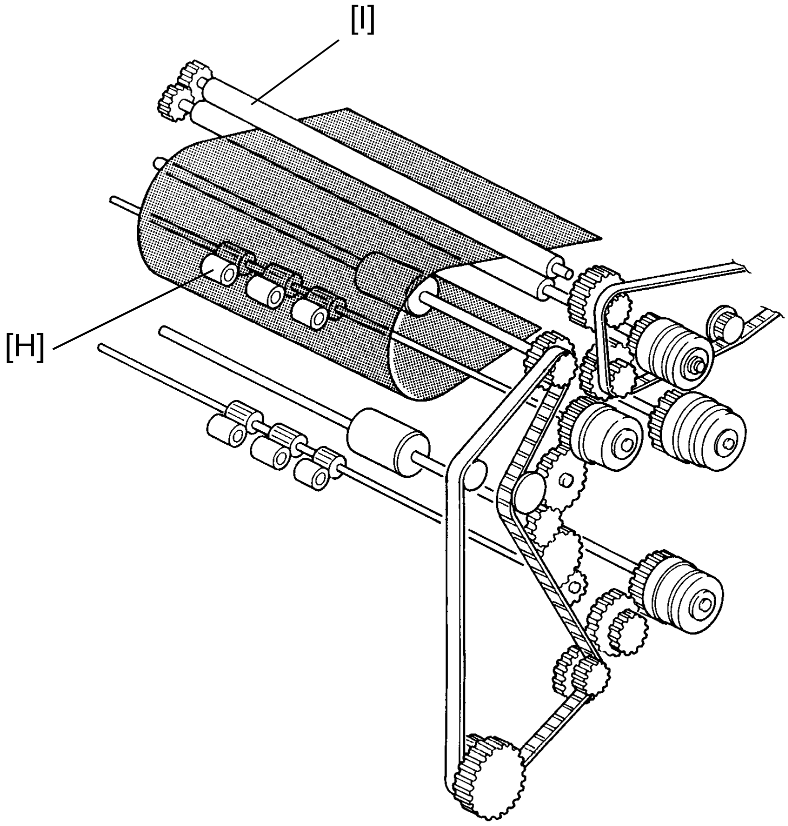
11.7.1 Friction Pad Feed and Registration Drive Mechanism



Through several timing pulleys and timing belts, main motor rotation is transmitted to the registration, feed relay, upper paper feed (non-duplex machine only), and lower paper feed clutches.

The registration clutch [A] is located on the lower registration roller shaft [B]. The feed relay clutch [C] is located on the upper relay roller shaft [D]. The rotation of the upper relay roller shaft is transmitted to the lower relay roller shaft [E] via several idle gears. The upper and lower paper feed clutches [F,G] are located on the paper feed roller shafts.

The CPU controls the rotation of these rollers in the paper path by turning the respective clutches on and off.

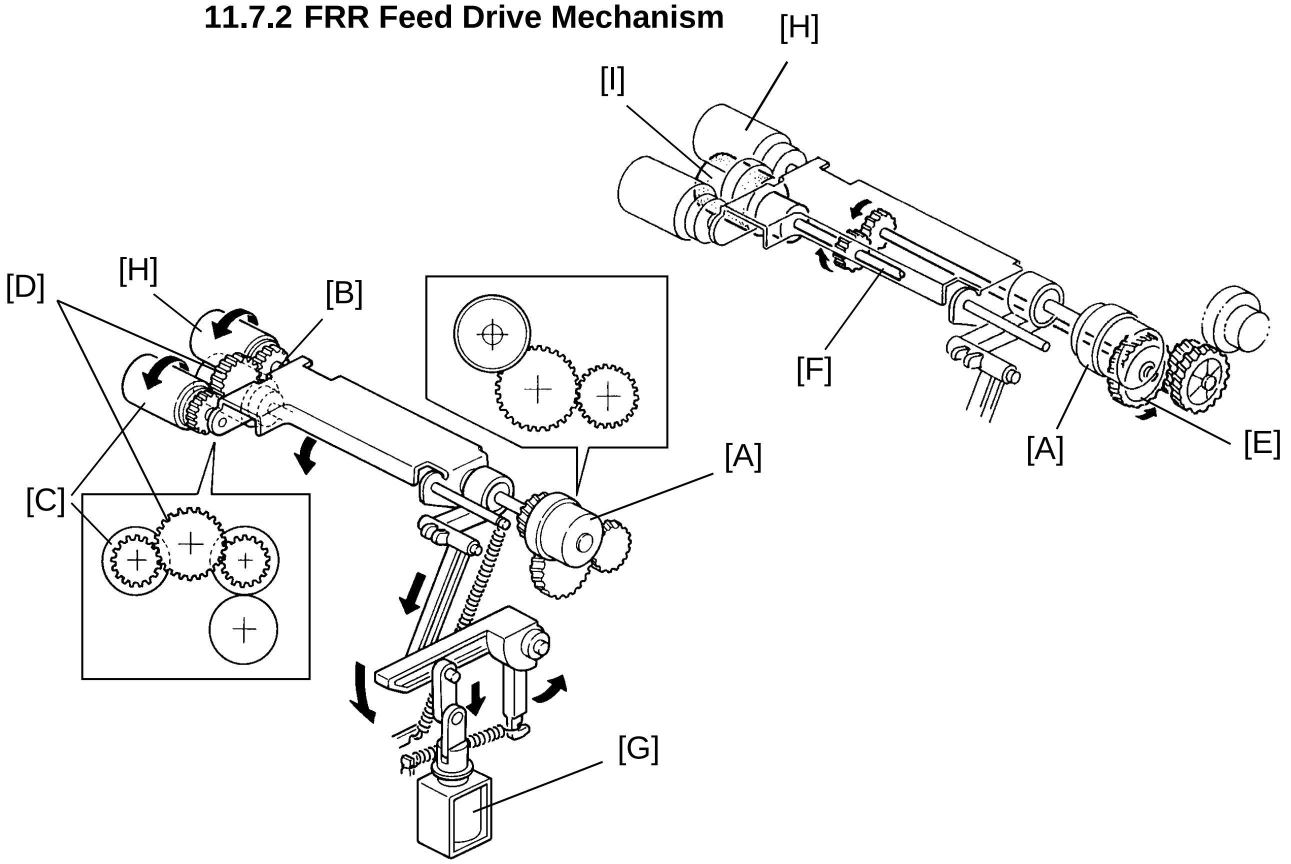


The registration rollers have two functions. One is aligning the lead edge of the paper with the leading edge of the latent image on the drum with the lead edge of paper. When the CPU receives the lead edge signal from the I/O CPU, the registration clutch turns on 364 ms after that. It turns off 115 ms after the trailing edge of paper is detected by the registration sensor.

The other function is to correct skewing of paper fed from the trays. The feed relay clutch turns off a certain time after the registration sensor detects the lead edge of the paper, making a little buckle on the paper between the upper relay rollers [H] and the registration rollers [I]. The timing for turning off the feed relay clutch differs for each paper tray and it can be changed by SP mode.

The registration roller pressure springs are different at the front and the rear to prevent skewing during transportation. The front spring is a little stronger and is black color.

11.7.2 FRR Feed Drive Mechanism



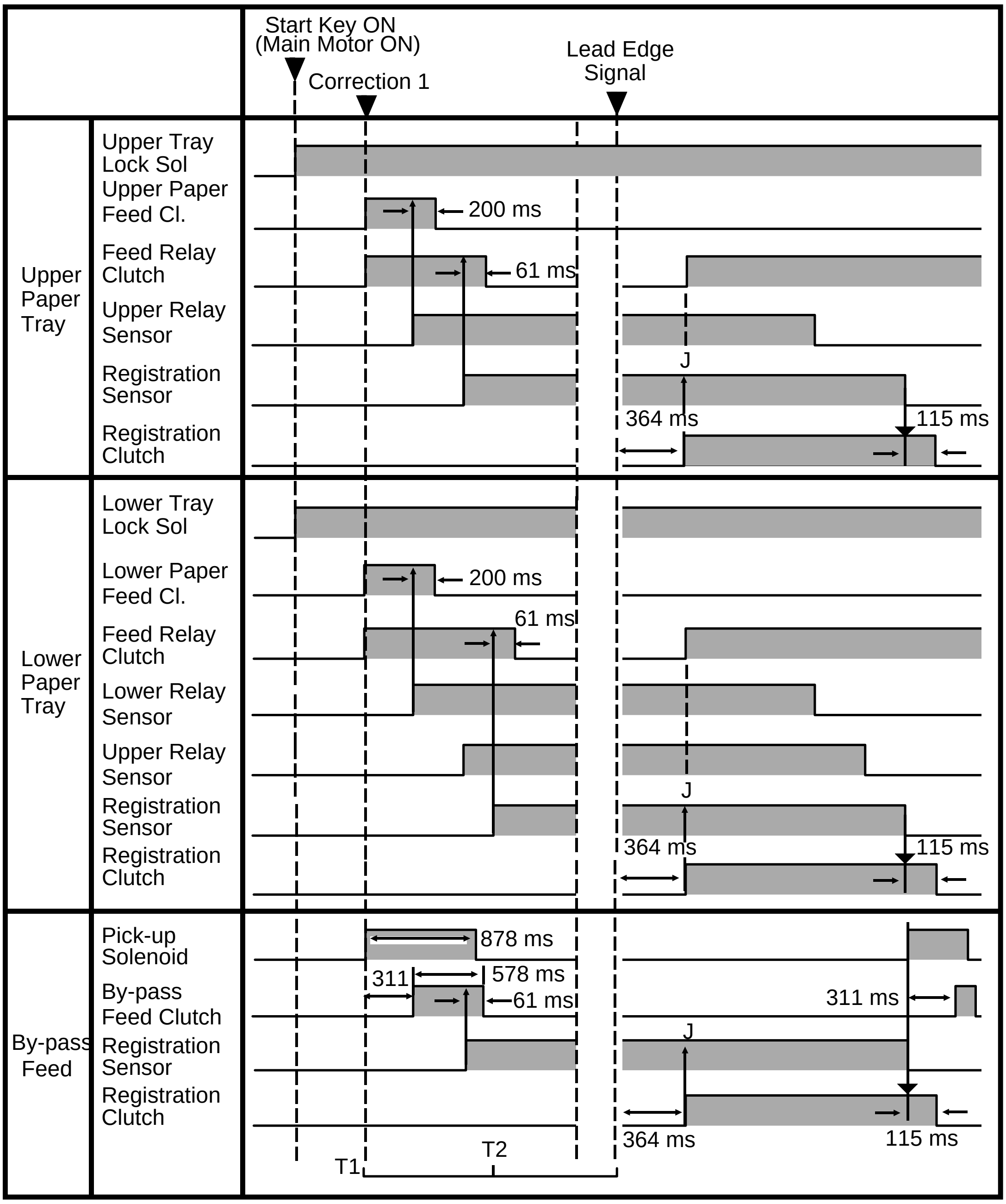
The rotation of the main motor is first transmitted to the registration clutch, and then is transmitted to the by-pass feed clutch [A] via several idle gears. The feed roller shaft [B] and the pick-up roller [C] turn together because they are engaged by the idle gear [D]. One of the gears [E] between the registration clutch and the by-pass feed clutch is used to drive the separation roller shaft [F] (see the above illustration). This shaft is always turning when the main motor is on.

When the start key is pressed, the pick-up solenoid [G] is energized at the same time as the main motor, and the pick-up roller lowers to make contact with the top sheet of the paper stack. Shortly after that, the by-pass feed clutch turns on, and the pick-up roller and the feed roller start moving the top sheet of paper. When the lead edge of the paper passes between the feed roller [H] and the separation roller [I], the pick-up solenoid de-energizes to lift up the pick-up roller. The feed roller stops turning a certain time after the registration sensor detects the lead edge of the paper, causing a little buckle between the feed roller and the registration rollers.

In case of using the LCT, after the trailing edge passes under the pick-up roller, the pick-up roller lowers onto the paper stack again in preparation for the next copy cycle. In case of using the by-pass feed table, when the registration sensor detects the trailing edge of the paper, the pick-up roller lowers.

11.8 PAPER FEED AND MISFEED TIMING

<A4 Sideways, Full Size>


Start Key ON
(Main Motor ON)
Correction 1
Lead Edge Signal
Upper Paper Tray
Upper Tray Lock Sol
Upper Paper Feed Cl.
200 ms
Feed Relay Clutch
61 ms
Upper Relay Sensor
J
Registration Sensor
364 ms
115 ms
Registration Clutch
Lower Paper Tray
Lower Tray Lock Sol
Lower Paper Feed Cl.
200 ms
Feed Relay Clutch
61 ms
Lower Relay Sensor
Upper Relay Sensor
J
Registration Sensor
364 ms
115 ms
Registration Clutch
By-pass Feed
Pick-up Solenoid
878 ms
311
578 ms
By-pass Feed Clutch
61 ms
311 ms
J
Registration Sensor
Registration Clutch
364 ms
115 ms
T1
T2

T1: The time from when the start key is pressed until the paper feed clutch turns on differs depending on the paper feeding station and the selected development unit. This is to have enough time for cleaning the drum surface before feeding the paper.

Paper Feeding Station		Black Dev. Unit	Color Dev. Unit
Upper Paper Tray		200 ms	3867 ms
Lower Paper Tray		27ms	3339 ms
By-pass Feed Table		255 ms	3922 ms
Paper Tray Unit	Paper Tray - 1	27 ms	2394 ms
	Paper Tray - 2	27 ms	1839 ms
	Paper Tray - 3	27 ms	1283 ms

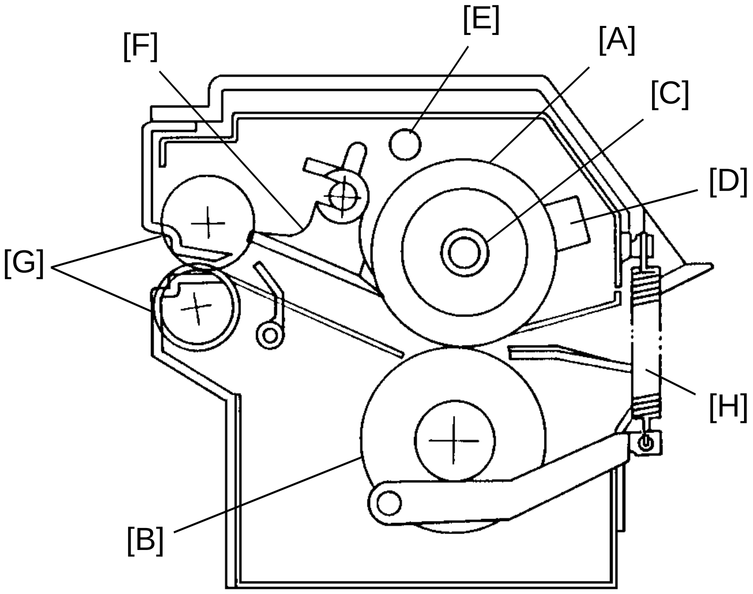
T2: The timing from paper feed start until the main CPU receives the Lead Edge signal differs depending on the paper feeding station.

Paper Feeding Station		Black Dev. Unit
Upper Paper Tray		172 ms + (555 ms)
Lower Paper Tray		728 ms + (555 ms)
By-pass Feed Table		305 ms + (555 ms)
Paper Tray Unit	Paper Tray - 1	1728 ms + (555 ms)
	Paper Tray - 2	2284 ms + (555 ms)
	Paper Tray - 3	2840 ms + (555 ms)

J: On check for the registration sensor

12. IMAGE FUSING

12.1 OVERVIEW



After the image is transfered, the copy paper enters the fusing unit. Then the image is fused to the copy paper by a heat and pressure process through the use of a hot roller [A] and pressure roller [B].

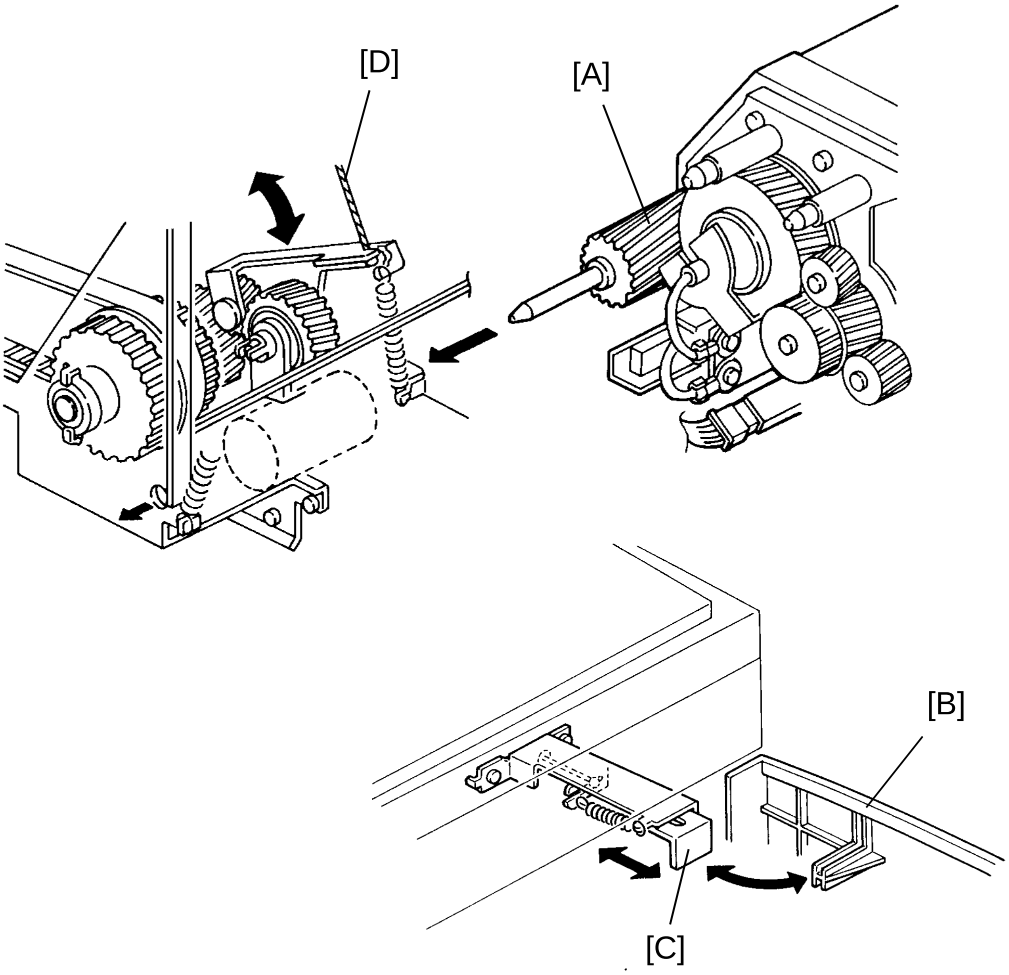
The fusing lamp [C] located inside the hot roller is turned on and off to maintain the operating temperature of 185°C. The CPU monitors the hot roller surface temperature through a thermistor [D] which is in contact with the hot roller's surface. A thermofuse [E] protects the fusing unit form overheating.

This model uses an oilless hot roller system, and does not have a hot roller cleaning mechanism.

The hot roller strippers [F] separate the copy paper from the hot roller and direct it to the exit rollers [G]. The exit sensor monitors the progress of the copy paper through the fusing unit and acts as a misfeed detector while the exit rollers drive the copy paper to the copy tray. When the sorter is installed, the paper sensor on the sorter also functions as a misfeed detector.

The hook positions of the pressure lever tension springs [H] adjust the roller pressure.

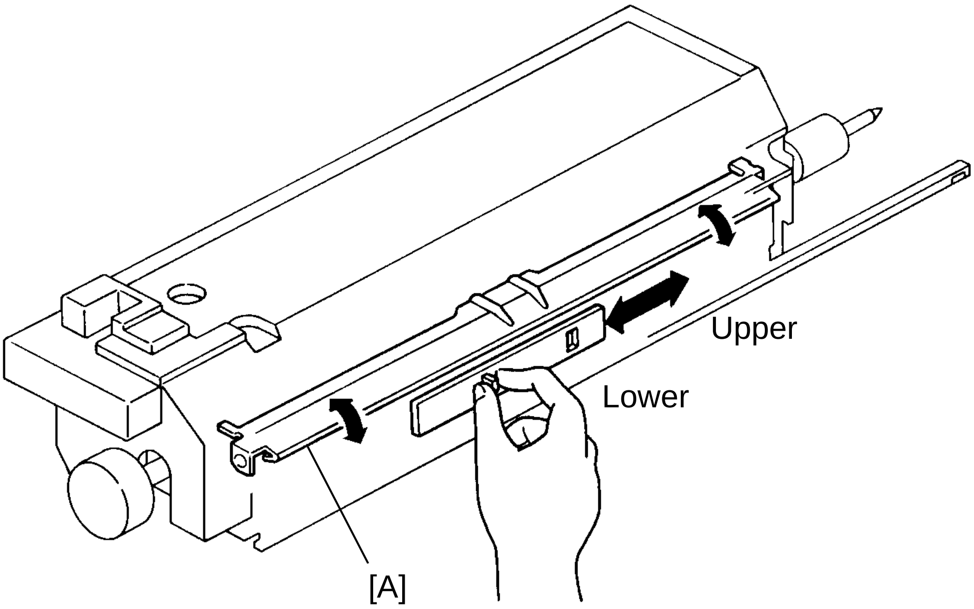
12.2 FUSING DRIVE RELEASE MECHANISM



The fusing unit drive release mechanism automatically disengages the fusing unit drive gear [A] when the front cover [B] is opened. This allows the fusing unit drive gear to rotate freely so that misfed paper can be easily removed.

When the front cover is opened, the actuator plate [C] pulls release wire [D] and the fusing unit drive gear is disengaged.

12.3 FUSING ENTRANCE GUIDE SHIFT MECHANISM

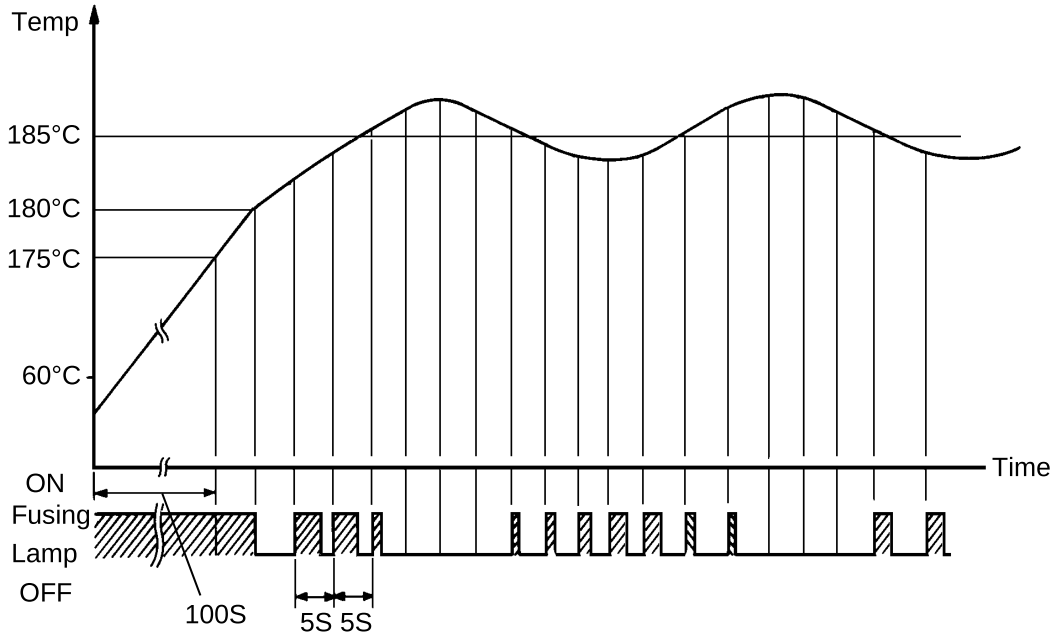


The entrance guide [A] for this machine is adjustable for thick or thin paper.

With thin paper, set the entrance guide in the upper position (standard position). This slightly lengthens the paper path which prevents the paper from creasing in the fusing unit. With thick paper, set the entrance guide in the lower position.

This is because thick paper does not bend as easily, and is therefore less prone to creasing. Also, the lower setting allows more direct access to the gap between the fusing and pressure rollers. This prevents thick paper from buckling against the fusing roller, which can cause blurring at the leading edge of the copy.

12.4 FUSING LAMP CONTROL



When the main switch is turned on the CPU starts sending a trigger pulse to the fusing control circuit to turn on the fusing lamp.

When the CPU detects a fusing temperature of 175°C through the thermistor, the copier starts fusing idling. When the fusing idling finishes, the warm-up period is completed and the Ready indicator turns on. This should take less than 110 seconds. If the fusing temperature is above 60°C when the main switch is turned on, the copier does not go into the fusing idling mode.

When the fusing temperature reaches 180°C the CPU changes the fusing lamp on/off check cycle from every 1 second to every 5 seconds.

The CPU also changes the fusing lamp on period every check cycle. The change is calculated according to the result of the previous check. This keeps the fusing temperature as close as possible to the target temperature (185°C).

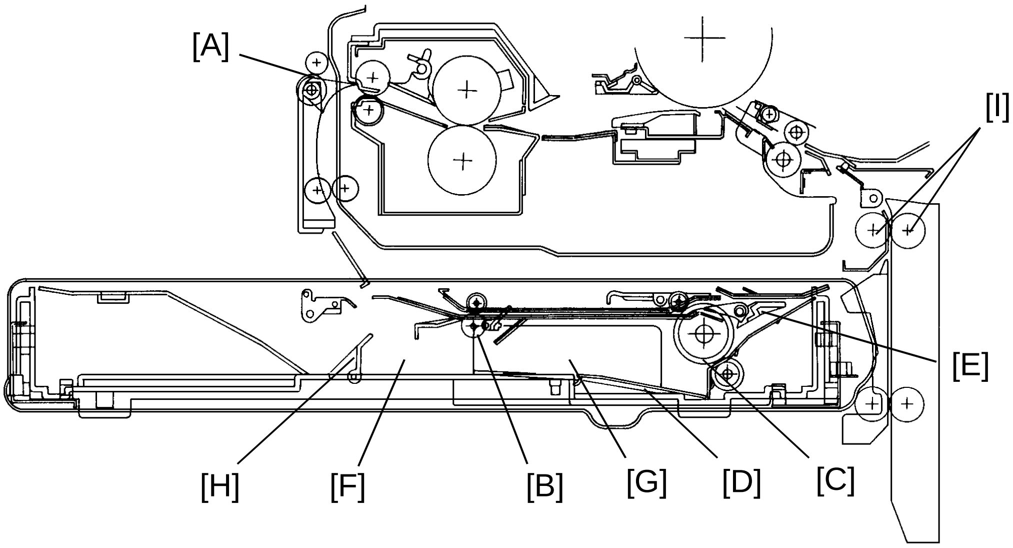
If the fusing lamp (830W) is turned on or off while the exposure lamp is on, the power supplied to the exposure lamp may fluctuate, possibly degrading the copy image.

To prevent this, the fusing lamp does not change while the exposure lamp is on; it stays either on or off.

This copier controls the fusing temperature in zero cross control mode as a standard. It can be changed to phase control mode by SP29 as necessary.

13. DUPLEX

13.1 OVERVIEW



The duplex tray unit is used for multiple 2-sided, single 2-sided, and single image overlay copying.

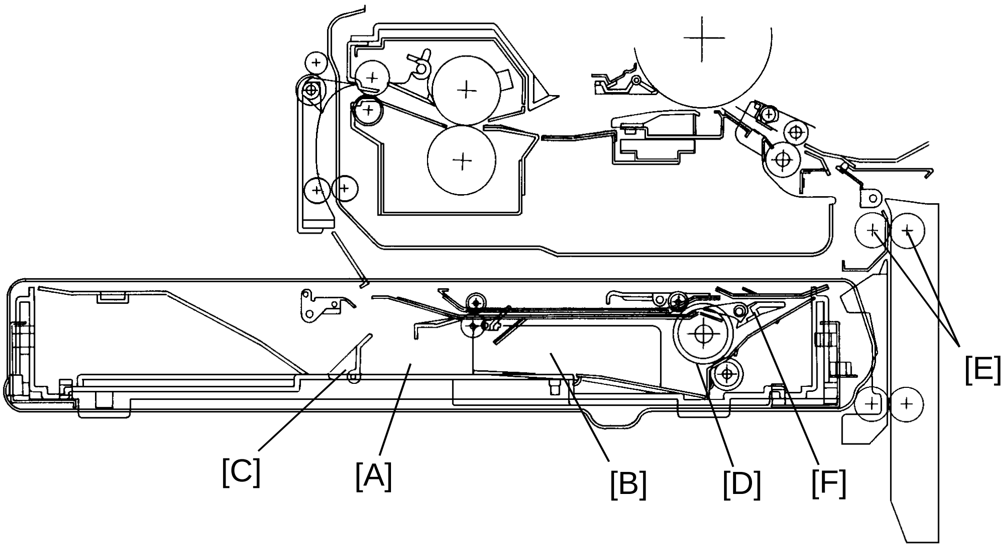
When the registration clutch turns on, the junction gate [A] rotates up to direct the copy to the duplex tray. Shortly after the fusing exit sensor detects the lead edge of the paper, the entrance roller [B] and duplex feed roller [C] start to rotate. At the same time, the duplex bottom plate [D] lowers.

13.1.1 Multiple 2-sided Copy

In multiple 2-sided copying mode, the turn gate [E] rotates up to direct the copy to the duplex stack section [F].

After the copy is delivered to the duplex stack section, the jogger fences [G] and end fence [H] move inward to square the copy stack, then the jogger side fences move back 5 mm and the jogger end fence moves back 8 mm. After the final copy is delivered to the stack section, the jogger and end fences remain against the paper stack.

Soon after the final copy is squared by the jogger and end fences, the duplex bottom plate raises up to the final position and the duplex feed rollers start rotating counterclockwise (front view) to feed the copy to the relay rollers [I]. Second side copying is then made with the copy following the upper paper tray feed station paper path.



13.1.2 Single 2-sided Copy

The sheet, except for the multiple 2-sided copy of A4, B5 or 81/2" x 11" sideways, can be used for single 2-sided copying.

In single 2-sided copying mode, the same operation as in multiple 2-sided copying mode is made until the copy is directed to the duplex stack section [A].

However, the jogger fences [B] move outward and the end fence [C] lowers. The copy advances over the lowered end fence. After the appropriate timing for the selected paper, the duplex feed roller [D] reverses. The copy is directed to the relay rollers [E] and is stopped there.

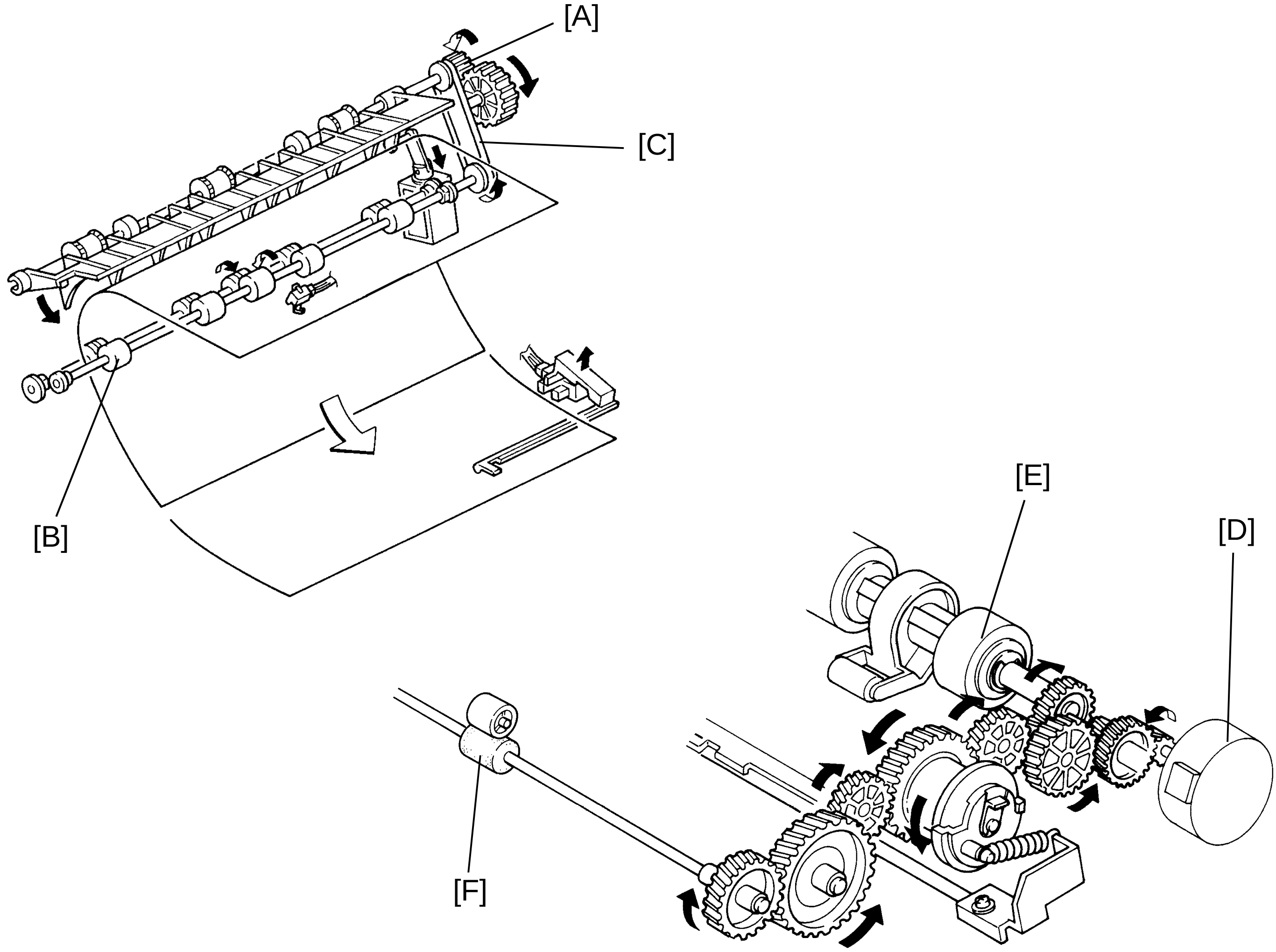
Second side copying is then made with the copy following the upper paper tray feed station paper path.

13.1.3 Image Overlay

In single image overlay copying mode, the same operation as in the other duplex mode is made until the turn gate [F]. In this case, the turn gate does not rotate. The copy is directly delivered to the relay rollers [B] and is stopped there.

Then the 2nd image is copied on the same side as the first image.

13.2 DRIVE MECHANISM

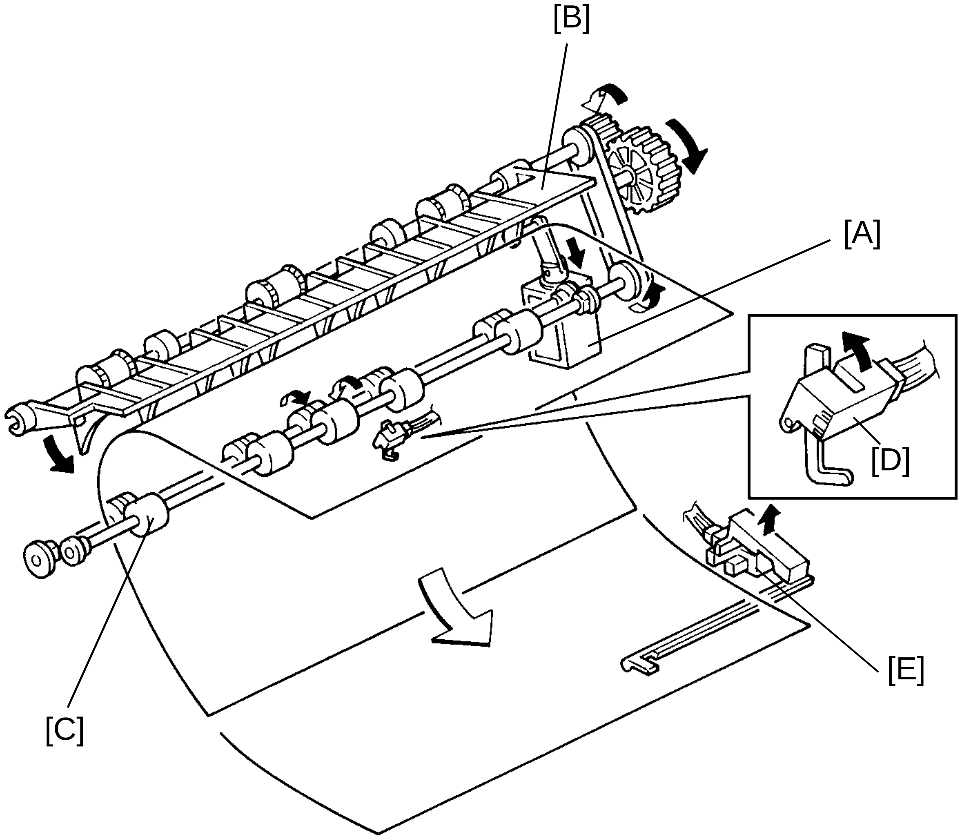


The copier exit roller gear [A] drives the transport rollers [B] through the timing belt [C].

All the rollers in the duplex tray are driven by the duplex feed motor [D]. The drive of the duplex feed motor is transmitted to the duplex feed rollers [E] and the duplex entrance rollers [F] through a series of gears. All the gears have diagonal teeth to reduce driving noise.

The duplex feed motor also drives the duplex bottom plate up and down.

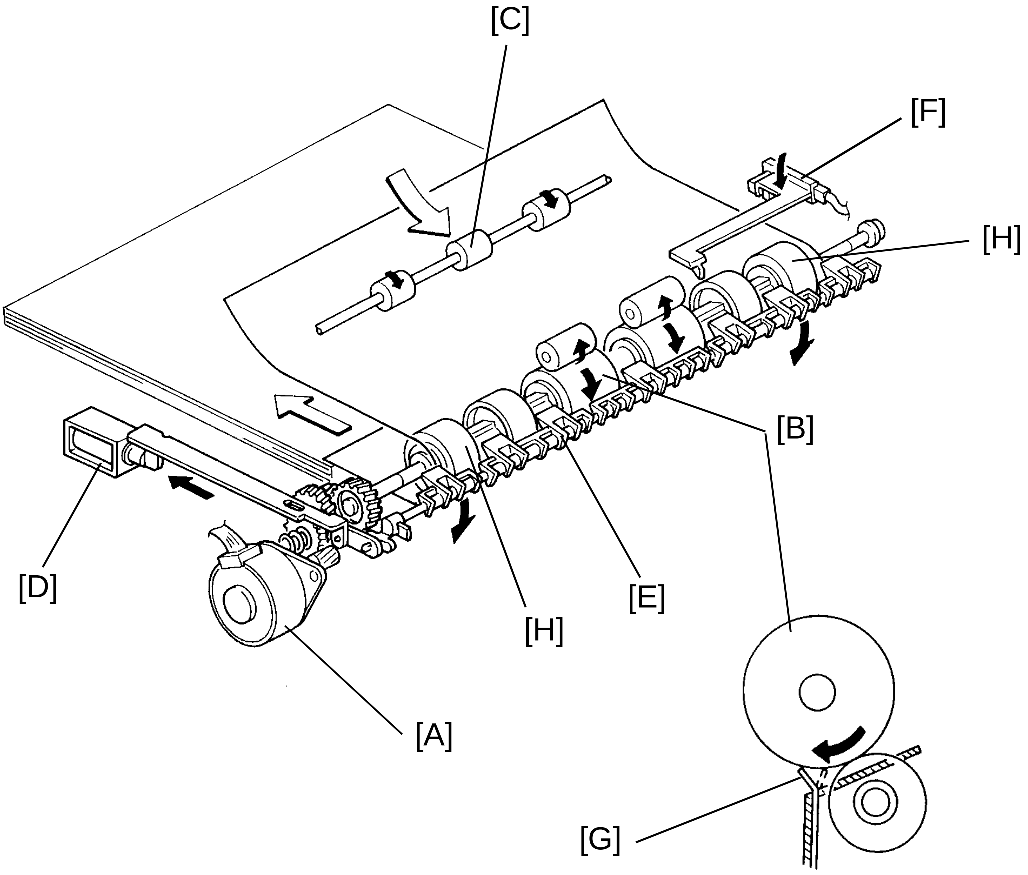
13.3 TURN GUIDE SECTION



When the registration clutch turns on for feeding the first copy in the duplex mode, the junction gate solenoid [A] is energized. Then, the junction gate [B] rotates up to direct the copy paper to the duplex turn guide section. The junction gate solenoid stays on until first side copying is finished.

The copy is then directed to the duplex entrance rollers by the transport rollers [C]. The leading edge of the copy actuates the junction gate sensor [D] and then the duplex entrance sensor [E]. these are monitored by the CPU to detect misfeeds.

13.4 DUPLEX ENTRANCE TO DUPLEX TRAY

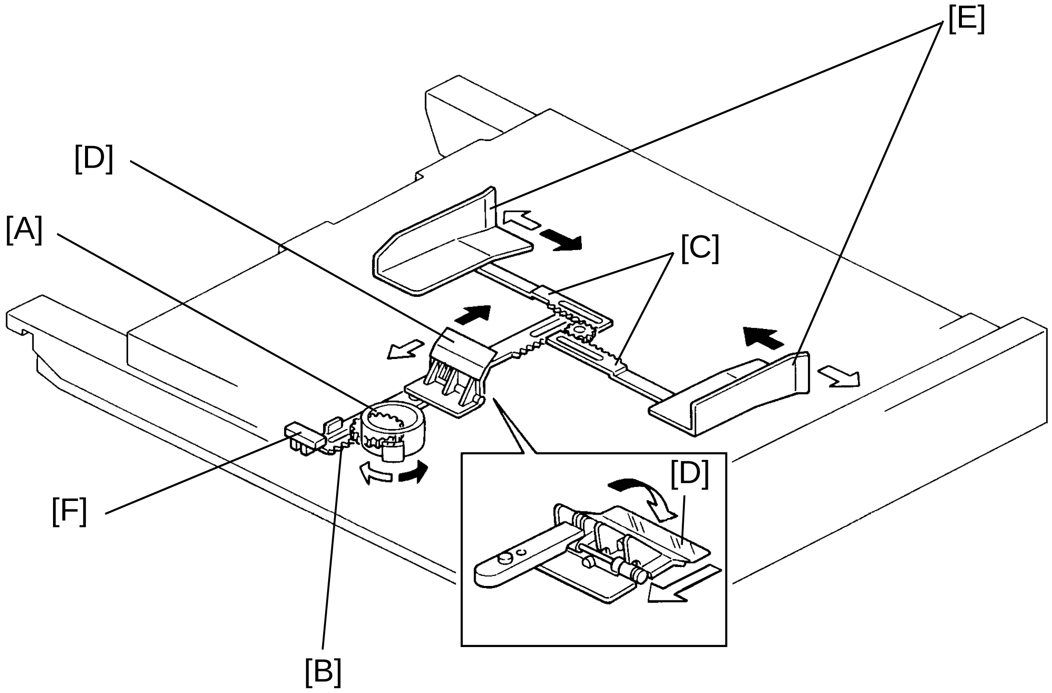


139 ms after the leading edge of the copy paper actuates the fusing exit sensor, the duplex feed motor [A] starts turning. This rotation is transmitted to the duplex feed rollers [B] and the duplex entrance rollers [C]. 63 ms after that, the duplex turn gate solenoid [D] is energized to rotate the duplex turn gate [E].

Then the copy paper from the turn guide section is directed to the duplex tray through the duplex entrance rollers and the duplex turn gate sensor [F], which is monitored by the CPU to detect misfeeds.

The tip of the flip mylar [G] moves to the left (front view) when the duplex feed rollers rotate to feed the copy into the duplex tray. The mylar presses the copy against the duplex stack rollers [H], ensuring that the trailing edge of the copy clears the guide plate.

13.5 DUPLEX STACKING



The jogger motor (stepper motor) [A] drives the end fence rack gear [B] inward or outward. The other end of the end fence rack gear is engaged with the side fence rack gears [C] through an idle gear. Therefore, the drive of the jogger motor moves the jogger end fence [D] and the jogger side fences [E] inward or outward.

When the main switch is turned on, the jogger motor rotates to place the jogger fences at the home position by monitoring the signal of the jogger home position sensor [F].

In multiple 2-sided copying mode, 833 ms after the fusing exit sensor detects the leading edge of the first copy, the jogger motor rotates to position the jogger side fences 5 mm, and the jogger end fence 8 mm, away from the selected paper size. When the copy paper is delivered in the duplex tray, actually 205 ms after the duplex turn gate sensor detects the trailing edge of the paper, the jogger fences move inward to square the paper. 833 ms after the fusing exit sensor detects the leading edge of the next copy paper, the jogger fences move back to the previous positions (5 mm and 8 mm away from the paper size).

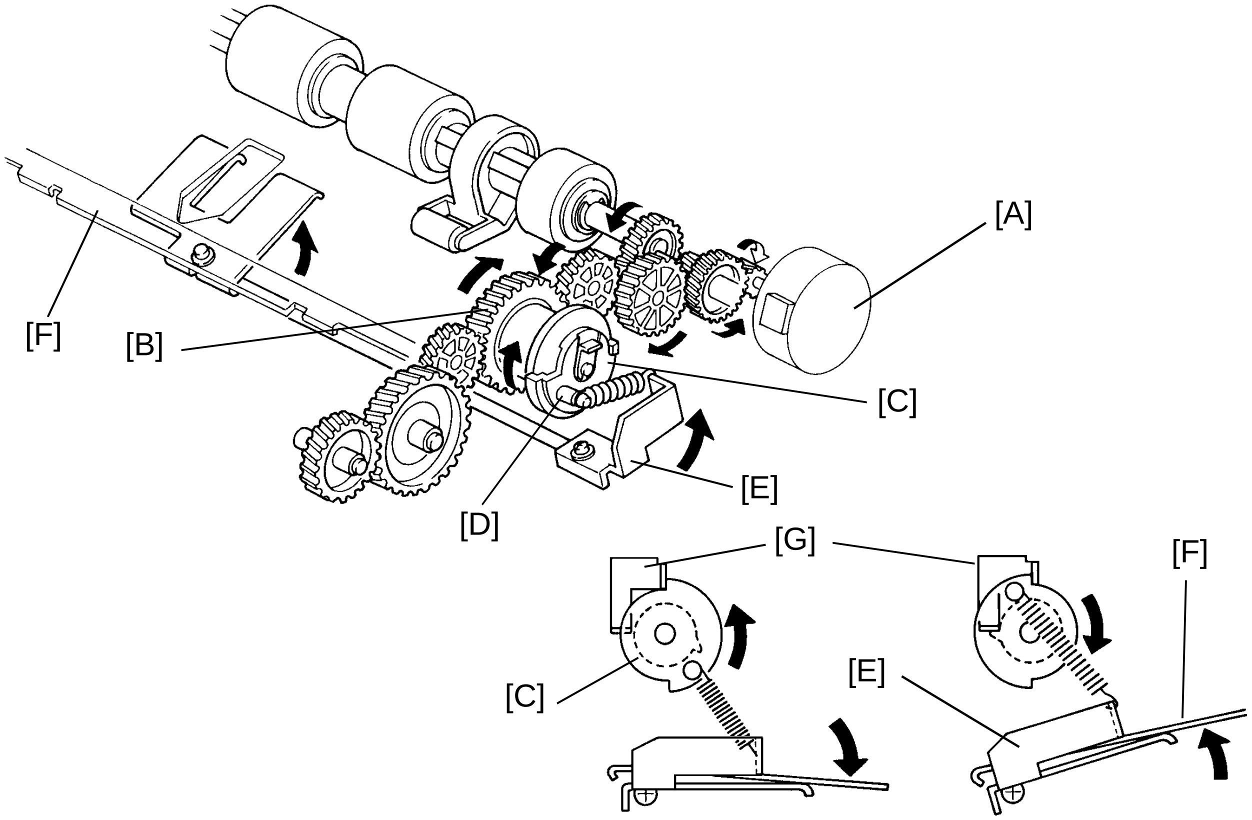
The jogger fences move inward to square the paper stack at the same timing as before. After the last copy of the first side copying run enters the duplex tray, the jogger fences remain against the paper stack.

In single 2-sided copying mode, the jogger motor rotates at the same time as in the multiple 2-sided copying mode. But in this mode the jogger motor moves the jogger fences outward.

The jogger end fence rotates down as it is pressed against the end fence stopper [G]. The jogger side fences stay at their widest position. This clears the paper path for inverting the copy paper.

13.6 PAPER FEED FROM DUPLEX TRAY

13.6.1 Tray Lift Mechanism



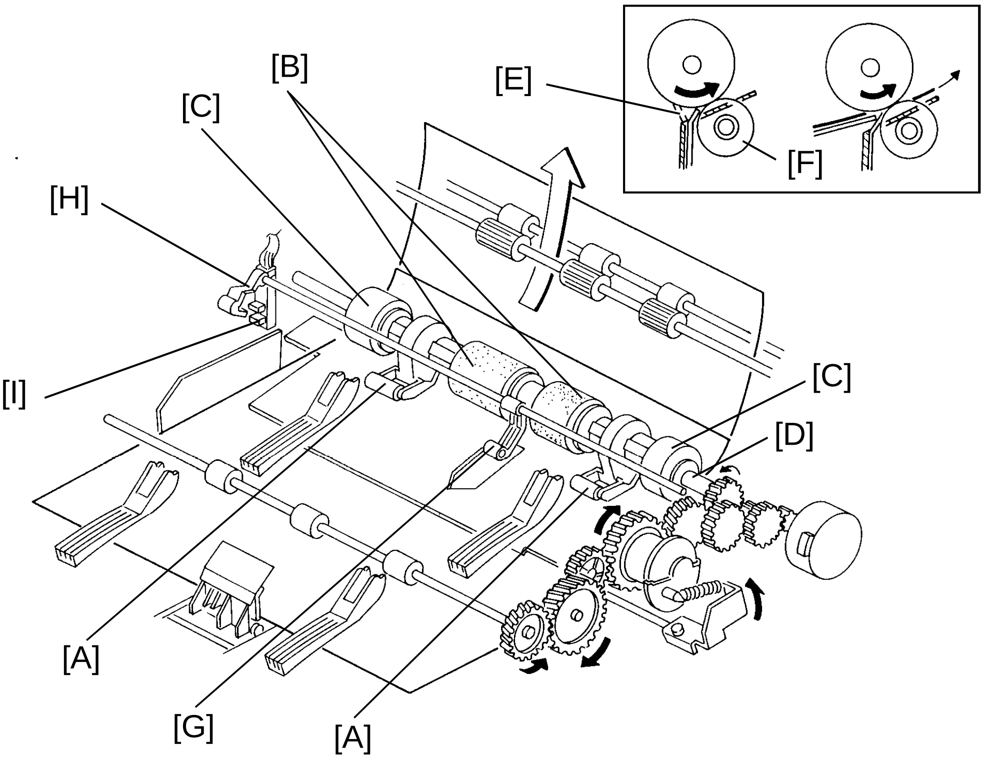
The rotation of the duplex feed motor [A] is transmitted to the cam clutch gear [B] through a series of idle gears. When the duplex feed motor rotates clockwise, the cam clutch gear also rotates clockwise. Then the spring inside the cam clutch [C] is tightened and the cam clutch rotates clockwise. The pin [D] on the cam clutch lifts up the duplex lift lever [E] through a lift spring, raising the duplex bottom plate [F].

When the cam clutch is caught by the cam stopper bracket [G], the clutch spring is loosened to keep the duplex bottom plate up. The bottom plate pressure against the duplex feed roller is also maintained by this mechanism.

When the duplex feed motor rotates counterclockwise, the clutch spring is loosened completely and the bottom plate lowers by its own weight.

When the main switch is turned on, the duplex bottom plate lowers then raises to check if there is paper in the duplex tray or not, using a duplex paper end sensor. During stand-by conditions the duplex bottom plate stays in the up position.

13.6.2 Paper Feed System



While stacking the copy paper in the duplex tray, the paper flatteners [A] correct curl on the leading edge of the copies.

After the last copy of the first side copying run enters the duplex tray, the jogger fences square the paper stack and then the duplex feed motor starts reverse rotation (counterclockwise). Then the duplex bottom plate rises.

Since the duplex feed rollers [B] and the duplex stack rollers [C] are driven by the pins on the duplex feed roller shaft [D], the rollers rotate counterclockwise about one revolution after the duplex feed roller shaft starts turning. The rollers move the flip mylars [E] back to the right (front view) to prepare paper feeding from the duplex tray.

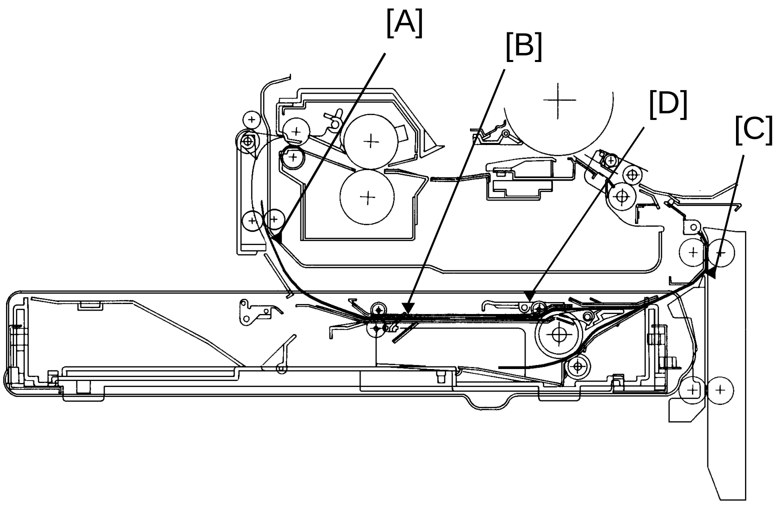
The duplex paper feed system consists of two sets of the duplex feed roller and the friction roller [F]. The two sets of rollers ensure paper feeding from the duplex tray. As the friction roller has a one-way bearing inside, it rotates freely during paper stacking and it locks during paper feeding. The duplex feed rollers feed only the top sheet of the stack copies to the relay rollers because the friction rollers function the same way as the friction pad does.

After that, the second side copies follow the upper paper tray feed station paper path.

After the final copy leaves the duplex bottom plate, the paper end feeler [G] drops through a slot in the duplex bottom plate. The duplex paper end actuator [H], which is on the same shaft as the duplex paper end feeler, pivots into the duplex paper end sensor [I], sending a High signal to the main board to stop the next paper feeding cycle.

The duplex feed motor may heat up because of its own rotation. The heated motor may rotate irregurlarly. To prevent this, the feed timing from the duplex tray will be delayed every 2 seconds if the duplex motor thermistor senses 77°C or more for the duplex feed motor temperature. This cools the duplex feed motor.

13.7 DUPLEX TRAY LOCK MECHANISM



A tray lock solenoid is installed for the duplex tray on the rear side frame like for paper trays. The location of the tray lock solenoid is on the left side rail but that of the duplex tray lock solenoid is on the right side rail.

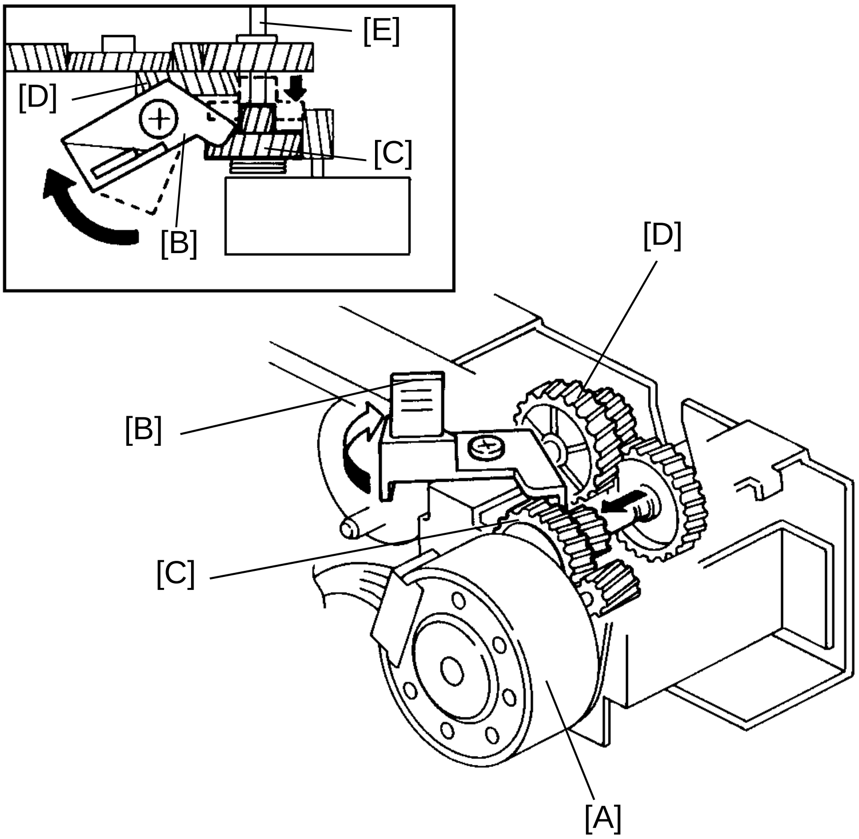
When the start key is pressed in duplex mode, the duplex tray lock solenoid is energized and the tray lock lever catches the rear part of the right tray rail. This is to prevent the duplex tray from being pulled out while the paper is fed into or fed out from the duplex tray.

Also in the case of the duplex mode, when a paper jam happens between the junction gate and the duplex entrance gate (both the junction gate and the duplex entrance sensors [A, B] are activated) or between the duplex feed roller and the upper relay rollers (the upper relay sensor [C] is activated), the duplex tray lock solenoid turns on. In the case of the overlay mode, when a paper jam happens between the junction gate and the duplex entrance gate, or between the duplex turn gate and the upper relay rollers (both the duplex turn gate [D] and the upper relay sensors are activated), the duplex tray lock solenoid turns on.

These are to prevent the jammed paper from being torn to pieces by pulling out the duplex tray before clearing the jammed paper.

When the jammed paper is cleared and either of the sensors is deactivated, the duplex tray lock solenoid is de-energized even when the copier front door is open. Then the duplex tray can be pulled out.

13.8 DUPLEX FEED DRIVE RELEASE MECHANISM

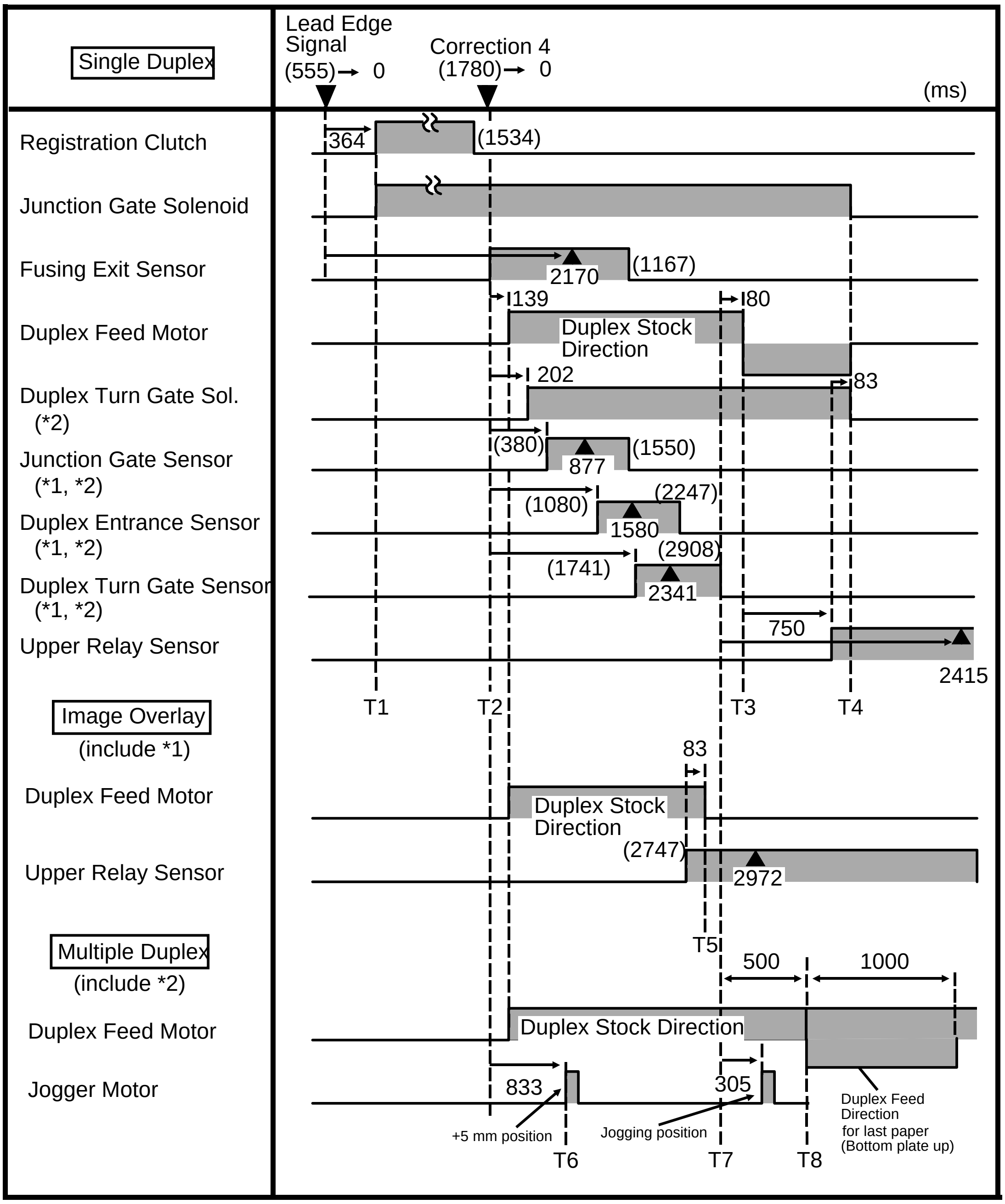


If a paper jam occurs when feeding paper from the duplex tray, the duplex feed motor [A] rotates counterclockwise to lower the duplex bottom plate.

At this time the duplex tray is locked as the duplex tray lock solenoid is energized. This is to prevent the jammed paper from being torn to pieces by pulling out the duplex tray before clearing the jammed paper.

In order to make clearing the jammed paper easier, there is a drive release lever [B]. When this lever is rotated, the duplex drive gear [C] is pressed toward the front and the gear engagement with the idle gear [D] is released. Then the duplex feed roller shaft [E] can be turned freely.

13.9 DUPLEX COMPONENT CONTROL TIMING


Single Duplex
Lead Edge Signal
(555)→ 0
Correction 4
(1780)→ 0
(ms)
Registration Clutch
364
(1534)
Junction Gate Solenoid
Fusing Exit Sensor
2170
(1167)
139
80
Duplex Feed Motor
Duplex Stock Direction
202
83
Duplex Turn Gate Sol. (*2)
Junction Gate Sensor (*1, *2)
(380)
877
(1550)
Duplex Entrance Sensor (*1, *2)
(1080)
1580
(2247)
Duplex Turn Gate Sensor (*1, *2)
(1741)
2341
(2908)
Upper Relay Sensor
750
2415
T1
T2
T3
T4
Image Overlay
(include *1)
Duplex Feed Motor
83
Duplex Stock Direction
Upper Relay Sensor
(2747)
2972
T5
Multiple Duplex
(include *2)
500
1000
Duplex Feed Motor
Duplex Stock Direction
Jogger Motor
833
305
+5 mm position
Jogging position
Duplex Feed Direction for last paper (Bottom plate up)
T6
T7
T8

Single Duplex Mode

T1: 364ms after the lead edge signal is sent from the I/O CPU to the main CPU, the registration clutch and the junction gate solenoid turn on together.

T2: When the fusing exit sensor detects the lead edge of the paper, the timing is corrected to 0 (Correction 4). From this correction 4, the duplex feed motor turns on 139ms later, the duplex turn gate solenoid turns on 202ms later, the junction gate sensor turns on about 380ms later, the duplex entrance sensor tuns on about 1,080ms later, and the duplex turn gate sensor turns on about 1,741ms later.

T3: 80ms after the duplex turn gate sensor detects the trail edge of the paper, the duplex feed motor starts the reverse rotation.

T4: 83ms after the upper relay sensor detects the lead edge of the paper, the junction gate solenoid, duplex feed motor, and duplex turn gate solenoid turn off all together.

Image Overlay Mode

The timing of the junction gate solenoid, duplex entrance sensor, and duplex turn gate sensor is the same as that for the single duplex mode.

T5: 83ms after the upper relay sensor detects the lead edge of the paper, the duplex feed motor stops.

Multiple Duplex Mode

The timing of the duplex turn gate solenoid, junction gate sensor, duplex entrance sensor, and duplex turn gate sensor is the same as that for the single duplex mode.

T6: 833ms after the correction 4, the jogger motor moves the jogger side fences 5mm away, and the jogger rear fence 8mm away from the actual paper size.

T7: The duplex turn gate sensor detects the trail edge of the paper. 305ms after that, the jogger motor moves the jogger side fences and the rear fence inward to square the paper stack.

T8: 500ms after the duplex turn gate sensor detects the trail edge of the last paper, the duplex feed motor starts the reverse rotation to lift up the bottom plate and rotate the duplex feed roller to the feed direction.

SECTION 3

INSTALLATION

1. INSTALLATION REQUIREMENT

1.1 ENVIRONMENT

1. Temperature Range: 10^{o}C to 30^{o}C (50^{o}F to 86^{o}F)
2. Humidity Range: 15% to 90% RH
3. Ambient Illumination: Less than 1,500 lux (do not expose to direct sunlight)
4. Ventilation: Minimum space 20 m^3. Room air should turn over at least 30 m^3/hr/person.
5. Ambient Dust: Less than 0.15 mg/m^3 (4 x 10^{-6} oz/yd^3)
6. If the machine location is air-conditioned or heated, place the machine:
    a) where it will not be subjected to sudden temperature changes.
    b) where it will not be directly exposed to cool air from an air-conditioner in the summer.
    c) where it will not be directly exposed to reflected heat from a space heater in winter.
7. Avoid placing the machine in an area filled with corrosive gas.
8. Avoid any places higher than 2,000 meters (6,500 feet) above sea level.
9. Place the machine on a strong and level base.
10. Avoid any area where the machine may be frequently subjected to strong vibration.

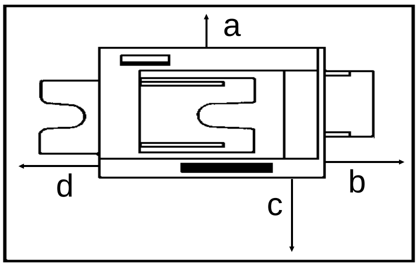
1.2 MACHINE LEVEL

1. Front to back level: within 5 mm (0.2")
2. Right to left level: within 5 mm (0.2")

   Use a carpenter’s level to level the machine

1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS

Copier only



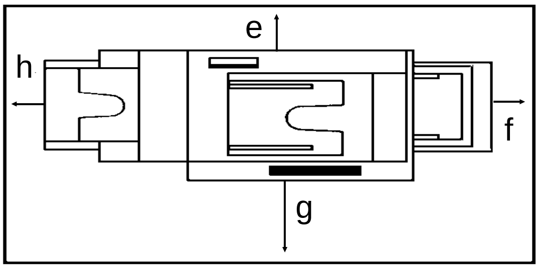
a: more than 10 cm/3.9" (When the micro sorter is installed: 15 cm/5.9")

b: more than 40 cm/15.7"

c: more than 80 cm/31.5"

d: (When you use the copy tray): more than 30 cm/11.8"

Full system



e: more than 10 cm/3.9" (When the micro sorter is installed: 15 cm/5.9")

f: more than 40 cm/15.7"

g: more than 80 cm/31.5"

h: more than 20 cm/11.8" (When the sorter stapler is installed: 10 cm/3.9")

NOTE: When the micro sorter is equipped, make sure there is at least 15 cm (6.0") clearance on the back side, in order to avoid damaging the sorter when it is opened.

1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS

1. Input voltage level:

110V/60Hz	: More than 12A (for Taiwan)
115V/60Hz	: More than 12A (for N.A.)
220V/230V/240V/50Hz	: More than 7A (for EU.)
220V/60Hz	: More than 7A

2. Permissible voltage fluctuation: ±10%
3. Do not set anything on the power cord.

NOTE: a) Make sure the plug is firmly inserted in the outlet.
b) Avoid multi-wiring.

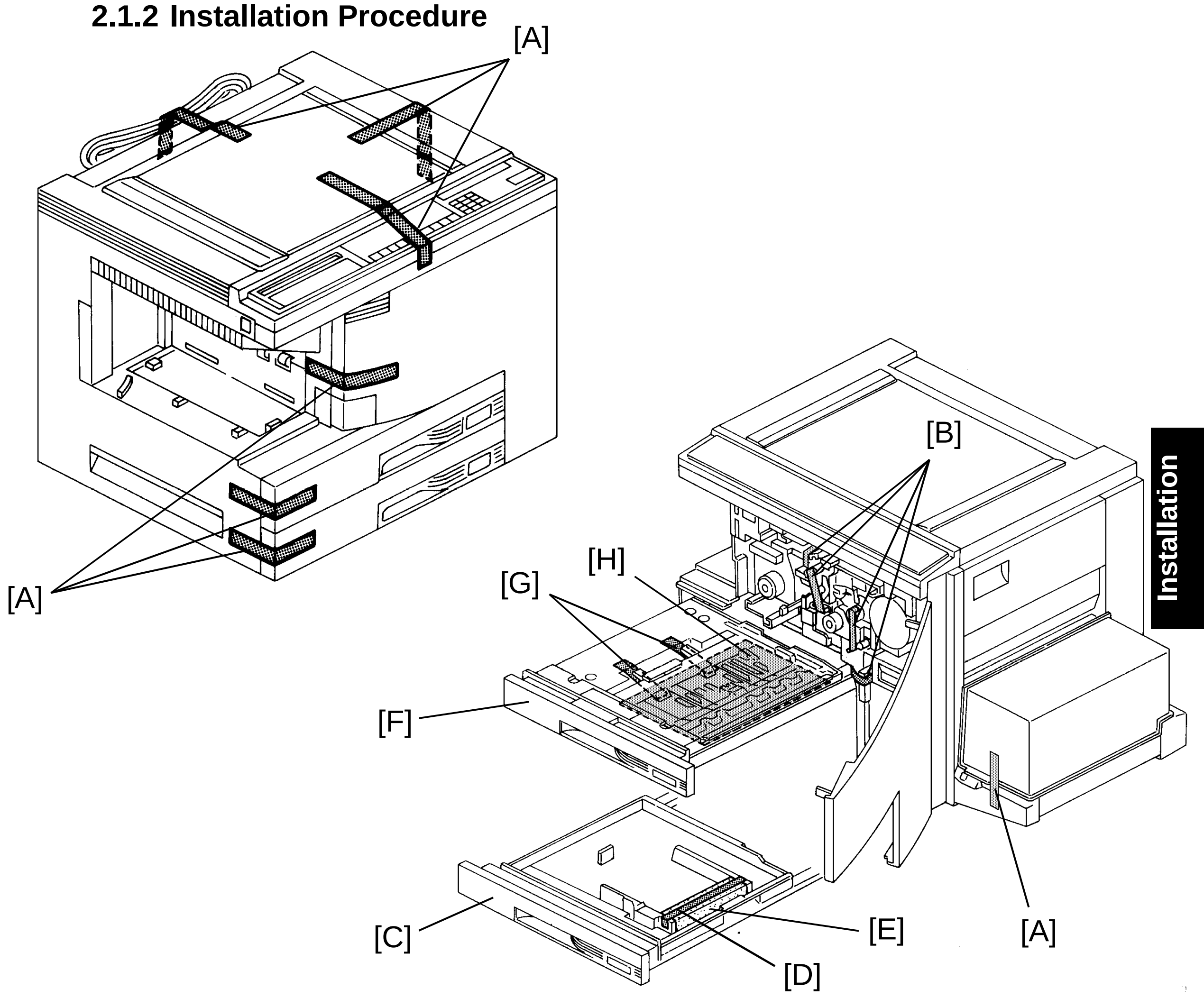
2. COPIER INSTALLATION

2.1 COPIER INSTALLATION

2.1.1 Accessory Check

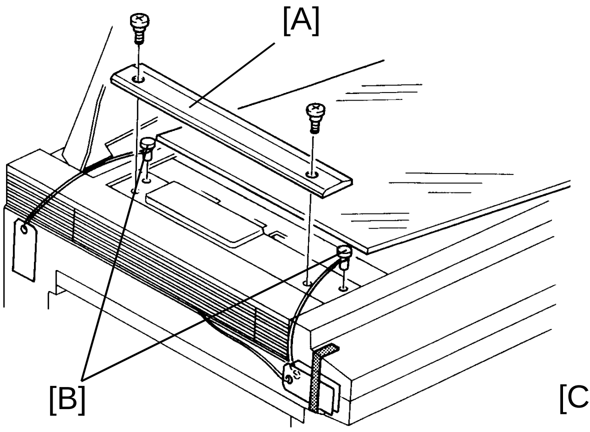
1. Receiving Tray 1
2. Outer Decal - Symbol Explanation 1
3. Sorter Key Top and Cover... 1
4. Counter Set Key (–17 machine only) 1
5. Installation Procedure.. 1
6. Operating Instructions (Except –27 machine) 1
7. Now Equipment Condition Report (–17, –19, –27, –29 machine only) 1
8. Envelope for NECR (–17 machine only) 1
9. User Survey Card (–17 machine only) 1

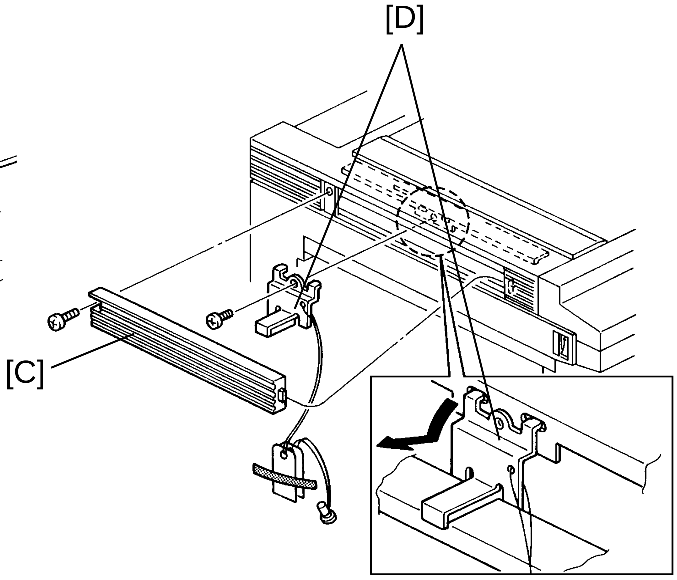
2.1.2 Installation Procedure

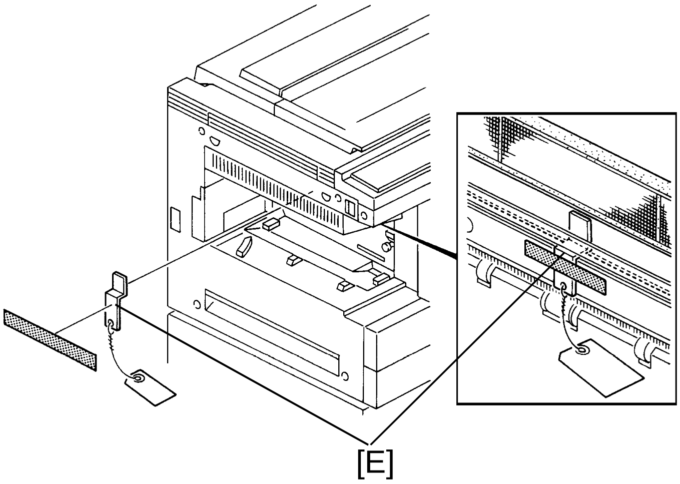


NOTE: Keep the shipping retainers after installing the machine. They will be reused if in the future the machine is transported to another location.
Proper reinstallation of the shipping retainers is required in order to avoid any transport damage. It is important to replace the scanner lock pins and the scanner lock plate before transporting this copier. If it is not done, skewed image may result.

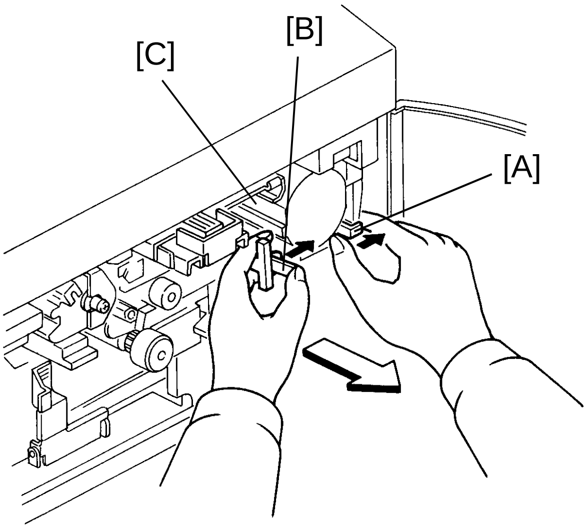
1. Remove the 7 strips of tape [A] as shown.
2. Open the front door and remove 4 strips of tape [B] as shown.
3. Pull out the paper tray [C], and remove a strip of tape [D] and the foam block [E] (1 tray for the duplex machine and 2 trays for the non-duplex machine).
4. Pull out the duplex tray [F] and remove the 2 strips of tape [G] and 3 sheets of paper [H] (duplex machine only).

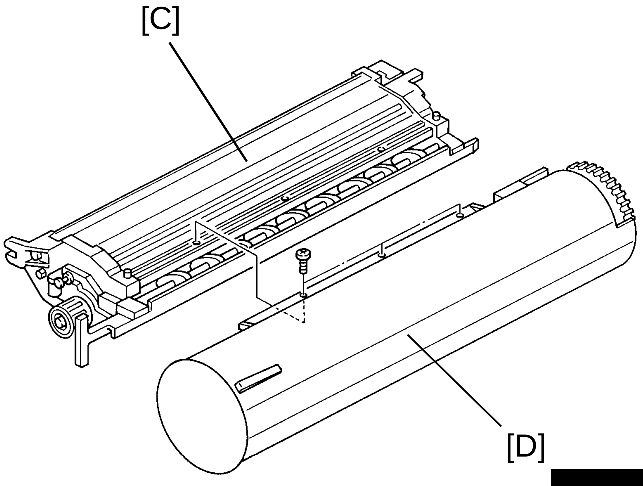


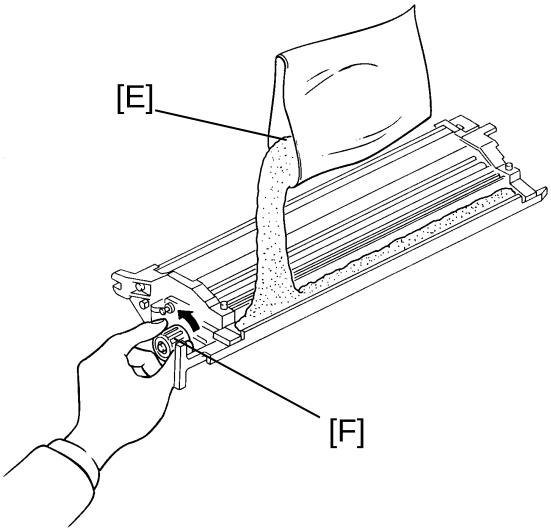




5. Remove the left scale [A] (2 shoulder screws).
6. Remove the scanner lock pin [B] simply by pulling it up from the front and the rear side of the left scale bracket.
7. Reinstall the left scale.
8. Remove the left optics cover [C] (1 screw).
9. Remove the scanner lock plate [D] (1 screw) by pulling and lifting it up and reinstall the left optics cover.
10. Remove the shipping retainer [E] holding the ozone filter. The retainer is taped on the upper exit cover.







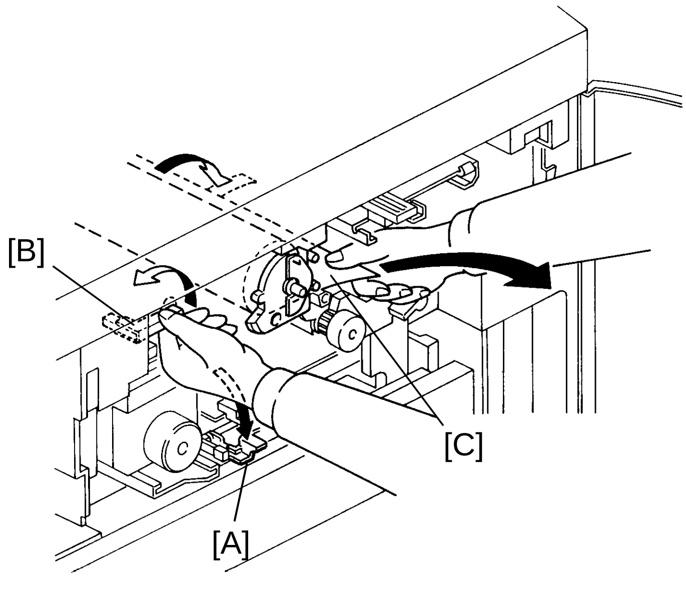
11. Push the development unit lock lever [A] to the right (to the lock position).

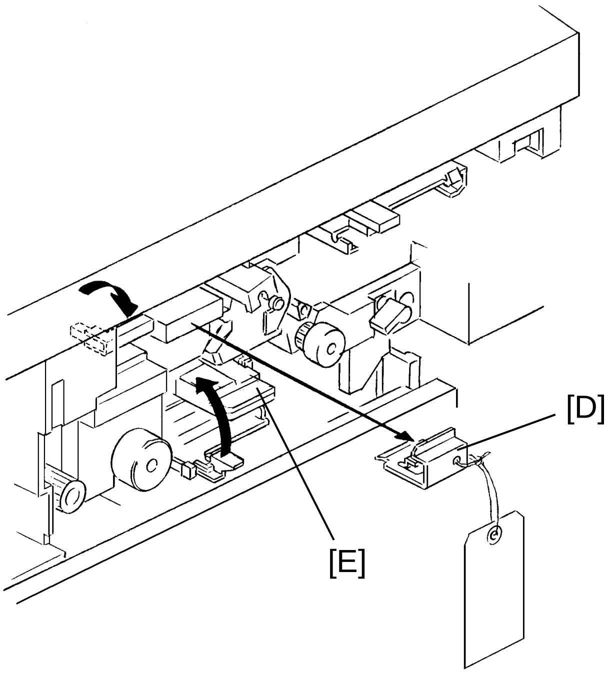
12. Move the development release lever [B] to the right and pull out the black development unit [C] half way. Holding the toner supply unit [D] with your right hand and the bottom of the development unit with your left hand, pull the unit all the way out . Place the unit on a clean sheet of paper.

13. Separate the toner supply unit from the development unit (3 screws).

14. Pour one pack of black developer [E] into the development unit while turning the development roller knob [F] counterclockwise. This will distribute the developer inside the unit.

15. Remount the toner supply unit on the development unit.

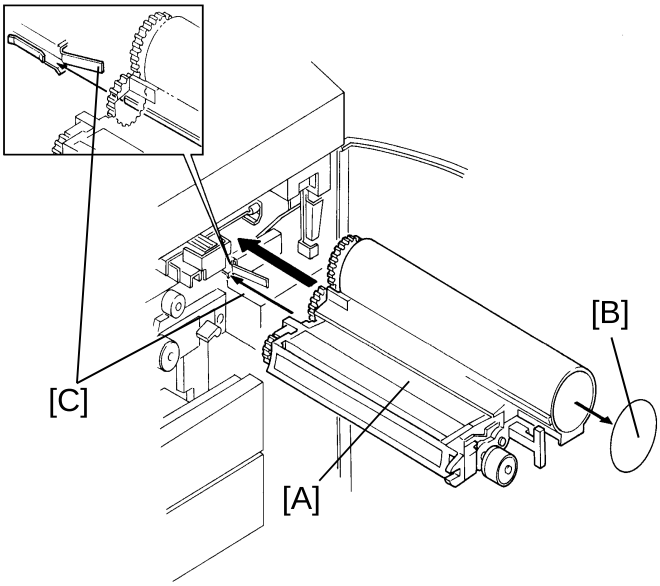


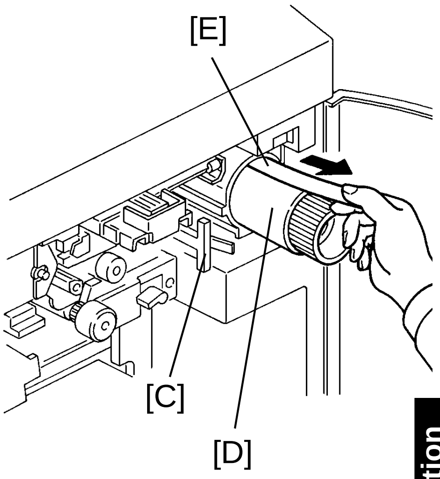


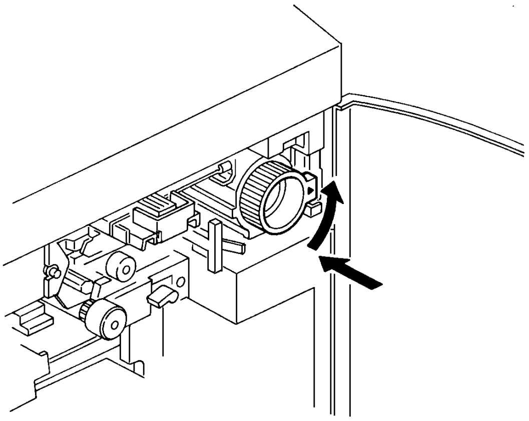
16. Lower the transfer & separation corona unit by pulling down the release lever [A].
17. Turn the cleaning unit release lever [B] counterclockwise to the upright position. (The cleaning unit is released from the drum.)
18. Remove the drum protective sheet [C] from the development unit opening.

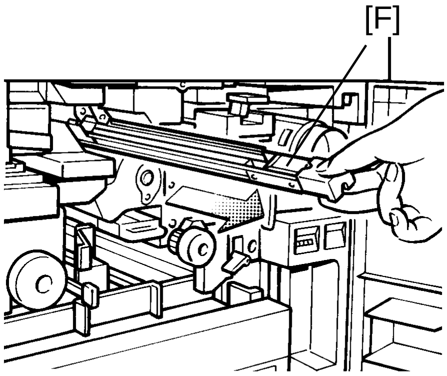
CAUTION: To avoid damaging the pick-off pawls, remove the drum protective sheet by pulling the lower side as shown in the figure.

19. Turn the cleaning unit release lever clockwise to the set position.
20. Remove the cleaning blade lock plate [D].
21. Reset the transfer & separation corona unit [E].









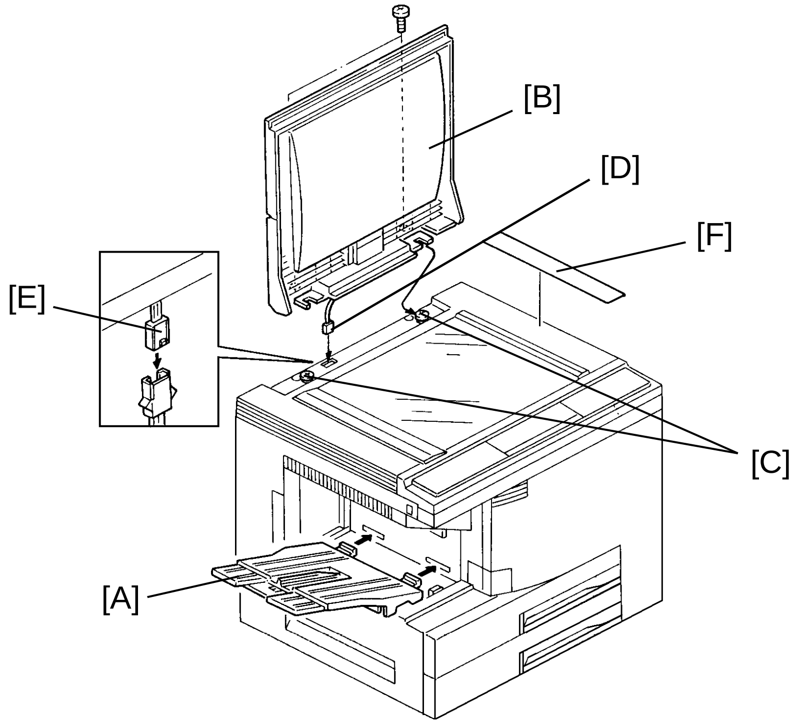
22. Install the black development unit [A] in the copier, and remove the cover sheet [B] from the toner supply unit.

    NOTE:
    - When installing the development unit, be sure that the development unit rail is placed directly on the development unit guide rail.
    - Make sure that the development release lever [C] is in its original position after the development unit is set.

23. Shake the toner cartridge [D] well from side to side. While pushing the toner cartridge in, insert it halfway into the holder with the seal [E] up.

24. As you peel off the seal, insert the cartridge completely. While pushing the toner cartridge in, turn it counterclockwise until it stops.

25. Slide out the charge corona unit [F] until it is fully extended and push it back in to the original position. Repeat this action several times.



26. Close the front door and set the copy tray [A].

NOTE: The following steps from 27 to 30 are required only to install the optional platen cover [B].

27. Remove the rear cover (remove 2 screws and loosen 2 screws).

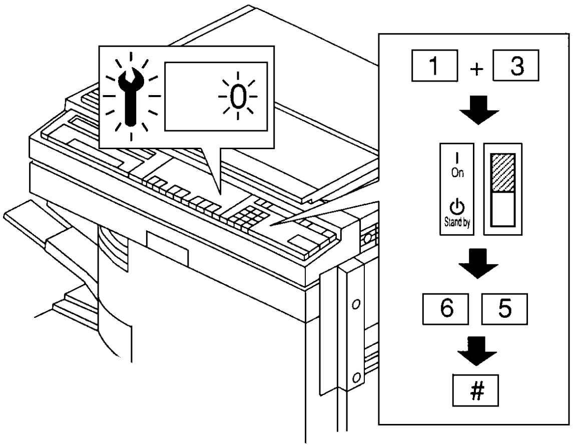
28. Install the 2 shoulder screws [C] on the top cover as shown.

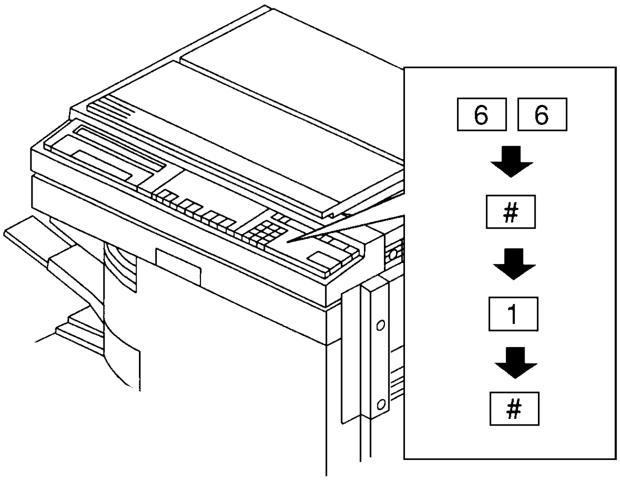
29. Pass the harness [D] through the hole of the top cover and install the optional platen cover (2 screws).

30. Couple the platen cover sensor connector [E] (3P white) with the copier and reinstall the rear cover.

31. Stick the symbols explanation decal [F] on the top cover as shown. (If the ARDF will be installed, stick the decal on the corresponding position of the ARDF.)

32. If local voltage is 230 V or 240 V, perform the voltage change procedure (following the installation procedure).





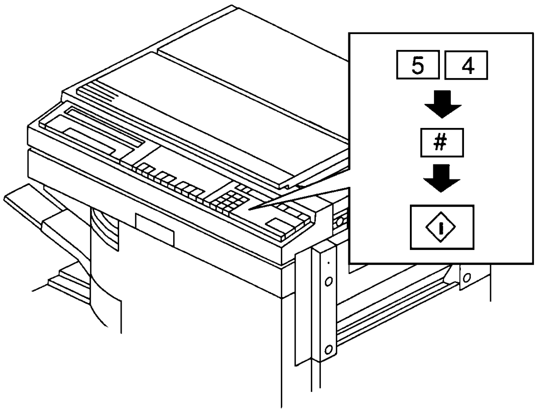
33. Load A3 (11" x 17") paper either in the 1st or the 2nd paper tray and plug in the machine.

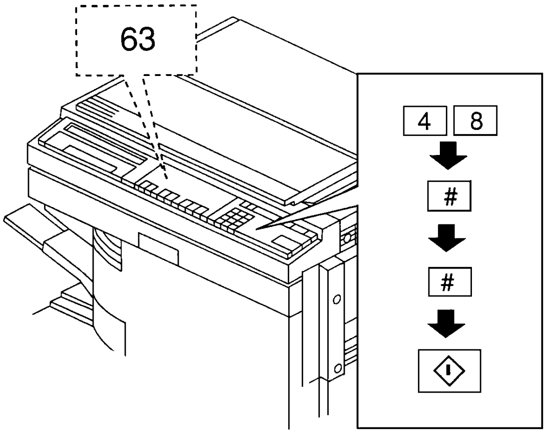
34. While pressing both the "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch in order to access the SP mode.

    NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the call service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.

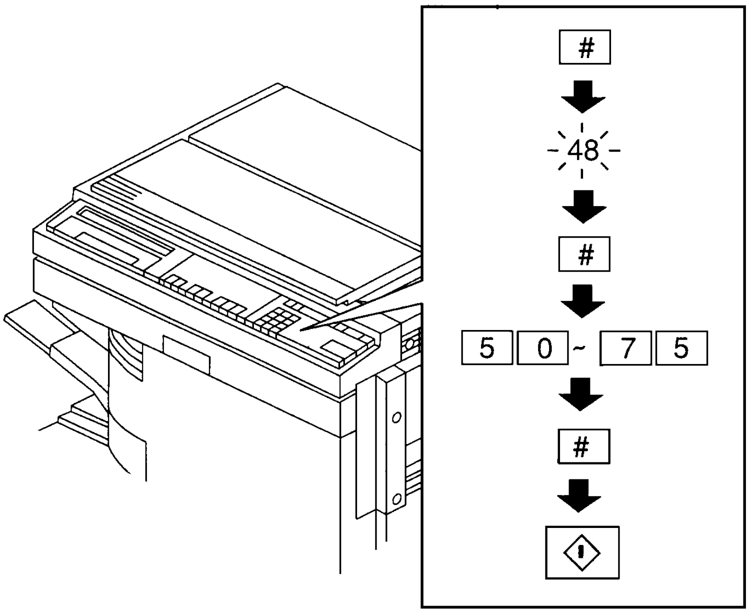
35. Enter "65" using the number keys and then press the enter key. (The copier starts the black developer initialization, this lasts about 5 minutes, and the beeper sounds 5 times when it is finished.)

36. Enter "66" using the number keys and press the enter key.
    Press "1", then the enter key.
    (The copier performs the drum initial setting and the beeper sounds 5 times.)





37. Enter "54" using the number keys and press the enter key, then the start key.
    (The copier performs ID/V sensor adjustments and the beeper sounds 2 times after 4 seconds.)
38. Enter "48" using the number keys and then press the enter key twice.
39. Set the test chart on the exposure glass.
40. Make a full size copy at the manual image density level #4 (center) after the copier has warmed up (the beeper sounds 3 times).



41. Confirm that level 2 of the gray scale is just visible on the copy.

If the image density is not correct, go through the following steps.

(1) Press the enter key twice.

(2) Change the exposure lamp voltage data displayed in the magnification ratio indicator. Use the number keys and follow these rules:

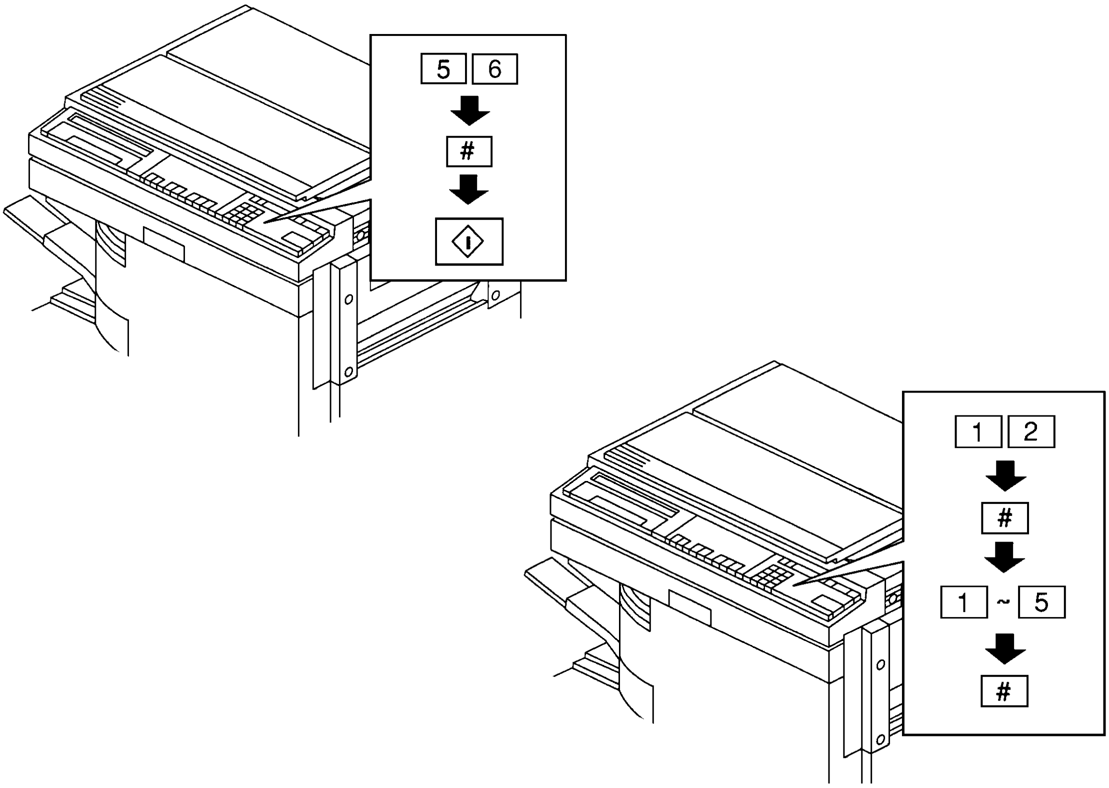
If the image density is too dark:	increase the setting
If the image density is too light:	decrease the setting

NOTE: The data can be set between 50 and 75 in 0.5 steps.(The default setting is "63".)

(3) Press the enter key and then make a copy.

(4) Confirm if the image density is correct or not.
If not, repeat the above steps from (1) to (3).

NOTE: The initial exposure lamp voltage **must** be adjusted in this step. If the adjustment is done after step 45 (the machine performs the initial V_L pattern detection), the reference voltage for the exposure lamp voltage correction will be wrong throughout the drum's life.



42. Press the enter key and enter "56" using the number keys.

43. Press the enter key, then the start key.
(The copier performs the ADS sensor adjustment and the beeper sounds 2 times after 4 seconds.)

44. Enter "12" using the number keys and press the enter key.
(duplex machine only)

45. Enter the number for the desired language on the guidance display, and press the enter key. (duplex machine only).
1: English 2: French 3: German 4: Italian 5: Spanish

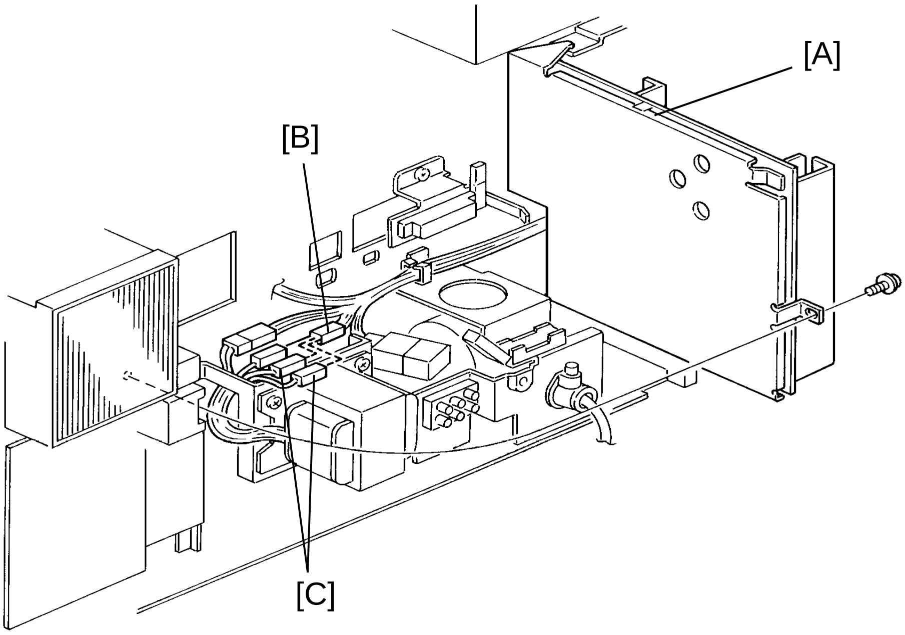
46. Turn the main switch off and on.

47. Enter "6" using the number keys and make copies in the full size mode.
(The copier performs the V_R sensor initial check during the copy cycle. When the copy cycle is finished, the copier performs the V_L sensor initial check by lighting the exposure lamp at the home position.)

48. Check the machine operation and copy quality.

49. Tell the customers that this copier sometimes keeps turning on the exposure lamp at the home position when copy jobs are finished (the same phenomenon as in step 47).
This is normal for this copier, and this also helps maintain good copy quality.

2.2 VOLTAGE CHANGE (220V to 230/240V)



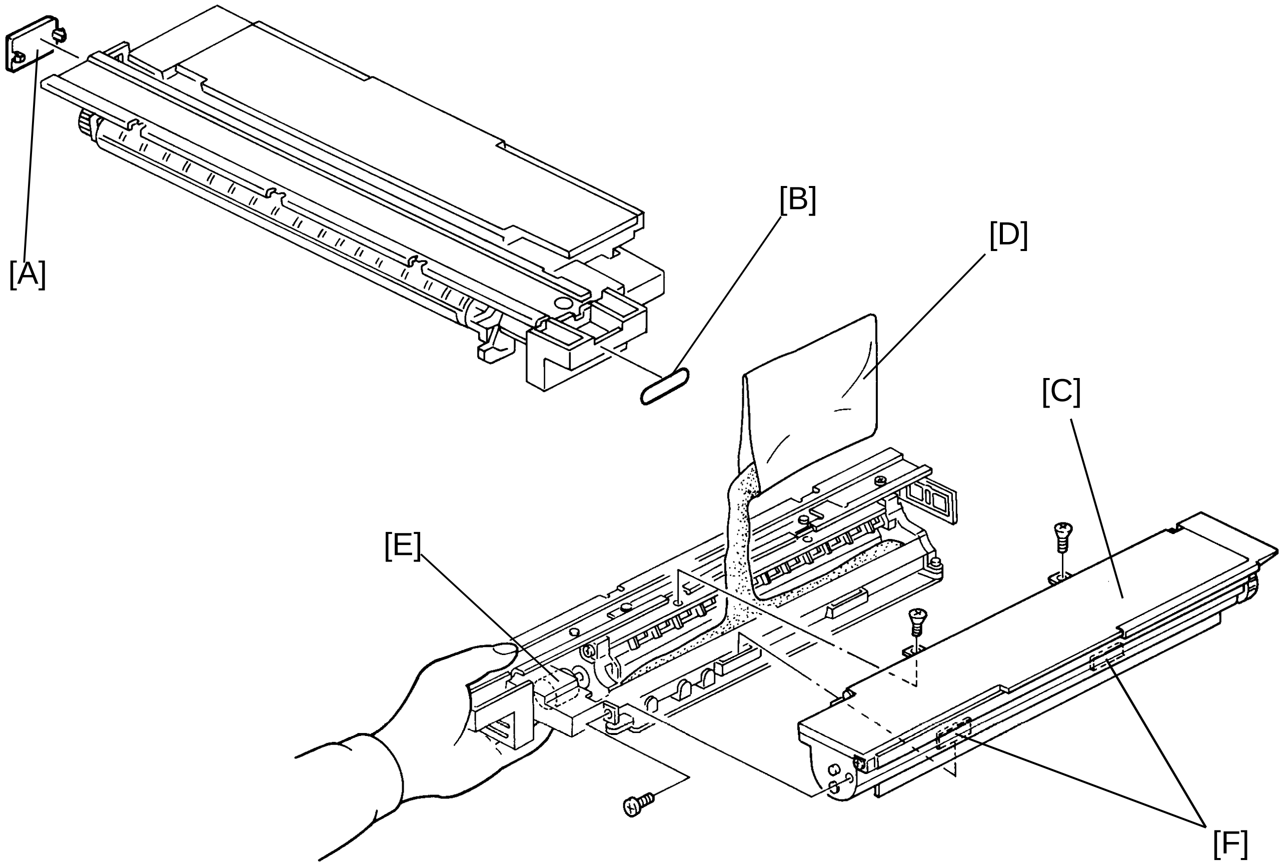
NOTE: If the voltage of electrical power supply from wall outlets is 230V or 240V, the following procedure must be done before plugging in the machine.

CAUTION: Make sure that the power cord of the machine is unplugged before starting the following procedure.

1. Remove the rear cover (remove 2 screws and loosen 2 screws).
2. Swing out the dc power supply board assembly [A] (1screw).
3. Disconnect the 1P connector [B] of the ac main harness and reconnect it to the appropriate voltage connector [C] of the main transformer.

   NOTE: Each 1P connector of the main transformer has its voltage rating printed on it.
4. Reassemble the copier.

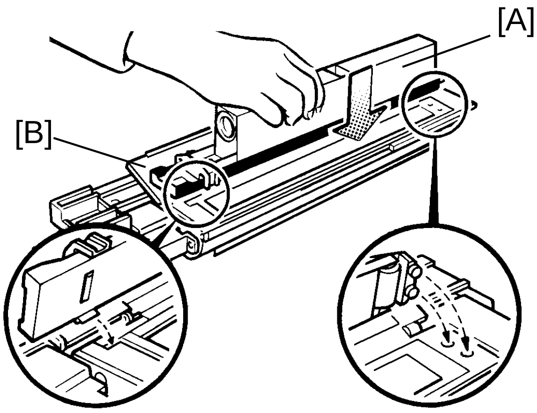
2.3 COLOR DEVELOPMENT UNIT INSTALLATION (OPTION)

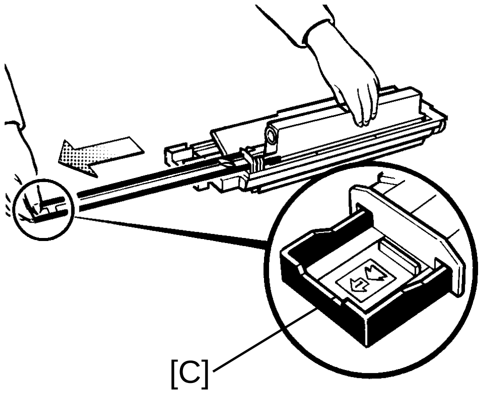


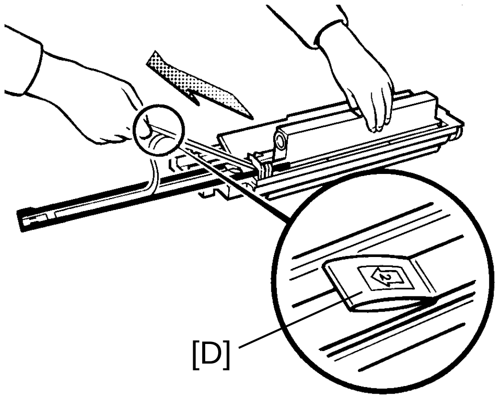
NOTE: This is a universal color development unit for red, blue, and green developer and toner.

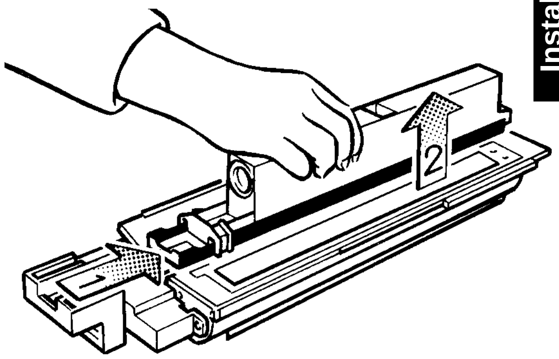
1. Install the appropriate color detection plate [A] on the rear bracket of the color development unit. (The plate color corresponds to the developer and toner color.)
2. Stick the appropriate color decal [B] on the development unit handle.
3. Separate the toner supply unit [C] from the development unit (3 screws).
4. Pour one bag of color developer [D] into the development unit while turning the development roller knob [E] counterclockwise. This will distribute the developer evenly inside the unit.
5. Remount the toner supply unit on the development unit.

   NOTE: When setting the toner supply unit, be sure that the 2 plates of the toner supply unit [F] fit in the positioning grooves.

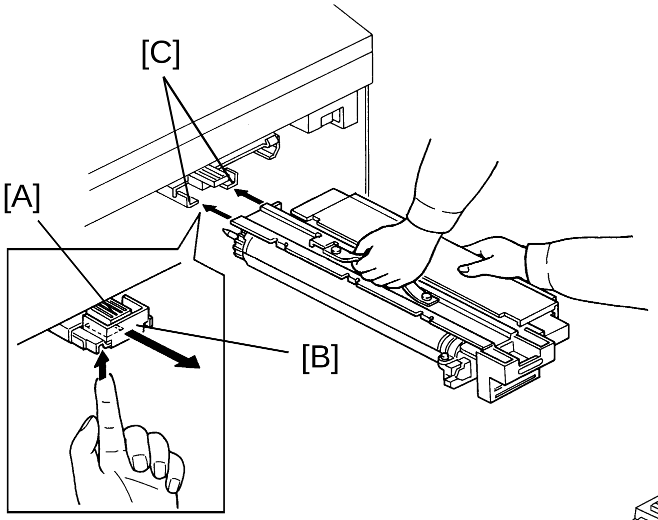


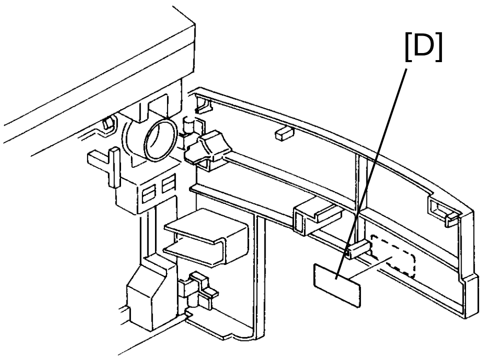


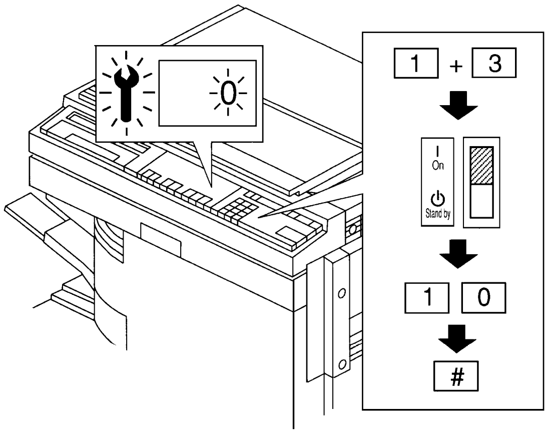




6. Shake the color toner cartridge [A].
7. Open the color toner supply unit cover [B] and set the color toner cartridge on the color toner supply unit as shown.
8. Holding the center part of the cartridge, push down and pull out the slide plate [C] until it stops.
9. Pull out the seal [D] until the red line is visible.
10. Gently tap the cartridge so that all the toner in the cartridge falls inside the toner supply unit.
11. Return the slide plate to its original position and remove the cartridge.
12. Close the color toner supply unit cover.



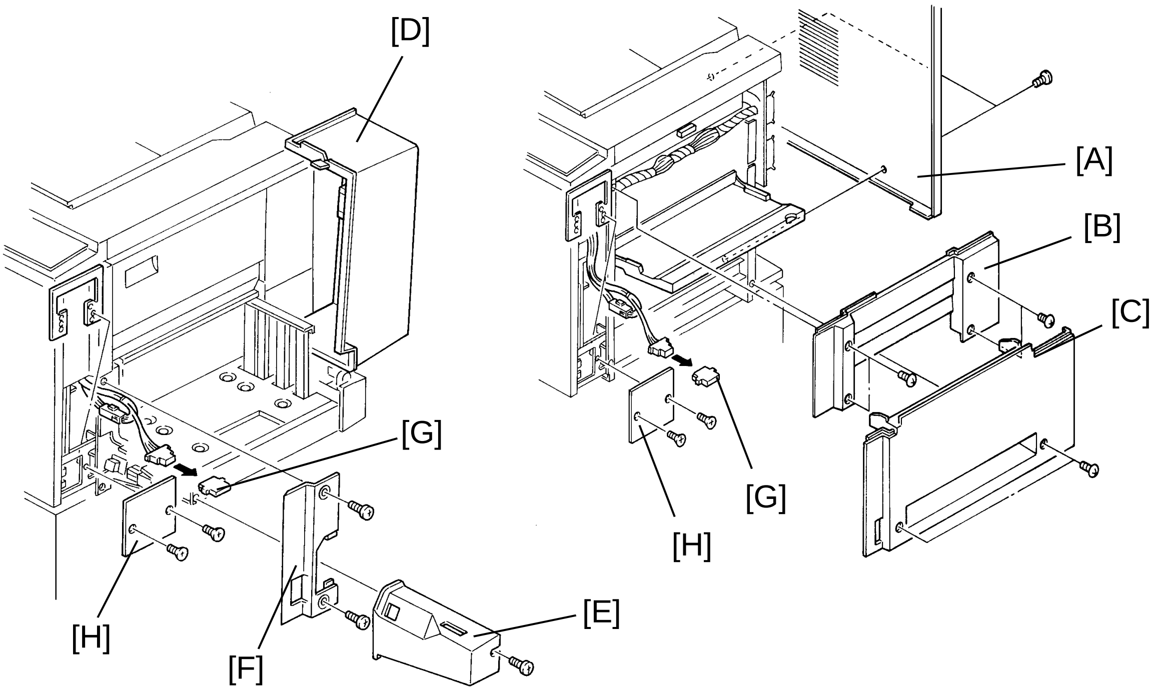




13. Open the copier front door.
14. While lifting the color development unit lock lever [A], pull out he cover plate [B].
15. Holding the strap of the color development unit with your left hand, hold the toner supply unit with your right hand, and insert the development unit along the guide rails [C].
16. While lifting the color development unit lock lever, push the unit in until it stops.
17. Stick the decal [D] on the copier front door as shown and close the copier front door.
18. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch in order to access the SP mode.

    NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the call service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.
19. Enter "10" using the number keys and then press the enter key. (The copier starts the color developer initialization, this lasts about 1 minute, and the beeper sounds 5 times)
20. Turn the main switch off and on.
21. Check the color copy quality.

2.4 KEY COUNTER HOLDER INSTALLATION (OPTION)



CAUTION: Make sure that the main switch is turned off.

[Machines without LCT]

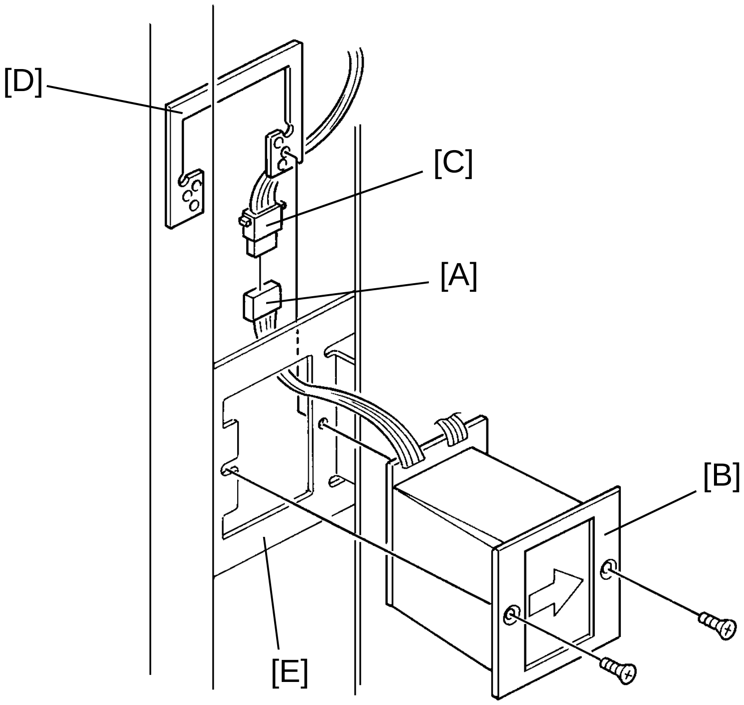
1. Remove the rear cover [A] (remove 2 screws and loosen 2 screws).
2. Open the by-pass feed table and remove the right upper cover [B] (4 screws).
3. Remove the right lower cover [C] (2 screws).
   --- Go to step 4.

[Machines with LCT]

1. Lift up the LCT top cover [D] and remove the LCT front cover [E] (1 screw).
2. Remove the right front lower cover [F] (2 screws).
   --- Go to step 4.

[Common procedure]

4. Remove the shorting connector [G] from the key counter connector.
5. Remove the key counter cover [H] from the key counter holder bracket (2 screws).



6. Pass the 4P connector [A] of the key counter holder [B] through the key counter holder access hole and couple it with the key counter connector [C] of the copier.

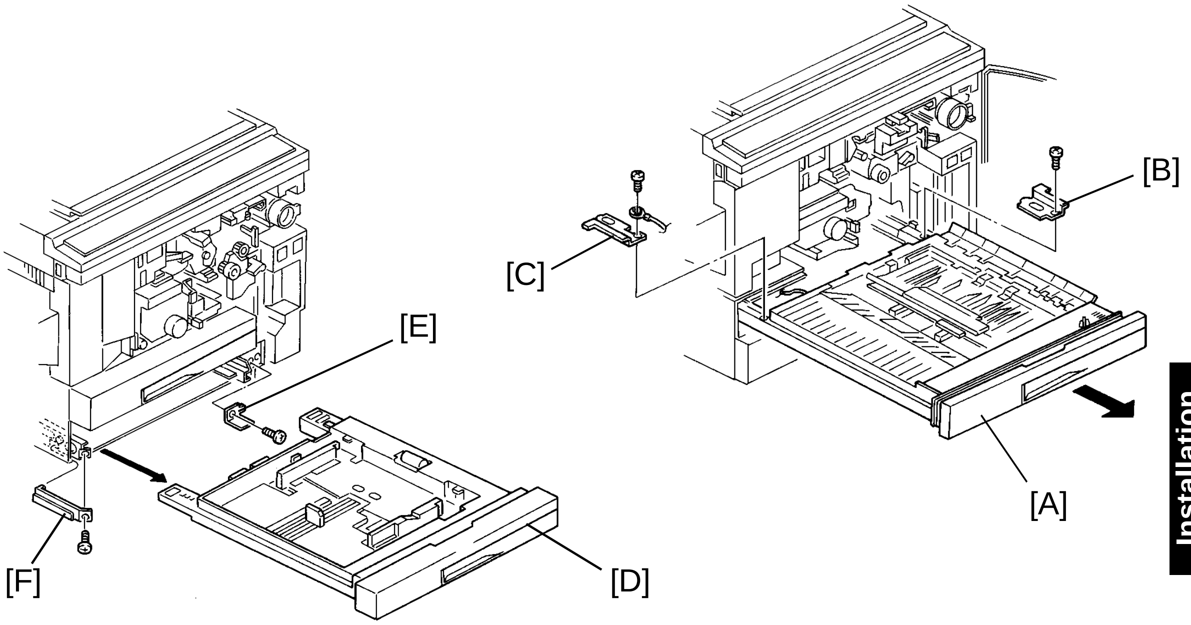
7. Hold the fixing plate [D] on the inside of the key counter holder bracket [E] and insert the key counter holder.

8. Align the holes in the fixing plate with the mounting holes of the key counter holder and secure the key counter holder (2 screws).

   NOTE: The fixing plate has three different hole sizes. Use the holes that match those on the key counter holder that you are installing.

9. Reinstall all the covers and check the key counter operation.

2.5 TRAY HEATER INSTALLATION (OPTION)

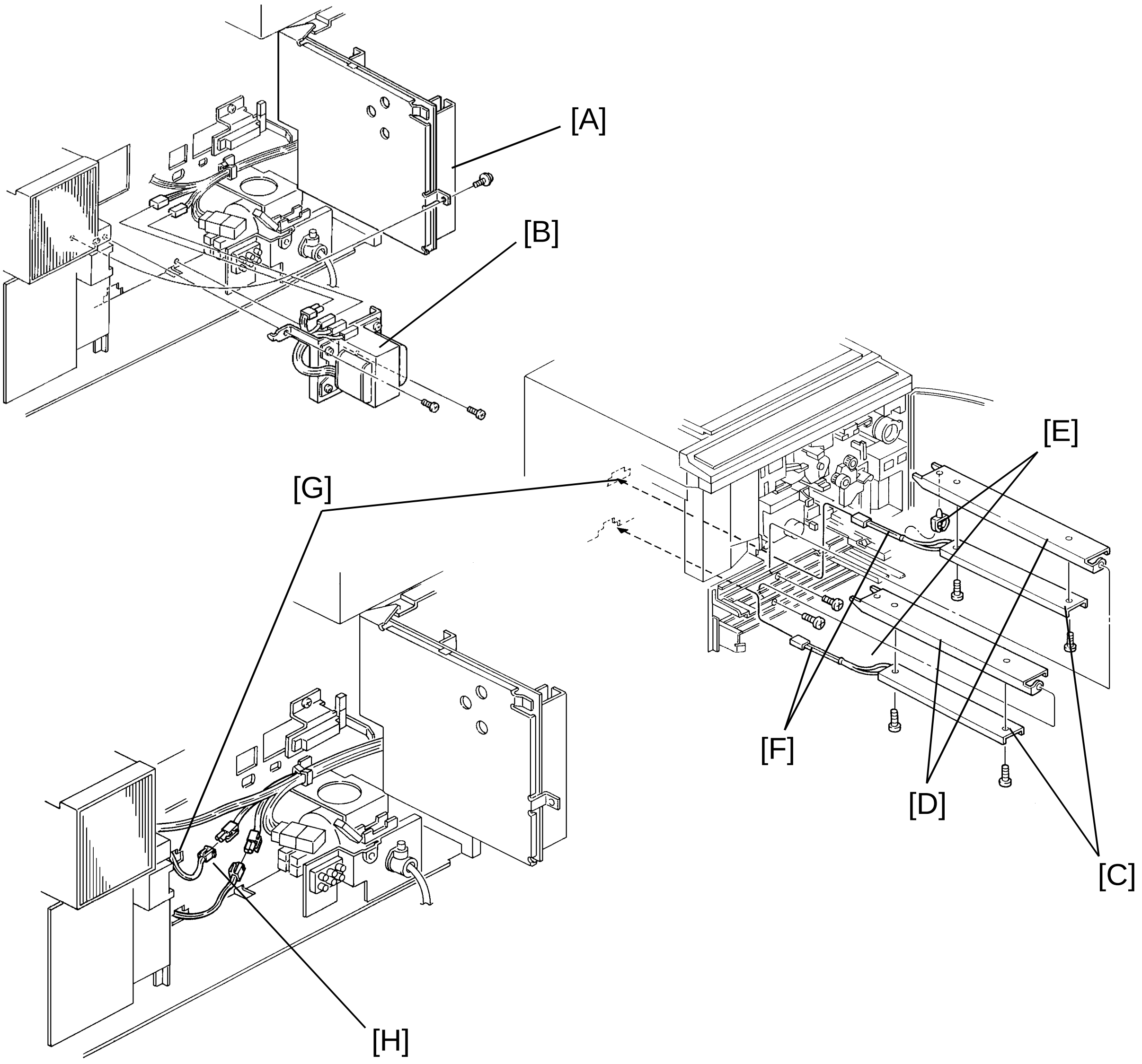


NOTE: The optional tray heaters keep copy paper dry. In humid environments, copy paper may crease as it comes out of the fusing unit. The heaters are available as service parts.

Required parts:	P/N A0699500: Tray Heater Kit –115V	2 sets
	P/N A0699501: Tray Heater Kit –230V	2 sets
The contents of the kits are as follows:	Tray heater	1 piece
	Tray heater bracket	1 piece
	Wire saddle	1 piece
	Philips pan head screw	3 pieces
	Decal: High Temp.	1 piece

CAUTION: Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.

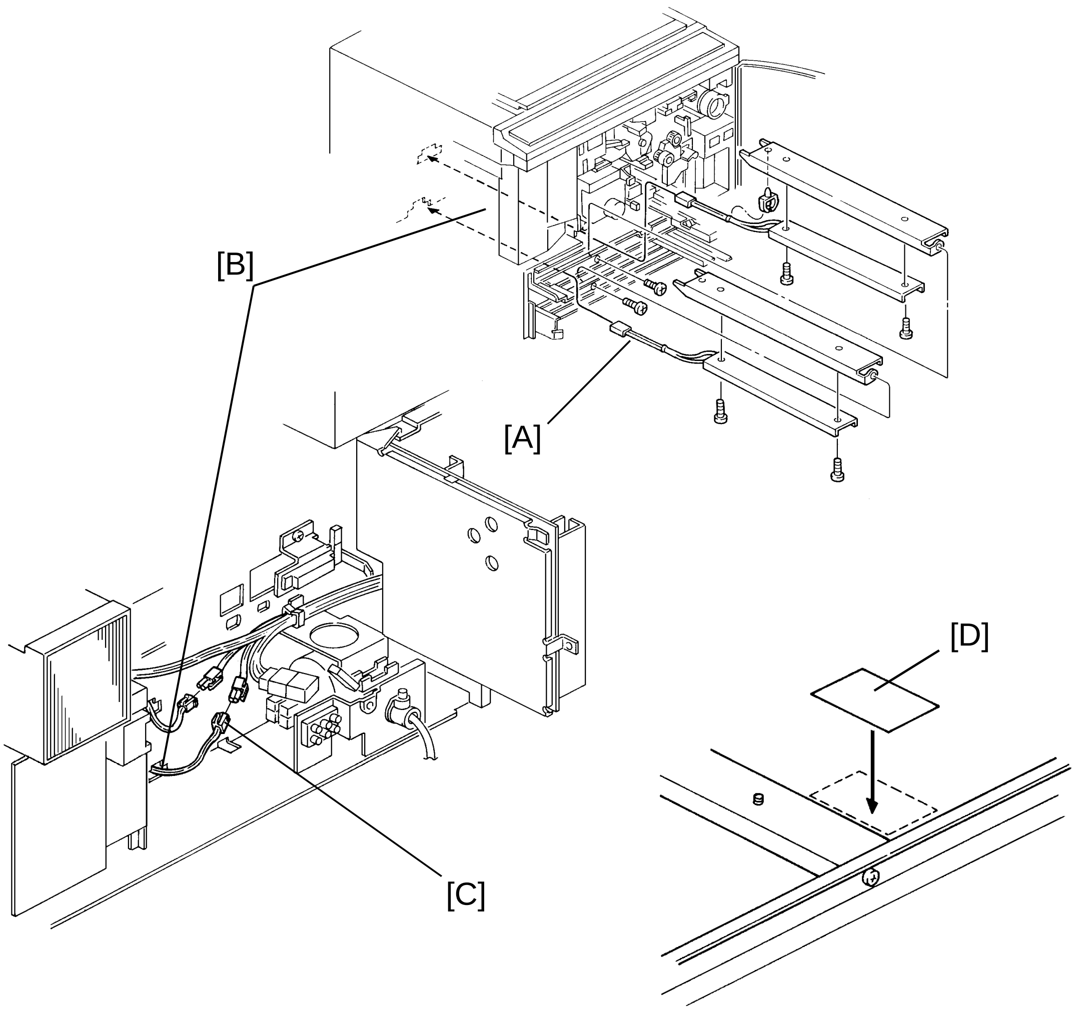
1. Open the copier front door.
2. Pull out the duplex tray [A] and remove the tray stopper brackets [B], [C] on both side rails as shown (1 screw each), and then remove the duplex tray from the copier [duplex machines only].
3. Pull out the paper tray [D] and remove the tray stopper brackets [E], [F] on both sides as shown (1 screw each) and then remove the paper tray from the copier [both paper trays for non-duplex machines].



4. Remove the rear cover (remove 2 screws and loosen 2 screws).
5. Swing out the dc power supply board assembly [A] (1 screw).
6. Remove the main transformer assembly [B] (2 screws and 2 connectors).
7. Fix the tray heater [C] on the tray heater bracket [D] (2 screws), and set the wire saddle [E] and the heater harness [F] on the bracket as shown. Make 2 sets of this assembly.

[Upper tray heater]

8. Pass the heater harness through the upper heater access hole [G] and install the tray heater assembly as shown (1 screw at the front).
9. Connect the heater connector [H] with the copier as shown (2P red).



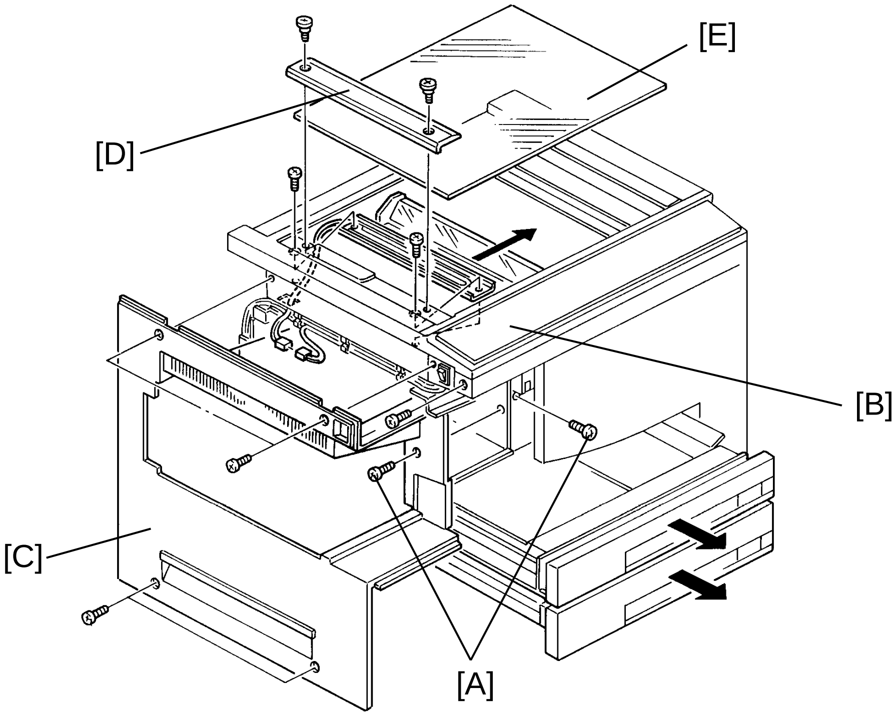
[Lower tray heater]

10. Pass the heater harness [A] through the lower heater access hole [B] and install the tray heater assembly as shown (1 screw at the front).
11. Connect the heater connector [C] with the copier as shown (2P red).

[Upper and Lower tray heaters]

12. Stick the warning high temp. decal [D] on the plate, to the right of the tray heater bracket as shown.
13. Reassemble the copier.
14. Tell the customer that the copier main switch should be turned off and the power cord should not be unplugged at night. Otherwise, the tray heaters will not function.

2.6 OPTICS ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER INSTALLATION (OPTION)



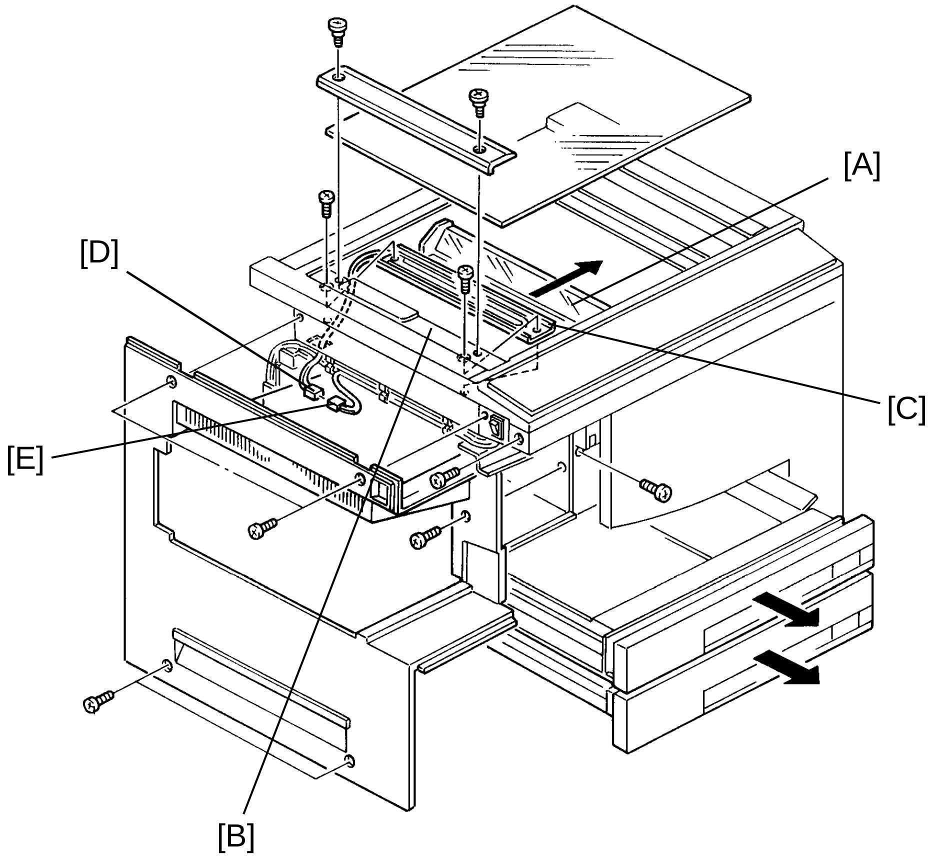
NOTE: The optional optics anti-condensation heater keeps water from condensing on the copier's mirrors. Such condensation occurs under cold and high humidity conditions, and causes the first few copies of the day to be black or dark. The heater is available as a service part.

Required parts:

Optics anti-condensation heater	(P/N AX400008 for 115V area, P/N AX400009 for 220/230/240V area)	1 piece
Philips pan head screw (M4 x 8)	(P/N 04340080W)	2 pieces

CAUTION: Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.

1. Open the front door and pull out the 1st and 2nd (or the paper and duplex) trays.
2. Remove the left and front side screws [A] of the front upper cover [B] and remove the left cover [C] (5 screws).
3. Remove the left scale [D] (2 shoulder screws) and the exposure glass [E].



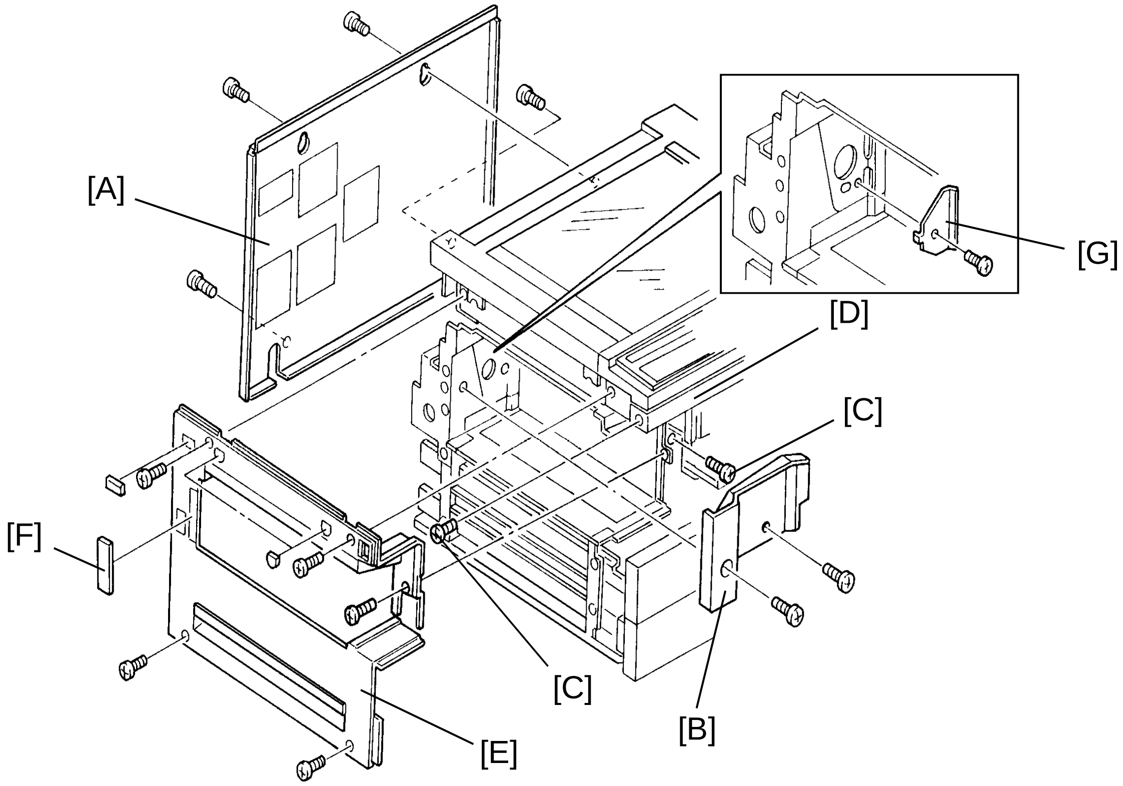
4. Move the 1st and 2nd scanners [A] to the left so that you can access under the left scale bracket [B].
5. Install the optics anti-condensation heater [C] on the optics bottom plate as shown with 2 screws.
6. Pass the heater connector [D] through the heater harness access hole and connect it with the ac harness connector [E] (2P red) as shown.
7. Reassemble the copier.
8. Tell the customer that the copier main switch should be turned off and the power cord should not be unplugged at night. Otherwise. the optics anti-condensation heater will not function.

2.7 SORTER ADAPTER INSTALLATION (OPTION)

2.7.1 Accessory Check

1. Cover Bracket	1
2. Gear Assembly	1
3. Cover Plate	1
4. Hinge Bracket	1
5. Front Door	1
6. Hinge Pin	2
7. Philips Pan Head Screw M4 x 8	10
8. Philips Pan Head Screw with Washer	1
9. Installation Procedure	1
10. New Equipment Condition Report (–17 machine only)	1

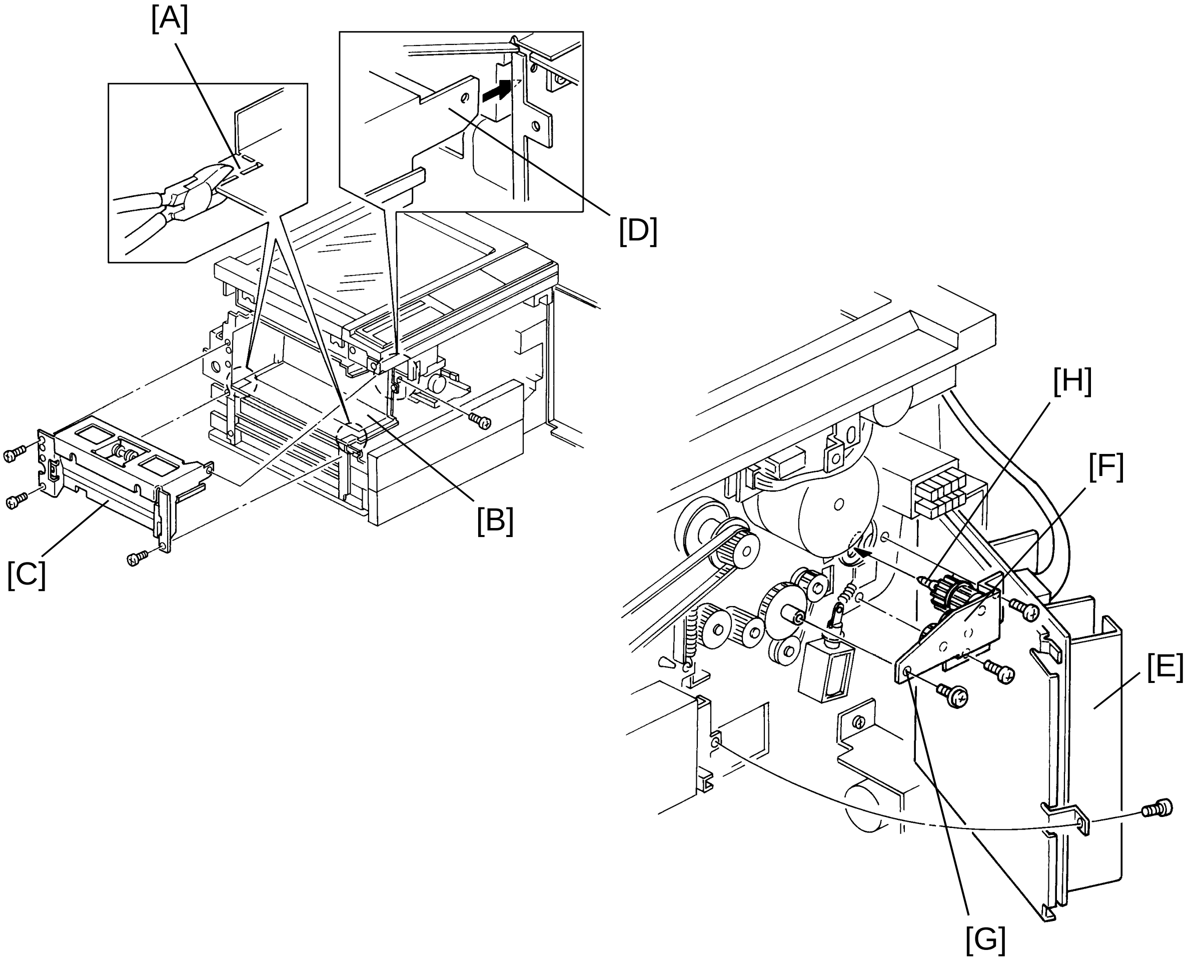
2.7.2 Installation Procedure



NOTE: The sorter adapter is required to transport copy papers from the copier exit rollers to the sorter entrance guide plates. It is required when the mini-sorter (A423), midi-sorter (A411), or sorter stapler (A366) is installed.

CAUTION: unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.

1. Remove the copier rear cover [A] (remove 2 screws and loosen 2 screws) and the left small cover [B] (2 screws).
2. Open the front door and pull out the 1st and 2nd (or the paper and duplex) trays.
3. Remove the left and front side screws [C] of the front upper cover [D] and remove the left cover [E] (5 screws).
4. Remove the cover plate [F] from the left cover by cutting it with cutting pliers.
5. Install the cover bracket [G] on the rear side frame as shown (1 screw).



6. Remove the 2 corners [A] of the left bottom cover [B] as shown with the cutting pliers.

7. Install the sorter adapter [C] (4 screws) on the paper exit section of the copier.

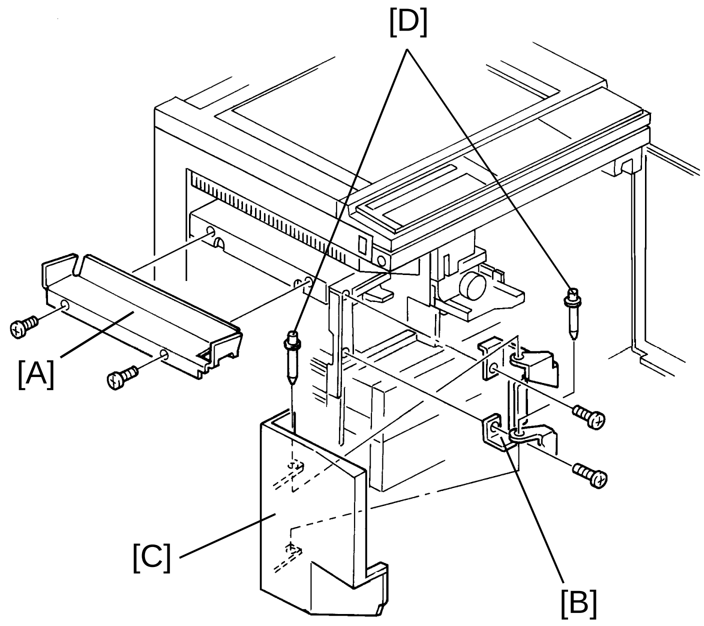
   NOTE:
   - The front upper right part of the sorter adapter bracket [D] should be placed in-between the copier front side plate and the upper exit cover.
   - The top and the bottom screw holes of the rear bracket should be used for securing the sorter adapter.

8. Swing out the dc power supply board assembly [E] (1 screw).

9. Install the gear assembly [F] (3 screws) on the copier rear side plate as shown.

   NOTE: The positioning hole of the gear assembly bracket [G] should fit over the positioning stud of the copier drive gear. Also, the positioning pin of the gear assembly [H] should be placed in the positioning hole of the sorter adapter bracket.

10. Reinstall the dc power supply board.



11. Reinstall the copier left cover and secure the left and front sides of the front upper cover.
12. Install the cover plate [A] (2 screws) on the sorter adapter.
13. Install the hinge bracket [B] (2 screws) on the front side plate of the sorter adapter.
14. Install the front door [C] on the hinge bracket with the 2 hinge pins [D].

SECTION 4

SERVICE TABLES

1. SERVICE REMARKS

1.1 HANDLING THE DRUM

The organic photoconductor drum is comparatively more sensitive to light and ammonia gas than a selenium drum.

1. Never expose the drum to direct sunlight.
2. Never touch the drum surface with bare hands. When the drum surface is touched with a finger or becomes dirty, wipe with a dry cloth or clean with wet cotton. Wipe with a dry cloth after cleaning with wet cotton.
3. Never use alcohol to clean the drum; alcohol dissolves the drum surface.
4. Store the drum in a cool, dry place away from heat.
5. Take care not to scratch the drum as the drum layer is thin and is easily damaged.
6. Never expose the drum to corrosive gases such as ammonia gas.
7. Always keep the drum in the protective sheet when keeping the drum unit, or the drum itself, out of the copier. Doing so avoids exposing the drum to bright light or direct sunlight. This will protect the drum from light fatigue.
8. Before inserting or pulling out the drum unit, the following should be performed to avoid damaging the drum:
   a) Remove the black and color development units
   b) Remove the cleaning unit
   c) Remove the charge corona unit
   d) Lower the T&S corona unit
9. Drum initial setting (SP66) must be performed when a new drum is installed.

1.2 DRUM UNIT

1. Make sure that the drum unit is set in position and secured with the screw when the main switch is turned on. If the drum unit is loose, poor contact of the drum connectors may cause electrical noise, resulting in unexpected malfunction (RAM data change is the worst case).

2. Clean the green color filter on the drum unit top plate with a dry cloth and discharge static electricity by touching it with your finger. Do not clean the filter with water or any other cleaning solution as the filter has an antistatic coating.

1.3 CHARGE CORONA

1. Clean the corona wires by sliding the corona unit in and out. (The cleaner pads come into contact with the corona wires when the corona unit is slid all the way out.) The wires can be also cleaned with water. Do not use sandpaper or a solvent.

2. Clean the charge corona casing with water first to remove NOx. Then clean it with alcohol if any toner still remains on the casing.

3. Clean the end blocks with a blower brush first to remove toner and paper dust. Then clean it with alcohol if any toner still remains on it.

4. Do not touch the corona wires with oily bare hands. Oil stains may cause white bands on copies.

5. Make sure that the corona wires are correctly positioned between the cleaner pads and that there is no foreign material (iron filings, etc.) on the casing.

6. When installing new corona wires, do not bend or scratch the wire surface to avoid any uneven charge. Also be sure that the corona wires are correctly positioned in the rear end block and that the damper rings are correctly positioned in the front end block. (See charge corona wire replacement.)

7. Clean the charge grid plate with a blower bush (not with a cloth).

8. Do not touch the charge grid plate with oily bare hands. Also, do not bend the charge grid plate or make any dent on it. Doing so may cause uneven charge.

9. The corona wire height should only be adjusted when the front end block is replaced.

1.4 OPTICS

1. When installing the exposure glass, make sure that the red mark on the edge of the glass faces up. This side has received a special treatment to be smoother and generate less static electricity. This is especially important when the ARDF is installed.
2. When moving the 1st or 2nd scanners, always hold them at the center. Move them slowly, carefully, and gently.
   Abrupt movement may cause the belt to slip into the wrong position on the scanner drive pulleys.
3. Do not bend or crease the exposure lamp flat cable. Be careful of this especially when reinstalling the lens housing cover.
4. When reinstalling the lens housing cover, make sure that the light shielding mylar on the original length sensor does not interfere with the light path to the ADS sensor board.
5. Do not touch the following parts with bare hands:
   a) Reflectors
   b) Exposure lamp
   c) Mirrors and lens
   d) ID sensor and V_L patterns
6. To clean the mirrors and lens, only use a clean soft cloth damped with alcohol or water.
7. Do not adjust uneven exposure by changing the exposure lamp position but by using the exposure adjusting plates. Adjusting the lamp position is very difficult because the filament cannot be seen clearly as the lamp is frosted.
8. Adjust the exposure lamp voltage (SP48) only when the drum initial setting (SP66) is performed.
9. Do not remove the lens housing guide plate and the 3rd scanner guide plate. They were positioned on the optics base plate with a special jig at the factory.

1.5 ERASE LAMP

1. A narrower lead edge erase margin increases the possibility of fusing jams. The margin should be at least 1.0 mm.
2. After cleaning the erase lamp unit, rub it lightly with your finger to discharge any static electricity on the unit surface.
3. Make sure that the erase lamp setting (SP84) is correct. Otherwise, ID sensor abnormal condition will occur.

1.6 DEVELOPMENT UNIT

1. Be careful not to nick or scratch the development roller sleeve.
2. Place the development unit on a sheet of paper after removing it from the copier. This prevents any small metal objects (staples, clips, E-rings, etc.) from being attracted to the development roller and getting inside the unit.
3. Be careful not to bend the bias terminals.
4. Clean the drive gears after removing the used developer.
5. Never load different types of developer or toner (black and color) into the development unit. Doing so will cause poor copy image and toner scattering inside the copier.
6. Developer initialization is necessary when new developer is loaded.
   a) Black developer initialize (SP65)
   b) Color developer initialize (SP10)
7. Adjust the black development bias voltage (SP37) together with the exposure lamp voltage (SP48) if necessary. This should be done only when the drum initial setting (SP66) is performed. The results of adjusting the black bias voltage with the used drum will be compensated by the exposure lamp voltage when the VL pattern detections are performed. The color development bias voltage (SP79) can be adjusted any time.
8. The doctor gaps must not be adjusted in the field as they are strictly adjusted at the factory.

1.7 TRANSFER AND SEPARATION

1. Clean the T&S corona unit casing with water then with alcohol if necessary.
2. Clean the separation corona wire only with dry cloth as it is carbon coated.
3. Clean the end blocks with a blower brush and alcohol.

1.8 CLEANING UNIT

1. When servicing the cleaning unit, be careful not to damage the edge of the cleaning blade.
2. Do not touch the cleaning brush with bare hands.
3. Before pulling out the cleaning unit, place a sheet of paper under it to catch any toner falling from the unit.
4. Empty the used toner tank in the following cases:
    a) At PM
    b) When the used toner tank is filled more than half of its capacity. (Of course it is better to do it at every visit.)
    c) When an ID sensor abnormal condition happens. (Used toner tank overflow cannot be detected.)
5. Perform the toner end counter clear (SP83) whenever the used toner tank is emptied.
6. If the toner end counter (SP58) is cleared by accident (by SP83 or any other reason), empty the used toner tank.

1.9 PRE-TRANSFER AND QUENCHING LAMPS

1. When removing the PTL filter to clean it, take out the drum unit first to prevent any damage on the drum.
2. When reinstalling the PTL filter, make sure that the filter is correctly positioned.
3. After cleaning the quenching lamp filter, rub it lightly with your finger to discharge any static electricity on the filter.

1.10 PAPER FEED

1. Do not touch the pick-up, feed, separation rollers and the friction pads with oily bare hands.
2. The side fences and the rear fence of the paper trays should be positioned correctly to align with the actual paper size. Otherwise, paper misfeeds may occur.
3. The friction pad should be replaced together with the friction pad holder and pad entrance seal as an assembly.
4. The friction pad assembly and the paper feed roller should be replaced as a set to maintain paper feed ability. (A worn out feed roller will provide incorrect friction pad pressure.)
5. The friction pad holder mounting bracket must be reinstalled on the original paper tray. Because the friction pad pressure is adjusted for each paper feed station independently at the factory.
6. The paper tray with the friction pad mechanism must be reinstalled at the original paper feeding station.
7. The friction pad pressure should not be adjusted in the field.

1.11 FUSING UNIT

1. Be careful not to damage the edges of the hot roller strippers or their tension springs.
2. Do not touch the fusing lamp with bare hands.
3. Make sure that the fusing lamp is positioned correctly and that it does not touch the inner surface of the hot roller.

2. SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

2.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE OPERATION

The service program (SP) mode is used to check electrical data, change mode, and adjust settings.

2.1.1 Service Program Access Procedure

There are three ways to access the SP mode.

1: By key operation (for users and sales representatives).

2: By turning on the main switch while holding down number keys. (for service representatives for normal SP modes).

3: By turning on the main switch while holding down mode keys (for service representatives for memory all clear mode (SP99) and normal SP modes).

Access Procedure 1: Key operation

Accessible SP mode numbers:

11, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 26, 27, 34, 36, 38, 39, 46, 86, 91, 92, 93

(Refer to the SP mode table for details.)

1. Turn on the main switch.
2. Press the Clear Modes key.
3. Press the Clear/Stop key.
4. Press the Enter key.

   NOTE: The Call Service indicator and the Copy Counter number "0" start blinking to show that the SP mode has been accessed.
5. Enter the desired SP mode number using the number keys and press the Enter key.

NOTE: 1. An SP mode number will blink in the copy counter. The Copy Counter will stop blinking and stay on when the Enter key is pressed.

2. When the SP mode number is blinking, it can be changed by pressing the Clear/Stop key and entering a new number. The SP mode number can also be changed by using the Zoom keys ("+" & "–").

3. If the Enter key is pressed with an invalid SP mode number, the Max indicator will blink and the Copy Counter number will change to "0". In this case, Enter a valid SP mode number and press the Enter.

6. To leave the SP mode, press the Clear Modes key.

Access Procedure 2: Main switch and number keys

Accessible SP mode numbers:

All SP mode numbers except SP99 (memory all clear).

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. While pressing both 1 and 3 on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the Call Service indicator and the Copy Counter number "0" are blinking.

3. Enter the desired SP mode number using the number keys and press the Enter key.

   NOTE: 1. An SP mode number will blink in the Copy Counter. The Copy Counter will stop blinking and stay on when the Enter key is pressed.

   2. When the SP mode number is blinking, it can be changed by pressing the Clear/Stop key and entering the new number. The SP mode number can also be changed by using the zoom keys ("+" & "–").

   3. If the Enter key is pressed with an invalid SP mode number, the Max indicator will blink and the Copy Counter number will change to "0". Enter a valid SP mode number and press the Enter key.

4. To leave the SP mode, turn off the main switch.

Access Procedure 3: Main switch and mode keys

Accessible SP mode numbers:

All SP mode numbers including the SP99 (memory all clear)

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. While pressing both the Modes Clear and Clear/Stop keys on the operation panel, turn on the main switch.

   NOTE: Release the keys after confirming that the Call Service indicator and the Copy Counter number "0" are blinking.
3. After that follow access procedure 2.

2.1.2 Change Adjustment Values or Modes

1. Follow steps1 to 5 of access procedure 1 or steps 1 to 3 of access procedure 2.
2. The factory-set value/mode or the default setting will be displayed in the three digit indicator.
3. Enter the desired value or mode using the number keys. (SP mode numbers and information are given in the SP Mode table.)
4. To leave the SP mode, press the Clear Modes key (access procedure 1) or turn off the main switch (access procedure 2).

2.1.3 Memory All Clear Procedure (SP99)

CAUTION: Memory all clear mode (SP99) clears all the correction data for process control and software counters, and returns all the modes to the default settings. Normally, this mode should not be performed.

This procedure is required only when the copier malfunctions due to a damaged RAM or when replacing the RAM board for any reason.

1. Access the SP mode through Access Procedure 3.
2. Enter "99" and press the Enter key.
3. Enter "1" and press the Enter key. (Beeper sounds 5 times when memory has been cleared.)

4. Enter the factory-set values in the following SP modes:

40:	Jogger span (Duplex machine only)
41:	Lead edge erase
42:	Registration
43:	Vertical magnification
44:	Horizontal magnification
45:	Duplex magnification (Duplex machine only)
47:	Focus adjustment
50:	Lens error correction
62:	Grid reference voltage
161:	Grid volt/M-CH drum current check (P)
162:	T-CH PWM/drum current check
163:	D-CH (AC) PWM/drum current check
164:	D-CH (DC) PWM/drum current check

NOTE: Open the front cover and remove the cover plate (1 screw) from the front upper cover. There is an SP data table sheet inside the front upper cover which gives the above factory-set values.

5. Turn off the main switch.
6. Clean the used toner tank because the toner end counter has been cleared.
7. Replace the OPC drum with a new one.

NOTE: Since the drum counter for the process control has been cleared, the old drum cannot be used. If the old drum is used after all memory is cleared, a dirty background and/or toner scattering will appear on copies sooner or later because proper V_G correction will not be applied to the drum.

8. Clean the optics, sensors, and inside of the machine if necessary.
9. If the high voltage supply board - CTBG and/or -D is not the original one, do the following:
    1) Clean the corona unit casings and replace the corona wires with new ones.
    2) Enter to the SP mode by the access procedure 2.
    3) Enter the grid voltage correction data in SP62 referring to the label on the high voltage supply board - CTBG.
    4) Perform the auto drum current adjustment by SP57.

10. Enter the SP mode by access procedure 2.

11. Enable optional equipment operation by SP71 (sorter), SP72 (paper tray unit), and SP84 (edit erase lamp unit) as necessary.

12. Perform the following SP modes:

    SP66: Drum initialize

    SP54: Auto Vsg/Vlg adjustment

    SP48: Exposure lamp voltage adjustment

    SP56: Auto ADS gain adjustment

13. Check copy quality and the paper path and do the necessary adjustments.

2.2 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE TABLE

NOTE: 1. A "❐" after the mode name means that copies can be made. For these modes, the copier goes automatically into copy mode when an SP mode number is selected by pressing the "#" key, or when the data number for adjustment is entered by pressing the "#" key after selecting the SP mode number. To make copies, enter desired copy quantity, select ID level and paper tray, then press the Start key. If you do not wish to make copies, press the "#" key instead of the Start key.

2. A "•" before the mode number means that the mode can be accessed by users and sales representatives.

3. In the *Function* column, comments (extra information) are in italics.

4. In the *Data* column, the default value is printed in bold letters.

Mode No.		Function	Data
2	Free Run Set	Sets the copier in free run mode. *(The copier runs without paper feeding*. After SP2 is set, press the start key to start free run operation. Before pressing the start key you can select any other SP mode in which copying is possible [❐ mark]. ["#"→SPNo.→"#"→Start key].)	
3	Free Run Reset ❐	Resets the copier from free run mode.	
4	Forced Start ❐	Copies can be made before being warmed up. *(Copy quality and paper transport are not assured*.)	
5	Lamp OFF ❐	Copies are made with exposure lamp OFF. *(Black copies are made.)*	
6	No Misfeed Detection ❐	Copies are made without ON check of jam detection.	
7	Call Service Indicator	Indicates the cause of a blinking call service indicator. *(Indicates 0, 1, 2, 3, 12, 13, 23, or 123 in the three digit indicator.)*	0: Normal 1: PM 2: ID sensor failure 3: Toner overflow.
8	Input Check ❐	Displays the input data from sensors and switches. *(For data, see page 4 - 28.)*	
9	Output Check	Electrical components turn on. *(For data, see page 4 - 31.)*	

Mode No.		Function	Data
10	Color Developer Initialize	Agitates new color developer for about 1 minute. Press the start key to begin operation. *(This must be done when new color developer is put in.* *Beeper sounds 5 times when initialization is completed.)*	
•11	All Indicators ON	Turns on all the indicators on the operation panel. *(To turn off the indicators, press the "#" key.)*	
12	Language	Selects the language displayed in the guidance display. *(SP12 applies to type 2 copiers only.* *For other languages the optional ROM is required.)*	0: Japanese **1: English** 2: French 3: German 4: Italian 5: Spanish [Other Languages] 0: **1:** 2: 3: 4: 5:
13	A3/DLT Double Count	Selects single or double count for the total counter and key counter in A3/11" x 17" copying. *(Double count is not applied for copies from the by-pass feed table.* *Double count is applied to the user code counter [SP91] and the mechanical counters.)*	**0: Single** 1: Double
•14	Manual Staple Reset	Selects accessible period for manual stapling after completing a copy job in sort mode. *(Only when the sorter stapler is installed.)*	**0: 20 sec.** 1: 1 min. 2: None
•15	Auto Reset	Selects auto reset time of 1 or 3 minutes, or cancels this mode.	**0: 1 min.** 1: 3 min. 2: None
•16	Count Up/Down	Selects count up or count down.	**0: Up** 1: Down
•17	Auto Cassette Shift	Selects auto cassette shift mode. *(Copier automatically shifts to the LCT or paper tray holding the same size paper when paper runs out.)*	**0: Yes** 1: No
•18	Beeper On	Turns beeper on or off.	**0: On** 1: Off
•19	ID Mode	Specifies whether the copier defaults to ADS or manual ID mode when the main switch is turned on.	**0: ADS** 1: Manual
•20	LCT Priority	Sets the feed station priority to LCT or the 1st tray.	**0: On** 1: Off

Mode No.		Function	Data
•21	APS Priority (Copier)	Specifies whether the copier defaults to APS or manual mode when the main switch is turned on.	**0: APS** 1: Manual 2: No
22	SADF Auto Reset	Selects auto reset time for SADF mode.	**0: 5 sec.** 1: 60 sec
23	ADF Free Size	Enables originals of various sizes to be fed from the same width stack. (When this mode is enabled, the job interval for each original increases.)	**0: No** 1: Yes
24	Overlay Border Erase	Makes a white frame on the border line when using "Black in area" or "Color in area" mode. *(Only when the editor is installed.)*	**0: No** 1: Yes
25	Staple Limit	Sets the staple limit of copies in each bin in staple mode. *(Only when the sorter stapler is installed.)*	**0: Yes (30 copies)** 1: No (50 copies)
•26	Auto APS Select (ADF)	Selects the priority of APS mode when originals are set on the ADF. *(Only when the ADF is installed.)*	**0: Yes** 1: No
•27	Overlay Series Priority	Sets the priority of series copying in overlay mode. *(For type 2 copiers only)*	**0: No** 1: Yes
28	Auto Sort Select (ADF)	Sort Mode is automatically selected when more than 1 original is set on the ADF and the entered copy quantity is greater than 1 and less than 21 (11 for the micro sorter). *(Sorter and ADF must be installed on the machine.* *When in duplex 1 [1-sided original mode] or overlay mode, more than 2 originals must be set.)*	**0: Manual** 1: Auto Sort
29	Zero Cross Control	Selects fusing temperature control mode. *(After selecting the control mode and turning the main switch off/on, the fusing temperature control mode changes.)*	**0: Yes (Zero cross)** 1: No (Phase)
30	Black Toner Supply Mode	Selects black toner supply mode. *(See SP 31/SP32 for toner supply amount.)*	**0: Detect Mode** 1: Fixed Mode
31	Black Toner Supply Ratio (Detect Mode)	Determines how much toner is supplied in detect mode.	**0: 15%** 1: 7% 2: 30% 3: 60%
32	Black Toner Supply Ratio (Fixed Mode)	Determines how much toner is supplied in fixed mode.	**0: 7.0%** 1: 3.5% 2: 10.5% 3: 14.0%

Mode No.		Function	Data
33	Black (ID sensor) Pattern Bias	Sets the bias voltage applied to the development roller for the ID sensor pattern. *(0: –200 V= Normal 1: –160 V= Lighter 2: –220 V= Darker 3: –240 V= Darkest)*	**0: N** 1: L 2: H 3: HH
•34	ADS Density	Selects the image density level in ADS mode. *(Data 1: Increases charge grid voltage [–50 V]. Development bias voltage has standard value. Data 2: Increases development bias voltage [–40 V]. Charge grid voltage has standard value.)*	**0: N (Normal)** 1: H (Darker) 2: L (Lighter)
35	Black ID Detection	Black ID sensor check is performed every 5 copies or 10 copies. *(If low image density occurs in the toner near end condition, change the data to "1".)*	**0: 10 copies** 1: 5 copies
•36	Image Shift (Duplex 1)	Selects the margin on the right side of the reverse page in duplex 1 mode. *(For type 2 copier only. When duplex 1 [1-sided original mode] is selected, this margin is automatically added.)*	**0: 5 mm** 1: 0 mm 2: 10 mm 3: 15 mm
37	Black Bias	Adjusts black bias voltage if the image density at level 4 cannot be adjusted by (SP48 exposure lamp voltage). This must be done only other replacing the OPC drum. *(0: Vo = Normal 1: Vo +40 V = Darkest 2: Vo +20 V = Darker 3: Vo –20 V = Lighter 4: Vo –40 V = Lightest)*	**0: N** 1: HH 2: H 3: L 4: LL
•38	Edge Erase	Selects the width of the edge erase margin. *(Only when the editor is installed.)*	**0: 10 mm** 1: 5 mm 2: 15 mm 3: 20 mm
•39	Center Erase	Selects the width of the center erase margin. *(Only when the editor is installed.)*	**0: 20 mm** 1: 10 mm 2: 15 mm 3: 25 mm
40	Jogger Span	Adjusts the stop position of the jogger fences. *(For type 2 copier only. 0.5 mm per step. [max, –4.0 mm to +3.5 mm].)*	0∼15 **8 = default**
41	Lead Edge Erase ❒	Adjusts lead edge erase margin. *(0.5 mm per step [max –4.0 mm to +3.5 mm].)*	0∼15 **8 = default**
42	Registration ❒	Adjusts lead edge registration. *(0.5 mm per step [max –4.0 mm to +3.5 mm].)*	0∼15 **8 = default**
43	Vertical Magnification ❒	Adjusts magnification in the paper travel direction. *(0.2 % per step. [max. –1.6% to +1.4%].)*	0∼15 **8 = default**

Mode No.		Function	Data
44	Horizontal Magnification ❐	Adjusts magnification perpendicular to the direction of paper travel. *(0.2 % per tep. [max. –3.2% to +3.0%].)*	0∼31 **16 = default**
45	Duplex Magnification	Adjusts vertical magnification of the first image to equal the second image when using overlay or duplex mode.	**0: +0.4%** 1: No correction 2: +0.2% 3: +0.6% 4: +0.8% 5: +1.0% 6: +1.2% 7: +1.4% 8: +1.6% 9: +1.8% 10: +2.0%
•46	Highlight Bias (Manual ID Level 7)	Selects the development bias voltage of manual ID level 7. *(0: –240 V = Normal* *1: –200 V = Darker* *2: –280 V = Lighter* *3: –320 V = Lightest)*	**0: N** 1: D 2: L 3: LL
47	Focus Adjustment ❐	Adjusts the 4th/5th mirror position to correct the fine focus. *(0.6 mm per pulse. SP47 must be done after vertical and horizontal magnification adjustments [SP43 and 44].)*	0∼80 **40 = default**
48	Lamp Voltage ❐	Adjusts the exposure lamp voltage. *(50 to 75 V in 0.5 V steps.* *The lamp voltage must be adjusted only after performing SP 66 when replacing the OPC drum.)*	50∼75V **63V = default**
49	Fusing Temperature	Adjusts fusing temperature. *(175 to 190 °C in 1 °C steps.)*	175∼190 °C **185 ° = default**
50	Lens Error Correction ❐	Adjusts the lens position to correct magnification in enlarge/reduction mode. *(0.1% per step [max. –0.8%, to +0.7%].)*	0∼15 **8 = default**
51	Lamp Voltage Check	Displays the exposure lamp voltage. *(The exposure lamp, main motor,optics cooling fan fusing exhaust fan, and exhaust blower turn on for 10 seconds when the Enter key is pressed.* *Press the "•" key to check the target lamp voltage (including corrections).* *Press the C/S key to turn this mode off.* *Do not repeat more than 5 times to avoid overheating the optics cavity.)*	[V]
52	Fusing Temperature Check ❐	Displays the fusing temperature.	[°C]

Mode No.		Function	Data
53	Drum Temperature Check ❒	Displays the temperature around the drum.	[°C]
54	Auto Vsg/Vlg Adjustment ❒	Adjusts Vsg of ID sensor and Vlg of V sensor automatically at once. *(Adjusted PWM values of ID sensor and V sensor are displayed in the three digit indicator.* *Beeper sounds 2 times when the adjustments [about 4 sec.] are completed.)*	
55	Vsp/Vsg Data ❒	Displays the Vsg and Vsp readings. The Vsg reading is displayed while the "0" key is held down. *(When making copies, the Vsp and Vsg voltage readings are updated every 10 or 5 copies [ID sensor check timing].)*	[V]
56	Auto ADS Gain Adjustment	Adjusts ADS gain data automatically when the start key is pressed. *(Close the platen cover to prevent external light from reaching the ADS sensor when performing this adjustment.* *The gain data is displayed in the three digit counter.* *Beeper sounds 2 times when the adjustment [about 4 sec.] is completed.)*	
57	Auto Drum Current Adjustment	Adjusts the transfer and separation corona currents automatically. Press the start key to perform. *(When the high voltage supply board [CTBG] and/or [D] is replaced, perform this mode after setting the data of SP62.* *When separation corona current adjustment fails, beeper sounds twice and the copier tries the adjustment again.* *Beeper sounds twice when the adjustment is completed.)*	[Display only] 1: Measuring and adjusting the transfer corona current. 2: Measuring and adjusting the separation corona current. 3: Completed
58	Toner End Counter Check	Displays the contents of the black toner end counter. *(Toner end condition is not counted if the toner end condition happens within 250 copies after the previous toner end condition.)*	
59	Bias Voltage Check ❒	Displays bias voltage. Press the Start key to display the bias voltage. Press the C/S key to stop.	[V]

Mode No.		**Function**	**Data**
62	Grid Reference Voltage	Sets the grid voltage correction data to correct the output from the high voltage supply board. *(A label on the high voltage supply board gives the correct value. When the high voltage supply board [CTBG] is replaced, set the data using SP62 before performing SP57.)*	**704**
65	Black Developer Initialize	Agitates new black developer for about 5 minutes. Press the start key to begin operation. *(This mode must be done when new black developer is put in. Beeper sounds 5 times when the initialization is completed.)*	
66	Drum Initialize	Used to set new drum condition. *(This must be done when a new drum is installed. The OPC counter, V_R correction level, and Vref [initial Vlp/Vlg] are cleared. To set, press "1" then the "#" key. Beeper sounds 5 times when the initialization is done.)*	**0: NO** 1: YES
67	Drum Correction Level (V_R)	Displays the present V_R correction level. *(V_R level [%]=Vrp/Vrg x 100)*	[Display only] 0: 100-84 1: 83-58 2: 57-41 3: 40-28 4: 27-0
68	Lamp Correction Level (V_L)	Displays the present Vdat. [Vlp/Vlg x 100=Vdat] The V_L level (%) is displayed while the "•″ key is held down. *(V_L level [%]=Vdat/Vref x 100=*[(Vlp/Vlg)/(Initial Vlp/Vlg)] *x 100.)*	[Display only] V_L level 0-100 : +1V 101-150 : 0V 151- : –1V
69	Sense Drum Correction Level (V_R) (Forced V_R Detection)	Detects V_R correction level regardless of the drum counter. *(The detection will be done in the first 5 copy cycles after exiting the SP mode. Beeper sounds 5 times when this mode is accepted.)*	
70	Sense Lamp Correction level (V_L) (Forced V_L Detection)	Detects V_L correction level regardless of the drum counter. *(V_L pattern detection is done 4 times. Beeper sounds for each detection and Vdat is displayed in the three digit indicator each time. The average of the 4 detections can be monitored by SP68.)*	

Mode No.		Function	Data
71	Sorter	Enables sorter operation *(0: No sorter* *1: Micro sorter* *2: Mini sorter* *3: Midi sorter* *4: Sorter stapler* *5: Sorter adapter).*	**0: No** 1: MC 2: MIN 3: MID 4: SS 5: ADP
72	Option Paper Tray Unit	Enables paper tray unit operation.	**0: No** 1: Yes
73	LCT Paper Size	Selects paper size for the LCT. *(For type 2 and type 3 only)*	**0: A4** 1: B5 **2: LT**
74	Color ID Detection	Color ID sensor check is performed every 5 copies or 10 copies. *(Normally, "0" should be selected for color toner.)*	**0: 5 copies** 1: 10 copies
75	Red/Blue/Green (ID sensor) Pattern Bias	Selects the bias voltage applied to the development roller for the color ID sensor pattern. *(0: Vo = Normal* *1: Vo +40V = Lighter* *2: Vo –20V = Darker* *3: Vo –40V = Darkest)*	**0: N** 1: L 2: H 3: HH
76	Sorter Max	Sets the sort/stack quantity limit. (0: No= No sort/stack limit. 1: Yes= Sort/stack amount is limited, the amount depends on which sorter is installed.)	**0: No** 1: Yes
77	(ADF) Auto Feed Out (Duplex mode)	Sets the copier to eject the final copy if an odd number of originals are set. *(When "Yes", the final sheet is fed out;* *When "No", the sheet stays in the duplex tray.)*	**0: Yes** 1: No
79	Color Bias	Adjusts color bias voltage if color image density is improper compared with black image density. *(0: Vo = Normal* *1: Vo +40V = Darkest* *2: Vo +20V = Darker* *3: Vo –20V =Lighter* *4: Vo –40V = Lightest)*	**0: N** 1: HH 2: H 3: L 4: LL
81	Red/Blue/Green Toner Supply Ratio (Detect mode)	Selects color toner supply ratio in detect supply mode. *(Each color can have independent toner supply ratio.* *Selected toner supply ratio corresponds to the color development unit installed in the copier.)*	**0: 14 %** 1: 7 % 2: 21 % 3: 28 %
83	Toner End Counter Clear	Resets the used toner overflow condition and clears the toner end counter (SP58). *(To clear, press "1" then the "#" key.* *SP83 must be used when the used toner tank is cleaned.)*	**0: No** 1: Yes

Mode No.		Function	Data
84	Editing Eraser	Enables edit erase lamp unit operation. *(The copier CPU automatically enables edit erase lamp unit when the editor is installed.)*	**0: No** 1: Yes
85	TEL No.	Use to input the telephone number of the service depot. *(Pressing "•" key shows "–" in the guidance display.)*	
•86	Under Color Density	Adjusts color background density in highlight color mode of editor. *(Only effective when the editor is installed.* *Each color can have an independent under color density.* *Adjusted under color density corresponds to the color development unit installed in the copier.)*	1: Darkest – **4: Normal** – 7: Lightest
87	PM Interval	Sets the interval of the PM counter.	**0: No PM** 1: 60 K 2: 80 K 3: 100 K 4: 120 k
88	PM Counter	Displays contents of the PM counter. *(When entering this mode by pressing the "#" key, the first three digits are displayed in the three digit indicator.* *Hold down the "•" key to display the second three digits.* *When the PM counter is exceeded, the call service indicator blinks and the key counter indicator lights.)*	
89	PM Counter Clear	Resets the PM counter. *(Use this mode after performing PM.* *Beeper sounds 2 times when this function is used.)*	
90	User Code Mode	Enables user code mode (Key counter shorting connector must be removed.) *(If this mode is set, a user must enter a code to make copies.* *Resets when auto clear mode functions or when C/S and clear mode keys are pressed together.* *The user codes are the following 20 numbers: 1101, 1202, 1303, 1404, 1505, 1606, 1707, 1808, 1909, 2010, 2111, 2212, 2313, 2414, 2515, 2616, 2717, 2818, 2919, 3020).*	**0: No** 1: Yes

Mode No.		Function	Data
•91	User code Counter Check	Displays the contents of each user code counter. use the "+" and "–" ("up" and "down") keys to select user code. (The last two digits of the user code are displayed in the copy counter.) *(User counters count from 0 to 999999.* *Press "#" key to display the first three digits in the three digit indicator.* *Hold down "•" key to display the final three digits.)*	
•92	User Code Counter Clear	Resets counters of all the user codes (SP91). *(To reset, press "1" then the "#" key).*	**0: No** 1: Yes
•93	Copy Limit	Limits the maximum copy quantity that can be entered.	1 – 999 **999 = default**
97	SC/Jam Counter Clear	Clears all the service call and jam counters. *(To clear, press "1" then the "#" key.* *Beeper sounds 3 times when this function is used.)*	**0: No** 1: Yes
98	Counter Clear	Clears the following counters: - Operation Time (motor count only) (SP100) - Copy/Original Counters (SP101) - SC Counters (SP120) - Jam Counters (SP130) - PM Counter (SP88) - User Code Counters (SP91) - User Program *(To clear, press "1" then the "#" key.* *Beeper sounds 4 times when this function is used.)*	**0: No** 1: Yes
99	Memory All Clear	Clears all counters and returns all modes to the default setting. *(To access this mode turn on the main switch while pressing both the "Clear Modes" and "C/S" keys. Then enter "99" and press the "#" key.* *To clear, press "1" then the "#" key.* *Beeper sounds 5 times when this function is used.)*	**0: No** 1: Yes

Mode No.		Function	Data
100	Operation Time	Displays the total (accumulated) time that the main motor has operated. (*Time in hours.* *-Motor Count-* *Press the "#" key to display the first three digits in the three digit indicator. Hold down the "•" key to display the second three digits.* *-Drum Count-* *Hold down the "0" key to display the first three digts in the three digit indicator. Hold down the "0" & "•" keys to display the second three digits.* ***NOTE:*** *Drum counter can be cleared by using SP66.)*	
101	Copy/Original Counter	Displays the total number of the following copies or originals. Use the "+ " & "–" ("up" & "down") keys to select the desired number. *(Press the "#" key to enter this mode.* *When the desired number displayed in the copy counter is selected by using the "+" & "–" keys, the first three digits are displayed in the three digit indicator.* *Hold down the "•" key to display the second three digits.* *Type 2 copier displays all 6 digits in the guidance display.)*	
101-1	Total Counter	Displays the total number of copies	
101-2	Total Color Counter	Displays the total number of color copies.	
101-3	Red Counter	Displays the total number of red copies.	
101-4	Green Counter	Displays the total number of green copies.	
101-5	Blue Counter	Displays the total number of blue copies.	
101-6	Duplex Counter	Displays the total number of duplex copies made.	
101-7	ADF Counter	Displays the total number of copies made using the ADF.	
101-8	Staple Counter	Displays the total number of sets of stapled copies.	
101-9	Paper Tray Unit Counter	Displays the total number of sheets fed from the paper tray unit.	
101-10	By-pass/LCT Counter	Displays the total number of sheets fed from the by-pass feed table or the LCT.	
101-11	Overlay Counter	Displays the total number of overlay copies made.	
101-12	A3/11" x 17" (DLT) Counter	Displays the total number of A3 or 11"x 17" copies.	
101-13	B4/81/2" x 14" (LG) Counter	Displays the total number of B4 or 81/2" x 14" copies.	
101-14	A4/81/2" x 11" (LT) Counter	Displays the total number of A4 or 81/2" x 11" copies.	

Mode No.		Function	Data
101-15	B5 Counter	Displays the total number of B5 copies.	
101-16	Original Total Counter	Displays the total number of originals copied.	
101-17	Original Counter (ADF)	Displays the total number of originals copied using the ADF.	
101-18	Reduction Counter	Displays the total number of copies made in reduction mode.	
101-19	Enlargement Counter	Displays the total number of copies made in enlargement mode.	
110	Supply Counter	Displays the total number of copies made by using the following supplies. Use the "+" & "–" ("up" & "down") keys to select the desired number. *(Press the "#" key to enter this mode.* *When the desired number displayed in the copy counter is selected by using the "+" & "–" keys, the first three digits are displayed in the three digit indicator.* *Hold down the "•" key to display the second three digits.* *Type 2 copier displays all 6 digits in the guidance display.)*	
110-1	Drum Counter	Displays the total number of copies made using the present drum.	
110-2	Black Developer Counter	Displays the total number of copies made using the present black developer.	
110-3	Red Developer Counter	Displays the total number of copies made using the present red developer.	
110-4	Green Developer Counter	Displays the total number of copies made using the present green developer.	
110-5	Blue Developer Counter	Displays the total number of copies made using the present blue developer.	
120	SC Counter	Displays the total number of the following service calls. Use the "+" & "–" ("up" & "down") keys to select the desired number. *(Press the "#" key to enter this mode.* *When the desired number displayed in the copy counter is selected by using the "+" & "–" keys, the first three digts are displayed in the three digt indicator.* *Hold down the"•" key to display the second three digts.* *Type 2 copier displays all 6 digits in the guidance display.)*	
120-1	SC Total Counter	Displays the total number of times the service call indicator has turned on.	
120-2	SC Optics Counter	Displays the total number of "Optics" service calls.	

Mode No.		Function	Data
120-3	SC Exposure Counter	Displays the total number of "Exposure" service calls.	
120-4	SC Drive Counter	Displays the total number of "Functional Drive" service calls.	
120-5	SC Fuser Counter	Displays the total number of "Fusing" service calls.	
120-6	SC Communication Counter	Displays the total number of "Interface communication" service calls.	
120-7	SC Duplex Counter	Displays the total number of "Duplex" service calls.	
120-8	SC Feed Counter	Displays the total number of "Paper Feed" service calls.	
120-9	SC Sorter Counter	Displays the total number of "Sorter" service calls.	
130	Jam Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams. Use the "+" & "–" ("up & "down") keys to select the desired number. *(Press the "#" key to enter this mode.* *When the desired number displayed in the copy counter is selected by using the "+" & "–" keys, the first three digts are displayed in the three digt indicator.* *Hold down the "•" key to display the second three digts.* *Type 2 copier displays all 6 digits in the guidance display.)*	
130-1	Jam Total Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams excluding original jams in the ADF (SP130-14).	
130-2	Jam 1st Feed Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams from the upper paper tray (Type 1 & 3).	
130-3	Jam 2nd Feed Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams from the lower paper tray.	
130-4	Jam 3rd Feed Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams from the upper tray of the paper tray unit.	
130-5	Jam 4th Feed Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams from the middle tray of the paper tray unit.	
130-6	Jam 5th Feed Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams from the lower tray of the paper tray unit.	
130-7	Jam By-pass/LCT Feed Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams from the by-pass feed table or the LCT.	
130-8	Jam Fuser Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams in the fusing unit area.	
130-9	Jam Inverter Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams in the duplex entrance area.	
130-10	Jam Duplex Stack Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams in the turn gate area during duplex stacking.	
130-11	Jam Duplex Feed Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams from duplex tray.	

Mode No.		Function	Data
130-12	Jam Exit Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams in the copier exit area.	
130-13	Jam Sorter Counter	Displays the total number of paper jams in the sorter.	
130-14	Jam ADF Counter	Displays the total number of original jams in the ADF.	
150	Paper Feed Timing (By-pass/LCT) ❐	Adjusts the registration paper buckle amount for the paper fed from the by-pass feed table or the LCT. *(The data value is the approximate distance that the paper is fed after the lead edge is detected by the registration sensor.)*	0: 27 mm – 15: 42 mm **16: 43 mm** 17: 44 mm – 24: 51 mm
151	Paper Feed Timing (1st tray) ❐	Adjusts the registration paper buckle amount for the paper fed from the upper paper tray (Type 1 & 3 only). *(The data value is the approximate distance that the paper is fed after the lead edge is detected by the registration sensor.)*	0: 27 mm – 9: 36 mm **10: 37 mm** 11: 38 mm – 24: 51 mm
152	Paper Feed Timing (2nd~5th tray) ❐	Adjusts the registration paper buckle amount for the paper fed from the lower paper tray or the paper tray unit. *(The data value is the approximate distance that the paper is fed after the lead edge is detected by the registration sensor.)*	0: 27 mm – 6: 33 mm **7: 34 mm** 8: 35 mm – 24: 51 mm
153	Paper Feed Timing (Duplex) ❐	Adjusts the registration paper buckle amount for the paper fed from the duplex tray. *(The data value is the approximate distance that the paper is fed after the lead edge is detected by the registration sensor.)*	0: 27 mm – 14: 41 mm **15: 42 mm** 16: 43 mm – 24: 51 mm
154	Single Duplex Reverse Timing ❐	Adjusts the switch-back timing of paper in the duplex tray in single 2-sided copying. *(The smaller the data is, the earlier the switch-back timing becomes.)*	0: –4 mm – 3: –1 mm **4:** 5: +1 mm – 8: +4 mm
157	Trail Edge Erase ❐	Adjusts the trail edge erase start timing. *(When the default value is selected, the trail edge erase starts 2mm after the trail edge of the image.)*	0: –6 mm – 11: –0.5 mm **12:** 13: +0.5 mm – 15: 1.5 mm

Mode No.		Function	Data
160	Grid Volt./M-CH Drum Current Check	Displays the grid bias voltage and the charge corona current for the image area in the three digit indicator. *(When entering this mode by pressing the "#" key, grid bias voltage [V] is displayed. Hold down the start key to display the charge corona current [µA]. Grid bias voltage can be changed by using "+" & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys in 5V steps.)*	**745 V**
161	Grid Volt./M-CH Drum Current Check (P)	Displays the grid bias voltage and the charge corona current for the ID sensor pattern in the three digit indicator. *(When entering this mode by pressing the "#" key, grid bias voltage [V] is displayed. Hold down the start key to display the charge corona current [µA]. Grid bias voltage can be changed by using "+" & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys in 5V steps.)*	**500 V**
162	T-CH PWM/Drum Current Check	Displays the transfer corona current in the three digit indicator. *(When entering this mode by pressing the "#" key, the adjusted PWM value for the high voltage supply board [T] is displayed. Hold down the start key to display the transfer corona current [µA]. The PWM value can be changed by using the "+" & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys in 1 step.)*	
163	D-CH (AC) PWM/Drum Current Check	Displays the separation ac corona current in the three digit indicator. *(When entering this mode by pressing the "#" key, the adjusted PWM value for the high voltage supply board [D-ac] is displayed. Hold down the start key to display the separation ac corona current [µA]. The value displayed will change by a large amount after 1.4 seconds. The check value is the value immediately before the change. The PWM value can be changed by using the "+" & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys.)*	
164	D-CH (DC) PWM/Drum Current Check.	Displays the separation dc corona current in the three digit indicator. *(When entering this mode by pressing the "#" key, the adjusted PWM value for the high voltage supply board [D-dc] is displayed. Hold down the start key to the display separation dc corona current [µA]. The value displayed will change by a large amount after 1.4 seconds. The check value is the value immediately before the change. The PWM value can be changed by using "+" & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys.)*	

Mode No.		Function	Data
165	ID-sensor PWM/Output Check	Displays the ID sensor output in the three digit indicator. *(When entering this mode by pressing the "#" key, the adjusted PWM value for the ID sensor is displayed.* *Hold down the start key to display the ID sensor output voltage.* *The PWM value can be changed by using the "+" & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys.)*	
166	V-Sensor PWM/Output Check	Displays the V sensor output in the three digit indicator. *(When entering this mode by pressing the "#" key, the adjusted PWM value for the V sensor is displayed.* *Hold down the start key to display the V sensor output voltage.* *The PWM value can be changed by using the "+" & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys.)*	
167	ADS Gain/Output Check	Displays the ADS sensor output in the three digit counter. *(When entering this mode by pressing the "#" key, the adjusted gain data for the ADS sensor is displayed.* *Hold down the start key to display the ADS sensor output voltage.* *Do not hold down the start key too long [about 20 sec], otherwise SC12 comes up.* *Gain data can be changed by using the "+" & "–" ["up" & "down"] keys.)*	

2.3 SP-8 SENSOR/SWITCH/SIGNAL DATA CHECK

- How to check sensor/switch/signal -

1. While pressing both 1 and 3 on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch in order to access the SP mode.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the call service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.

2. Enter 8 and then press the "#" key.
3. Enter the desired input number using the number keys and press the "#" key.

   NOTE: The input number entered is displayed in the three digit indicator.

4. Enter the number of copies in the copy counter and press the start key if you want to check the input data during the copy cycle.

   NOTE: The on/off status can also be checked manually.

5. The data ("0" or "1") will be displayed in the three digit indicator.
6. To check input data for another sensor, switch, or signal, press the "#" key twice and repeat from step 3.

Input No.	Sensor/Switch/Signal	Data	
		0	1
1	Registration sensor (S11)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
2	Fusing exit sensor(S14)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
4	Upper relay sensor (S10)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
5	Lower relay sensor (S9)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6	Tray relay sensor - 1 (Paper tray unit) (S9)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
7	Tray relay sensor - 2 (Paper tray unit) (S10)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
8	Tray relay sensor - 3 (Paper tray unit) (S11)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
10	Upper tray set sensor (S2)	Tray set	Tray not set
11	Lower tray set sensor (S3)	Tray set	Tray not set
12	Tray set sensor - 1 (Paper tray unit) (S1)	Tray set	Tray not set
13	Tray set sensor - 2 (Paper tray unit) (S2)	Tray set	Tray not set
14	Tray set sensor - 3 (Paper tray unit) (S3)	Tray set	Tray not set
16	Upper tray upper limit sensor (S7)	Down	Up
17	Lower tray upper limit sensor (S8)	Down	Up

Input No.	Sensor/Switch/Signal	Data	
		0	1
18	Tray upper limit sensor - 1 (Paper tray unit) (S4)	Down	Up
19	Tray upper limit sensor - 2 (Paper tray unit) (S5)	Down	Up
20	Tray upper limit sensor - 3 (Paper tray unit) (S6)	Down	Up
22	Upper tray paper end sensor (S5)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
23	Lower tray paper end sensor (S6)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
24	Paper end sensor - 1 (Paper tray unit) (S7)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
25	Paper end sensor -2 (Paper tray unit)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
26	Paper end sensor - 3 (Paper tray unit) (S8)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
28	LCT paper end sensor (S26)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
29	LCT cover switch (S15)	Cover closed	Cover open
30	LCT down switch (S16)	Off	On
31	LCT lower limit sensor (S27)	Off	On
32	LCT upper limit sensor (S28)	Off	On
34	Sorter bin H.P. sensor	Not at H.P.	At H.P.
35	Sorter bin lift sensor	Off	On
36	Sorter cover switch	Cover open	Cover closed
37	Sorter entrance sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
39	By-pass feed table sensor (S1)	Table closed	Table open
40	By-pass feed paper end sensor (S4)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
41	Duplex unit set detection	Off	On
42	Duplex paper end sensor (S24)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
43	Duplex turn gate sensor (S23)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
44	Duplex entrance sensor (S22)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
45	Junction gate sensor (S15)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
47	Platen cover switch (SW11)	Platen cover closed	Platen cover open
48	Scanner H.P. sensor (S16)	Off	On
50	Color development unit switch - 1 (SW9)	Off	On
51	Color development unit switch - 2 (SW9)	Off	On
53	Tray unit door switch (SW13)	Door closed	Door open
54	Exit cover switch (SW10)	Cover open	Cover closed
55	Paper tray unit detection	Tray unit detected	Tray unit not detected
58	Key counter set signal	Not set	Set
59	Total counter micro read switch	Off	On
61	Jogger motor high temperature signal	Off	On
64	Exposure lamp on signal	Off	On

Input No.	Sensor/Switch/Signal	Data	
		0	**1**
67	Upper tray paper size switches (SW1 - SW4)	Refer to table 1	Refer to table 1
68	Lower tray paper size switches (SW5 - SW8)		
69	Tray paper size switches - 1 (Paper tray unit) (SW1 - SW4)		
70	Tray paper size switches - 2 (Paper tray unit) (SW5 - SW8)		
71	Tray paper size switches - 3 (Paper tray unit) (SW9 - SW12)		
72	Original length&width sensors (S20 & S21)	Refer to tables 2 and 3	Refer to tables 2 and 3

Table 1

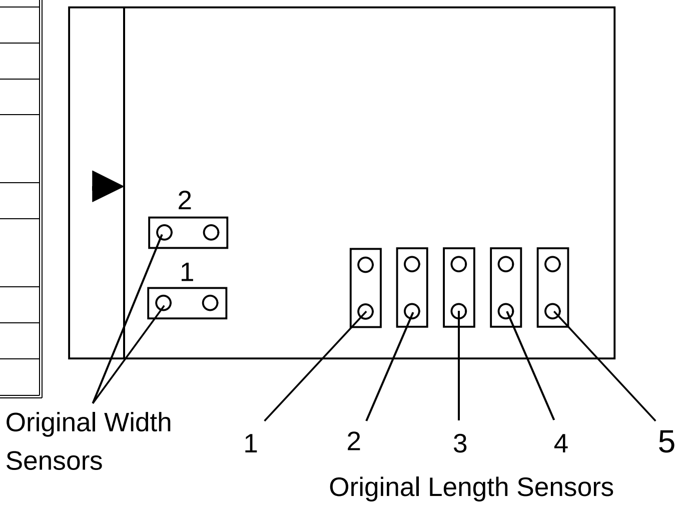
Paper size	Data
A3 / 11" X 17"	1
B4	3
F / 8 1/2" X 14"	2
A4 lengthwise	6
A4 sideways / 8 1/2" X 11" lengthwise	4
B5 lengthwise	12
B5 sideways / 8 1/2" X 11" sideways	8

Table 2

Sensor	Data
Original width 1	1
Original width 2	2
Original length 1	4
Original length 2	8
Original length 3 (A3/A4 type machine only)	10
Original length 4	20
Original length 5	40

Table 3

Original size	Data
A3	7F
11" X 17"	6F
B4	3F
A4 Lengthwise	E
A4 sideways / 8 1/2" X 11" lengthwise	7
B5 lengthwise	6
B5 sideways / 8 1/2" X 11" sideways	3
A5 lengthwise	0
A5 sideways	2
No original	0



2.4 SP-9 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT CHECK

- How to turn electrical component on/off -

1. While pressing both 1 and 3 on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch in order to access the SP mode.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the call service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.

2. Enter 9 using the number keys and then press the "#" key.

3. Enter the desired output number using the number keys.

   NOTE: The output number entered will blink in the three digit indicator.

4. Press the start key to turn on the electrical component.

   NOTE: Pressing the start key while holding down the interrupt key turns on the selected electrical component together with the main motor.

5. Press the Clear/Stop key to turn off the electrical component.

6. To turn on another electrical component, repeat from step 3.

CAUTION:The motors keep turning in this output mode regardless of upper or lower limit sensor signal. Do not keep the electrical component on for a long time to prevent any mechanical or electrical damage.

Output No.	Electrical component
1	Main motor (M1)
2	High voltage supply - Charge corona (PCB7)
3	High voltage supply - Charge corona and grid bias without V_R correction (PCB7)
4	High voltage supply - Charge corona and grid bias for ID sensor pattern (PCB7)
5	High voltage supply - Charge corona and grid bias for V_R pattern (PCB7)
6	High voltage supply - Charge corona and grid bias for V_L pattern (PCB7)
7	High voltage supply - Transfer corona (PCB7)
8	High voltage supply - Separation corona (PCB8)
9	High voltage supply - Development bias (PCB7)
10	ID sensor LED (S12)
11	V sensor LED (S13)
12	Scanner drive motor : Scanner moves forward and returns to the H.P. (M7)
13	Black development unit **(Note 1)**
14	Color development unit **(Note 2)**
15	Development drive clutch (MC1)
16	Toner supply clutch (MC2)
17	Pre-transfer lamp (L2)
19	Erase lamp unit - All blocks (L5)

Output No.	Electrical component
20	Erase lamp unit - Designated blocks for ID sensor pattern (L5)
21	Erase lamp unit - Designated blocks for V_L pattern (L5)
22	Sorter drive motor
23	Sorter bin drive motor : Up **(CAUTION)**
24	Sorter bin drive motor : Down **(CAUTION)**
25	Registration clutch (MC5)
27	By-pass feed clutch (MC3)
28	Feed relay clutch (MC4)
29	Tray unit drive clutch (Paper Tray Unit) (MC4)
30	Upper paper feed clutch (MC6)
31	Lower paper feed clutch (MC7)
32	Paper feed clutch - 1 (Paper tray unit) (MC1)
33	Paper feed clutch - 2 (Paper tray unit) (MC2)
34	Paper feed clutch - 3 (Paper tray unit) (MC3)
35	Upper tray lock solenoid (SOL4)
36	Lower tray lock solenoid (SOL5)
37	Tray lock solenoid - 1 (Paper tray unit) (SOL1)
38	Tray lock solenoid - 2 (Paper tray unit) (SOL2)
39	Tray lock solenoid - 3 (Paper tray unit) (SOL3)
40	Pick-up solenoid (SOL2)
41	Upper tray lift motor : Up (M3)
42	Lower tray lift motor : Up (M4)
43	Tray lift motor - 1 (Paper tray unit) : Up (M1)
44	Tray lift motor - 2 (Paper tray unit) : Up (M2)
45	Tray lift motor - 3 (Paper tray unit) : Up (M3)
46	Upper tray lift motor : Down (M3)
47	Lower tray lift motor : Down (M4)
48	Tray lift motor - 1 (Paper tray unit) : Down (M1)
49	Tray lift motor - 2 (Paper tray unit) : Down (M2)
50	Tray lift motor - 3 (Paper tray unit) : Down (M3)
51	Jogger motor : Set jogger fences at the H.P. (M12)
52	Duplex feed motor : Normal rotation (M11)
53	Duplex feed motor : Reverse rotation (M11)
54	Duplex turn gate solenoid (SOL7)
56	Junction gate solenoid (SOL6)
57	Exhaust blower motor (M2)
58	Fusing exhaust fan motor : High speed (M6)
59	LCT lift motor : Up (M13) **(CAUTION)**
60	LCT lift motor : Down (M13) **(CAUTION)**

NOTE 1: When the start key is pressed, the main motor starts turning and the development unit change solenoid is energized. While the "•" key is held down, the development drive and toner supply clutches turn on to supply **black** toner.

NOTE 2: When the start key is pressed, the main motor starts turning and the development unit change solenoid is de-energized to shift the development unit from black to color. While the "•" key is held down, the development drive and toner supply clutches turn on to supply **color** toner.
After performing this output number, perform No.13 (Black development unit) to return the color development unit to its original position.

3. SP MODE PRACTICAL USE TABLE

3.1 REPLACEMENT AND CLEANING

The following table shows the necessary SP modes and the priority order when the listed items are replaced or cleaned:

(Priority Number)

NOTE:

No.	SP Mode No.	Replaced or Cleaned Item Description	Black Developer	Color Developer	OPC Drum (replace)	ID/V Sensors	ADS Sensor	Exposure Lamp /Optics	Used Toner Tank
1.	65	Black Developer Initialize	O						
2.	10	Color Developer Initialize		O					
3.	66	Drum Initialize			O				
4.	54	Auto Vsg/Vlg Adjustment			O	O			
5.	48	Lamp Voltage			O			(O)	
6.	51	Lamp Voltage Check						O	
7.	70	Forced VL Detection						O	
8.	56	Auto ADS Gain Adjustment			O		O	O	
9.	83	Toner End Counter Clear							O

NOTE: After replacing the exposure lamp or cleaning the optics, check the lamp voltage setting [X] by SP48. Then check the target lamp voltage [Y] decided by the process control through SP51 (press the "." key for reading). Perform the forced V_L detection (SP70) [Y- X] times. Check the target lamp voltage [Z] by SP51. Perform the forced VL detection (SP70) again. Confirm that the target lamp voltage [Z] is the same value. If not, repeat the SP70 until the value [Z] does not change.

3.2 MAJOR ADJUSTMENT

The following table shows SP modes for major adjustments in the field:

TONER DENSITY (Detect Mode)

[Black]

Mode No.	Description	Data
SP31	Black Toner Supply Ratio	0:15% 1:7% 2:30% 3:60%
SP33	Black (ID Sensor) Pattern Bias	0:N 1:L 2:H 3:HH
SP35	Black ID Detection	0:10 copies 1:5 copies

[Color]

Mode No.	Description	Data
SP81	Color Toner Supply Ratio	0:14% 1:7% 2:21% 3:28%
SP75	Color (ID Sensor) Pattern Bias	0:N 1:L 2:H 3:HH
SP74	Color ID Detection	0:5 copies 1:10 copies
SP79	Color Bias	0:N 1:HH 2:H 3:L 4:LL

IMAGE DENSITY

Mode No.	Description	Data
SP34	ADS Density	0:N 1:H 2:L
SP48	Lamp Voltage (only when changing the drum)	50 - 75V
SP46	Highlight Bias (ID Level 7)	0:N 1:D 2:L 3:LL
SP79	Color Bias	0:N 1:HH 2:H 3:L 4:LL

OTHER COPY IMAGE

Mode No.	Description	Data
SP41	Lead Edge Erase	0 - 15 (0.5mm/step)
SP42	Registration	0 - 15 (0.5mm/step)
SP43	Vertical Magnification	0 - 15 (0.2%/step)
SP44	Horizontal Magnification	0 -31 (0.2%/step)
SP45	Duplex Magnification	0:0.4% 1:0% 2:0.2% 3:0.6% 4:0.8% 5:1.0% ...
SP47	Focus Adjustment	0 - 80

3.3 CHECKING

The following table shows SP modes for checking major items in the field:

Mode No.	Description
SP2	Free Run Set
SP3	Free Run Reset
SP8-1 to -72	Sensor/Switch/Signal Data Check
SP9-1 to -60	Electrical Component Check
SP51	Lamp Voltage Check
SP52	Fusing Temperature Check
SP55	Vsg/Vsp Data
SP58	Toner End Counter Check
SP100	Operation Time (Motor/Drum Count)
SP101-1	Total Counter
SP101-2	Total Color Counter
SP101-6	Total Duplex Counter
SP101-9	Paper Tray Unit Counter
SP101-10	By-pass/LCT Counter
SP101-17	Original Counter (ADF)
SP110-1	Drum Counter
SP110-2	Black Developer Counter
SP120-1 to -9	SC Counter
SP130-1 to -14	Jam Counter
SP165	ID-Sensor PWM/Output Check
SP166	V-Sensor PWM/Output Check
SP167	ADS Gain/Output Check

3.4 OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

The following table shows SP modes for enabling the optional equipment’s function:

Mode No.	Description	Data
SP71	Sorter	0:No 1:MC 2:MIN 3:MID 4:SS 5:ADP
SP72	Paper Tray Unit	0:No 1:Yes
SP84	Editing Eraser	0:No 1:Yes

4. TEST POINTS

4.1 MAIN CONTROL BOARD

Number	Label	Function
TP101	(LAMP)	Exposure lamp feedback voltage
TP102	(DRAMTH)	Drum thermistor reference voltage (25°C: 2V, 35°C: 1.6V, Open: 5V, Short: 0V)
TP103	(SCN-TNT)	Scanner free run with exposure lamp off by shorting TP103 and TP104.
TP104	(C GND)	Ground
TP105	(VCC)	+5V
TP106	(DRUM AC)	Feedback voltage for drum current ac component
TP107	(DRUM DC)	Feedback voltage for drum current dc component
TP108	(P-SEN)	ID sensor output
TP109	(VL)	V sensor output
TP110	(ADS)	ADS sensor output
TP111	(I-DRUM)	Feedback voltage for drum current
TP112	(DCPOL)	Reference voltage for drum current dc component's polarity
TP113	(FUSER)	Fusing thermistor reference voltage (Room temp: 4.8V, 185°C: 0.9V, Open: 5V, Short: 0V)

5. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

5.1 PM TABLE

NOTE: The amounts mentioned in the PM interval indicate the number of scans.
Symbol key: **C**: Clean **R**: Replace **L**: Lubricate **A**: Add **I**: Inspect

	EM	80K	160K	240K	NOTE
OPTICS					
Mirrors, Lens, Reflectors		C	C	C	Cotton pad with water, or blower brush **NOTE:** Clean 6th mirror with blower brush.
Exposure Glass	C	C	C	C	Alcohol or glass cleaner
Platen Cover Sheet	C	R	R	R	Alcohol or water (replace if necessary)
Scanner Guide Rail		C	C	C	Dry cloth
Magnification Guide Rail		C	C	C	Dry cloth
ADS, Original Size sensors	(C)	C	C	C	Blower brush
Optics Fan Filter		C	C	C	Replace if necessary
Optics Ozone Filter		R	R	R	
PAPER FEED		(for each paper feed station)			
Paper Feed Rollers (LCT/By-pass feed)	C	R	R	R	Water, replace pick-up, feed, and separation rollers as a set.
Paper Feed Roller (Paper Tray)	C	R	R	R	Water, replace with friction pad ass’y as a set.
Friction Pad Ass’y	C	R/L	R/L	R/L	Water / Albania 2 grease **Refer to NOTE1**
Separation Roller Slip Clutch (LCT, By-pass feed)		L	L	L	Mobil temp. 78 **Refer to NOTE 1**
Paper Feed Guide Plate		C	C	C	Alcohol
Registration Roller		C	C	C	Water
Relay Roller		C	C	C	Water
Paper Tray/LCT Bottom Plate Pad		R	R	R	Water
By-pass Feed Bottom Plate Pad		R	R	R	Water
Registration Sensor		C	C	C	Blower brush
AROUND THE DRUM					
Corona Wires	C	R	R	R	Dry cloth or water
Wire Cleaner		R	R	R	
Charge Grid		C	R	C	Blower brush

	EM	80K	160K	240K	NOTE
End Blocks and Casing	C	C	C	C	Water or alcohol
Transfer Guide Plate	C	C	C	C	Dry cloth
Pre-Transfer Lamp Filter	C	C	C	C	Dry cloth and blower brush, discharge any static before installation
Quenching Lamp Filter	C	C	C	C	Dry cloth, discharge any static before installation
Toner Shield Glass and Filter	C	C	C	C	Dry cloth, discharge any static before installation
ID Sensor	(C)	C	C	C	Blower brush
V Sensor	(C)	C	C	C	Blower brush
Erase Lamp Unit	C	C	C	C	Dry cloth
Pick-off Pawls	C	C	C	C	Replace if necessary
CLEANING UNIT					
Cleaning Blade		R	R	R	
Cleaning Seal		C	C	C	Replace if necessary
Cleaning Brush		R	R	R	
Used Toner Tank	(C)	C	C	C	Empty used toner
DEVELOPMENT UNIT					
Developer		R	R	R	
Development Unit Gears				C/L	Grease G–40M **Refer to NOTE 2**
Upper Seal		C	C	C	
Side Seals		C	C	C	
FUSING UNIT					
Hot Roller		C	R/L	C	Replace if necessary, Grease Barrierta L55/2 **Refer to NOTE 3**
Pressure Roller		C	R/L	C	Replace if necessary, Grease Barrierta L55/2 **Refer to NOTE 3**
Stripper Pawls	C	R	R	R	Replace
Fusing Entrance and Exit Guides		C	C	C	Suitable solvent
Fusing Thermistor		I	I	I	Suitable solvent, clean if necessary
Fusing Drive Gear			R/L		Grease G501 **Refer to NOTE 3**
DUPLEX		(for duplex copies)			
Feed Roller		R	R	R	
Bottom Plate Pad		R	R	R	

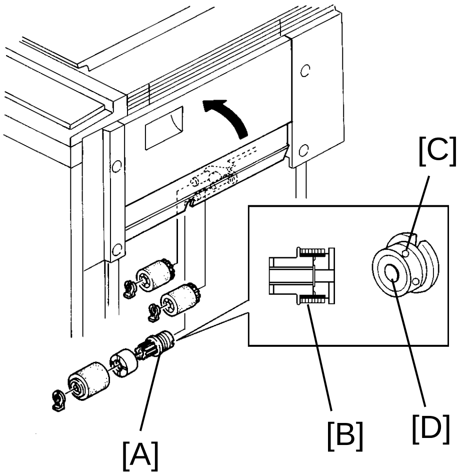
	EM	80K	160K	240K	NOTE
Clutch Spring		L	L	L	Mobil temp. 78, lubricate if necessary **Refer to NOTE 4**
OTHERS					
Ozone Filters (Paper)		R	R	R	
Ozone Filter (Ceramic)					Replace at 400K
Drive Belt		I	I	I	Replace if necessary
Bushings			L		Spindle oil **Refer to NOTE 5**
Exit Sensor		C	C	C	Blower brush
Development Unit Shift Clutch Spring				L	Mobil temp. 78 **Refer to NOTE 2**
Development Drive Gear				R/L	Grease G–40M **Refer to NOTE 2**
PAPER TRAY UNIT (A325/A326)					
Paper Feed Roller	C	R	R	R	Water, replace with friction pad ass’y as a set.
Friction Pad Ass’y	C	R/L	R/L	R/L	Water/Albania 2 grease **Refer to NOTE 1**
Paper Tray Bottom Plate Pad		R	R	R	Water
DOCUMENT FEEDER (A497)		(for originals)			
Transport Belt	C	R	R	R	Belt cleaner, replace if necessary
Pick-up Roller	C	C	C	C	Water, replace if necessary
Feed Roller	C	R	R	R	Water, replace if necessary
Friction Belt	C	R	R	R	Water, replace if necessary
SORTER (A327)					
Bin Guide/Wheel		L	L	L	Grease G501(if necessary)
Round Belt		C	C	C	Alcohol
Guide Plate		C	C	C	Dry cloth

Sorter Stapler (A366)	EM	320K	NOTE
Transport, Distribution, and Exit Rollers	C		Damp cloth
Bins	C		Damp cloth
Bin/Jam, Paper Sensors	C		Blower brush
Bushings	L		Launa oil or equivalent; if bushings generate noise.
Gears	L		Grease-501; if gears generate noise.
Worm gears	L		Heat resisting grease MT-78; if worm gears generate noise.
Diagonal Transport Rollers		C	Damp cloth
Diagonal Transport Stopper		C	Alcohol
Staple Unit Guide Rod, Pad	L		Launa oil

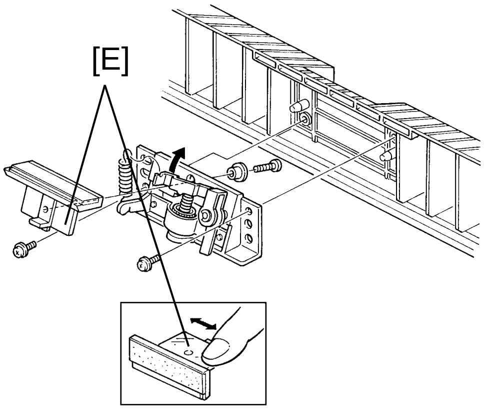
The location of the parts which should be lubricated at PM, are shown in the following figures:

Note1: Paper feed Section

(1)Separation Roller Slip Clutch
Clean the slip clutch [A].
Then, lubricate the inner surface of the spring [B] and the three grease holes [C] of the hub [D] with Mobil Temp. 78 every 80K.

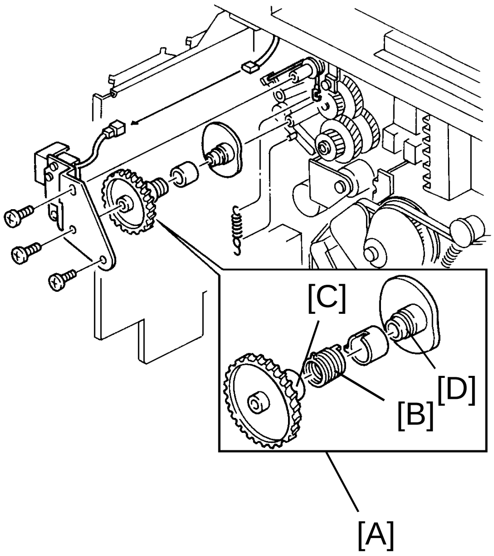


(2)Friction Pad Assembly
Replace the friction pad assembly [E] every 80k.
Then, lubricate the pad holder with ALBANIA 2 grease as shown.

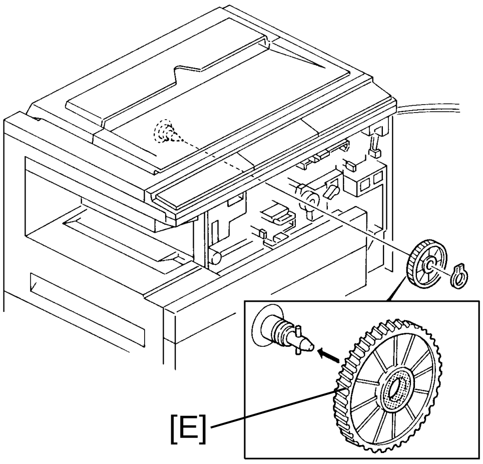


Note2: Development Section

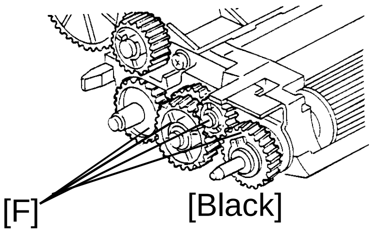
(1)Development Unit Change Clutch Clean the shift clutch assembly [A].
Then, lubricate the clutch spring [B] with Mobil Temp. 78 every 240K.

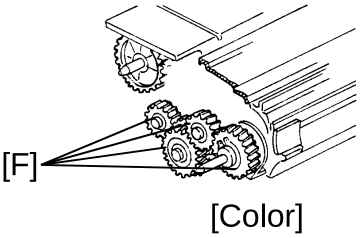


(2)Development Drive Gear
Replace the development drive gear [E] every 240K.
Then, lubricate it with Silicone Grease G-40M.



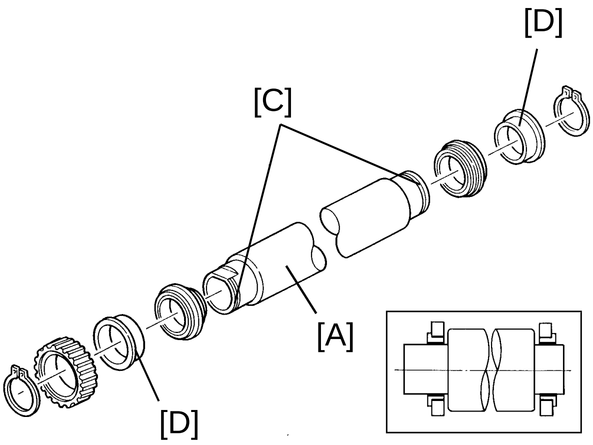
(3)Development Unit Gears
Clean the gears [F] located on the rear side of development unit.
Then, lubricate them with Silicone Grease G-40M every 240K.

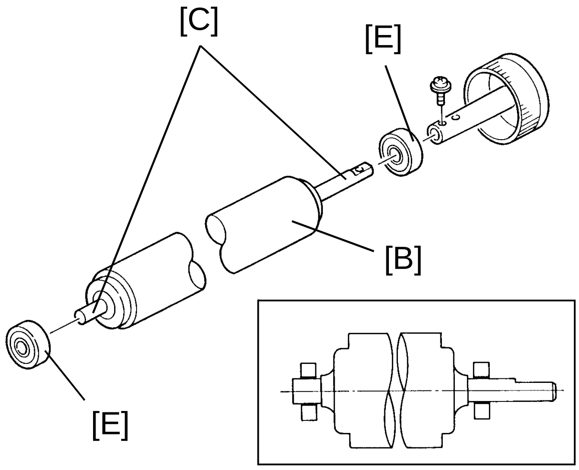




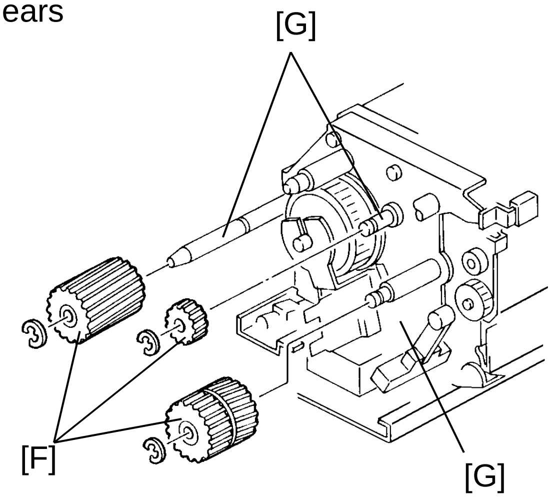
Note3: Fusing Section

(1)Hot and Pressure Rollors
Replace the hot [A] and pressure [B] rollers every 160K if necessary.
Then, lubricate the roller shaft [C], bushings [D] and bearings [E] with BARRIERTA L55/2 grease.



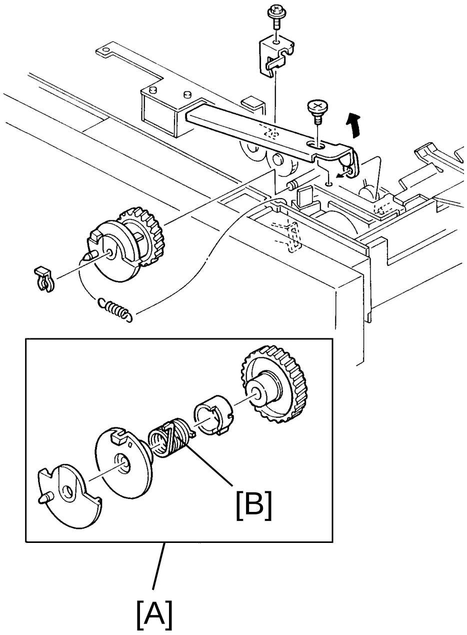


(2)Fusing Drive Gears
Replace the fusing drive gears [F] every 160K.
Then, lubricate them and their shafts [G] with Grease G501.



Note4: Duplex Section

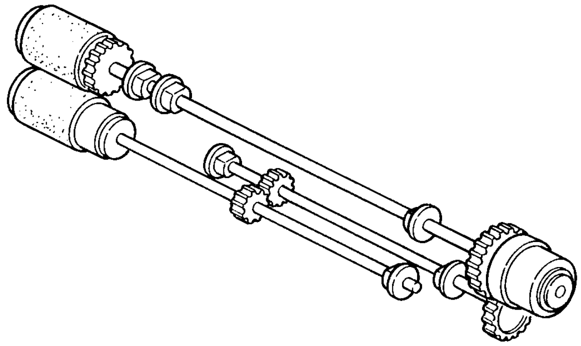
(1)Clutch Spring
Clean the clutch assembly [A]. Then, lubricate the clutch spring with Mobil Temp. 78 every 80K.



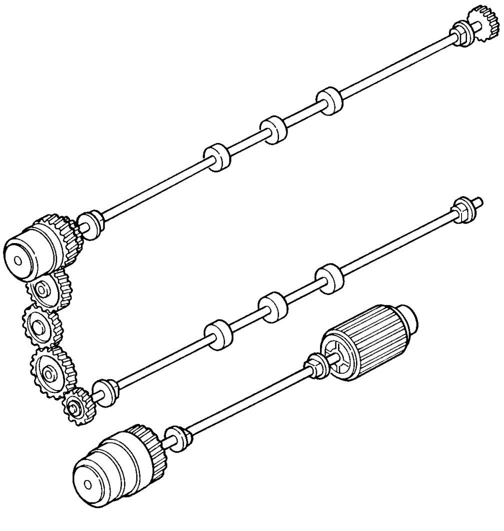
Note5: Bushings

Lubricate the following bushings with machine oil every 160K.

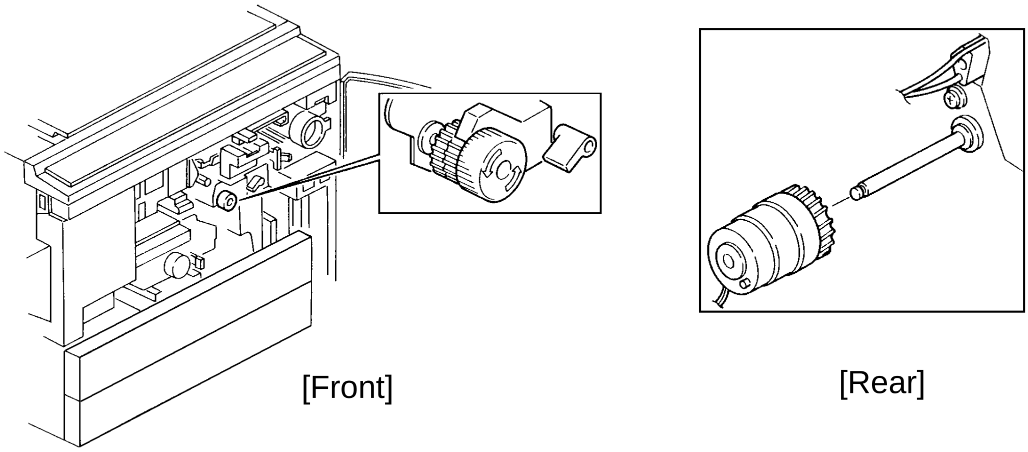
(1)Paper Feed (LCT/By-pass Feed)



(2)Relay Rollers and Tray Paper Feed



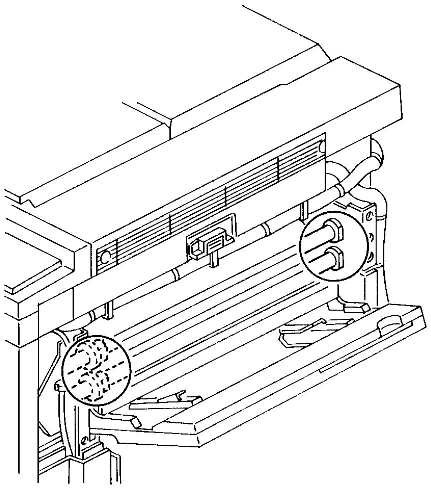
(3)Registration Roller



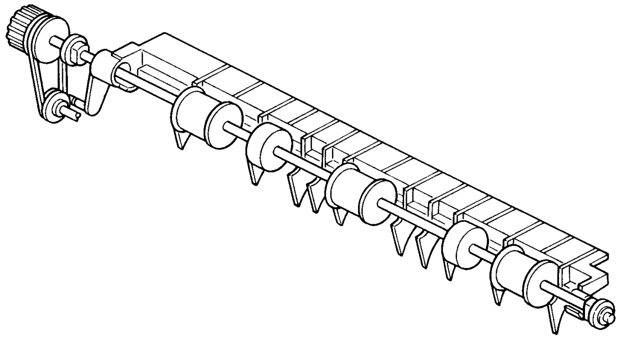
[Front]

[Rear]

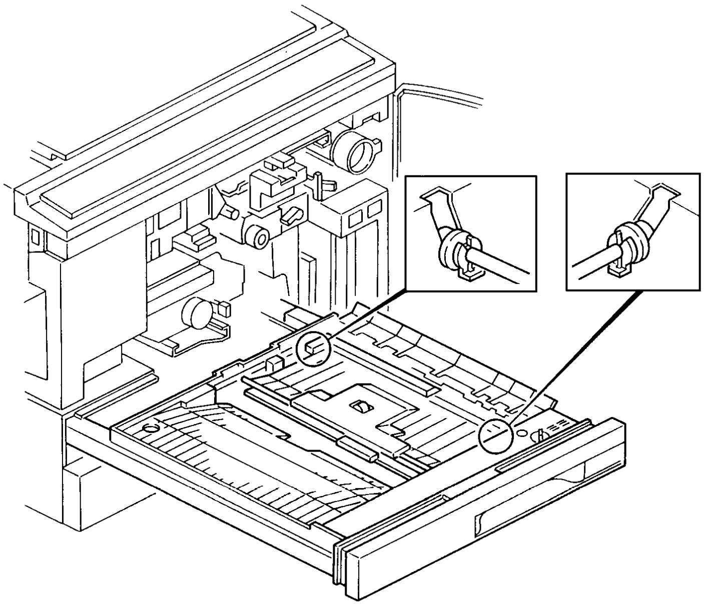
(4)Development Shift Section



(5)Exit Roller



(6)Duplex Tray



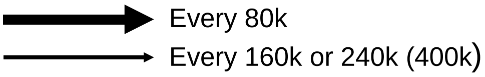
5.2 EXPLANATION OF REGULAR PM

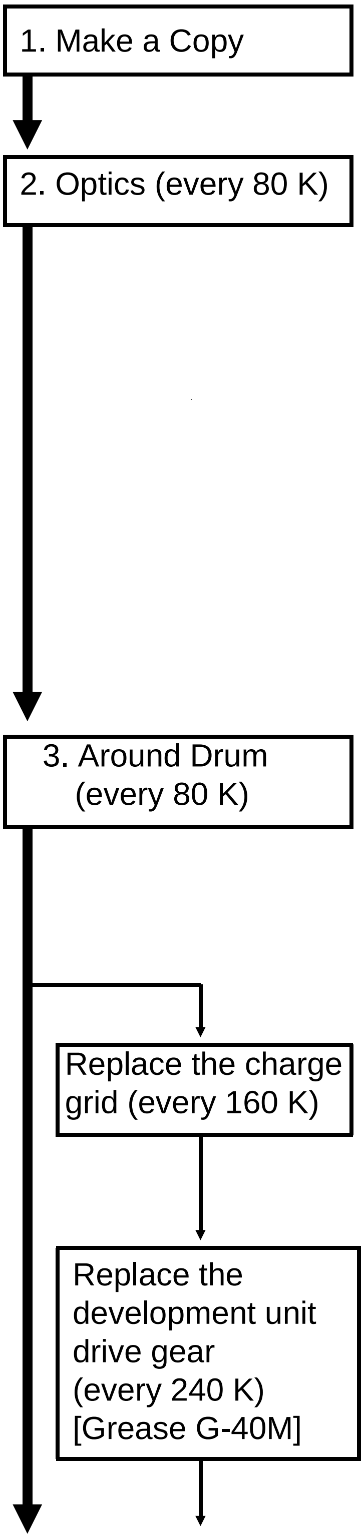
Item		Explanation
Optics Unit	Mirrors, Lens, Reflector, Exposure Glass, Platen Cover	Stains on any part of the optics unit result in black lines or areas of decreased sharpness on the copy image. Periodic cleaning is required. The exposure glass and the platen cover must also be cleaned. If stains on the platen cover cannot be removed, it must be replaced.
	Exposure Lamp	Deterioration of the exposure lamp affects the copy image. Check the lamp at regular intervals and replace if discolored.
	Ozone Filter	When an ozone filter deteriorates, ozone produced in the copier well not be absorbed causing headaches irritations, or other discomforts. Replace at regular intervals.
Paper Feed, Registration	Paper Feed Roller, Pick-up Roller, Separation Roller Friction Pad Ass’y Bottom Plate Pad	This machine uses paper trays and LCT for paper feeding. If paper dust adheres to the paper feed roller, friction pad ass’y and bottom plate pads are worn out, paper may not feed correctly and/or skewing may result. Cleaning or replacement is required at regular intervals.
	Registration Roller	A dirty registration roller can cause paper to register incorrectly, skew, or jam. Cleaning is required at regular intervals.
Transport	Transfer Guide Plate	If the transfer guide plate is dirty, the back side of the copy may become dirty. Clean the plate at regular intervals.

Item		Explanation
Around Drum	Drum	The drum exceeding its lifetime may cause black lines in half tone area, dirty background, and overtoning. Replace the drum at regular intervals.
	Charge Wires Charge Grid	Dirty charge wires may cause uneven image density. They should be cleaned or replaced at regular intervals.
	End Blocks	Toner tends to accumulate on the corona end blocks, and this can result in poor copy quality or even a high voltage leak. Clean end blocks at regular intervals.
	QL	If toner accumulates on the QL filter, a dirty background or a repeating negative image may result. Clean the QL filter at regular intervals.
	PTL	If paper dust or toner accumulates on the PTL filter, its efficiency may be reduced. This can cause toner to be reattracted to the drum during transfer, reducing image density. Clean the PTL filter at regular intervals.
	ID Sensor	If paper dust or toner accumulates on the ID sensor, the toner density cannot be controlled correctly. This results in light copy or overtoning. Clean this sensor at regular intervals.
	V Sensor	If paper dust or toner accumulates on the V sensor, the image density cannot be controlled correctly. This results in light or dark copies. Clean this sensor at regular intervals.
Around Drum	Erase Lamp	If toner accumulates on the erase lamp, a dirty background may occur in the erased area that becomes progressively worse in long copy runs. Also this affects sensor pattern detection, causing incorrect toner density and exposure lamp control. Clean this lamp at regular intervals.
Cleaning Unit	Cleaning Blade	A dirty or worn out cleaning blade will cause black lines on copies and/or scratches on the drum. The blade must be replaced or cleaned at regular intervals.
	Cleaning Brush	A worn out cleaning brush will not clean the drum surface effectively, resulting in a dirty background and damage to the cleaning blade. Replace at regular intervals.
	Used Toner Tank	The used toner tank becomes full before the used toner overflow detection if the tank is not emptied when resetting the toner end counter (SP83). This may cause poor cleaning, damage to the cleaning empty the tank at regular intervals unit and the drum, and/or toner scattering inside the machine.

Item		Explanation
Fusing Unit	Thermistor	If toner accumulates on the thermistor, fusing temperature control may not be accurate. Inspect the thermistor at regular intervals.
	Stripper Pawls	Toner or dust adhering to the stripper pawls can cause a paper jam. Clean or replace the pawls at regular intervals.
	Fusing Entrance and Exit Guides	Toner piling up on the guide plate will cause a dirty background on the copy or paper jam. Clean the guide plate at regular intervals.
Duplex Unit	Feed Roller and Bottom Plate Pad	If paper dust adheres to the feed roller and bottom plate pad, paper may not feed correctly and/or skewing may result. Cleaning or replacement is required at regular intervals.
Others	Ozone Filters	When an ozone filter deteriorates, ozone produced in the copier well not be absorbed causing headaches irritations, or other discomforts. Replace at regular intervals.
Paper Tray Unit	Paper Feed Roller, Friction Pad Ass'y Bottom Plate Pads	This machine uses paper trays for paper feeding. If paper powder or dust adheres to the paper feed roller, friction pad ass'y and bottom plate pads are worn out, paper may not feed correctly and/or skewing may result. Cleaning or replacement is required at regular intervals.
ARDF	Transport Belt	A dirty transport belt can leave stains on copies. Clean or replace the belt at regular intervals.
	Pick-up Roller, Separation Roller, Separation Belt	When dirty, these rollers and this belt can leave stains on the copy paper. Also, original misfeeds or multifeeds may occur. Clean or replace these parts at regular intervals.
Sorter	Bin Drive Wheel, Bin Guide	Dust adhering to the bin drive wheel or bin guide may interfere with bin movement and result in uneven bin positioning. Clean and lubricate if necessary.
Sorter Stapler	Diagonal Transport Roller Diagonal Transport Stopper	If paper dust adheres to the diagonal transport rollers and stopper, paper may not transport correctly and/or paper jam may result. Cleaning or replacement is required at regular intervals.

5.3 REGULAR PM PROCEDURE


Every 80k
Every 160k or 240k (400k)


1. Make a Copy
2. Optics (every 80 K)
3. Around Drum (every 80 K)
Replace the charge grid (every 160 K)
Replace the development unit drive gear (every 240 K) [Grease G-40M]

Make a copy of 0-S-A3 test chart at manual image density level 4.

1. Clean the mirrors, lens and reflectors by using a soft cloth, cotton pad with water, or a blower brush.
2. Clean the exposure glass with alcohol or water.
3. Clean the scanner guide rail with a dry cloth.
4. Clean the magnification guide rail with a dry cloth.
5. Clean the ADS sensor and the original width and length sensors with a blower brush.
6. Replace the platen cover sheet.
7. Clean the optics cooling fan filter.
8. Replace the ozone filter.

1. Remove the used drum and clean the ID and V sensors with a blower brush.
2. Clean the pick-off pawls and the toner shield glass.
3. Clean the green filter with a dry cloth. Discharge any static electricity on the filter.
4. Install a new drum.
5. Clean the QL and PTL filters, and erase lamp unit with a dry cloth, discharge any static before installation.
6. Clean the end blocks, casing and transfer guide plate with water or alcohol.
7. Replace the corona wires and wire cleaner.
8. Clean the charge grid with a blower brush.
9. Clean the registration rollers.

4. Cleaning Unit (every 80 K)

1. Empty the used toner tank.
2. Clean the inside of the cleaning unit and seals.
3. Replace the cleaning blade and brush.

5. Development Unit (every 80 K)

1. Clean the development unit guide plate in the copier with a damp cloth.
2. Remove the developer.
3. Clean the development unit and gears.
4. Pour a pack of new developer.

Lubricate the development unit gears.
(every 240K)
[Grease G-40M]

6. Paper Feed (every 80K for each Feed Station)

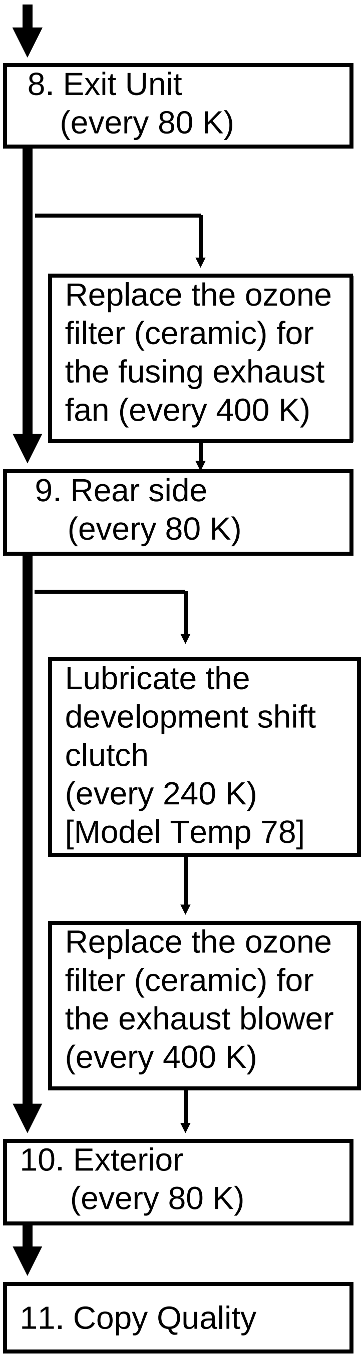
1. Clean the paper guide plate.
2. Lubricate the slip clutch for the separation roller (LCT). [Mobil Temp. 78]
3. Replace the paper feed, pick-up, and separation rollers (LCT).
4. Replace the feed rollers, friction pad assemblies and paper tray bottom plate pads. [Albania 2]
5. Replace the duplex paper feed roller.
6. Replace the by-pass feed bottom plate pad.
7. Lubricate the duplex clutch spring. [Mobil Temp. 78]

7. Fusing Unit (every 80 K)

1. Clean the entrance and exit guide plates.
2. Inspect the thermistor.
3. Replace the stripper pawls.
4. Lubricate the drive gears. [Grease G501]

Fusing Unit (every 160 K)

1. Clean the thermistor.
2. Replace the hot roller, pressure roller and drive gears. [Barrierta L55/2] [Grease G501]


8. Exit Unit (every 80 K)
Replace the ozone filter (ceramic) for the fusing exhaust fan (every 400 K)
9. Rear side (every 80 K)
Lubricate the development shift clutch (every 240 K) [Model Temp 78]
Replace the ozone filter (ceramic) for the exhaust blower (every 400 K)
10. Exterior (every 80 K)
11. Copy Quality

1. Clean the exit rollers.
2. Inspect the antistatic brush.

1. Replace the ozone filter (paper) for the exhaust blower.
2. Lubricate the gears.
3. Inspect the timing belts.

1. Clean the covers.

1. Perform the black developer initialization (SP65).
2. Perform the color developer initialization (SP10) if the color developer has been replaced.
3. Perform the drum initial setting (SP66).
4. Perform the auto Vsg/Veg adjustment (SP54).
5. Adjust the exposure lamp voltage (SP48).
6. Perform the auto ADS gain adjustment (SP56).
7. Reset the toner end counter (SP83).

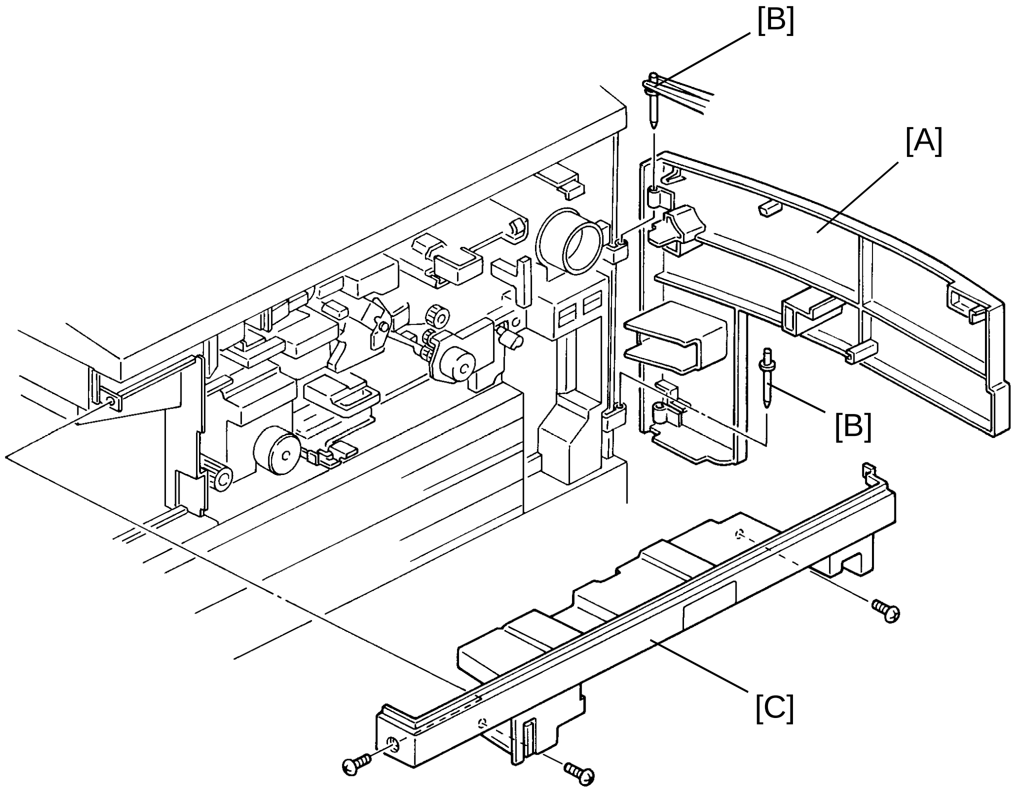
SECTION 5

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

1. EXTERIOR AND INNER COVERS

1.1 EXTERIOR COVER REMOVAL

1.1.1 Front Door

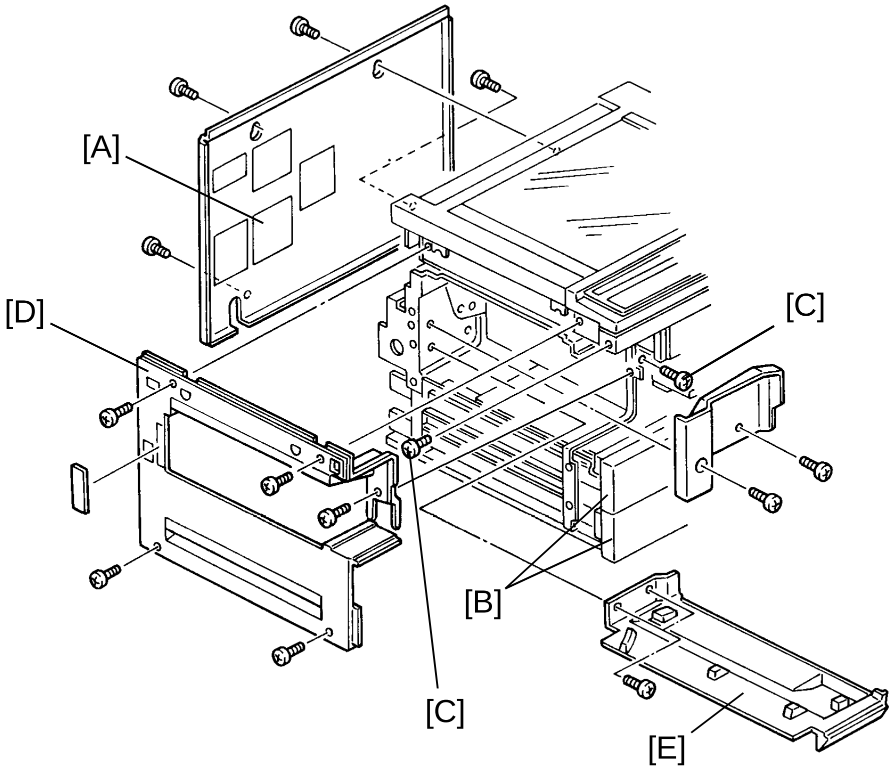


1. Open the front door [A].
2. Pull out the 2 pins [B].

1.1.2 Front Upper Cover

1. Open the front door and remove.
2. Remove the front upper cover [C] (3 screws).

1.1.3 Rear Cover



1. Remove the rear cover [A] (remove 2 screws and loosen 2 screws).

1.1.4 Left Cover

1. Open the front door and pull out the upper and lower paper trays (or the duplex tray) [B].
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Remove the left and front side screws [C] of the front upper cover (1 screw).
4. Remove the left cover [D] (5 screws).

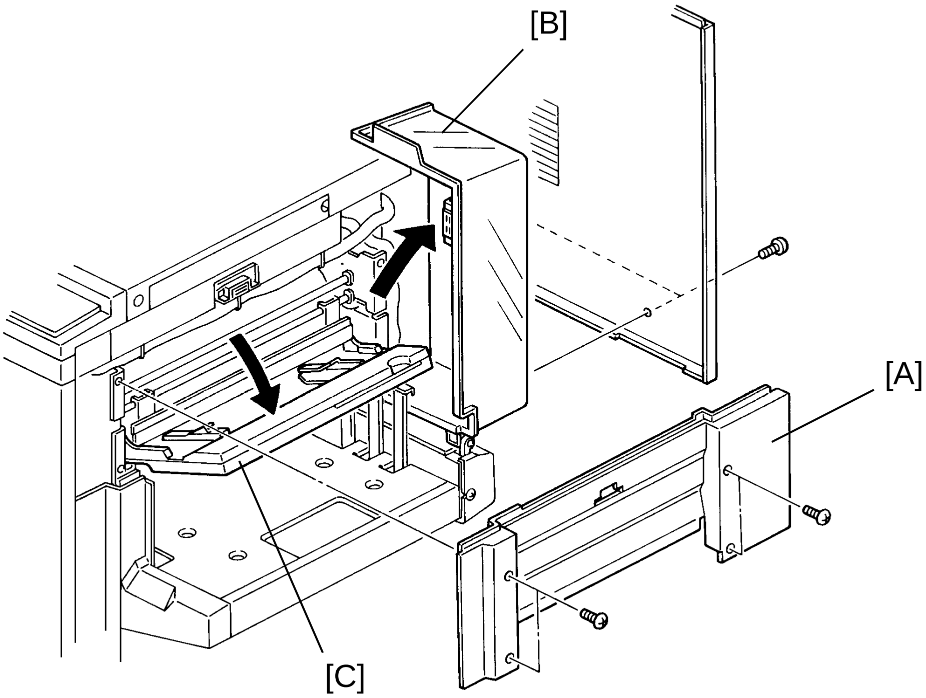
NOTE: Remove the sorter, sorter stapler and sorter adapter if they are installed.

1.1.5 Left Bottom Cover

1. Remove the left cover.
2. Remove the left bottom cover [E] (4 screws).

NOTE: Remove the sorter, (sorter stapler) and sorter adapter if they are installed.

1.1.6 Right Upper Cover

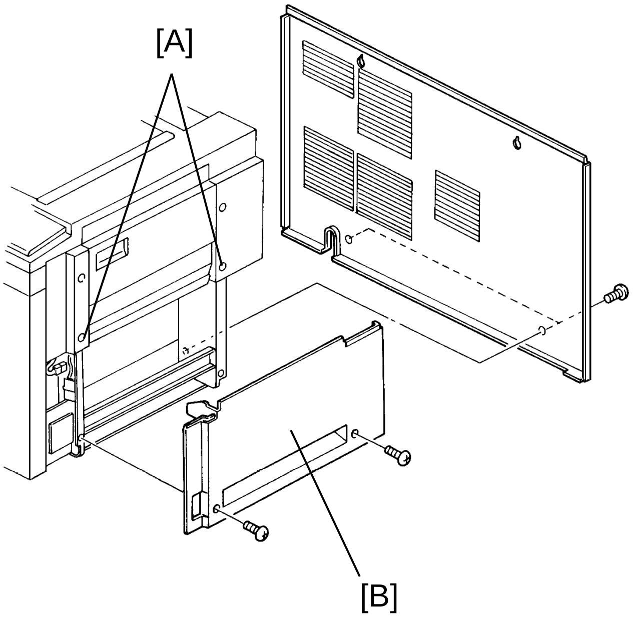


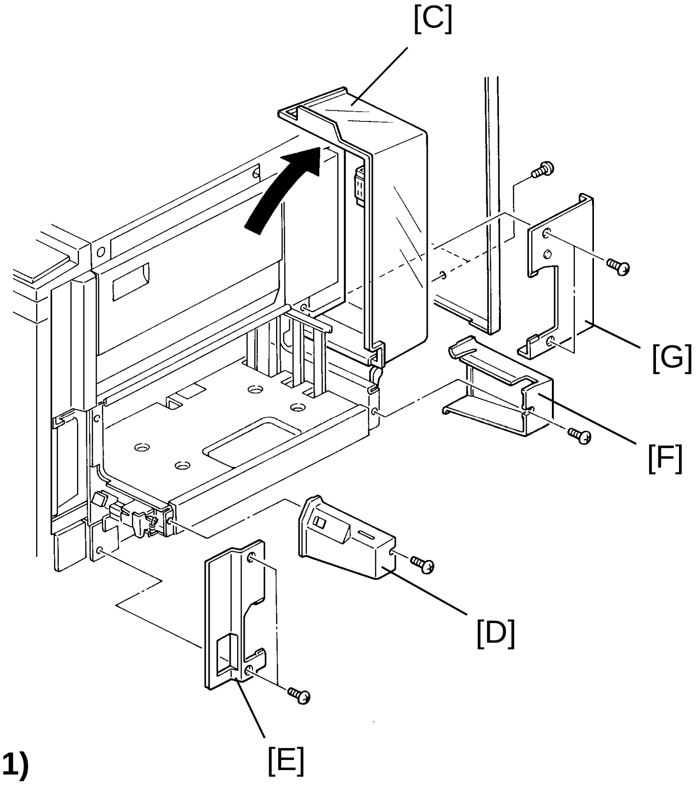
Type 2 and Type 3

1. Remove the rear cover.
2. Remove 4 screws of the right upper cover [A].
3. Open the LCT top cover [B].
4. Open the by-pass feed table [C] and remove the right upper cover.

Type 1

1. Remove the rear cover.
2. Open the by-pass feed table.
3. Remove the right upper cover (4 screws).





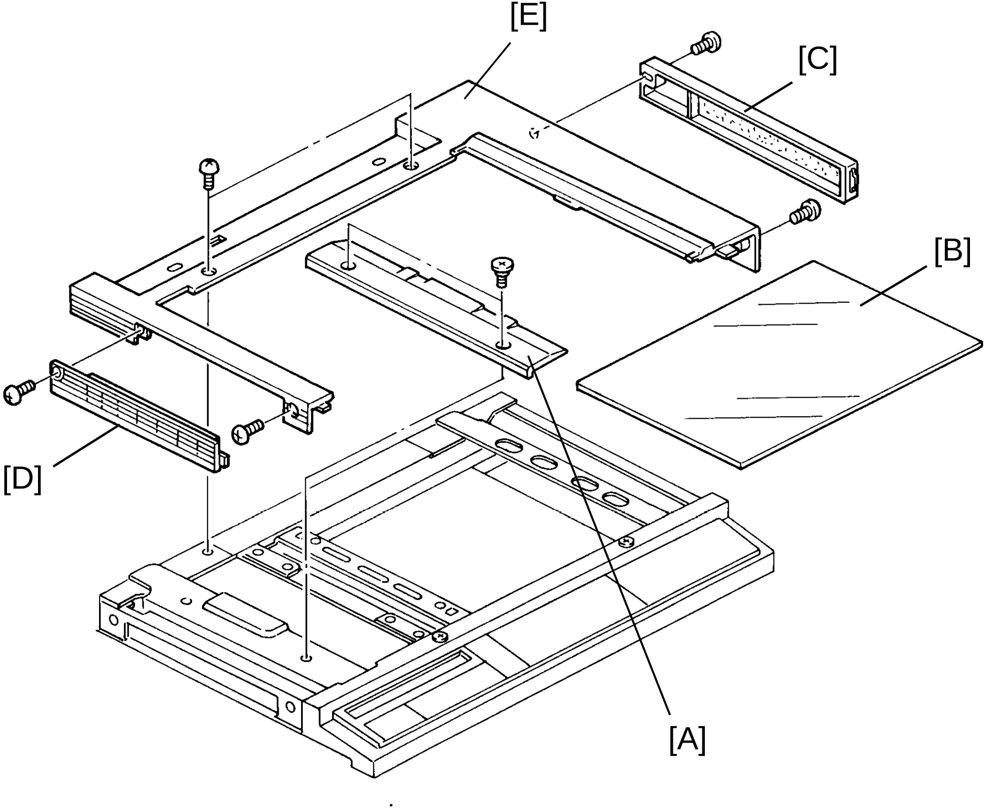
1.1.7 Right Lower Cover (for Type 1)

1. Remove the rear cover.
2. Remove the lower side 2 screws [A] of the right upper cover.
3. Remove the right lower cover [B] (2 screws).

1.1.8 Right Lower Covers (for Type 2 and Type 3)

1. Open the LCT top cover [C].
2. Remove the LCT front cover [D] (1 screw).
3. Remove the right lower front cover [E] (2 screws).
4. Close the LCT top cover.
5. Remove the LCT rear cover [F] (1 screw).
6. Remove the right lower rear cover [G] (2 screws).

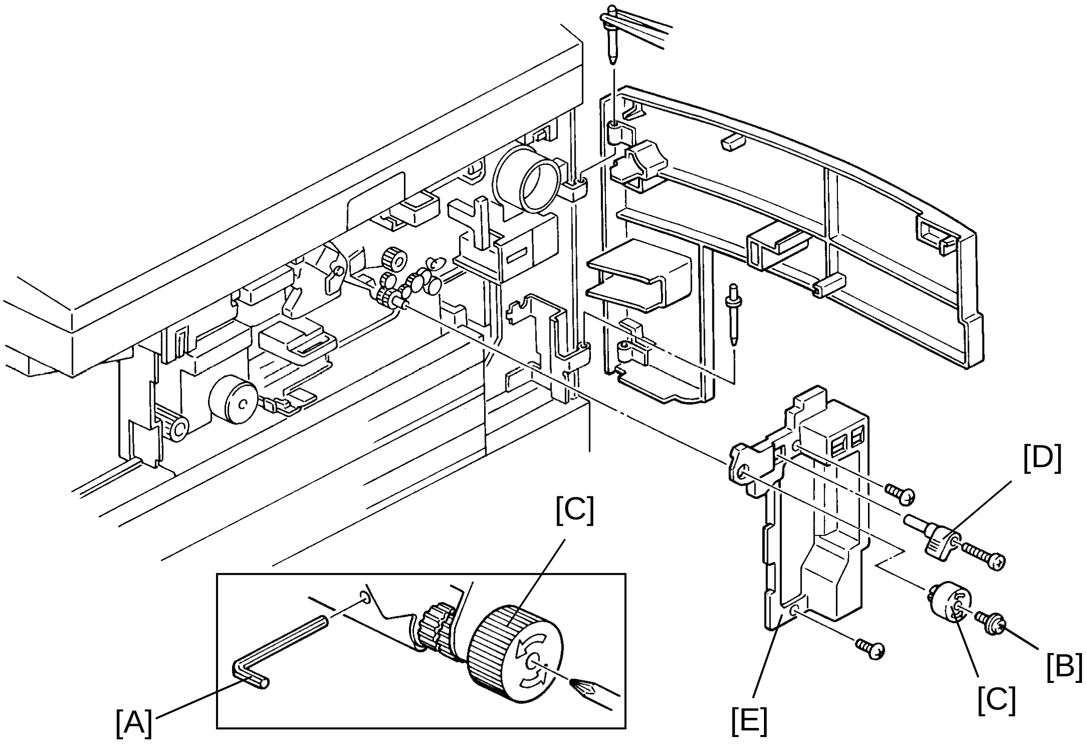
1.1.9 Top Cover



NOTE: Remove the document feeder or platen cover if either is installed.

1. Remove the left scale [A] (2 shoulder screws).
2. Remove the exposure glass [B].
3. Remove the right and left optics covers [C, D] (1 screw each).
4. Remove the top cover [E] (4 screws).

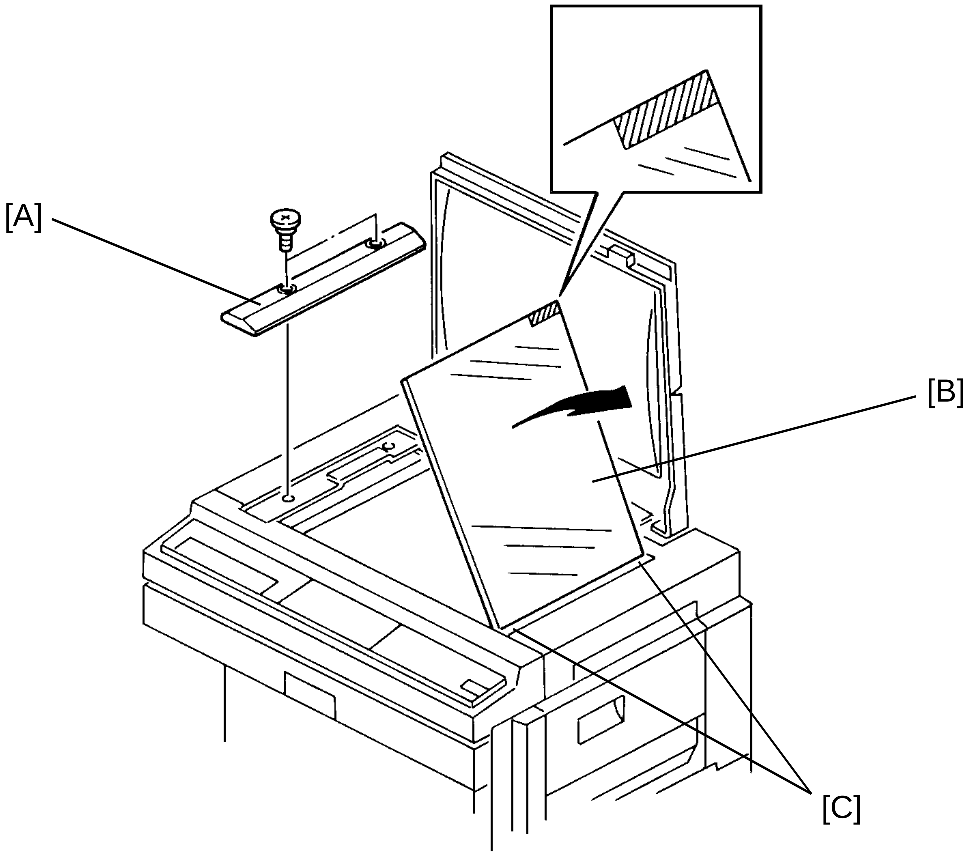
1.2 INNER COVER REMOVAL



1. Open the front door and remove.
2. Insert an Allen key [A] in the hole of the registration roller shaft through a hole in the bracket.
3. While holding the Allen key, remove the fixing screw [B].
4. Remove the registration knob [C] and paper guide release lever [D] (1 screw each).
5. Remove the inner cover [E] (2 screws).

2. OPTICS

2.1 EXPOSURE GLASS REMOVAL

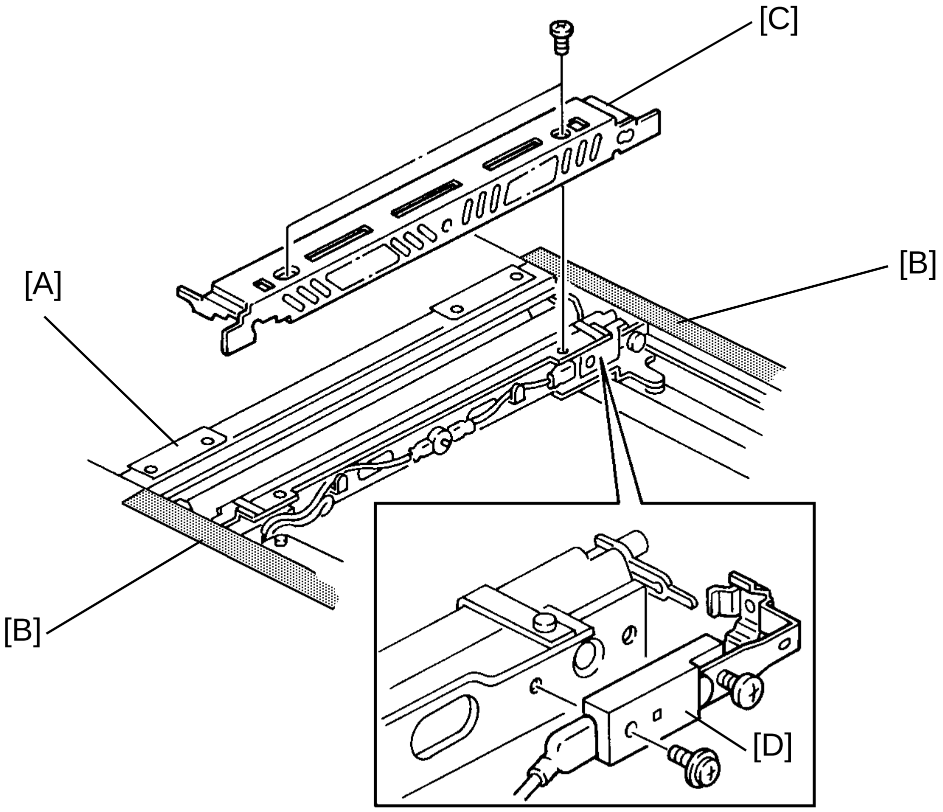


1. Remove the left scale [A] (2 shoulder screws).
2. Grasp the left edge of the exposure glass [B] and lift up slightly. Slide the other edge out from under the right glass holder [C]. Remove the exposure glass.

   NOTE: When reinstalling the exposure glass, make sure of the following:

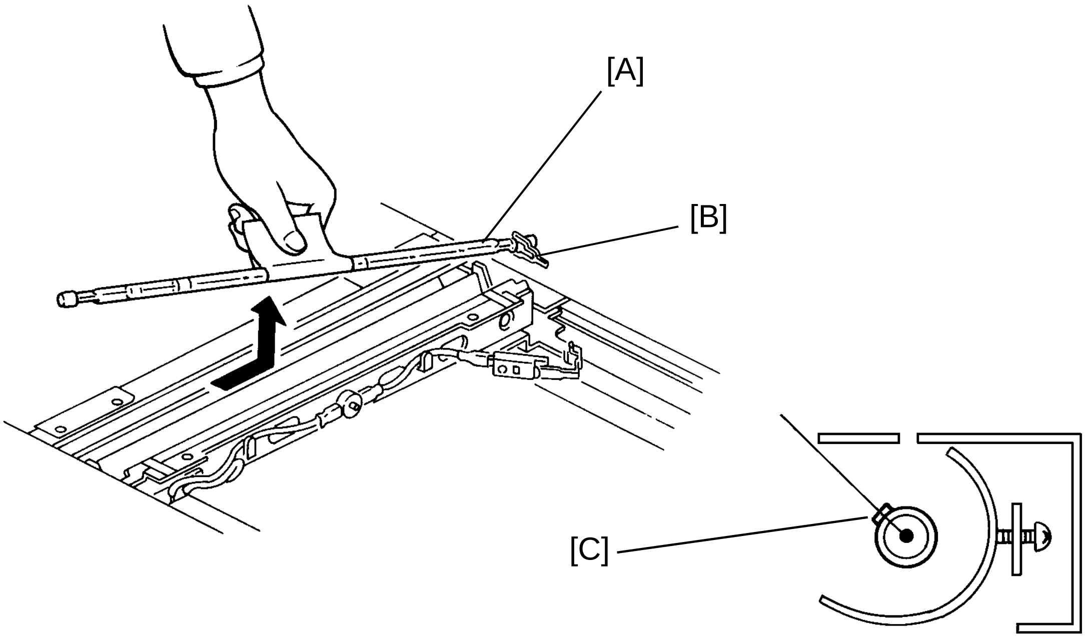
   a) That the red mark on the edge of the glass faces up. This side is smoother and it generates less static electricity when the DF is used.

2.2 EXPOSURE LAMP REPLACEMENT



NOTE: Do not touch the reflector or the new exposure lamp with your bare hands. Use a strip of paper as shown aver page. (Oil marks from fingers on the lamp or reflectors will be affected by heat from the lamp and will cause discoloration.)

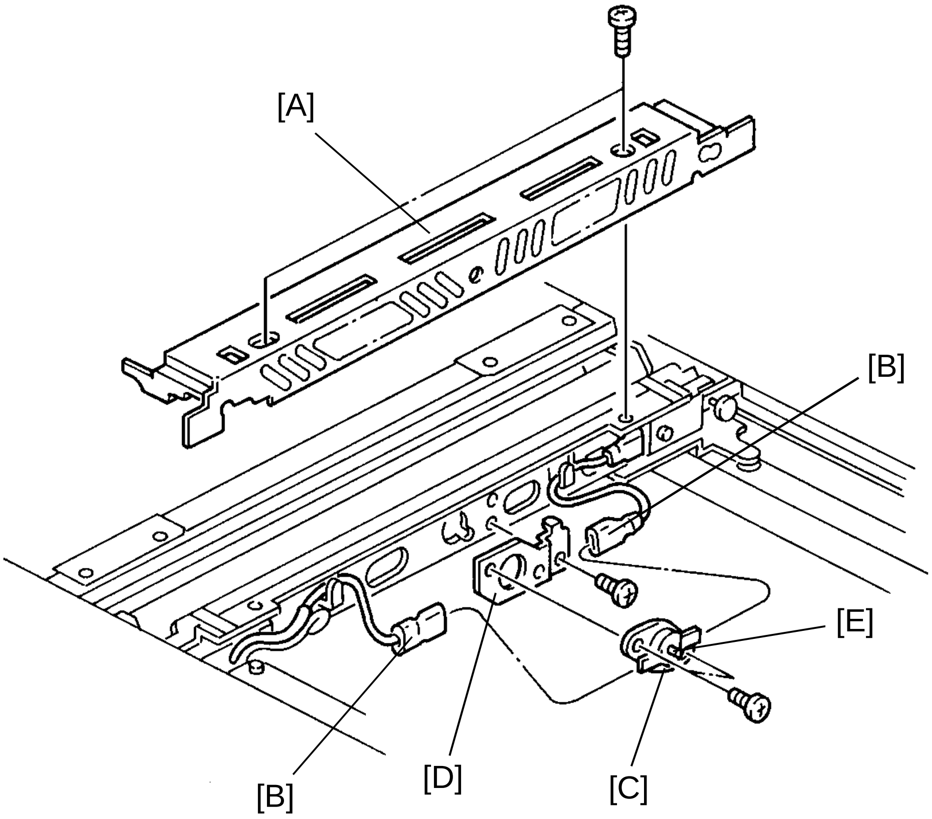
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
3. Move the first scanner [A] to the cutout position at the front and rear frames [B]. (See illustration.)
4. Remove the reflector cover [C] (2 screws).
5. Remove the rear terminal bracket [D] (1 screw).



6. Remove the exposure lamp [A] from the front terminal by moving the lamp toward the rear.
7. Install a new lamp. Use a strip of paper as shown to hold the lamp. Reassemble the rear terminal bracket while confirming that the lamp is properly set by both terminals and the clip [B] is set properly.

   NOTE: Make sure that the blister [C] on the lamp points towards the reflector opening (left side of the copier) as shown.
8. Reassemble the copier.
9. Check the exposure lamp voltage setting [X] by SP48.
10. Check the target lamp voltage [Y] by SP51 (press "•" key for reading).
11. Perform the forced V_L detection (SP70) [Y-X] times.
12. Check the target lamp voltage by SP51.
13. Perform the forced V_L detection (SP70) a few more times.
14. Check the target lamp voltage [Z] by SP51 again and confirm that the voltage [Z] is the same as that in step 12. If not, repeat the forced VL detection (SP70) until the voltage [Z] does not change.
15. Perform the auto ADS gain adjustment (SP56).
16. Adjust the ADS density (SP34) if necessary.

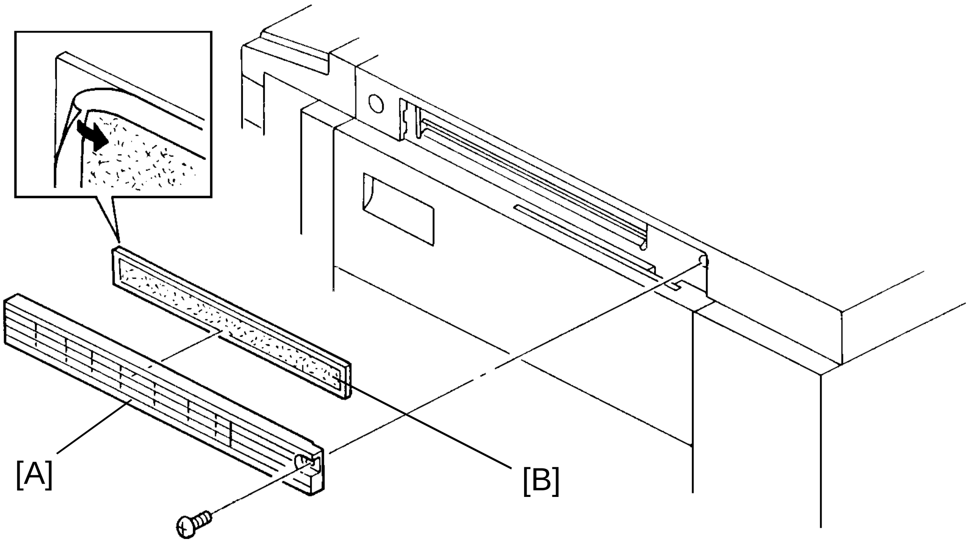
2.3 OPTICS THERMOSWITCH REPLACEMENT



NOTE: The thermoswitch can be reset manually to push the red button [E] when the exposure lamp area cools.

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the exposure glass.
3. Slide the 1st scanner about 150 mm (6") to the right.
4. Remove the refector cover [A] (2 screws).
5. Remove the exposure lamp leads [B] from the terminals on both sides of the thermoswitch [C].
6. Remove the thermoswitch bracket [D] (1 screw).
7. Remove the thermoswitch from the bracket (2 screws), and replace it.

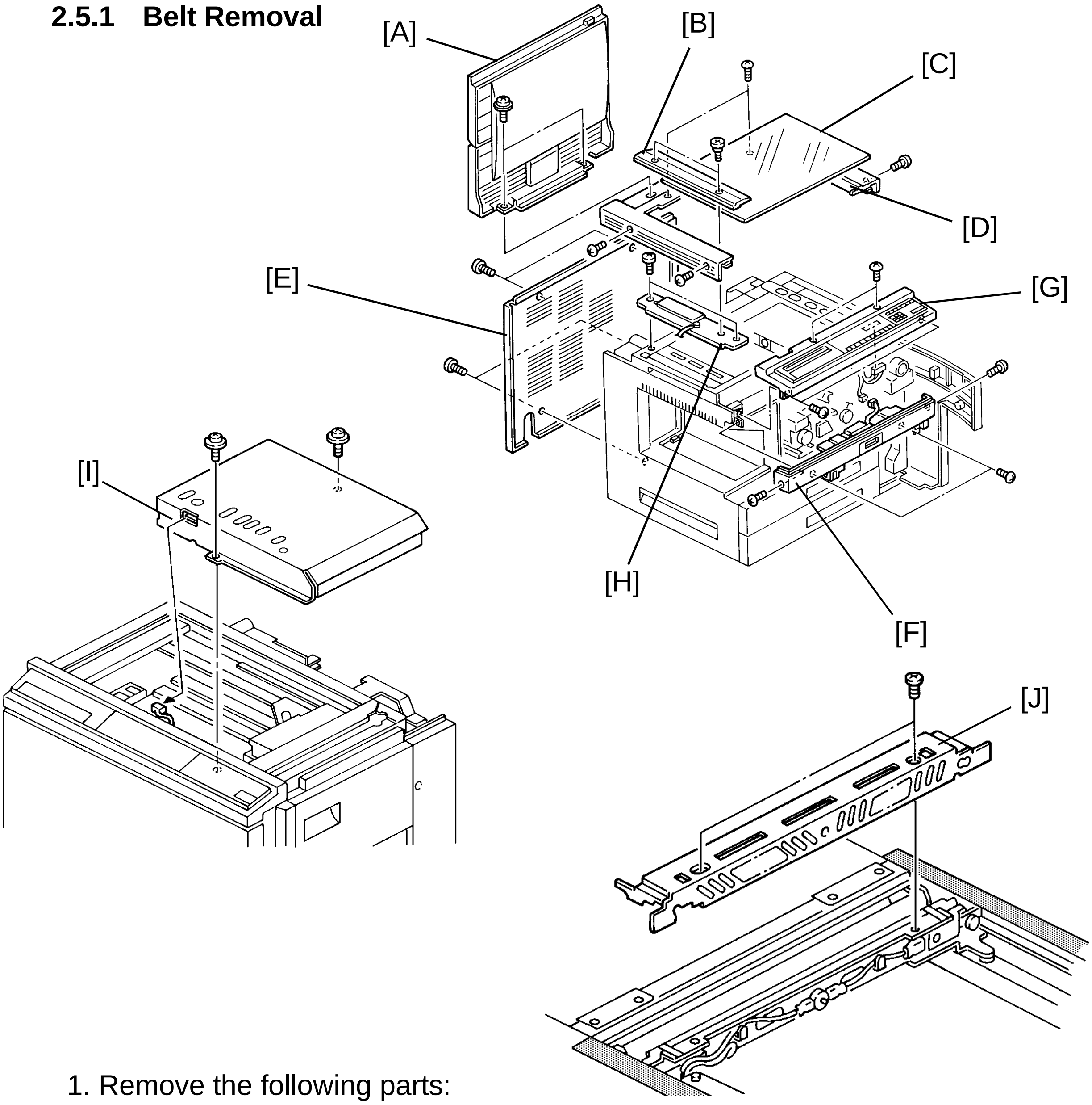
2.4 OPTICS FAN FILTER CLEANING AND REPLACEMENT



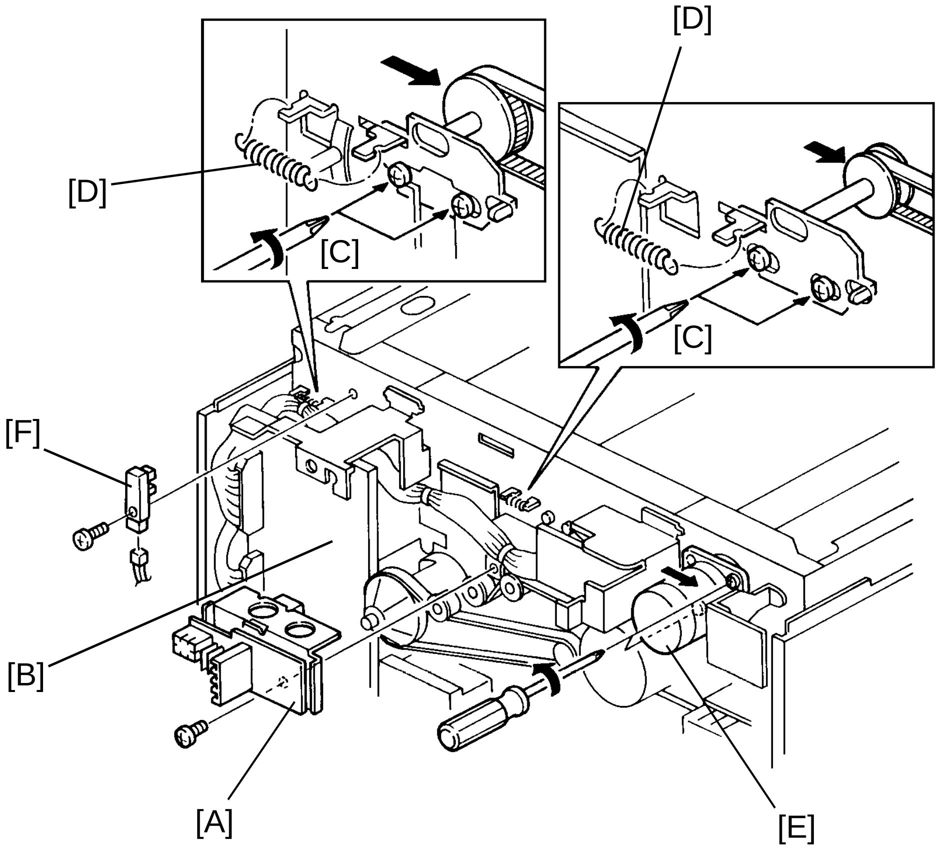
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the right optics cover [A] (1 screw).
3. Clean or replace the optics fan filter [B].

2.5 SCANNER DRIVE BELT REPLACEMENT

2.5.1 Belt Removal

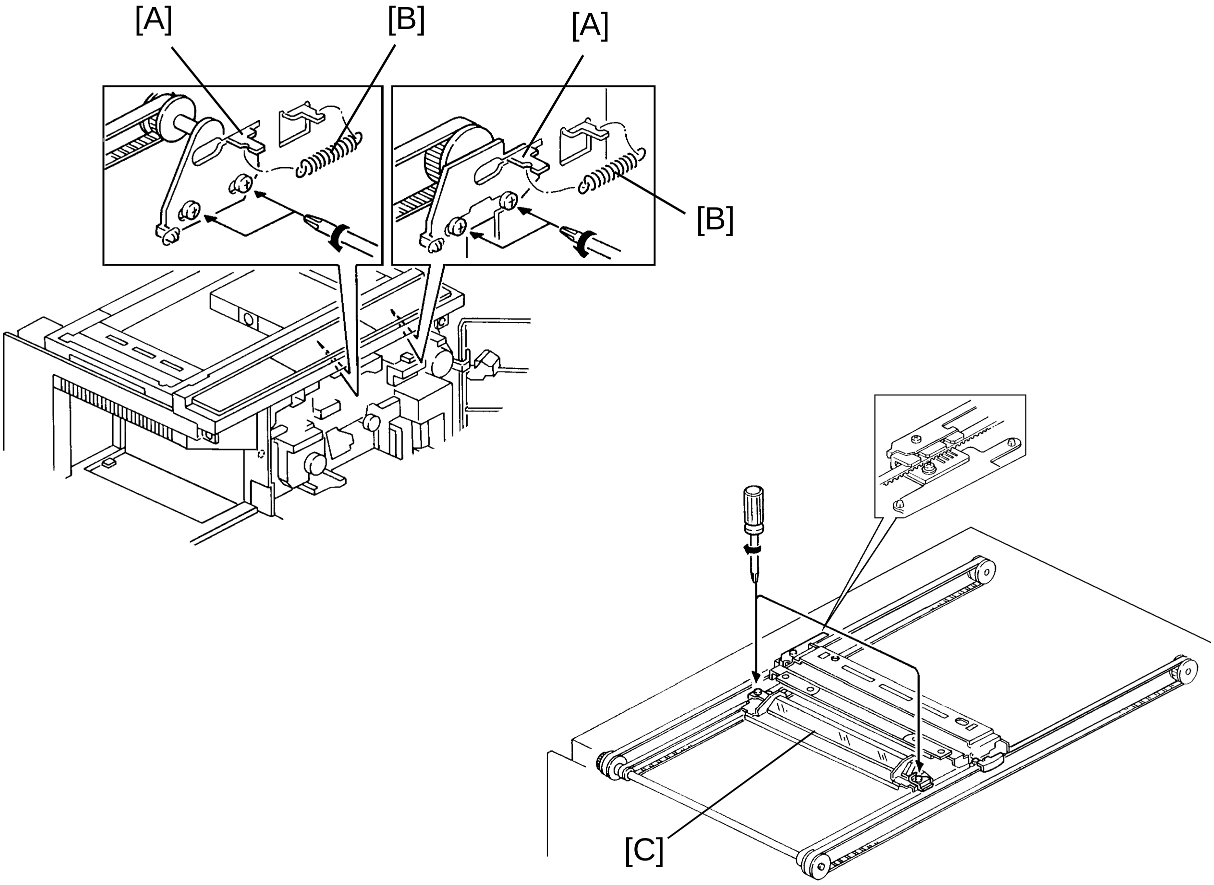


1. Remove the following parts:
   Platen cover or ADF [A]
   Left scale [B] (2 shoulder screws)
   Exposure glass [C]
   Top cover [D] (6 screws)
   Rear cover [E] (loosen 2 screws and remove 2 screws)
   Front upper cover [F] (3 screws)
   Operation panel [G] (4 screws and 2 connectors)
   Left scale bracket [H] (2 screws, 1 connector and 1 harness clamp)
   Lens cover [I] (2 screws and 1 connector)
   Reflector over [I] (2 screws)



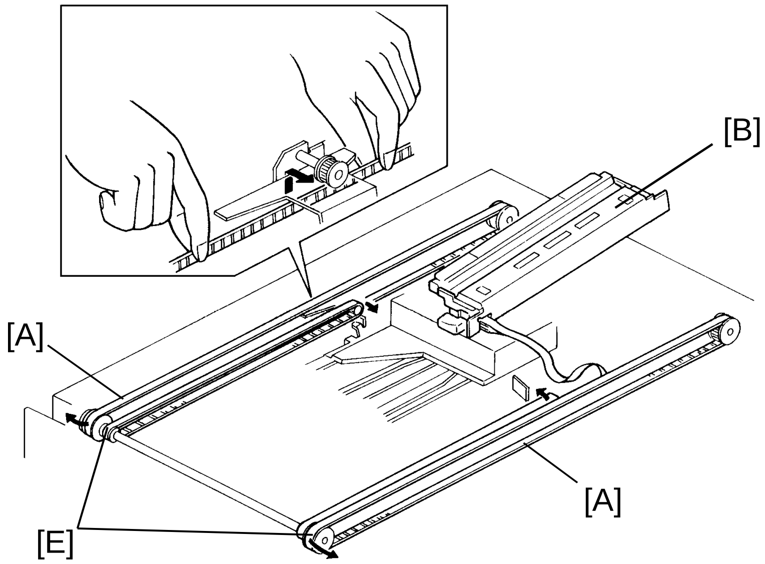
<Rear side of the scanner drive belts>

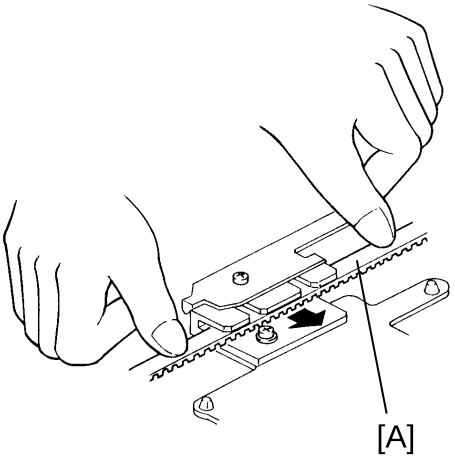
2. Remove the PTL/QL stabilizer [A] (1 screw, 6 connectors, 2 wire saddles).
3. Swing out the main control board assembly [B] (1 screw).
4. Loosen the screws [C] for the tension brackets of the long and short scanner drive belts (2 screws each).
5. Remove 2 tension springs [D].
6. Remove the scanner drive motor [E] (2 screws, 1 connector).
7. Remove the 3rd scanner home position sensor [F] (1 screw).

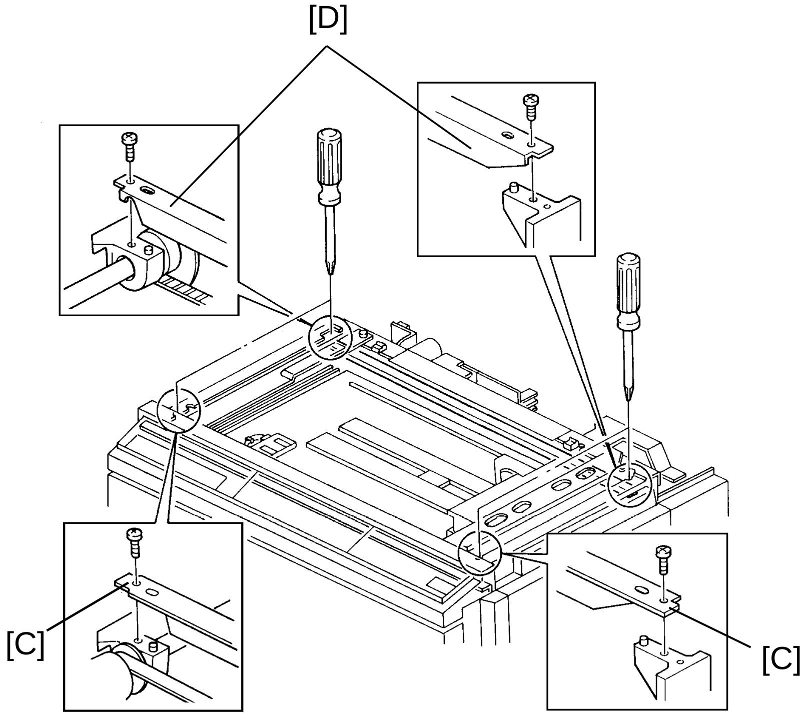


<Front side of the scanner drive belts>

8. Loosen the screws for the tension bracket [A].
9. Remove 2 tension springs [B].
10. Remove the 2nd scanner [C] (loosen 2 screws).

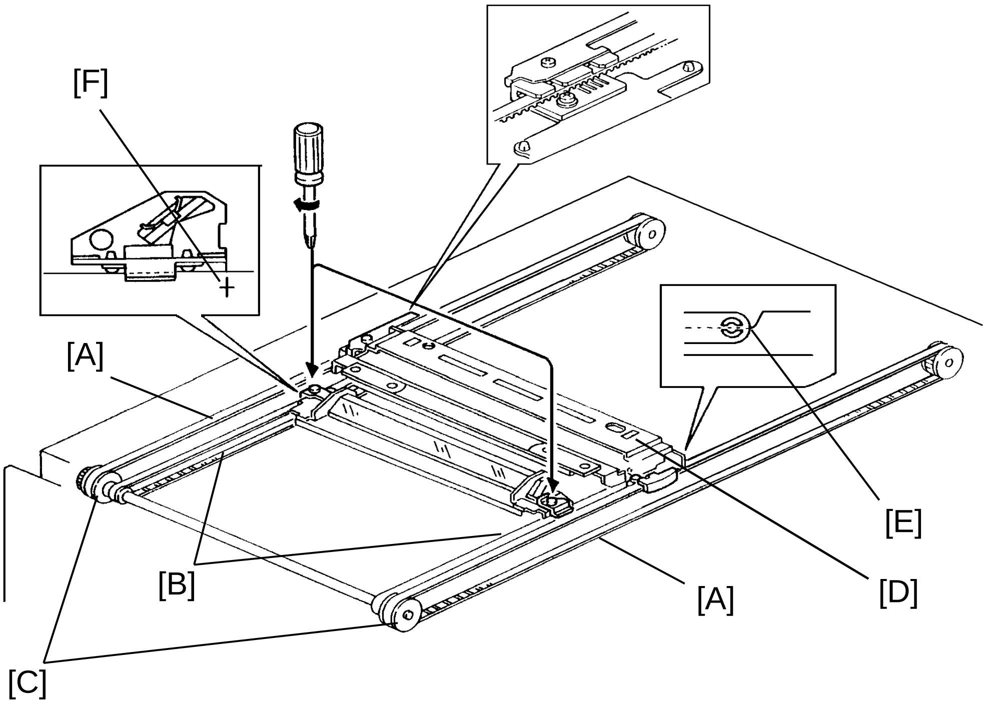






11. Unhook the long timing belt [A] from the belt clamp of the 1st scanner and put the 1st scanner [B] on the machine as shown.
12. Remove the front and rear guide rails [C, D] (2 screws each).
13. Remove the short and long scanner drive belts as shown [A, E].

2.5.2 Belt Installation



1. Install the short and long scanner drive belts [A, B] or both sides.

   NOTE: Put the short scanner drive belt on to the left pulley [C] first.

2. Reinstall the 4 tension springs and tighten the 4 tension brackets (2 screws each).
3. Reinstall the front and rear guide rails (2 screws each).
4. Reinstall the timing belt and scanner drive motor (2 screws and 1 grounding wire).
5. Set the 1st scanner [D] at the position [E] as shown, and insert the long scanner drive belt to the belt clamp.
6. Set the 2nd scanner at the position [F] as shown and install the belt clamp for the short scanner drive belt (1 screw each).

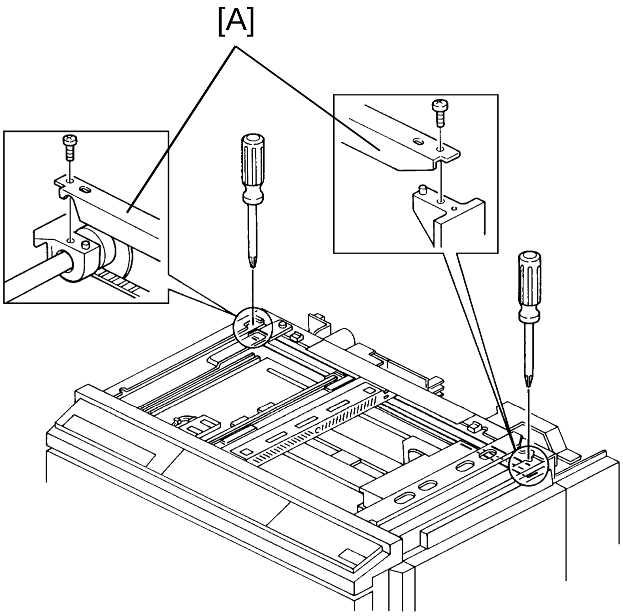
   NOTE: When fixing the 2nd scanner, make sure the 1st scanner is set at the position [E] (step 5).

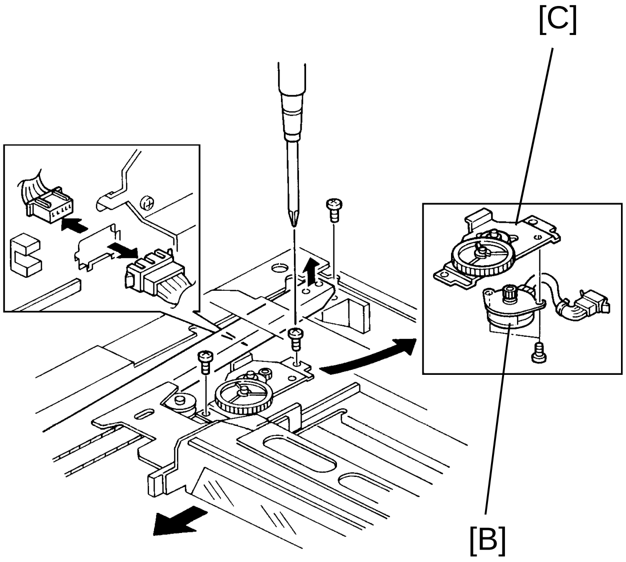
7. Reassemble all the necessaryparts.

2.5.3 1st and 2nd Scanner Position Adjustment

1. Make a copy sample performing the vertical, and horizontal magnification adjustments, and then perform the focus adjustment. (See vertical magnification, horizontal magnification, and focus adjustments.)

2.6 3RD SCANNER DRIVE MOTOR REPLACEMENT

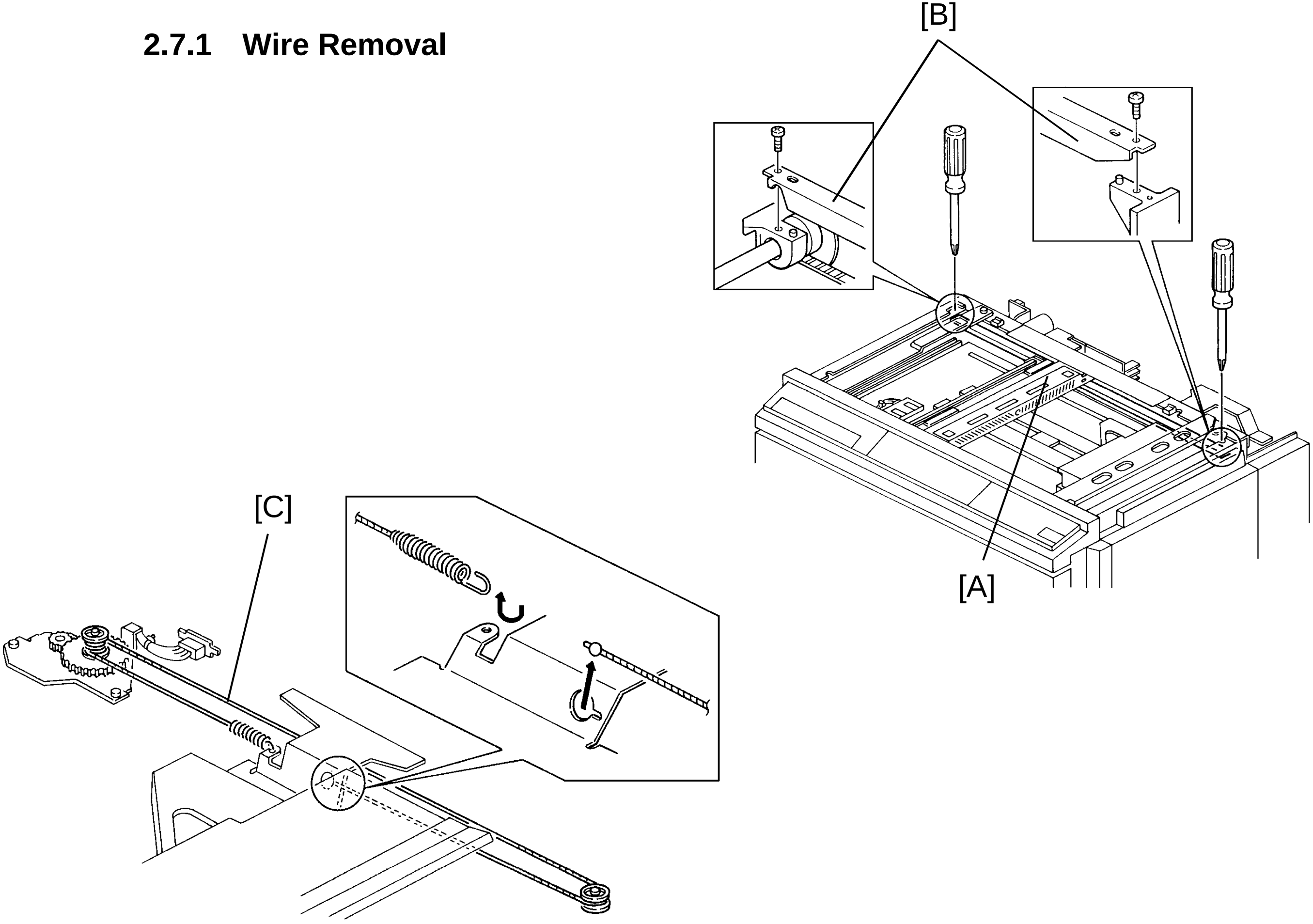




1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the following parts:
   - The exposure glass
   - The top cover
   - The rear cover
   - The lens cover
3. Remove the 2 fixing screws of the rear scanner guide rail [A].
4. Slide the 3rd scanner to the left.
5. While holding up the rear scanner guide rail, remove the 3rd scanner drive motor assembly (2 screws and 1 connector).
6. Separate the motor [B] from the bracket [C] (2 screws) and replace.

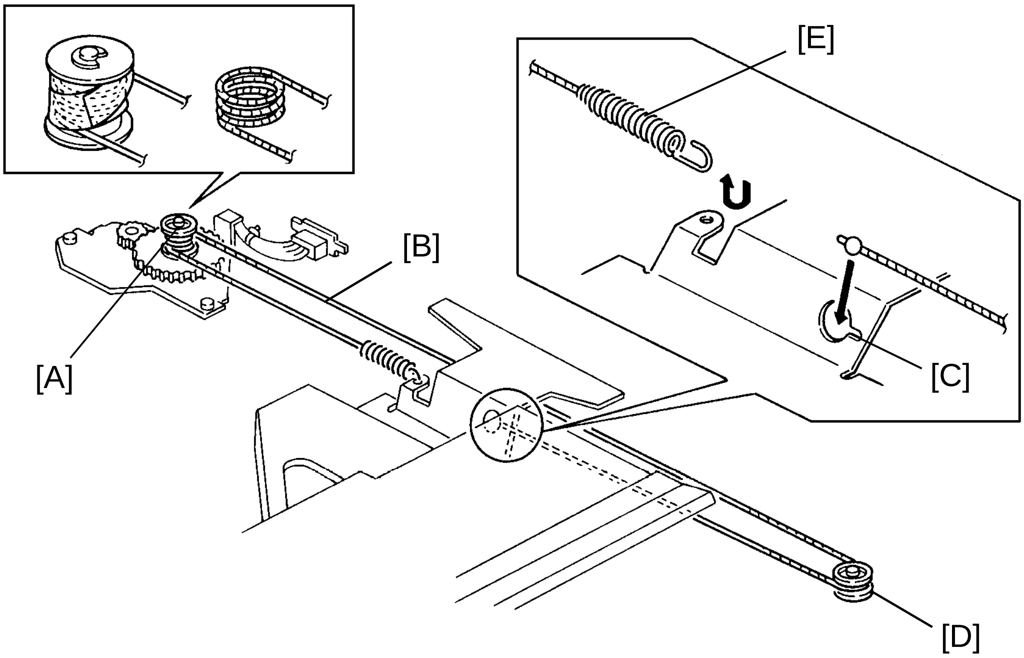
2.7 LENS DRIVE WIRE REPLACEMENT

2.7.1 Wire Removal



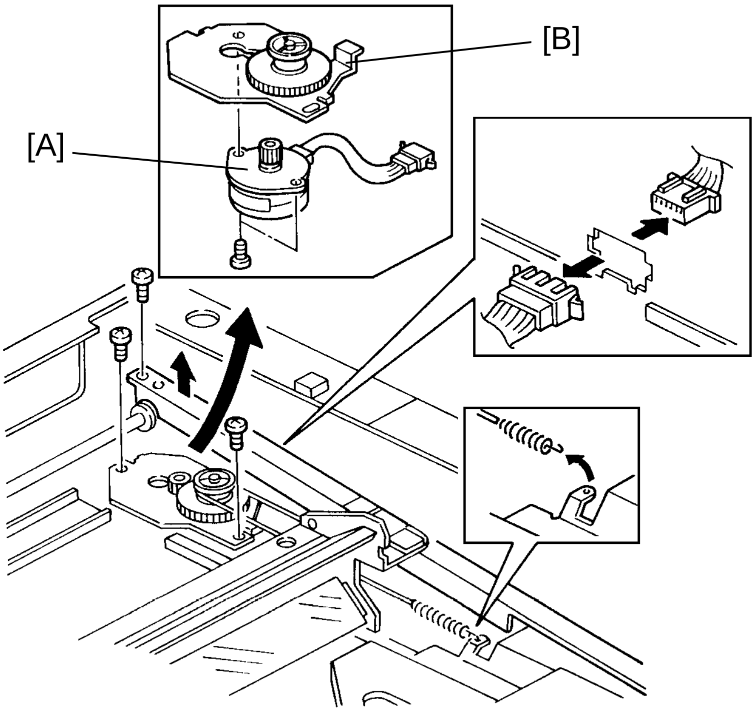
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the following parts:
   - The exposure glass
   - The top cover
   - The rear cover
   - The lens cover
   - The left scale bracket
3. Slide the 1st scanner [A] half of the way to the right.
4. Remove the 2 fixing screws of the rear scanner guide rail [A].
5. Remove the lens drive wire [B] as shown.

2.7.2 Wire Installation



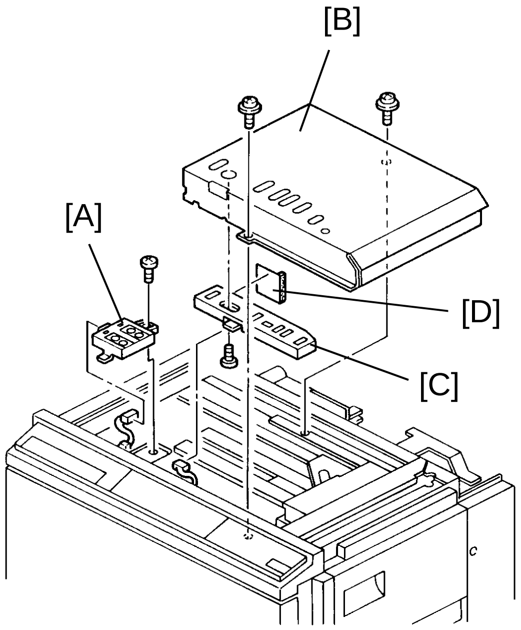
1. Remove the pulley [A] (1 E-ring).
2. Wind the lens drive wire [B] three and a half turns around the pulley and then wrap the pulley with tape as shown.
3. Reinstall the pulley.
4. Position the wire in the cutout of the shutter plate [C] and pulley [D].
5. Hook the spring [E] as shown.

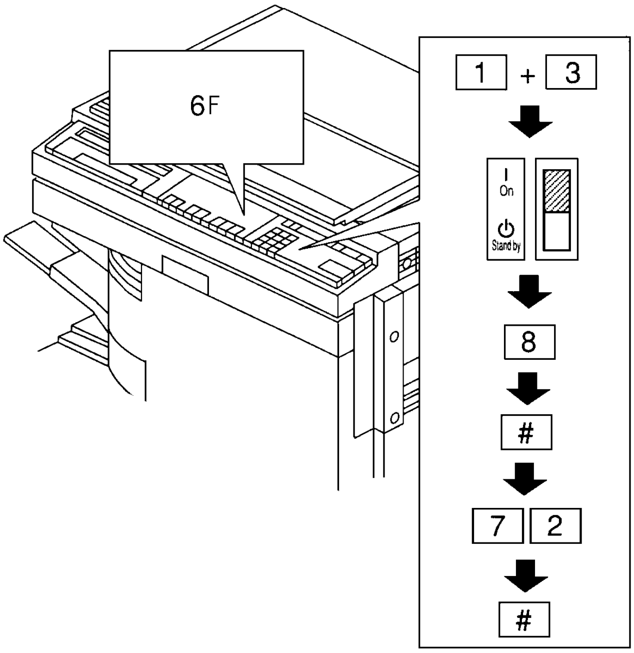
2.8 LENS DRIVE MOTOR REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the lens drive wire (see Lens Drive Wire Replacement).
2. Remove the lens drive motor assembly (2 screws and 1 connector).
3. Separate the motor [A] from the bracket [B] (2 screws) and replace.

2.9 ORIGINAL SIZE SENSORS REPLACEMENT





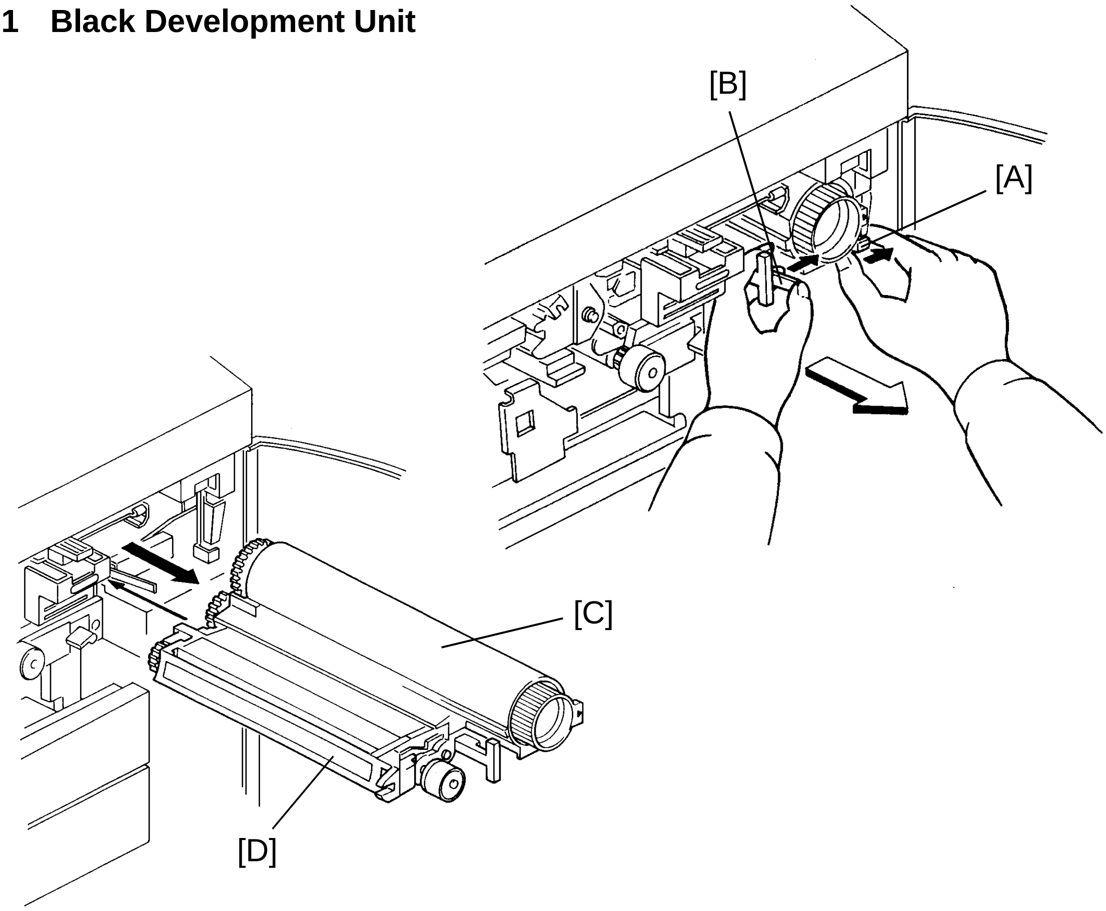
Original size	Data
A3	7F
11" x 17"	6F
B4	3F
A4 Lensthwise	E
A4 sideways/81/2" x 11" lengthwise	7
B5 length wise	6
B5 sideways/81/2" x 11" sideways	3
A5 lengthwise	0
A5 sideways	2
No original	0

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the exposure glass.
3. Replace the original width sensor [A] (1 screw and 1 connector).
4. Remove the lens cover [B] (2 screws and 1 connector).
5. Separate the original length sensor [C] from the lens cover (1 screw) and replace.
6. Remove the mylar [D] from the old original size sensor and reinstall it on the new original size sensor as shown.
7. Reassemble all the parts.
8. Check the original size sensor’s function by SP#8 (input no.72).

3. DEVELOPMENT AND TONER SUPPLY

3.1 DEVELOPMENT UNIT REMOVAL

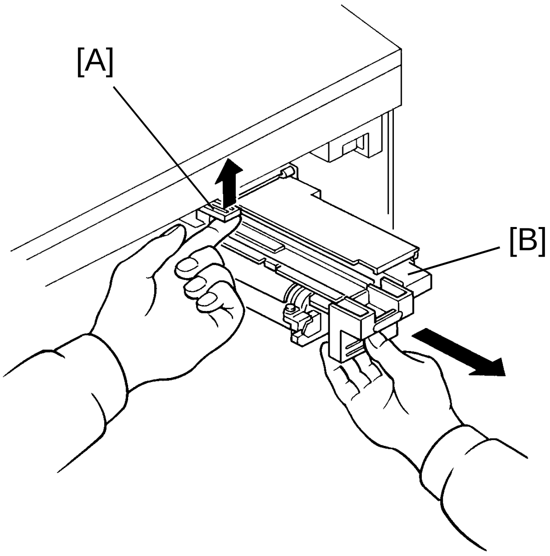
3.1.1 Black Development Unit

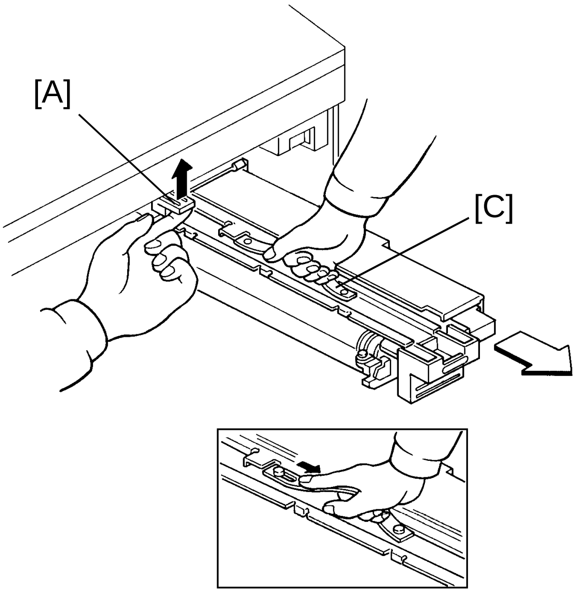


1. Open the front door.
2. Push the development unit lock lever [A] to the right (to the lock position).
3. Move the development release lever [B] to the right and pull out the black development unit [C] half way. Holding the toner supply unit [D] with your right hand and the bottom of the development unit with your left hand, pull the unit all the way out. Place the unit on a clean sheet of paper.

   NOTE: The color development unit or cover plate should be installed before installation.

3.1.2 Color Development Unit

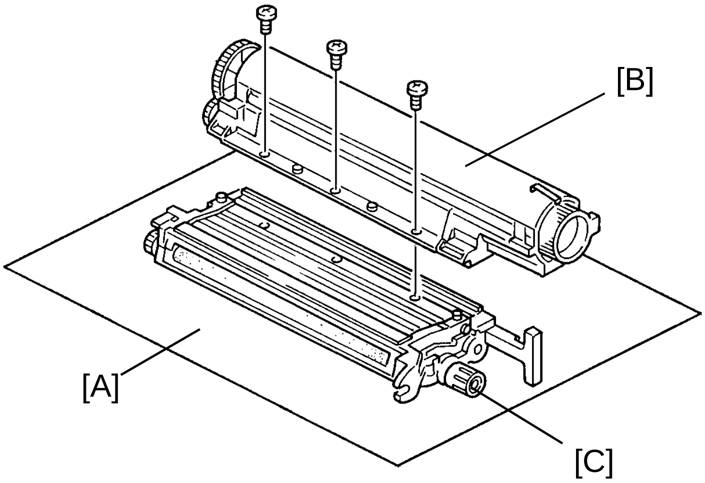


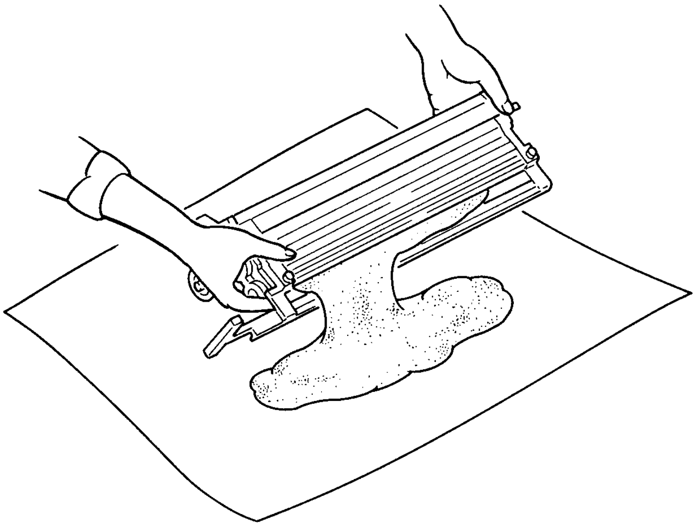


1. Open the front door.
2. While lifting the color development unit lock lever [A], pull out the color development unit [B] until it stops.
3. Holding the strap [C] of the color development unit with the left hand, pull out the color development unit while lifting the color development unit lock lever.

3.2 DEVELOPER REPLACEMENT

3.2.1 Black Developer (SP#65)

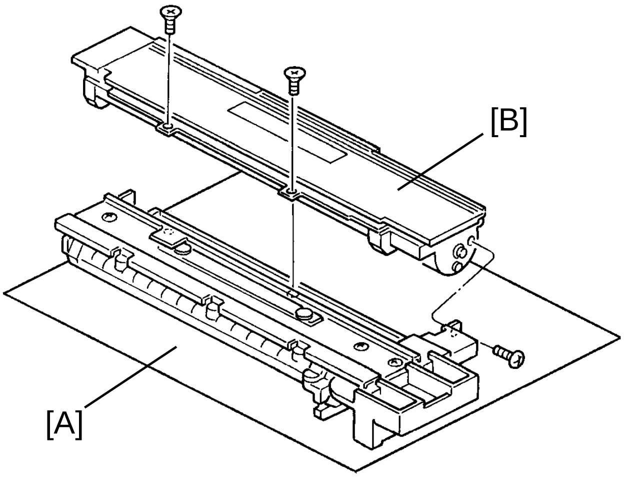


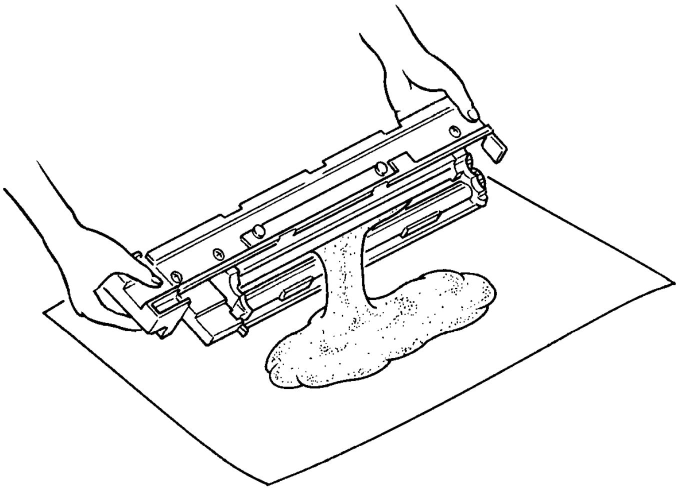


1. Take out the development unit.
2. Set the development unit on a large sheet of paper [A].
3. Remove the toner supply unit [B] (3 screws).
4. Turn the paddle roller knob [C] counterclockwise to empty developer onto the paper.

   NOTE: Dispose of the used developer according to local regulations.
5. Make sure that no developer remains on the development roller or in the development unit.
6. Pour one pack of developer into the development unit while turning the paddle roller knob.
7. Reinstall the toner supply unit and set the development unit in the machine.
8. Perform initial setting for new black developer using SP65.

3.2.2 Color Developer (SP #10)

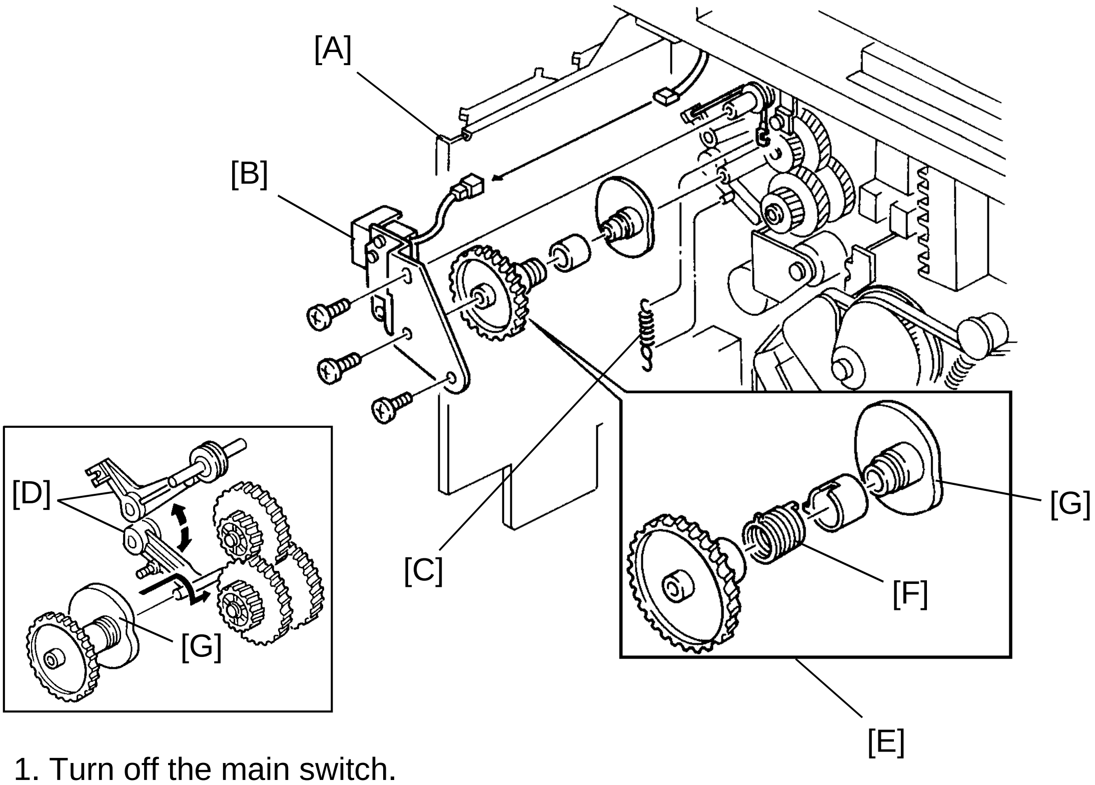




1. Take out the color development unit.
2. Put the color development unit on a large sheet of paper [A].
3. Remove the toner supply unit [B] (3 screws).
4. Turn the paddle roller knob counterclockwise to empty developer onto the paper.

   NOTE: Dispose of the used developer according to local regulations.
5. Make sure that no developer remains on the development roller or in the development unit.
6. Pour one pack of developer into the development unit while turning the paddle roller knob.
7. Reinstall the toner supply unit and set the color development unit in the machine.
8. Perform initial setting for new color developer using SP10.

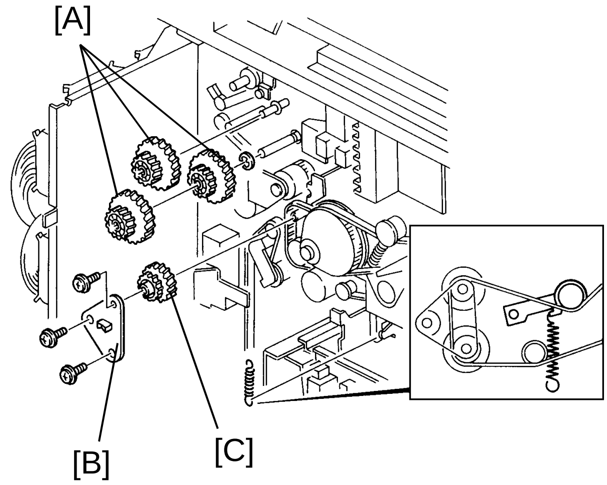
3.3 DEVELOPMENT UNIT SHIFT CLUTCH LUBRICATION

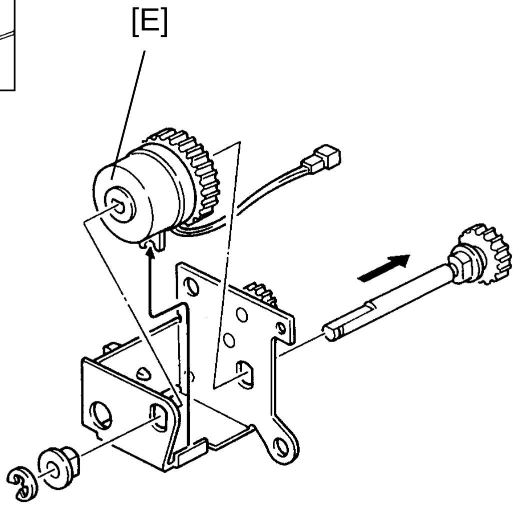


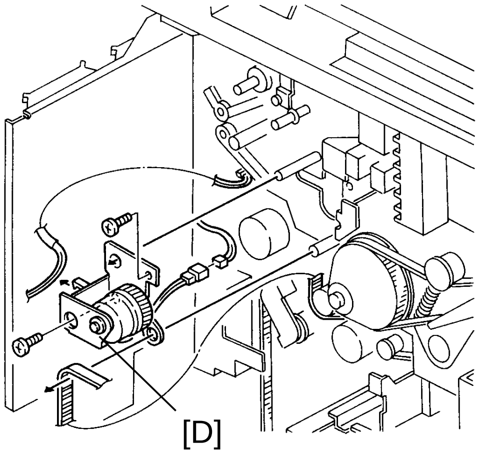
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the rear and right upper cover.
3. Swing out the main control board assenbly [A] (1 screw).
4. Remove the development unit change solenoid bracket [B] (3 screws).
5. Remove the development pressure spring [C] and open the development unit change levers [D].
6. Remove the development unit shift clutch assembly [E].
7. Lubricate the clutch spring [F] with Mobil Temp. 78 and reassemble the shift clutch.
8. Reinstall the shift clutch assembly as shown.
9. Turn the cam plate [G] clockwise about 90°C.
   The highest position of the cam plate should be at the top.

   NOTE: The shift clutch must be reinstalled as an assembly.

3.4 TONER SUPPLY CLUTCH REMOVAL







1.Turn off the main switch.

2. Remove the development unit shift clutch assembly.

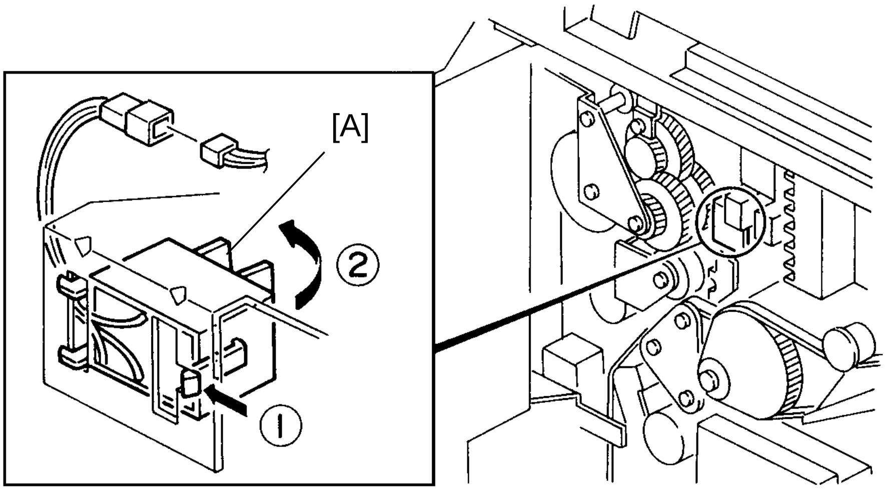
3. Remove the 3 gears [A] (1 E-ring).

4. Remove the support bracket [B] (3 screws) and gear [C].

5. Remove the toner supply clutch assembly [D] (2 screws, 1 E-ring, 1 harness clump, and 1 connector).

6. Remove the toner supply clutch [E] (1 E-ring).

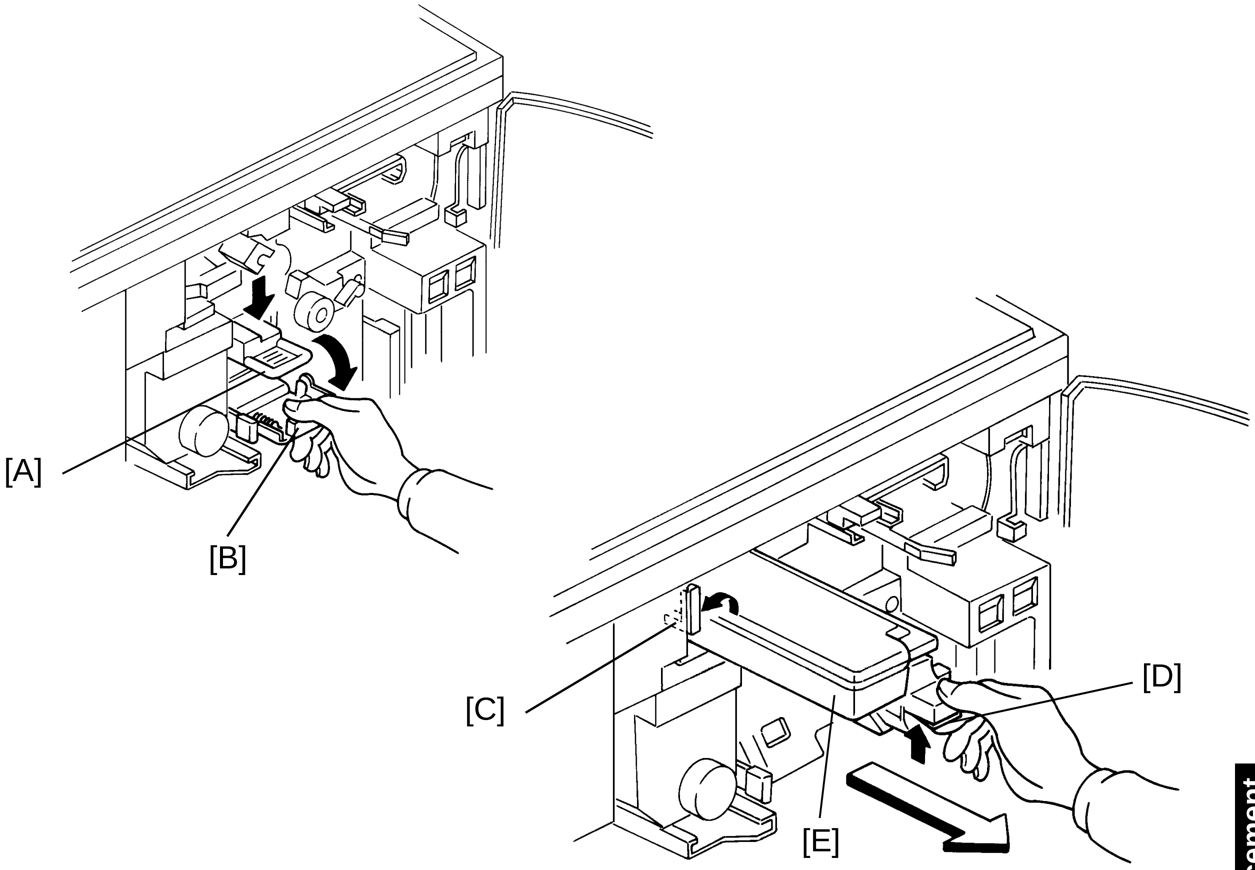
3.5 COLOR DEVELOPMENT SWITCH REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the color development unit.
3. Remove the rear cover.
4. Swing out the main control board assenbly (1 screw).
5. Unhook the color development switch [A] and replace (1 connector).

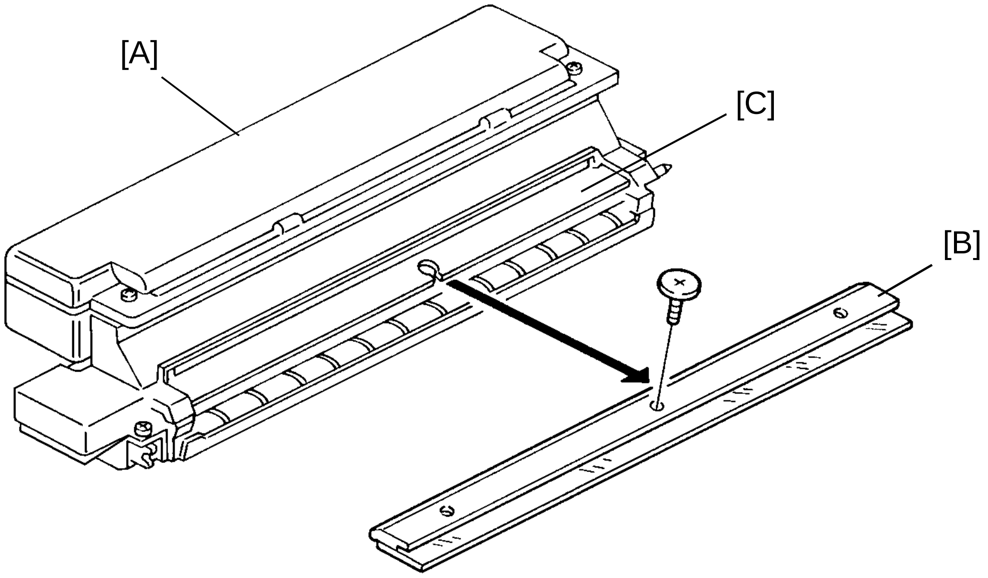
4. CLEANING

4.1 CLEANING UNIT REMOVAL



1. Open the front door and lower the transfer & separation corona unit [A] by pulling down the release lever [B].
2. Place a sheet of paper under the cleaning unit.
3. Turn the cleaning unit release lever [C] counterclockwise.
4. While holding up the cleaning blade release lever [D], pull out the cleaning unit [E]. Place the unit on a clean sheet of paper.

4.2 CLEANING BLADE REPLACEMENT

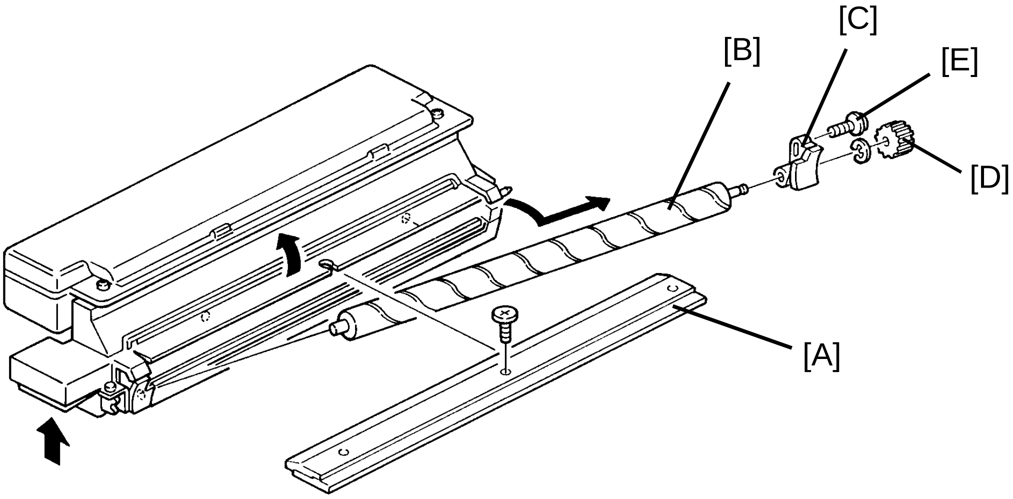


1. Remove the cleaning unit [A] (see Cleaning Unit Removal.)
2. Remove the cleaning blade [B] (1 shoulder screw).
3. While holding up the cleaning blade release lever, install the new cleaning blade between the blade bracket [C] and the blade scraper.

   NOTE: a) Do not touch the edge of a new cleaning blade, as it is damaged easily.

   b) After installing a new cleaning blade, make sure that the blade swivels smoothly.

4.3 CLEANING BRUSH REPLACEMENT



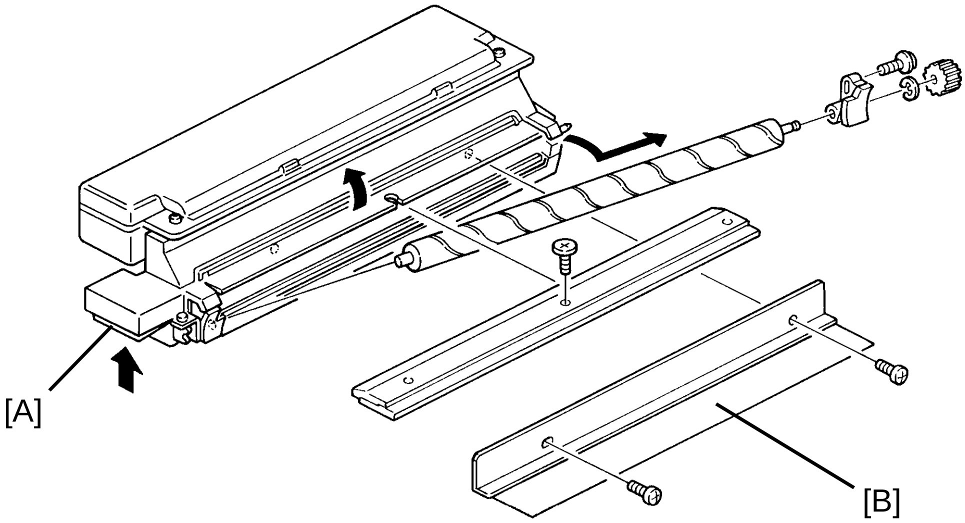
1. Remove the cleaning blade [A]. (See Cleaning Blade Replacement.)
2. Remove the screw of the rear cleaning side bracket [C] and pull out the cleaning brush [B] together with the cleaning side bracket (1 E-ring) and gear [D].
3. Remove the gear and the rear cleaning side bracket, and replace the cleaning brush.

   NOTE: a) Do not touch the cleaning brush surface. Handle only the shaft-ends.

   b) Do not bend or damage the entrance seal.

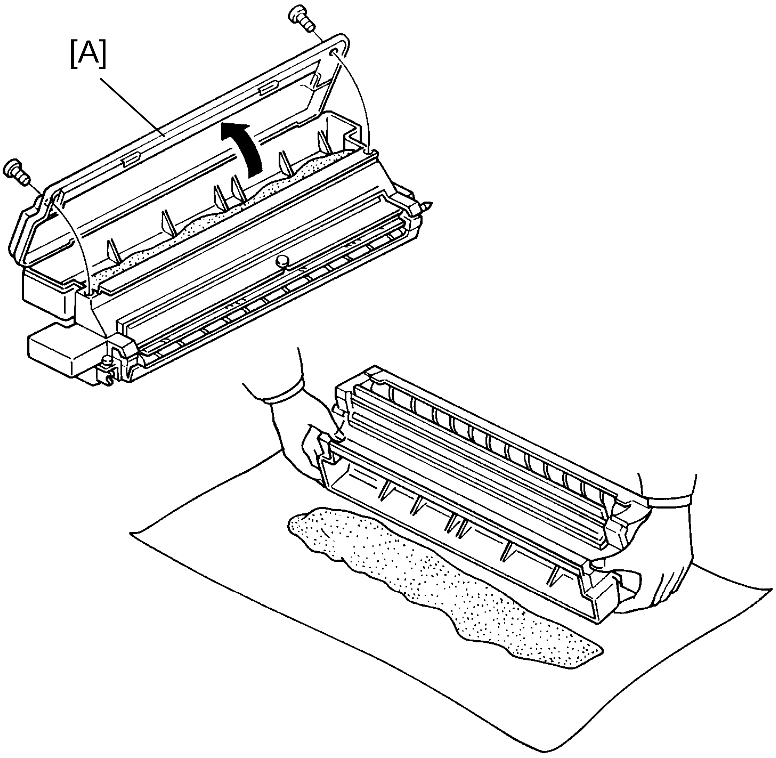
   c) This screw [E] is a tapping screw. Do not tighten it too much as this will strip the resin threads.

4.4 BLADE SCRAPER REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the cleaning blade and brush. (See Cleaning Blade and Brush Replacement.)
2. While holding up the cleaning blade release lever [A], remove the blade scraper [B] (2 screws).

4.5 USED TONER COLLECTION (SP83)

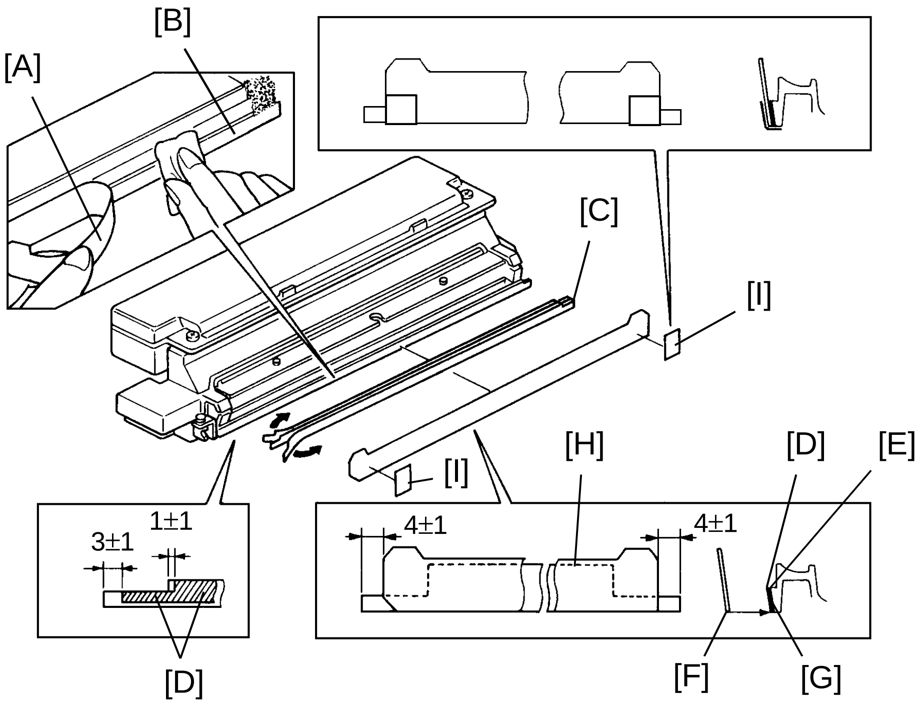


1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the cleaning unit and set it on a large sheet of paper.
3. Remove the used toner tank cover [A] (2 screws).
4. Pour the used toner slowly onto the paper so that it does not scatter.
5. Place the paper sheet with the toner into a vinyl bag.

   NOTE: Dispose of according to local regulations.
6. Reinstall the used toner tank cover.
7. Reinstall the cleaning unit.
8. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch in order to access the SP mode.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the call service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.
9. Enter "83" using the number keys and press the enter key.
10. Enter "1" using the number keys and press the enter key.
11. Turn the main switch off.

4.6 ENTRANCE SEAL REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the cleaning unit and the following parts:
   Cleaning Blade
   Cleaning Brush

2. Remove the used toner. (See Used Toner Collection.)

3. Clean the cleaning unit with a vacuum cleaner.

4. Remove the entrance seal [A] together with the strip of 2 sided tape securing it to the lower casing.

5. Clean the lower casing [B] with alcohol: make sure that no tape remains on the casing surface.

6. Place a new strip of 2-sided tape [C] on the lower casing surface. The upper edge [D] of the tape must be flush with the edge [E] of the projection as shown in the illustration.

7. Place the new entrance seal on the 2-sided tape as shown in the illustration.

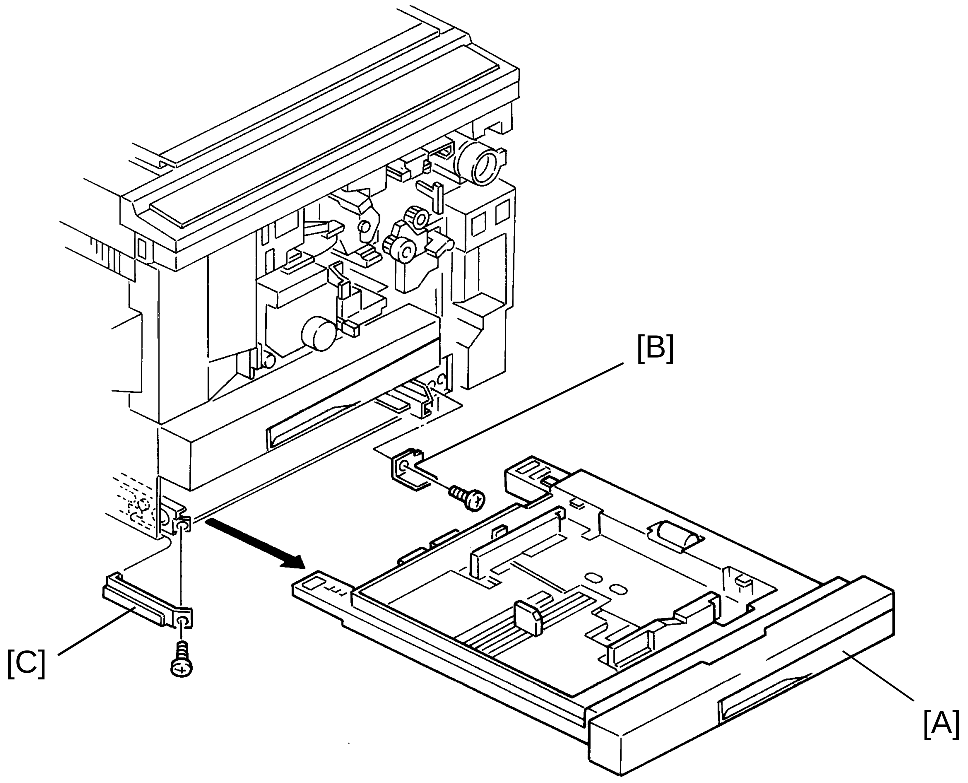
   NOTE: a)The lower edge [F] of the entrance seal must be aligned with the edge [G] of the lower casing.

   b) Make sure that there are no waves in the upper edge [H] of the entrance seal.

8. Place the new seal [I] on the entrance seal.

5. PAPER FEED

5.1 PAPER TRAY REMOVAL



1. Open the copier front door.
2. Pull out the paper tray [A] and remove the tray stopper brackets [B], [C] on both sides as shown (1 screw each) and then remove the paper tray from the copier.

NOTE: When removing several paper trays at a time, make sure that the paper tray is returned to the original feeding station. To identify the original feeding station, each paper tray has its own decal on the right side.

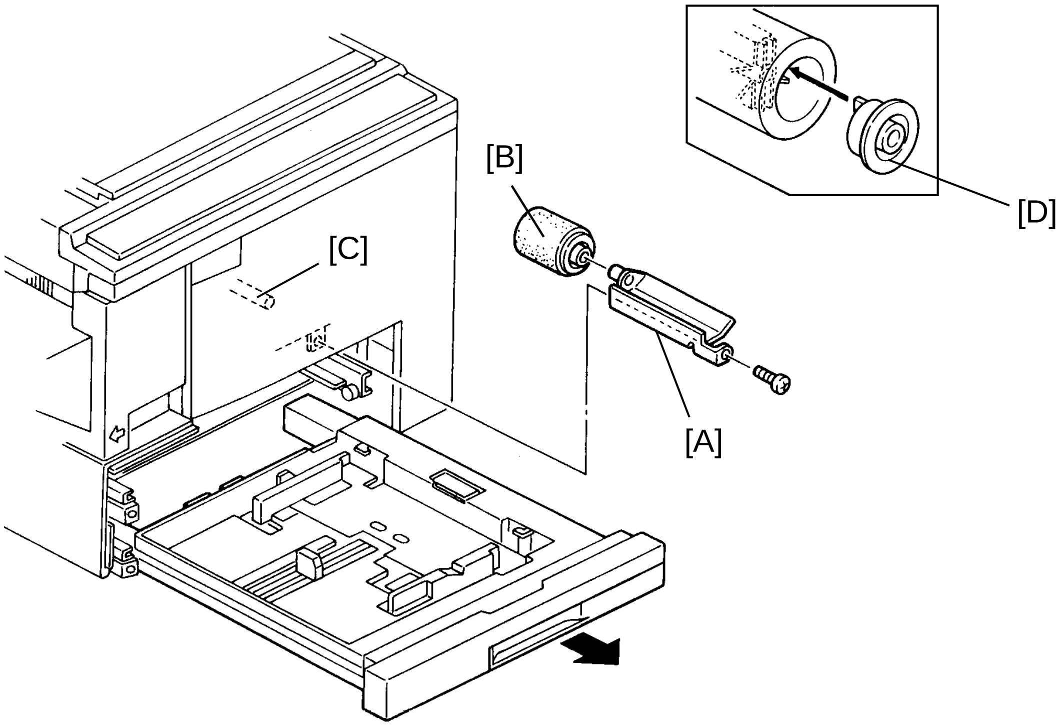
(A: Copier Upper Paper Tray)
(B: Copier Lower Paper Tray)
(C: Paper Tray Unit - Tray 1)
(D: Paper Tray Unit - Tray 2)
(E: Paper Tray Unit - Tray 3)

5.2 PAPER FEED ROLLER REPLACEMENT

5.2.1 Friction Pad Feed System (Paper Tray)

NOTE: Replace the paper feed roller and the friction pad assembly as a set to maintain paper feeding ability.

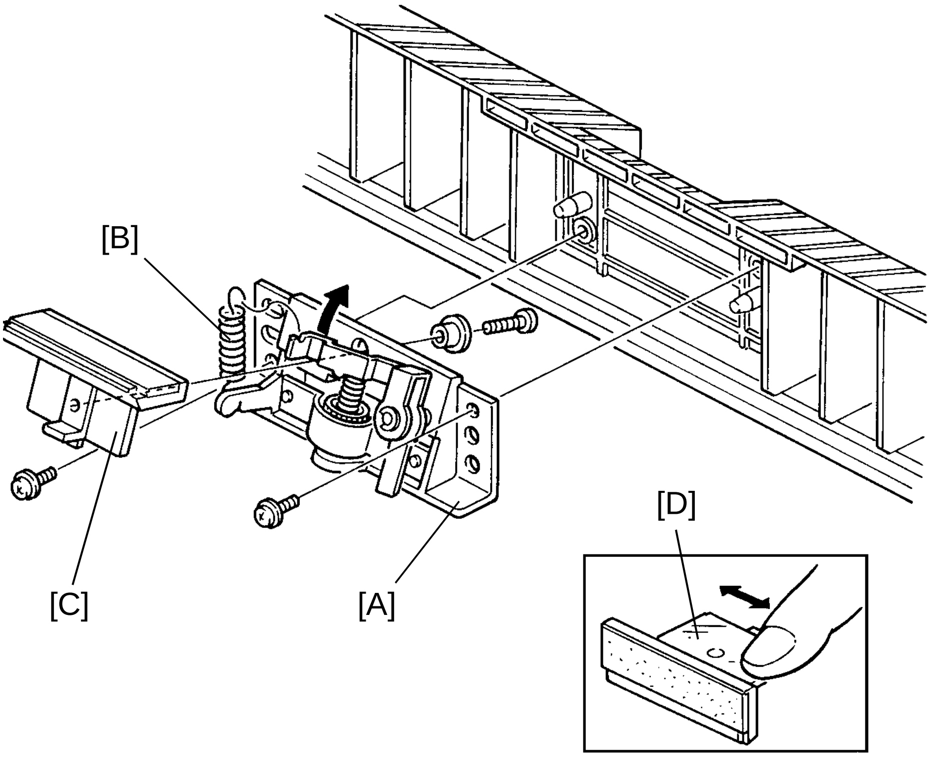
(1) Feed Roller Replacement



1. Remove the paper tray (see Paper Tray Removal).
2. Remove the feed roller guide [A] (1 screw).
3. Remove the feed roller assembly [B] from the shaft [C].
4. Replace the feed roller hub [D] from the old to the new feed roller.

   NOTE: When replacing the feed roller hub, make sure that the projections of the hub engage with the grooves of the feed roller.
5. Reassemble the copier.

(2) Friction Pad Replacement



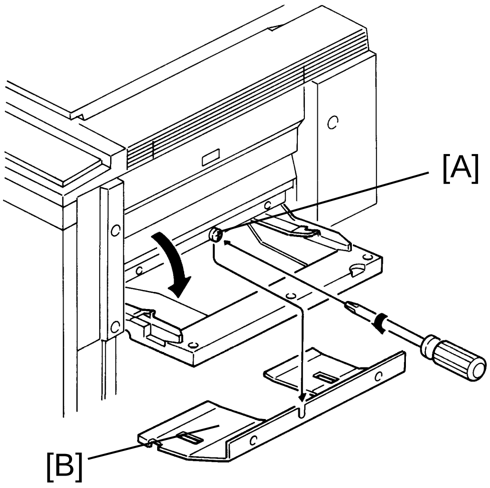
1. Pull out the paper tray.
2. Remove the friction pad holder mounting bracket [A] from the paper tray (2 screws with washers).
3. Unhook the spring [B] from the pressure release lever.
4. Remove the friction pad assembly [C] from the mounting bracket (1 screw and 1 swivel bushing).
5. Lubricate the sliding surface [D] of the new friction pad assembly slightly with "Albania 2" grease.
6. Install the new friction pad assembly on the mounting bracket and reassemble the paper tray.

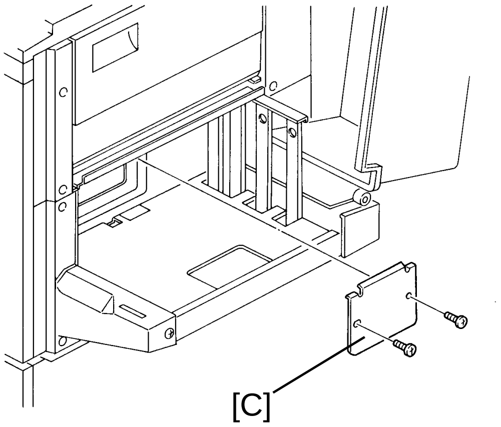
NOTE: If the friction pad assembly is replaced for several paper trays at the same time, make sure that the friction pad holder mounting bracket is placed back to the original paper tray.

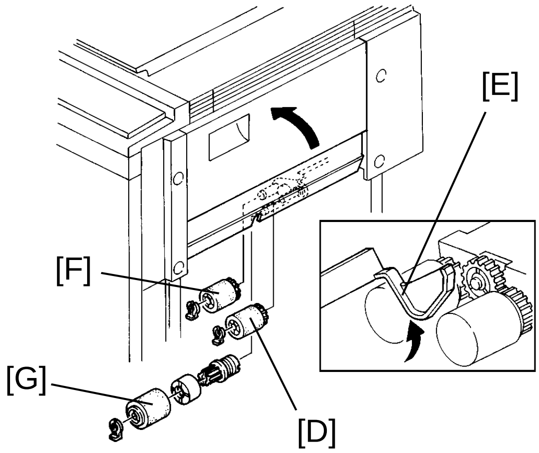
To identify the original position, the mounting bracket and the paper tray have the identical decals such as "A", "B", ...

5.2.2 FRR-Feed System (Manual Feed/Large Capacity Tray)

(1) Pick-up, Paper Feed, and Separation Rollers Replacement

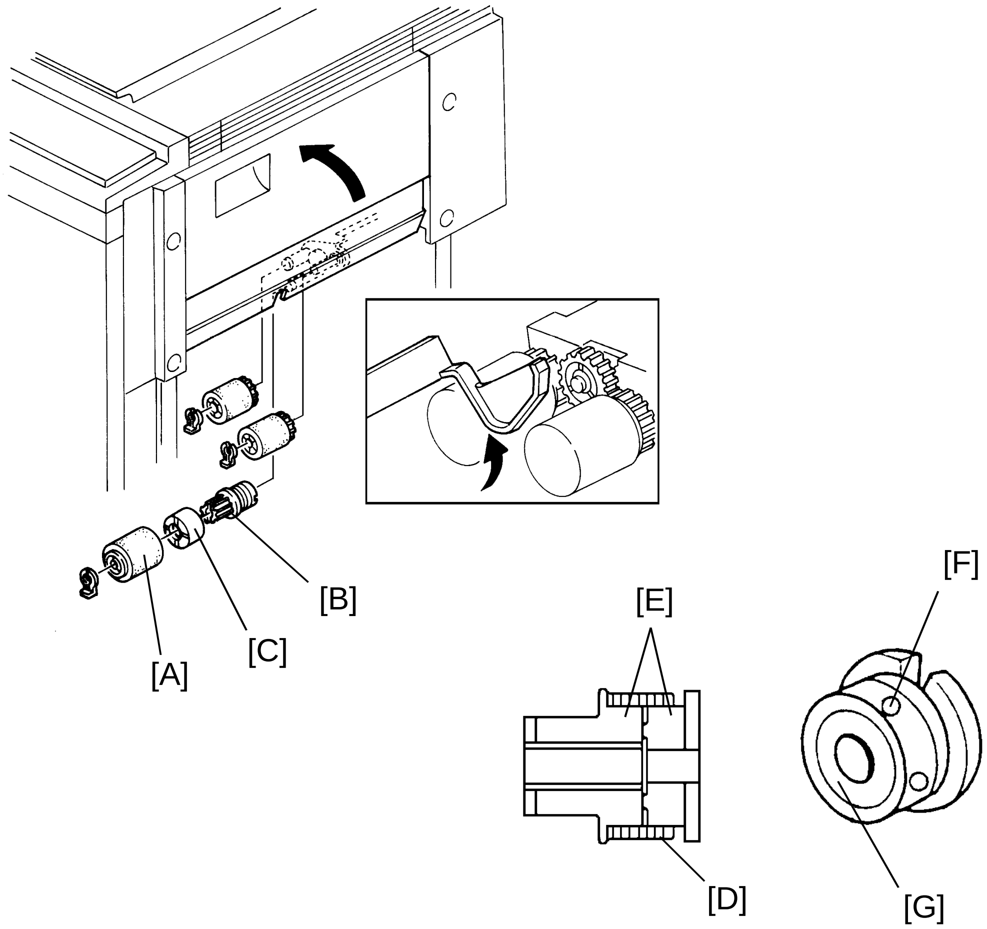






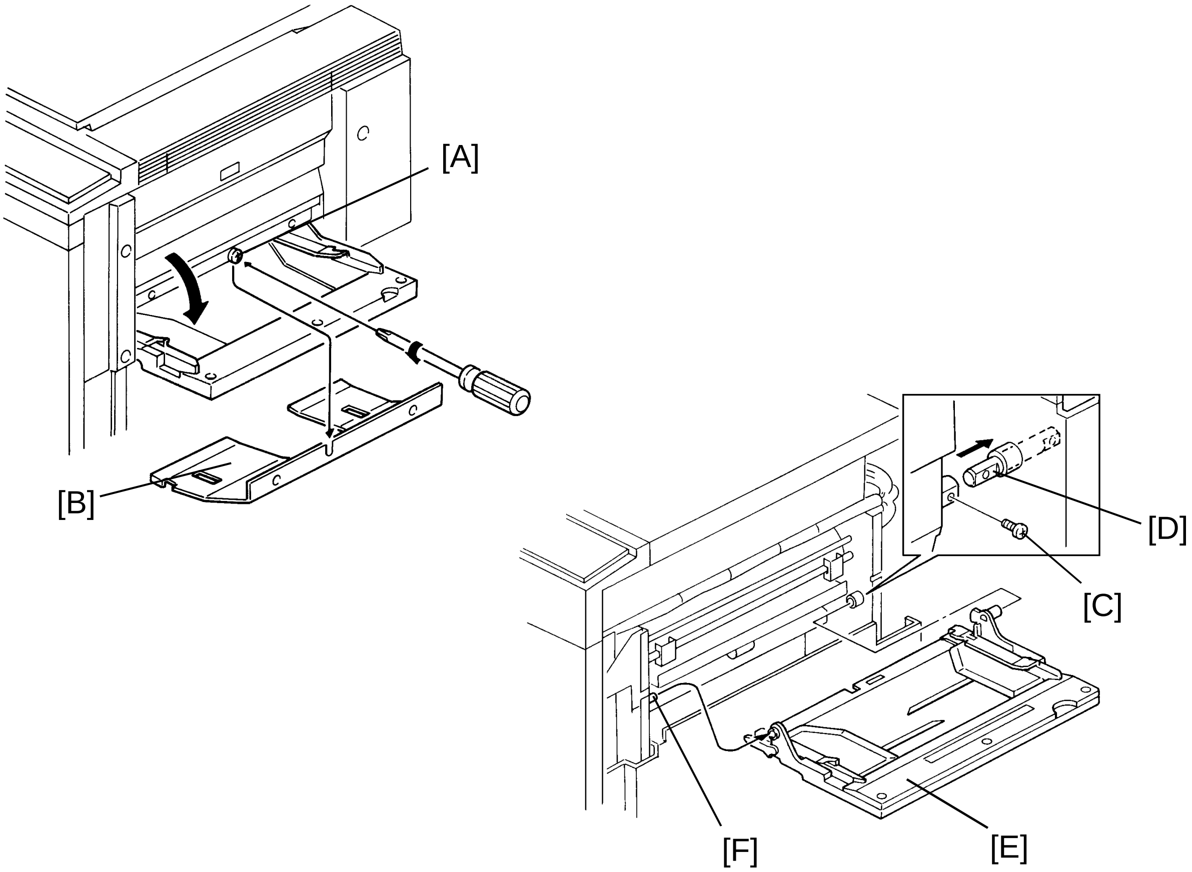
1. Open the by-pass feed table.
2. Loosen the screw [A] and remove the by-pass feed guide plate [B] while lifting the by-pass feed table a little.
3. Close the by-pass feed table.
4. Non-LCT machine:
   Remove the right lower cover (4 screws).
   LCT machine:
   Lower the LCT bottom plate and remove the paper stack.
   Open the LCT top cover and remove the LCT cover plate [C](2 screws).
5. Remove the pick-up roller [D] (1 snap ring).
6. While lifting up the paper end feeler [E], remove the paper feed roller [F] (1 snap ring).
7. Remove the separation roller [G] (1 snap ring).

(2) Separation Clutch Lubrication



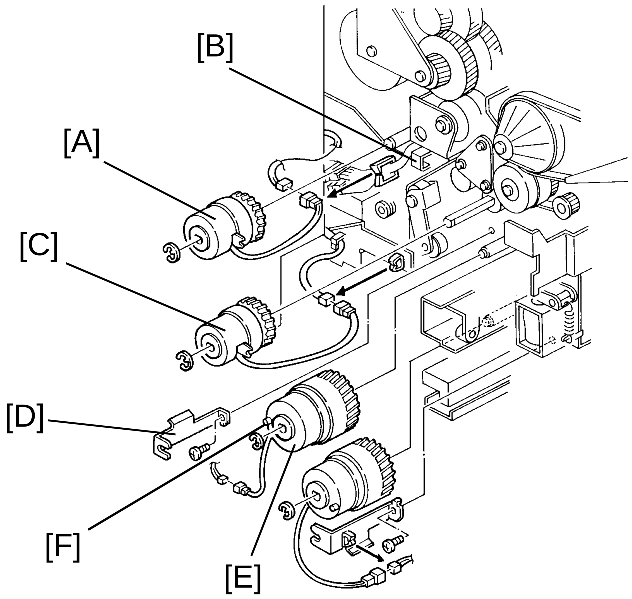
1. Remove the separation roller [A] (see Separation Roller Replacement).
2. Slide the slip clutch [B] with the clutch cover [C] off the shaft.
3. Separate the slip clutch into the three components.
4. Clean the clutch spring [D] and the clutch hubs [E].
5. Put Mobil Temp. 78 in the three grease holes [F] of the drive hub [G] and the inner surface of the spring.

5.3 BY-PASS FEED TABLE REMOVAL



1. Open the by-pass feed table.
2. Loosen the screw [A] and remove the by-pass feed guide plate [B] while lifting the by-pass feed table a little.
3. Remove the right upper cover and the rear cover.
4. Remove the fixing screw [C] for the by-pass feed rear support pin [D].
5. While sliding the by-pass feed rear support pin to the rear, slide the by-pass feed table [E] off the by-pass feed front support pin [F].

5.4 PAPER FEED CLUTCHES REPLACEMENT



< Common Procedure>

1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power cord.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Swing out the main control board assembly (1 screw).

(1) By-pass Feed Clutch

1. Remove the by-pass feed clutch [A](1 E-ring, 1 connector, and 1 wire saddle).

NOTE: When reinstalling the clutch, make sure that the clutch stopper groove engages with the stopper bracket [B].

(2) Relay Feed Clutch

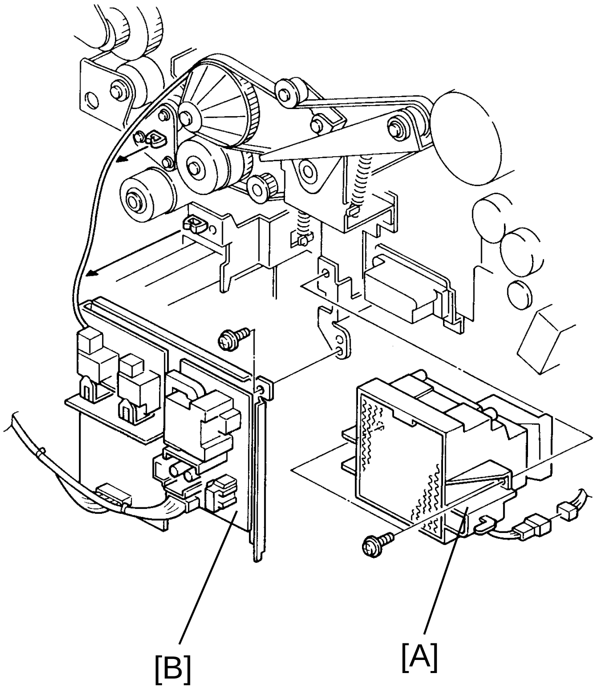
1. Remove the relay feed clutch [C] (1 E-ring, 1 connector, and 1 wire saddle).

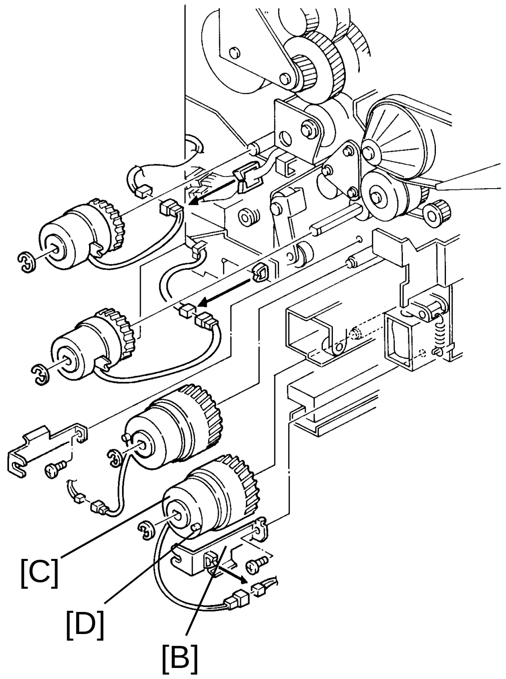
NOTE: When reinstalling the clutch, make sure that the clutch stopper groove engages with the stopper bracket [D].

(3) Upper Paper Feed Clutch

1. Remove the stopper bracket [D] (1 screw).
2. Remove the upper paper feed clutch [E] (1 E-ring, 1 connector, and 1 wire saddle).

NOTE: When reinstalling the clutch, make sure that the clutch stopper pin [F] engages with the groove of the stopper bracket.



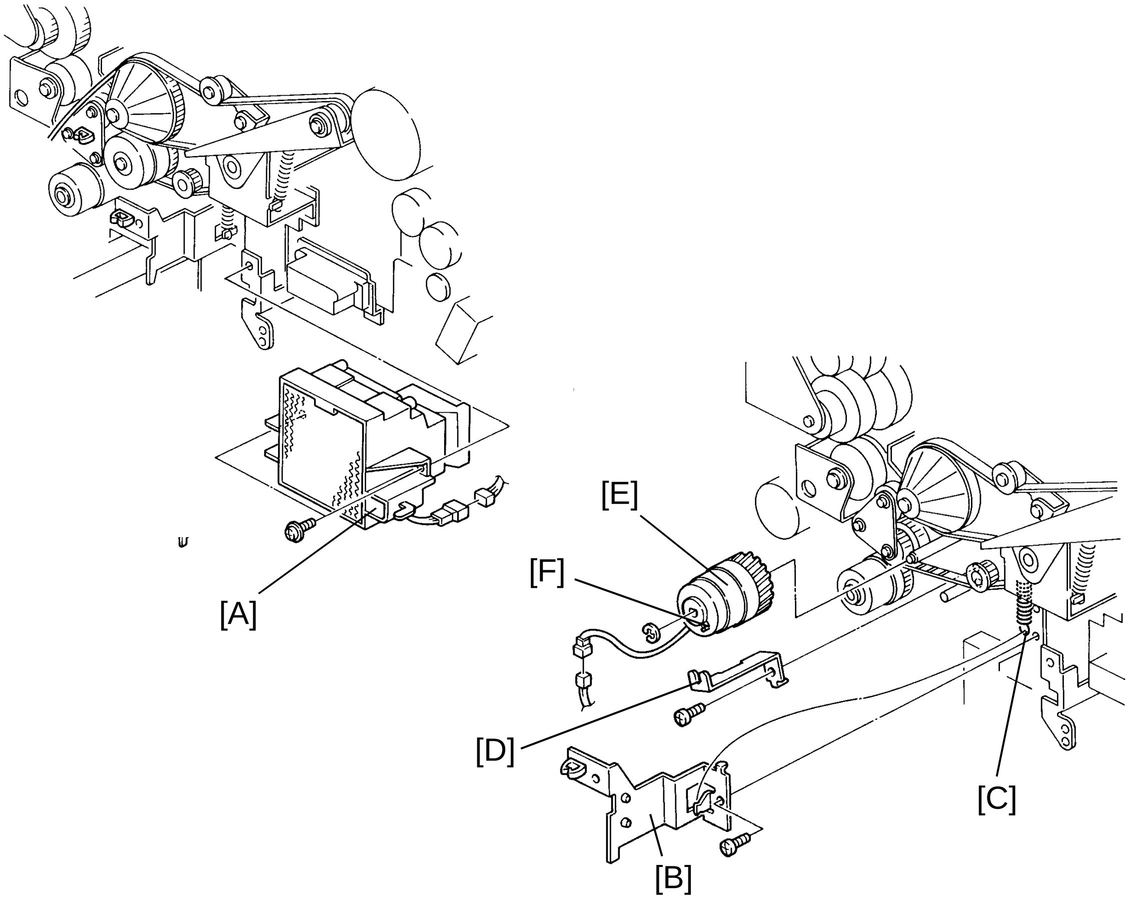


(4) Lower Paper Feed Clutch

1. Take the high voltage cables off the hooks on the exhaust blower housing.
2. Remove the exhaust blower assembly [A] (2 screws and 1 connector).
3. Move the high voltage supply board assembly [B] from the copier base plate (1 screw, 2 wire saddles for bias cable).
4. Remove the stopper bracket [B] (1 screw).
5. Remove the lower paper feed clutch [C] (1 E-ring, 1 connector, 1 wire saddle).

NOTE: When reinstalling the clutch, make sure that the clutch stopper pin [D] engages with the groove of the stopper bracket.

5.5 REGISTRATION CLUTCH REPLACEMENT

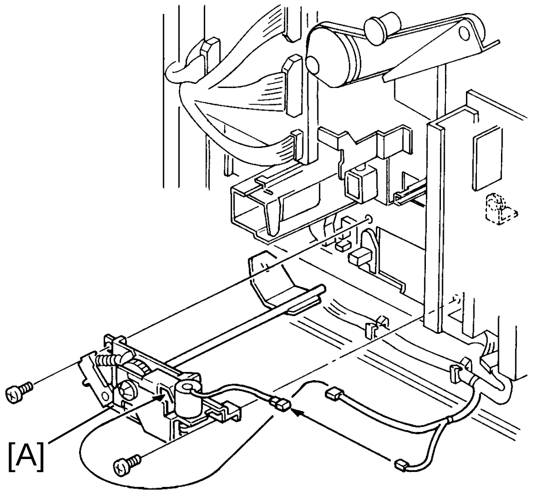


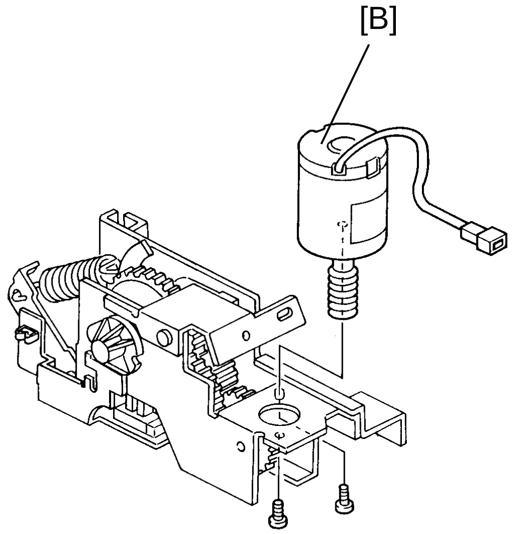
Replacement
Adjustment

1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power cord.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Take the high voltage cables off the hooks on the exhaust blower housing.
4. Remove the exhaust blower assembly [A] (2 screws and 1 connector).
5. Remove the exhaust blower bracket [B] (1 spring [C] and 1 screw).
6. Remove the stopper bracket [D] (1 screw).
7. Remove the registration clutch [E] (1 E-ring, 1 connector, 1 wire saddle).

   NOTE: When reinstalling the clutch, make sure that the clutch stopper pin [F] engages with the groove of the stopper bracket.

5.6 TRAY LIFT MOTOR/TRAY REPLACEMENT

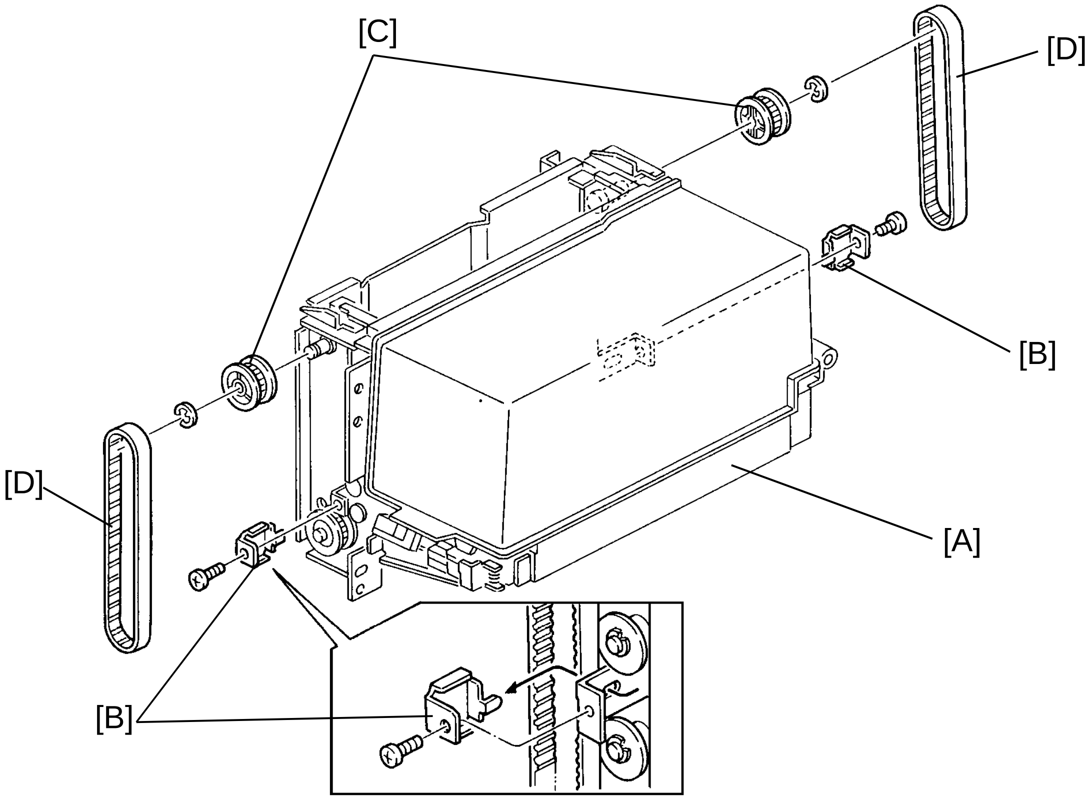




<Lower paper tray for example>

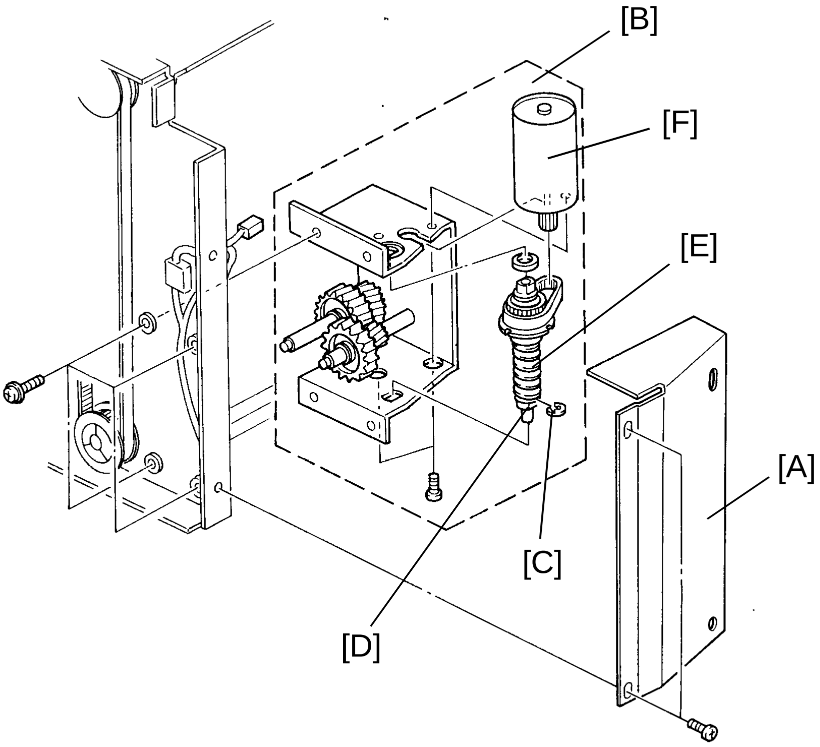
1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power cord.
2. Remove the lower tray from the copier. (see paper tray removal)
3. Remove the rear cover and swing out the main control board and the dc power supply board assemblies (1 screw each).
4. Take the high voltage cables off the hooks on the exhaust blower housing.
5. Remove the exhaust blower assembly (2 screws and 1 connector).
6. Remove the high voltage supply board assembly from the copier base plate (1 screw, 3 wire saddles, 6 connectors).
7. Pull out the paper lift motor assembly [A] from the copier (2 screws, 3 connectors, 3 wire saddles).
8. Remove the tray lift motor [B] (2 screws).

5.7 LCT DRIVE BELT REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the right upper cover.
2. Remove the LCT front and rear covers (1 screw each).
3. Remove the right front lower and right rear lower covers (2 screws each).
4. Remove the LCT [A] from the copier (4 screws and 3 connectors).
5. Remove the belt stoppers [B] (1 screw).
6. Remove the pulley [C] (1 retaining ring).
7. Replace the LCT drive belt [].

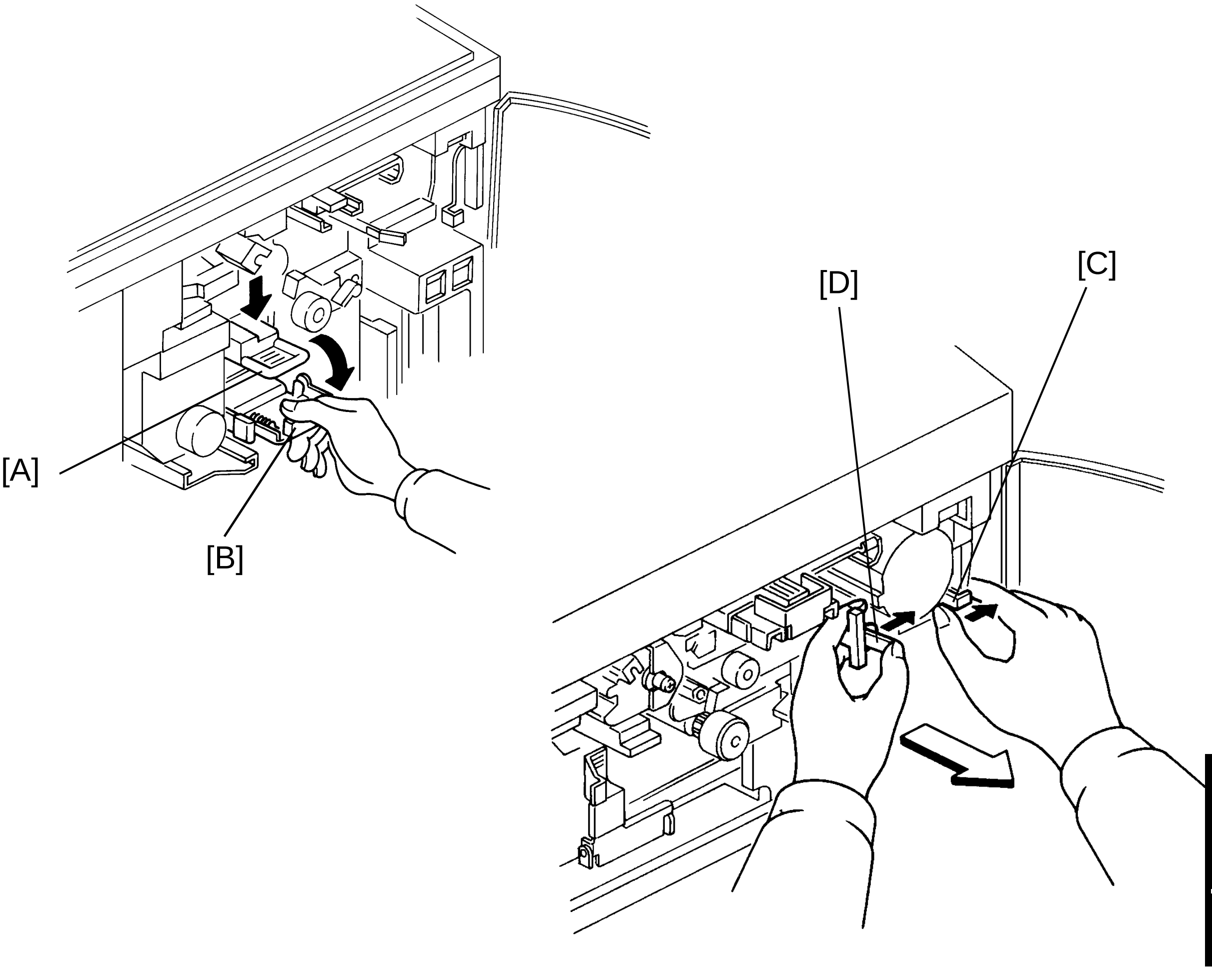
5.8 LCT LIFT MOTOR REPLACEMENT



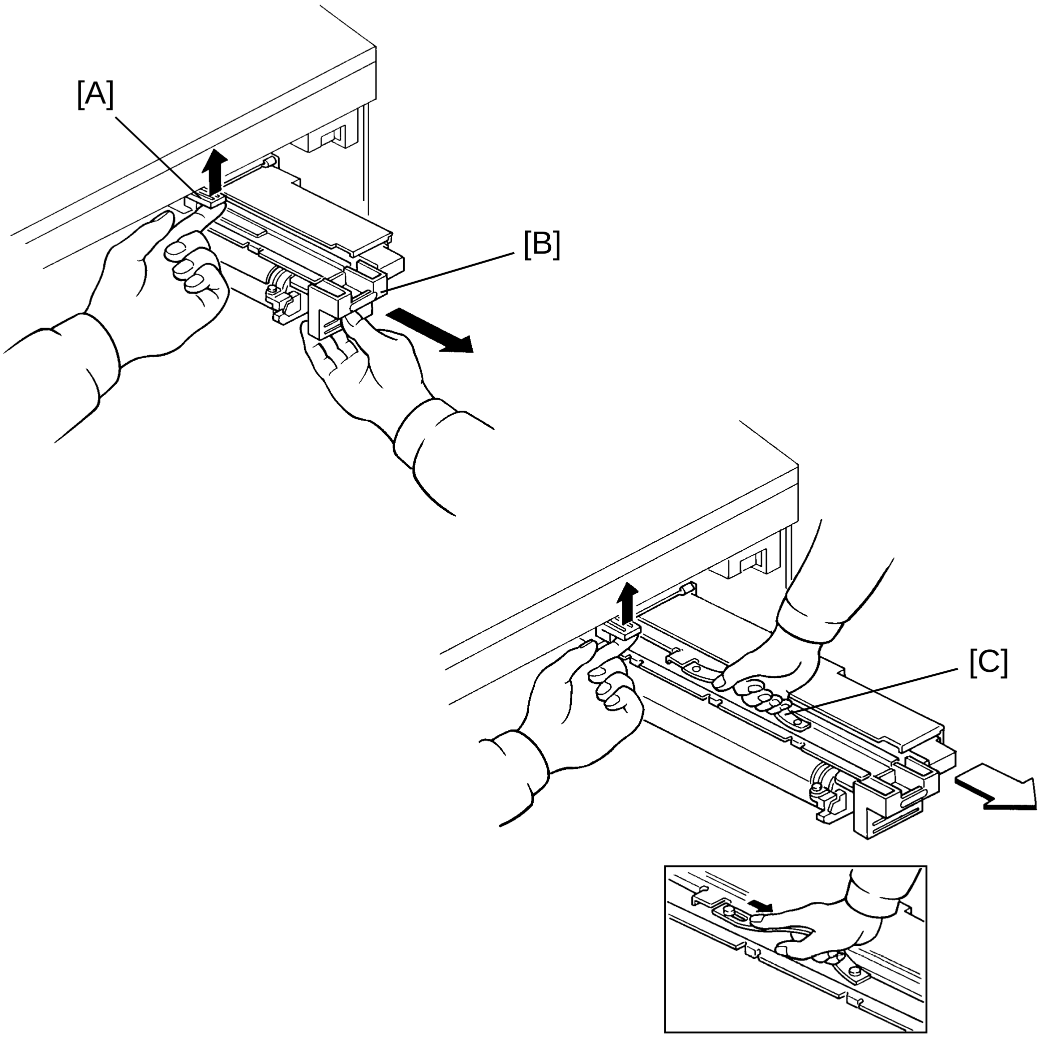
1. Remove the LCT from the copier (refer to LCT Drive Belt Replacement).
2. Remove the motor cover plate [A] (2 screws).
3. Remove the LCT lift motor assembly [B] (4 screws, 4 rubber rings, 1 connector).
4. Remove the E-ring [C] from the worm gear shaft.
5. Slide the bushing [D] inwards and remove the worm gear assembly [E].
6. Remove the LCT lift motor [F] (2 screws).

6. AROUND THE DRUM

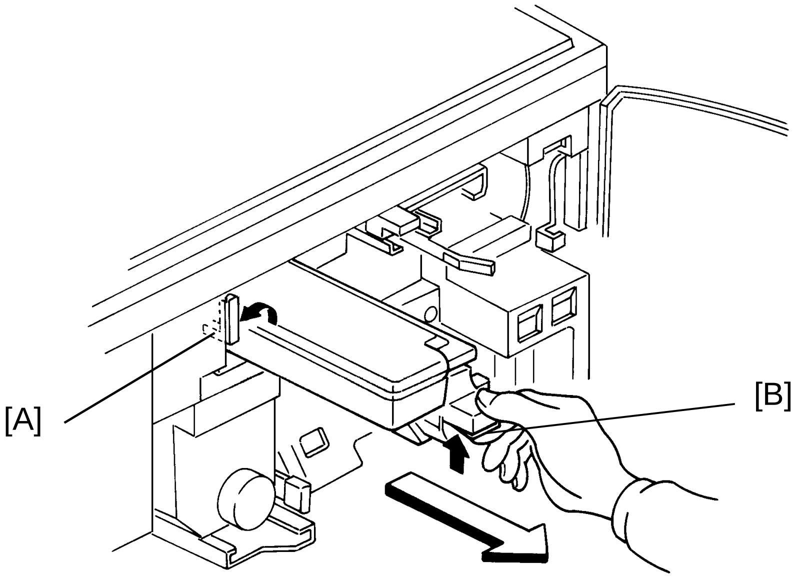
6.1 DRUM UNIT REMOVAL

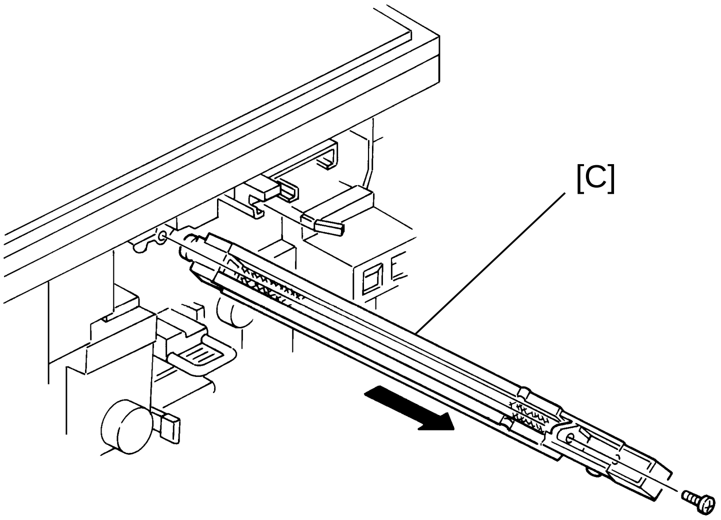


1. Open the front door and lower the transfer & separation corona unit [A] by pulling down the release lever [B].
2. Push the development unit lock lever [C] to the right (to the lock position).
3. Move the development release lever [D] to the right and pull the black development unit half way out. Holding the toner supply unit with your right hand and the bottom of the development unit with your left hand, pull the unit all the way out. Place the unit on a clean sheet of paper.

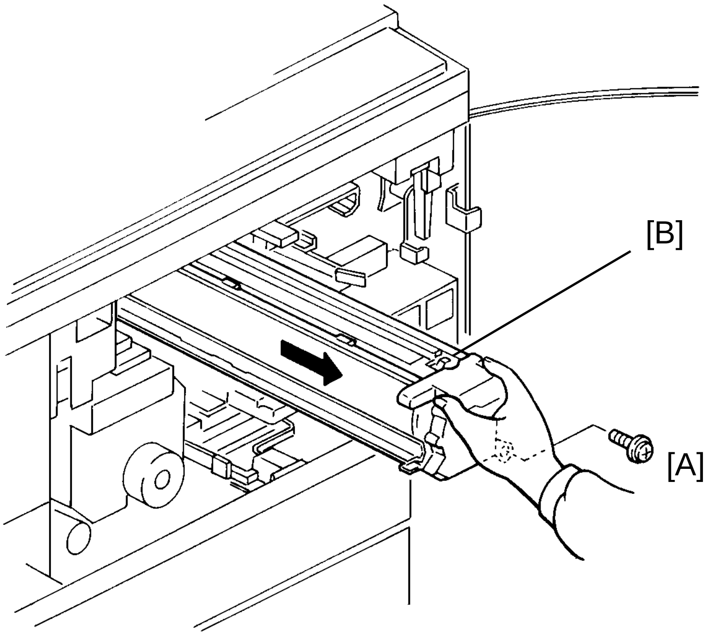


4. If the color development unit (option) is installed, continue the following:
   (1) While lifting the color development unit lock lever [A], pull the color development unit [B] until it locks.
   (2) Hold the belt [C] of the unit and pull out the unit while lifting the lock lever again.
   (3) Place the unit on a clean sheet of paper.



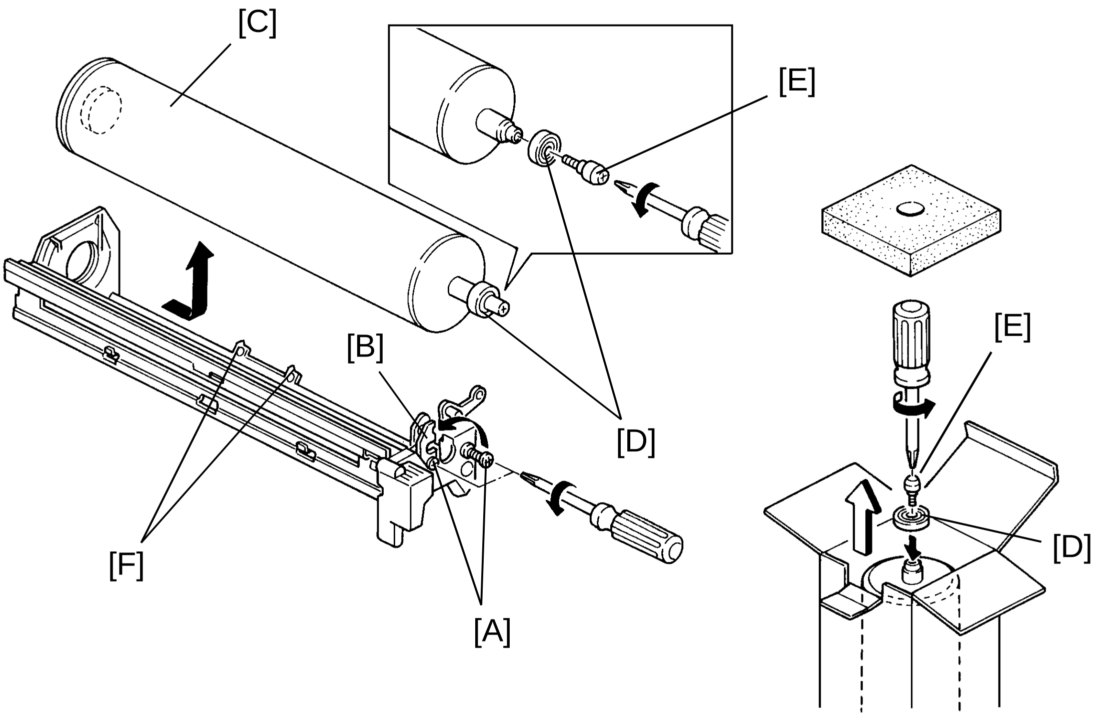


5. Turn the cleaning unit release lever [A] counterclockwise. While holding up the cleaning blade release lever [B], remove the cleaning unit. Place the unit on a clean sheet of paper.
6. Remove the charge corona unit [C] together with the wire cleaner (1 screw).



7. Remove the fixing screw [A] securing the drum stay and pull out the drum unit [B] gently along the rail.
8. Place the drum unit on a clean sheet of paper.

6.2 DRUM REPLACEMENT



1. Pull out the drum unit from the copier and place it with the left side down on a clean sheet of paper (see Drum Unit Removal).
2. Loosen the two screws [A] securing the bearing holder [B] and rotate the holder as shown.
3. While holding the front side of the drum unit, push the rear end of the drum [C] towards the front to loosen the bearing [D].
4. While holding the front and rear ends of the drum, remove the drum from the drum unit by lifting it up.
5. Remove the bearing and the bearing screw [E] from the old drum and install them on a new drum.

   NOTE: Keep the drum protective sheet on the new drum.

6. Clean the ID sensor and the V sensor with a blower brush (see ID sensor Cleaning and Replacement, V sensor cleaning and Replacement).
7. Clean the toner shield glass and the green filter (see Toner Shield Glass Cleaning and Replacement).

8. Install the new drum in the drum unit, then position and secure the bearing holder.

   NOTE: a) When setting the drum in the unit, be careful not to strike it against the unit frame or the pick-off pawls [F].

   b) Do not bend the bearing holder. Make sure that the bearing holder is in contact with the bearing, as they are both used to ground the drum. If they are not in contact, solid black copies may appear.

9. Install the drum unit in the copier and remove the drum protective sheet.

   NOTE: Be sure that the drum unit is secured with the screw.

10. Install the other remaining units in the copier.

11. Clean the optics and plug in the copier.

12. While pressing both "1" and "3" of the number keys, turn on the main switch to enter the SP mode.

    NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the call service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.

13. Enter "66" using the number keys and press the enter key. Press "1", then the enter key. (The copier performs the drum initial setting and the beeper sounds 5 times.)

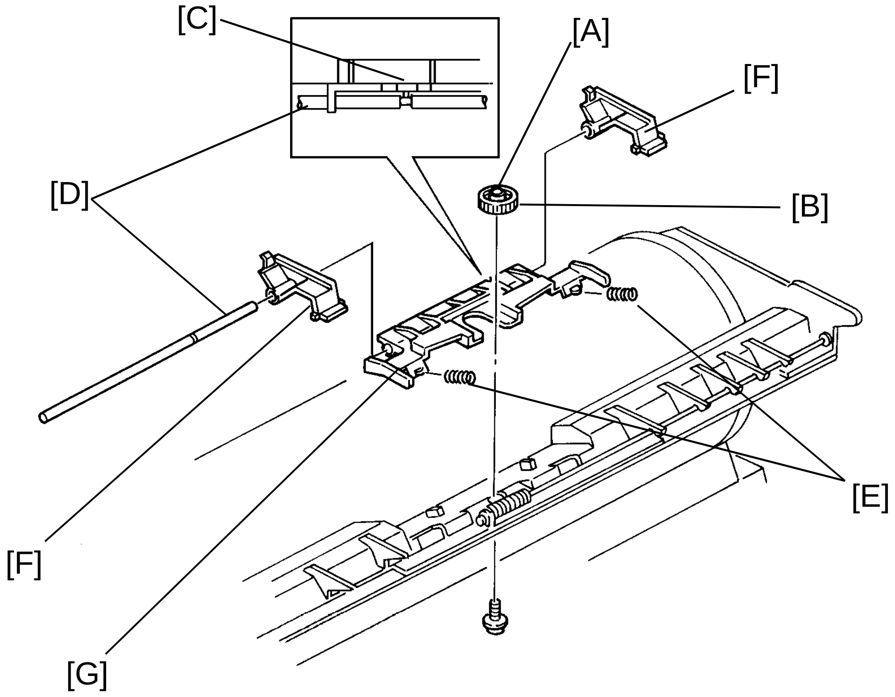
14. Enter "54" using the number keys and press the enter key, then the start key. (The copier performs ID/V sensor adjustments and the beeper sounds 2 times after 4 seconds.)

15. Enter "48" using the number keys and then press the enter key twice.

16. Make copies from the test chart at the ID level #4 and adjust the exposure lamp voltage if necessary (see Light Intensity Adjustment).

17. Turn the main switch off and on.

6.3 PICK-OFF PAWL REPLACEMENT



CAUTION: Be careful not to injure your hands with the pick-off pawls as the top of them is very sharp.

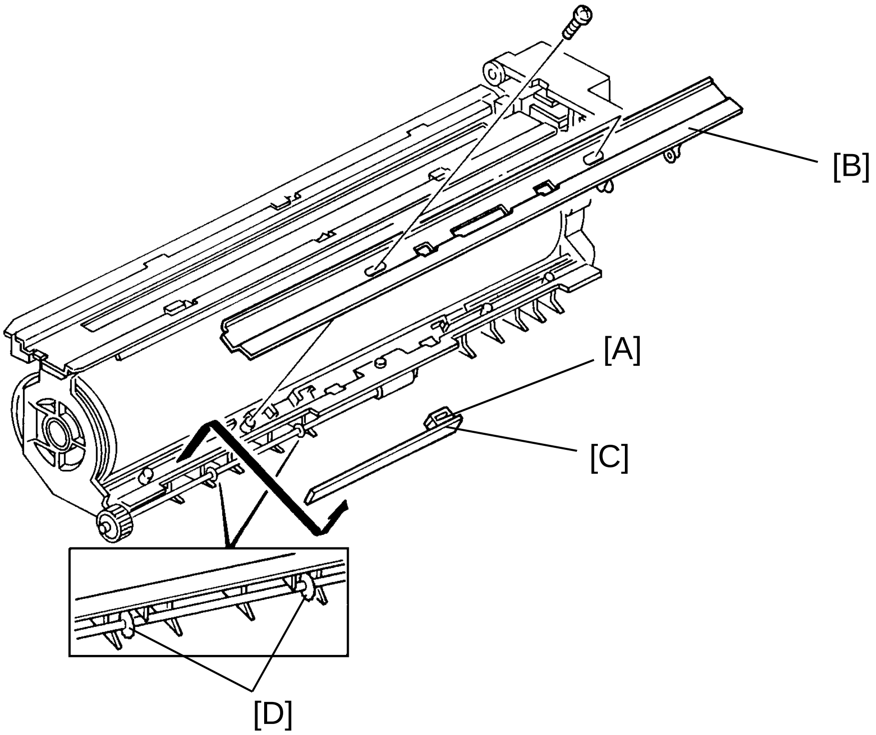
1. Remove the drum from the drum unit (see Drum Replacement) and keep the drum wrapped in the protective sheet or a clean sheet of paper.
2. Remove the cam gear shaft [A] (1 screw) and the cam gear [B].
3. While turning the pick-off pawl assembly towards the drum side, slide it to the rear. Lifting the front side of the assembly, remove it from the drum unit.
4. While releasing the shaft stopper [C], pull out the pick-off pawl shaft [D] from the assembly.

   NOTE: Be careful not to lose the pick-off pawl springs [E].
5. Install the new pick-off pawls [F] on the pick-off pawl holder and set the pick-off pawl springs.

   NOTE: a) Make sure that the pick-off pawls are positioned correctly on the pick-off pawl holder [G].

   b) Make sure that the pick-off pawl shaft is locked by the shaft stopper.
6. Reassemble the drum unit.

6.4 ID SENSOR CLEANING AND REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the drum from the drum unit (see Drum Replacement) and keep the drum wrapped in the protective sheet or a clean sheet of paper.

[Cleaning]

2. Clean the ID sensor [A] with a blower brush from the drum side.

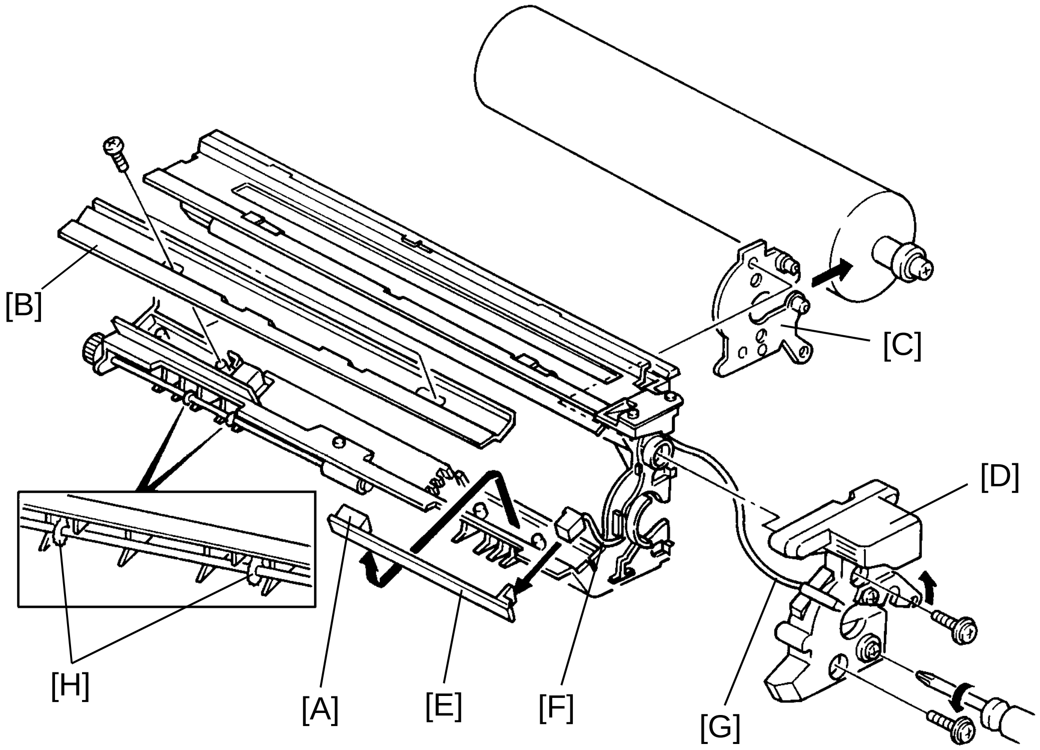
[Replacement]

2. Remove the ID/V sensor bracket [B] from the drum unit (2 screws).
3. Remove the ID sensor board [C] from the drum unit by simply lifting it up.
4. Reassemble the drum unit and install all the removed units in the copier.

   NOTE: When reinstalling the ID/V sensor bracket, make sure that the spurs [D] are correctly positioned as shown.

5. Perform the ID/V sensor adjustment (see ID Sensor and V Sensor Adjustment SP54).

6.5 V SENSOR CLEANING AND REPLACEMENT



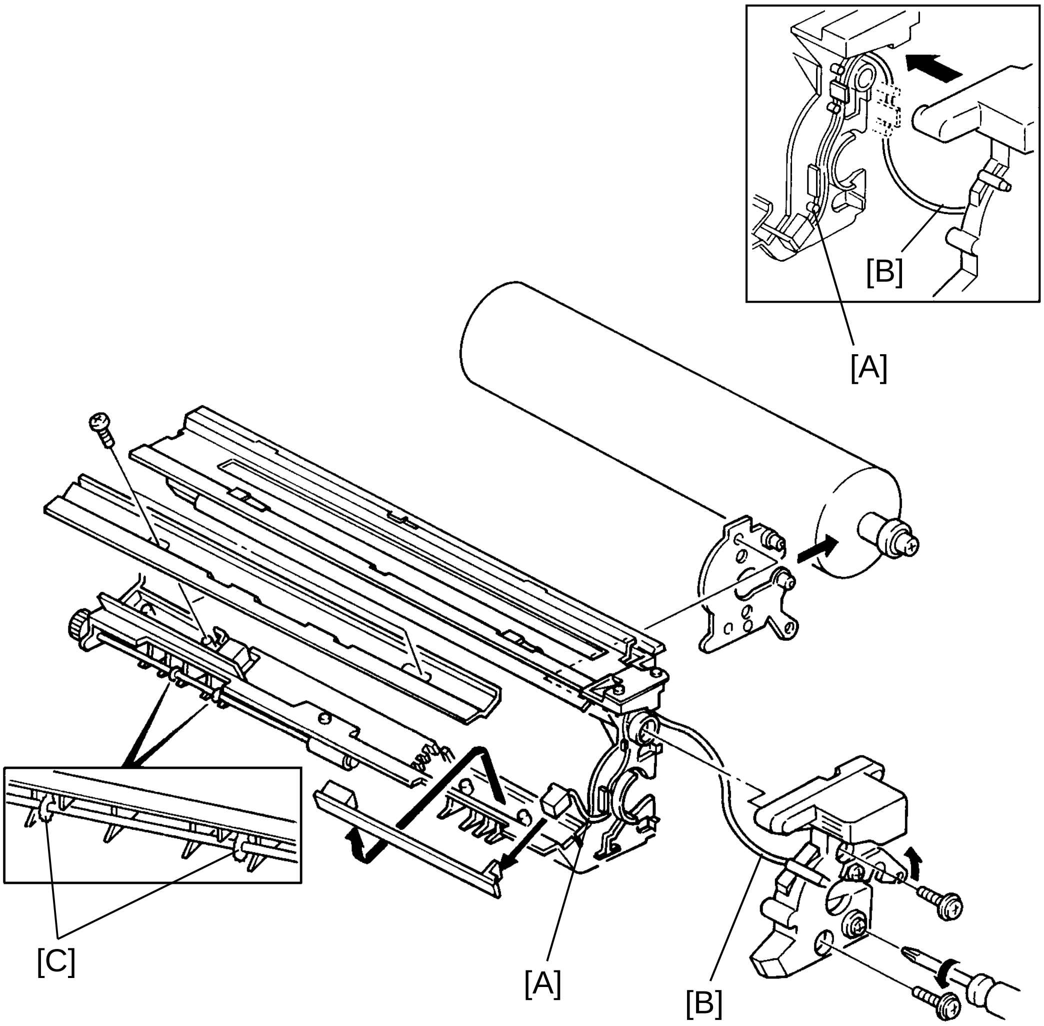
1. Remove the drum from the drum unit (see Drum Replacement) and keep the drum wrapped in the protective sheet or a clean sheet of paper.

[Cleaning]

2. Clean the V sensor [A] with a blower brush from the drum side.

[Replacement]

2. Remove the ID/V sensor bracket [B] from the drum unit (2 screws).
3. Remove the drum stay [C] (2 long screws) from the drum unit.
4. Remove the front drum cover [D] from the unit.
5. Remove the V sensor board [E] from the drum unit (1 connector).
6. Couple the V sensor connector with a new V sensor board and install the board on the drum unit.



7. Run the V sensor harness [A] and the drum grounding wire [B] on the drum unit frame as shown and install the front drum cover.

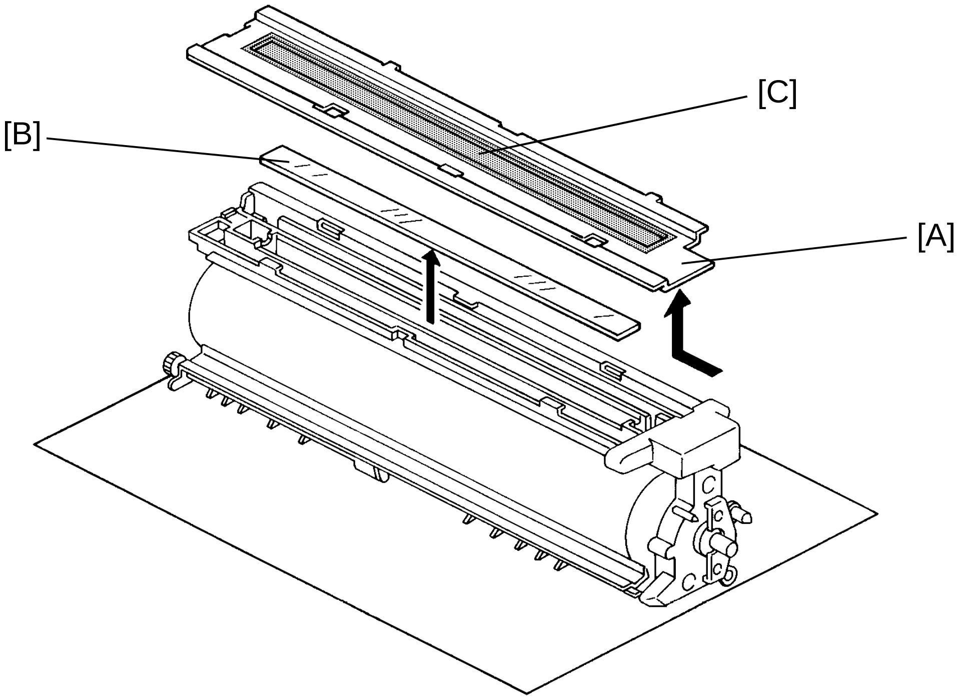
   NOTE: Make sure that the harnesses are correctly positioned and that no wire is nicked or pinched by the drum front cover.

8. Reassemble the drum unit and install all the removed units in the copier.

   NOTE: When reinstalling the ID/V sensor bracket, make sure that the spurs [C] are correctly positioned as shown.

9. Perform the ID/V sensor adjustment (see ID Sensor and V Sensor Adjustment SP54).

6.6 TONER SHIELD GLASS AND GREEN FILTER CLEANING

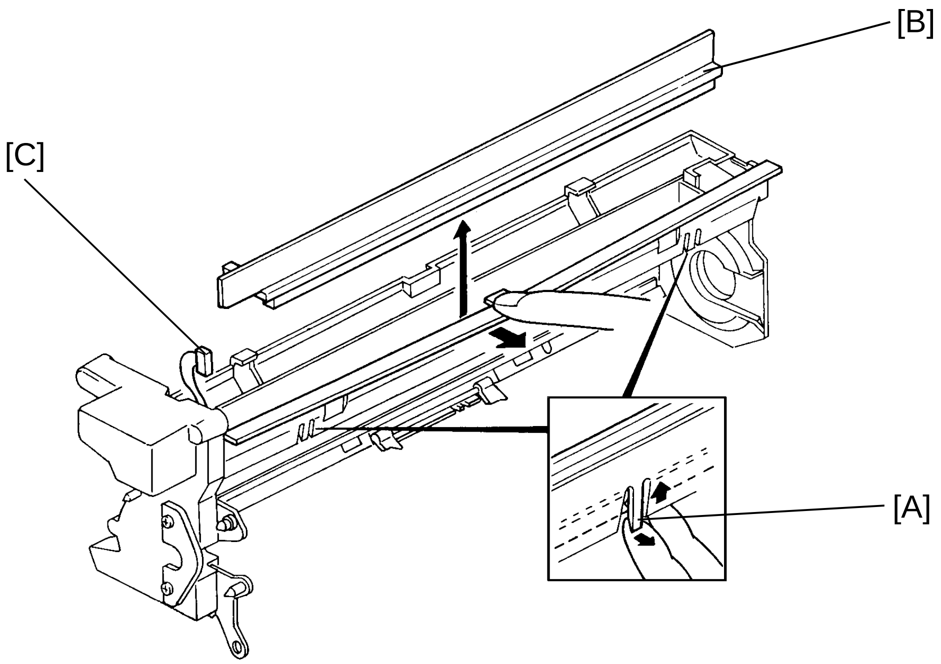


1. Remove the drum unit from the copier (see Drum Unit Removal) and place it on a clean sheet of paper with the drum unit top plate up [A].
2. While holding the front side of the drum unit, slide the drum unit top plate to the rear and remove.
3. While holding both the front and rear ends of the toner shield glass [B] with your fingers, lift the glass up.
4. Clean the toner shield glass and the green filter [C] on the drum unit top plate with a dry cloth.

   NOTE: a) After cleaning the green filter, discharge static electricity on the filter by touching it with your finger.
   b) Do not clean the green filter with water or any other cleaning solution as the filter has an antistatic coating.
5. Reassemble the drum unit.

   NOTE: When reinstalling the drum unit top plate, be careful not to nick or pinch the erase lamp unit harness.

6.7 ERASE LAMP UNIT REPLACEMENT

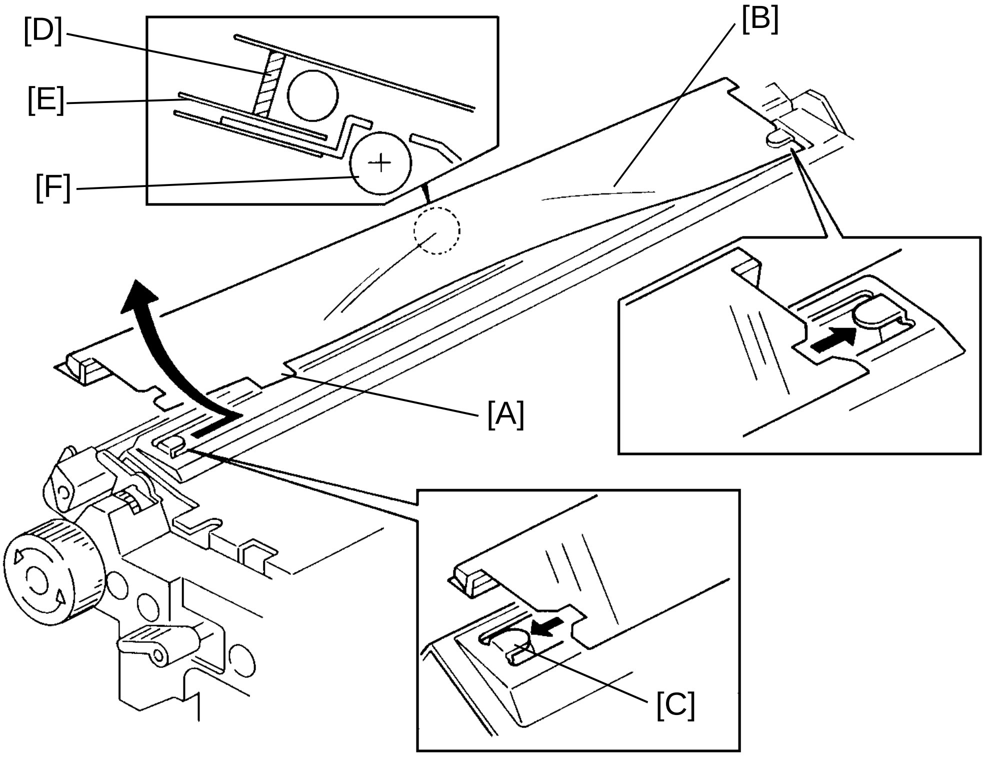


1. Remove the drum and the toner shield glass from the drum unit (see Drum Replacement and Toner Shield Glass Cleaning).
2. While unhooking the positioning pawls [A], remove the erase lamp unit [B] (1 connector) as shown.
3. Couple the erase lamp connector [C] with a new erase lamp unit and install the unit in the drum unit.

   NOTE: Make sure that the erase lamp unit is hooked correctly with positioning pawls and the harness is set in position.
4. Reassemble the drum unit.

   NOTE: When reinstalling the drum unit top plate, be careful not to nick or pinch the erase lamp unit harness.
5. If you have replaced the erase lamp unit with a different type (standard type and edit type), set SP84 (Editing Eraser) to correct the setting for the type of lamp installed.

6.8 PTL FILTER CLEANING AND REPLACEMENT

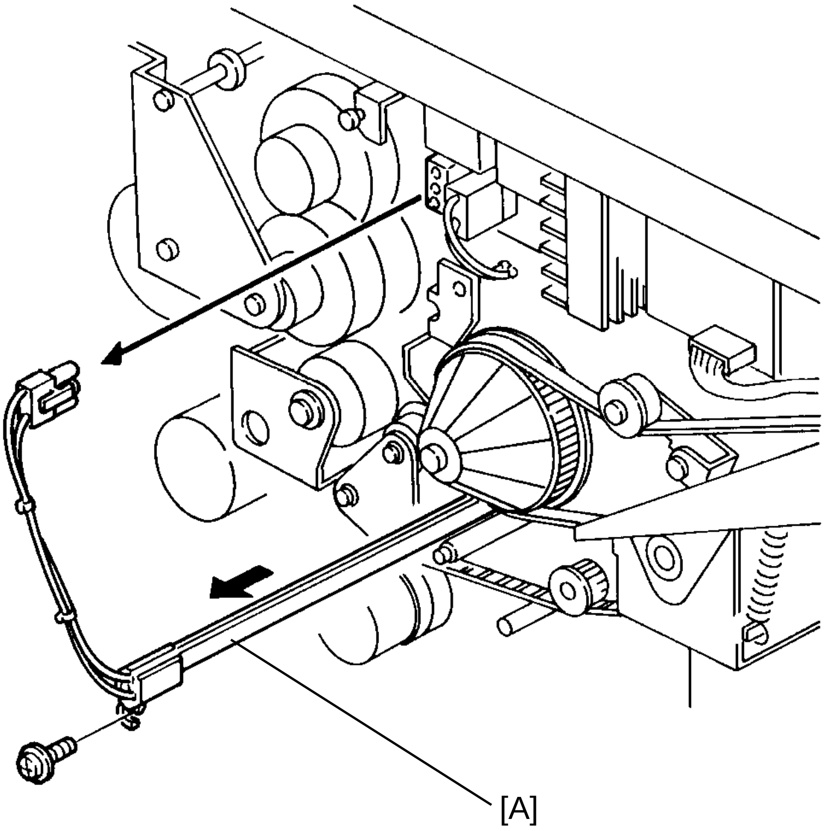


1. Lower the T&S corona unit and remove the following units from the copier: Black (and color) development unit/Cleaning unit/Charge corona unit / Drum unit
2. While holding the tab [A] of the PTL top mylar [B], bend the mylar and unhook the front side of the mylar from the hook [C], then from the rear side.
3. Remove the PTL filter assembly from the drum side.
4. Clean the PTL filter [D] with a blower brush and a dry cloth. Discharge static electricity on the filter by touching it with your finger.
5. Reinstall the PTL filter assembly in the copier.

   NOTE: a) Make sure that the PTL lower mylar [E] is positioned under the pre-transfer lamp [F].

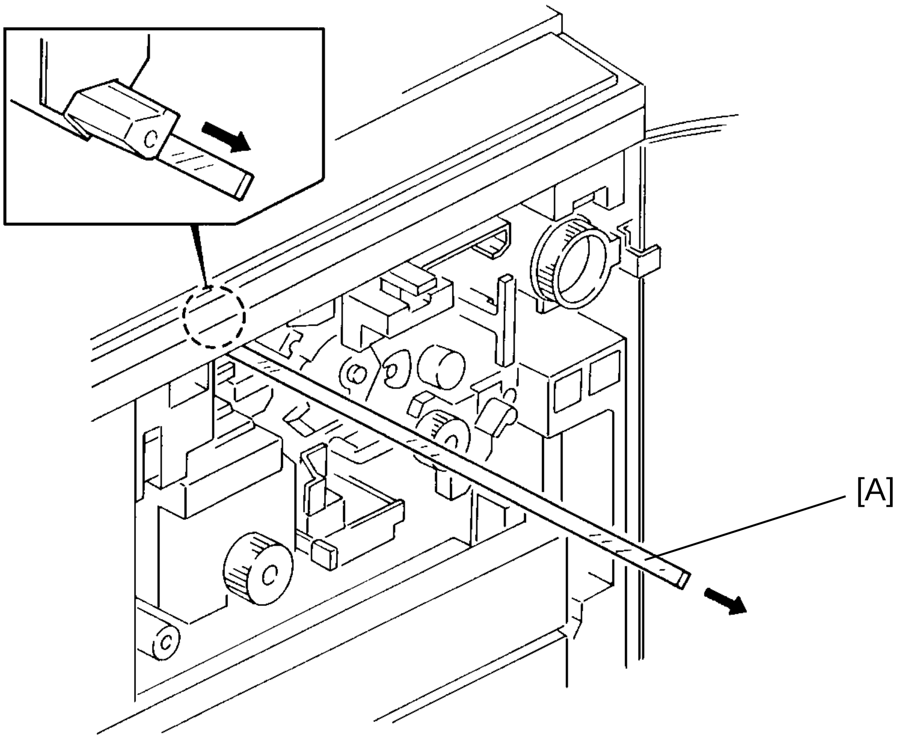
   b) Slide the top mylar towards the front and the rear to make sure that the front and rear sides of the PTL top mylar are positioned correctly in the hooks. If the mylar edge of the tab side is wavy, the position is incorrect.

6.9 PRE-TRANSFER LAMP REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the PTL filter assembly from the copier (see PTL Filter Cleaning And Replacement).
2. Remove the registration clutch from the copier (see Registration Clutch Replacement).
3. Slide out the pre-transfer lamp [A] from the copier (1 screw, 1 connector, and 2 wire saddles).
4. Install a new pre-transfer lamp and reassemble the copier.

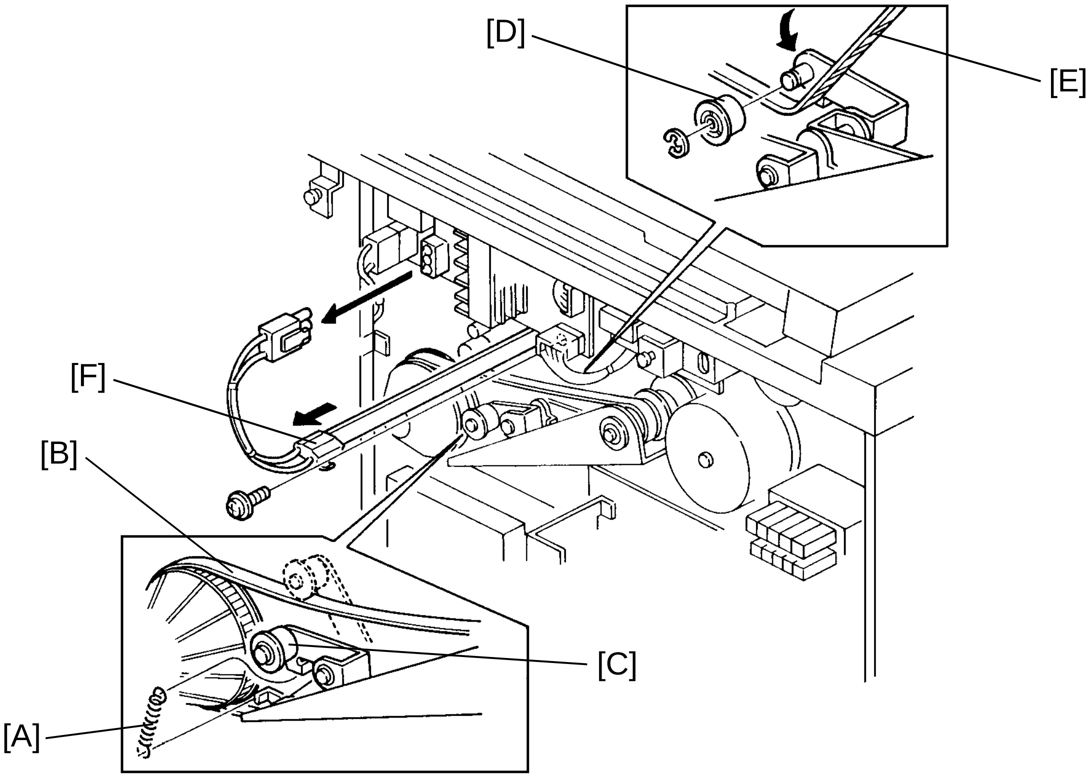
6.10 QUENCHING LAMP FILTER CLEANING



1. Open the front cover and pull out the quenching lamp filter [A].
2. Clean the filter with a dry cloth and discharge static electricity on the filter by touching it with your finger.
3. Reinstall the filter in the copier.

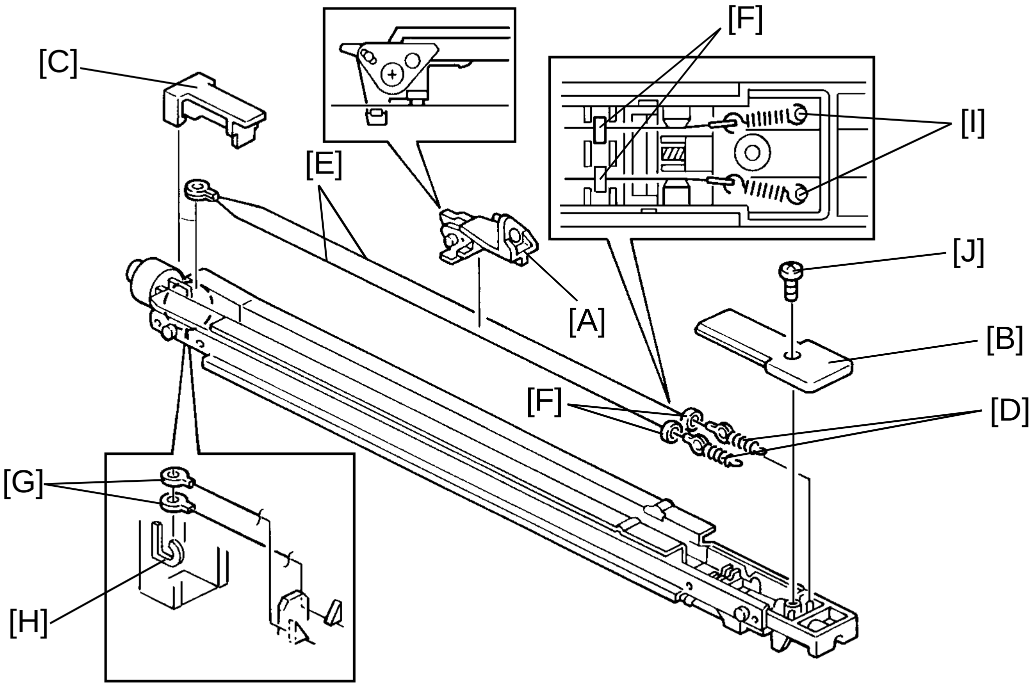
   NOTE: When inserting the quenching filter, be careful not to break it.

6.11 QUENCHING LAMP REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the copier rear cover.
2. Remove the tension spring [A] of the drum drive belt [B].
3. Slip off the drum drive belt from the tension pulley [C] and lower the tension pulley.
4. Remove the tension pulley [D] (1 E-ring) for the development drive belt [E].
5. Slide out the quenching lamp [F] from the copier (1 screw and 1 connector).
6. Install a new quenching lamp and reassemble the copier.

6.12 CHARGE CORONA WIRE REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the screw securing the charge corona wire cleaner [A] and pull out the charge corona unit with the wire cleaner.
2. Remove the wire cleaner from the charge corona unit.
3. Remove the front end block cover [B] (1 plastic screw) and the rear end block cover [C] (2 hooks).

   NOTE: When removing the rear end block cover, be careful not to break off the side hooks.
4. Unhook the corona wire tension spring [D] and remove the charge corona wire [E]. Remove both corona wires.

   NOTE: a) Be careful not to damage the corona wire tension spring.
   b) Be careful not to lose the tension springs and the damper rings [F].
5. Clean the charge corona casing and the end blocks.

   NOTE: a) Clean the casing with water first to remove NOx. Then clean it with alcohol if any toner still remains on the casing.
   b) Clean the end blocks with a blower brush to remove toner and paper dust. Then clean it with alcohol if any toner still remains on it.
   c) Do not touch the charge guide plate with bare hands, bend or dent it.

6. Install new corona wires with the damper rings on the corona unit.

   NOTE: a) Set the big eyelet [G] of the corona wire in the rear hook [H], then set the front end with the tension spring. The spring should be positioned at the bottom part of the hooking pole [I].

   b) Do not touch the corona wire with oily bare hands. Oil stains may cause white bands on copies.

   c) Do not bend or scratch the wire to avoid any uneven charge.

   d) Make sure that the damper rings are correctly positioned in the front end block as shown.

   e) Make sure that the corona wires are correctly positioned in both the front and rear end blocks as shown.

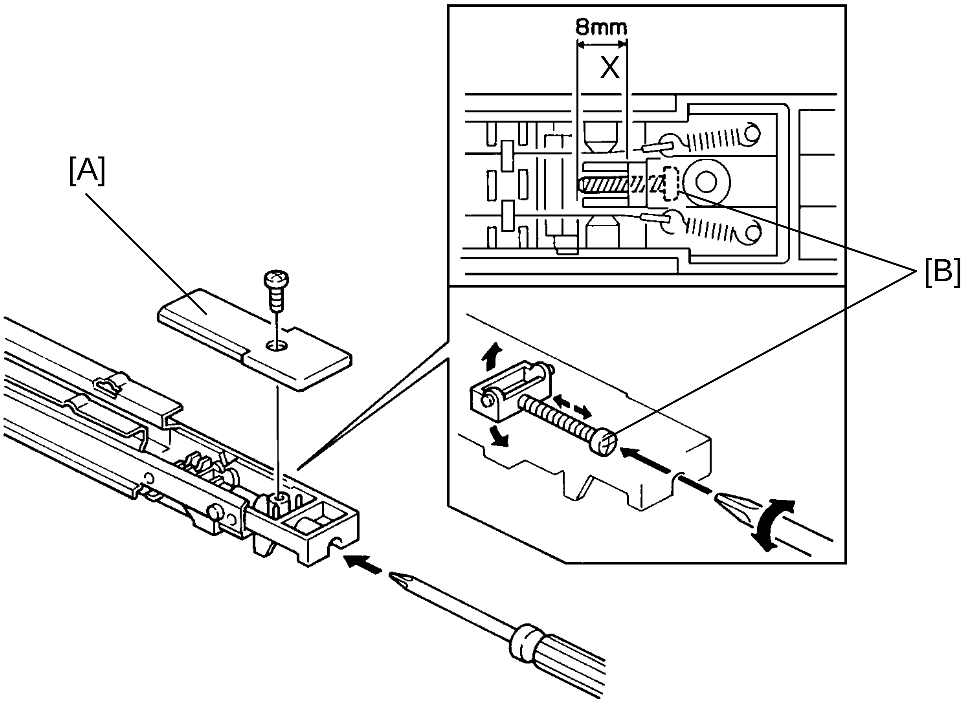
   f) Do not change the corona wire height by turning the wire height adjustment screw.

7. Install the front and rear end block covers and set the wire cleaner.

   NOTE: a) Do not secure the plastic screw [J] for the front end block cover too tight. Otherwise, it may be damaged when removing it.

   b) Make sure that the corona wires are correctly positioned between the cleaner pads.

6.13 CHARGE CORONA WIRE HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT



NOTE: a) The charge corona wire height adjustment should be done only when the front end block is replaced.

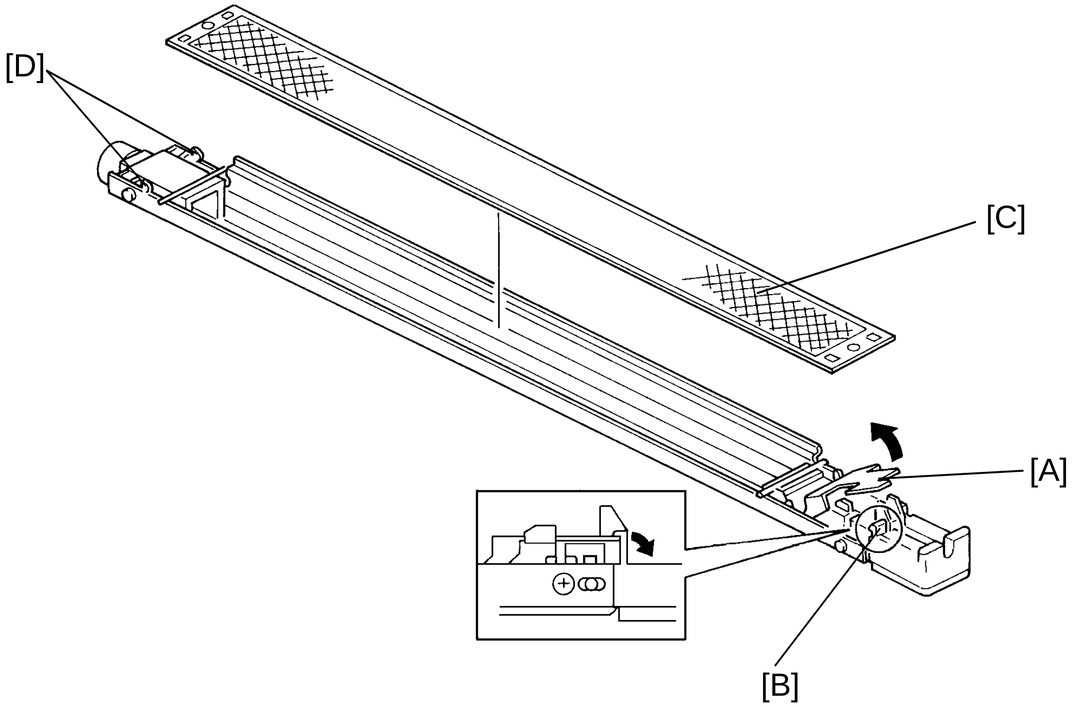
b) Before replacing the front end block of the charge corona unit, adjust the uneven exposure with the exposure adjusting plates and make a copy sample with the test chart for the reference.

1. Remove the wire cleaner and the front end block cover [A] (1 plastic screw) from the charge corona unit.
2. Adjust the gap "X" (between the wire height adjusting block and the screw holder edge) to 8.0 mm by turning the wire height adjusting screw [B] as shown in the illustration.
3. Reassemble the charge corona unit and set it in the copier.
4. Make copies with the test chart and compare the front and rear gray scales with those of the reference copy made before replacing the front end block. Adjust the corona wire height by turning the wire height adjusting screw, if necessary.

   Turning the screw clockwise decreases the image density at the front side.

   Turning the screw counterclockwise increases the image density at the front side.

6.14 CHARGE GRID PLATE REPLACEMENT



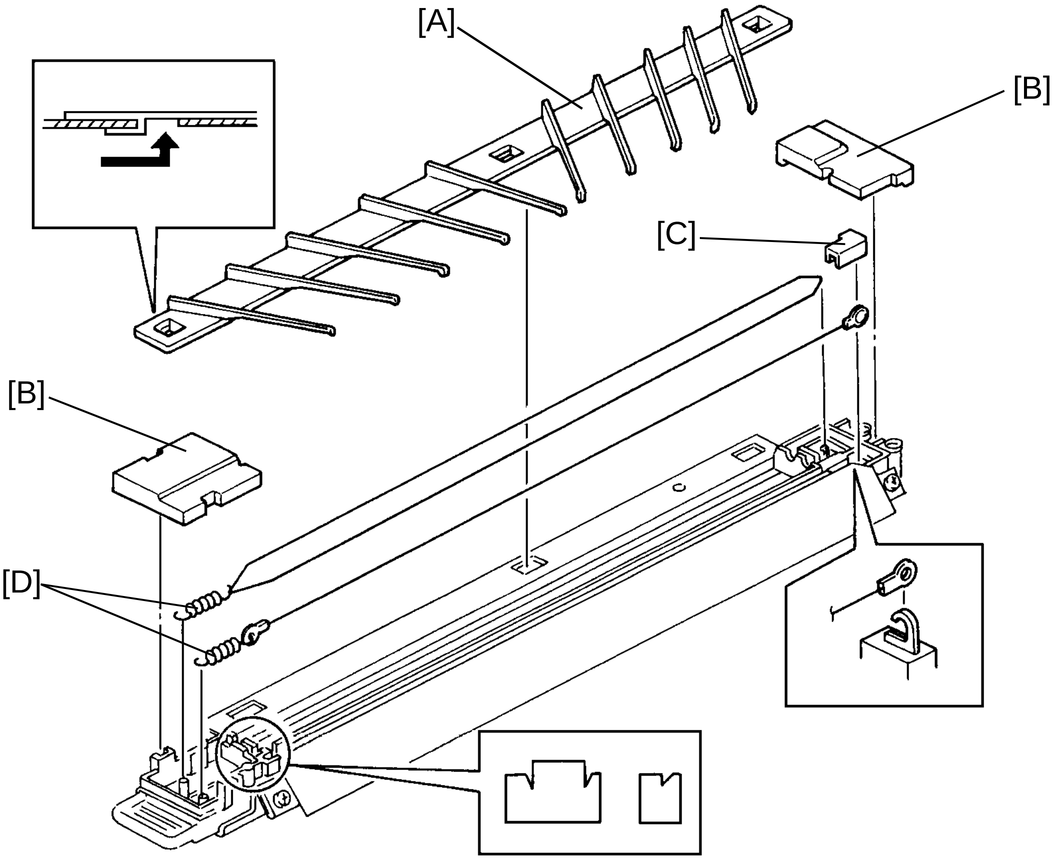
1. Remove the wire cleaner from the charge corona unit.
2. Unhook the grid anchor plate [A] from the hook on the front end block, and lift up the grid anchor plate as shown.

   NOTE: When unhooking the anchor grid plate, be careful not to break off the hook [B].
3. Remove the old grid plate [C] from the charge corona unit.
4. Set a new grid plate on the rear hooks [D] first, then on the front hooks of the anchor plate by closing the anchor plate.

   NOTE: a) Do not touch the charge grid plate with oily bare hands.

   b) Do not bend the charge grid plate, or make any dent on it, to avoid uneven charge.

6.15 TRANSFER/SEPARATION CORONA WIRE REPLACEMENT



1. Lower the T & S corona unit and remove it from the copier.
2. Remove the paper guide [A] from the T & S corona unit by lifting the rear part and sliding it to the rear.
3. Remove the front and rear end block covers [B] (2 hooks each).

   NOTE: When removing the end block covers, be careful not to break off the side hooks.
4. Remove the wire hook cover [C] from the rear end block.
5. Unhook the corona wire tension springs [D] and remove the transfer and separation corona wires.

   NOTE: Be careful not to damage or lose the tension springs.

6. Clean the T & S corona casing and the end blocks.

   NOTE: a) Clean the casing with water first to remove NOx. Then clean it with alcohol if any toner still remains on the casing.

   b) Clean the end blocks with a blower brush to remove toner and paper dust. Then clean it with alcohol if any toner still remains.

   c) Do not loosen the screws securing the transfer entrance guide mylar bracket.

7. Install a new transfer and separation corona wires.

   NOTE: a) Do not touch the corona wires with oily bare hands.

   b) Do not bend or scratch the corona wires.

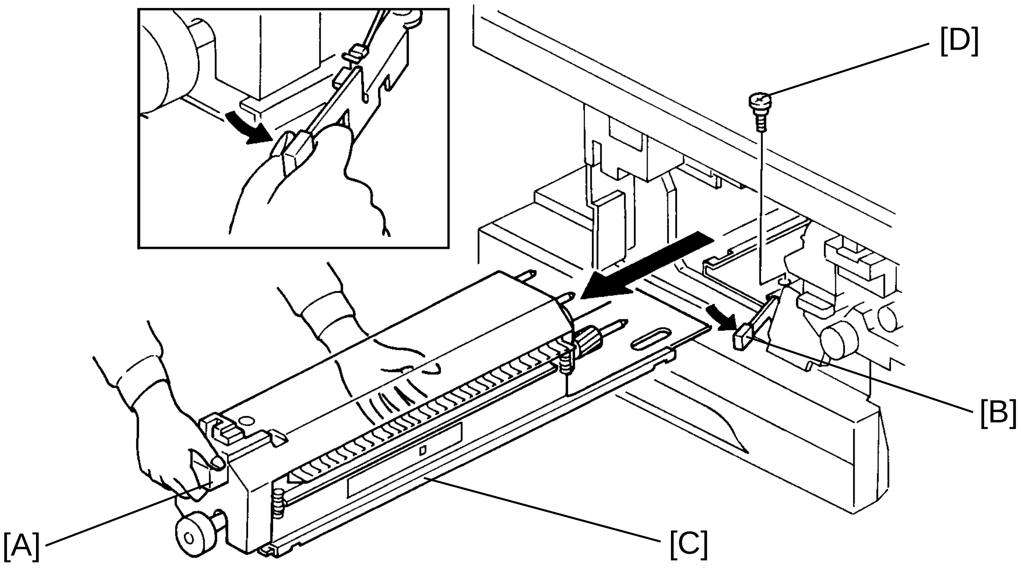
   c) When installing the separation corona wire, make sure that the wire junction is positioned in the rear end block.

   d) Make sure that the corona wires are correctly positioned in both the front and rear end blocks.

8. Reassemble the T & S corona unit.

7. FUSING

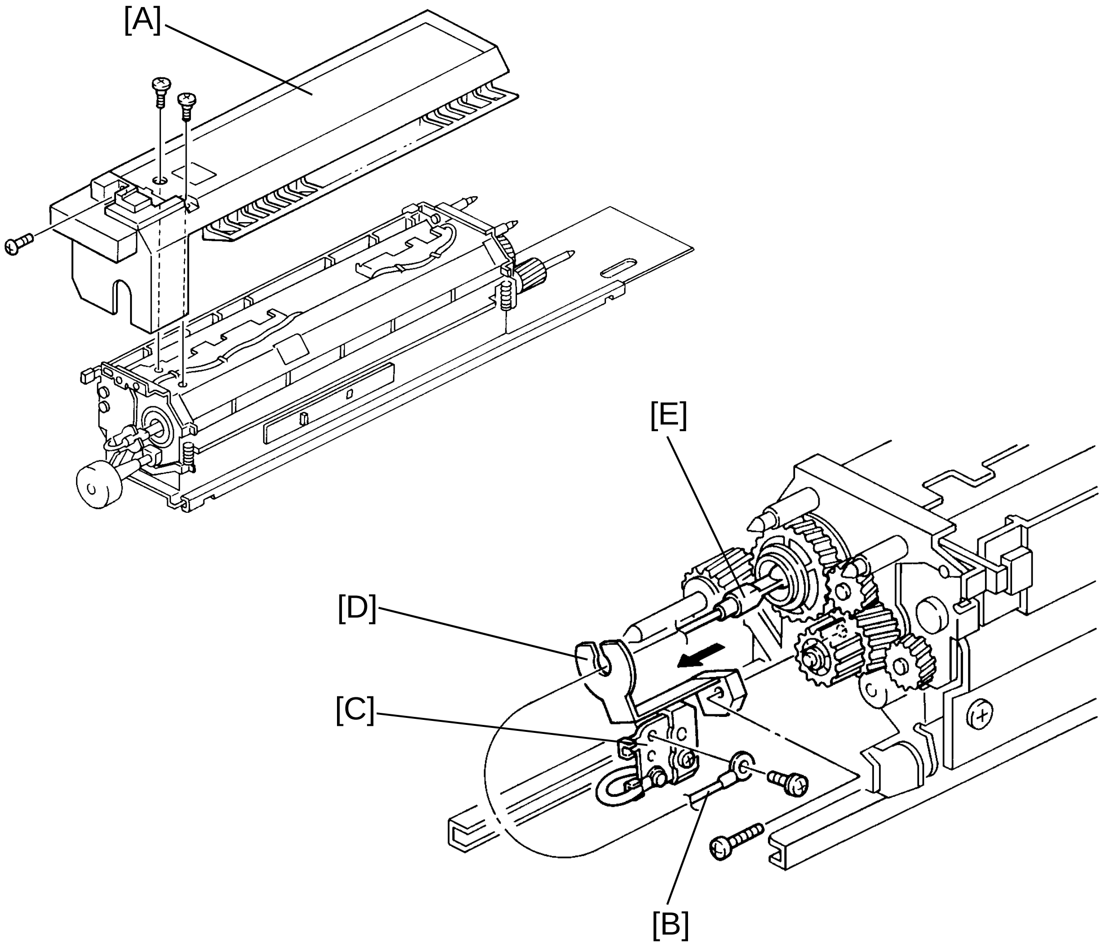
7.1 FUSING UNIT REMOVAL



1. Open the front cover and lower the T & S corona unit.
2. Remove the cleaning unit (see Cleaning Unit Removal).
3. Hold the fusing unit cover [A] while pushing the release lever [B], and pull out the fusing unit [C] until it stops.
4. Remove the fusing unit lock screw [D] (1 shoulder screw).
5. Remove the fusing unit completely while pushing the release lever.

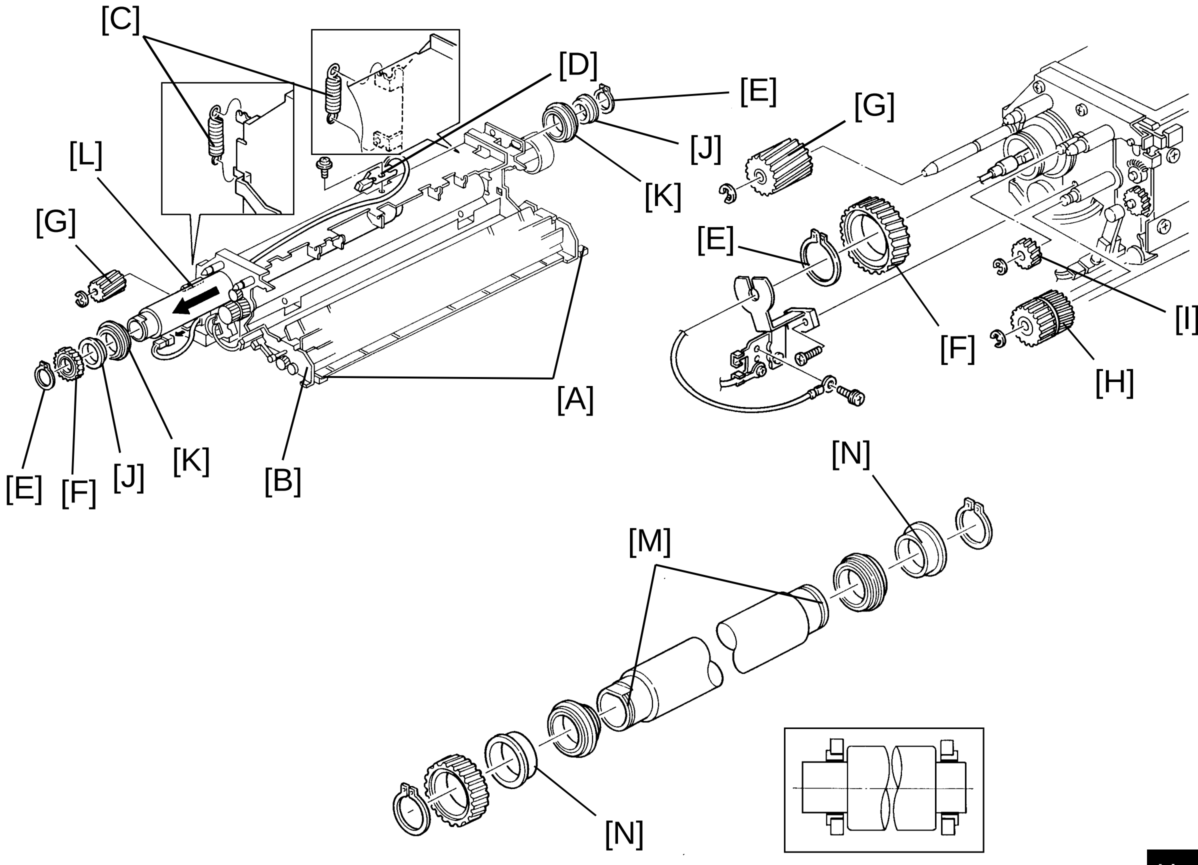
   NOTE: Before completely removing the fusing unit, support the bottom of the fusing unit.

7.2 FUSING LAMP REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the fusing unit (see Fusing Unit Removal).
2. Remove the fusing unit cover [A] (2 shoulder screws, 1 screw).
3. Remove the fusing lamp harness [B] from the front and rear fusing lamp terminals [C] (1 screw each).
4. Remove the rear lamp holder [D] (1 screw) and replace the fusing lamp [E].

7.3 HOT ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the fusing lamp (see Fusing Lamp Replacement).
2. Press both "B2" release levers [A] and lower the fusing exit assembly [B].
3. Remove the front and rear pressure springs [C].
4. Remove the fusing thermistor [D] (1 screw).
5. Remove the front and rear C-rings [E], 4 gears [F, G, H, I], front and rear collars [J], front fusing bearings [K], and then remove the hot roller [L].

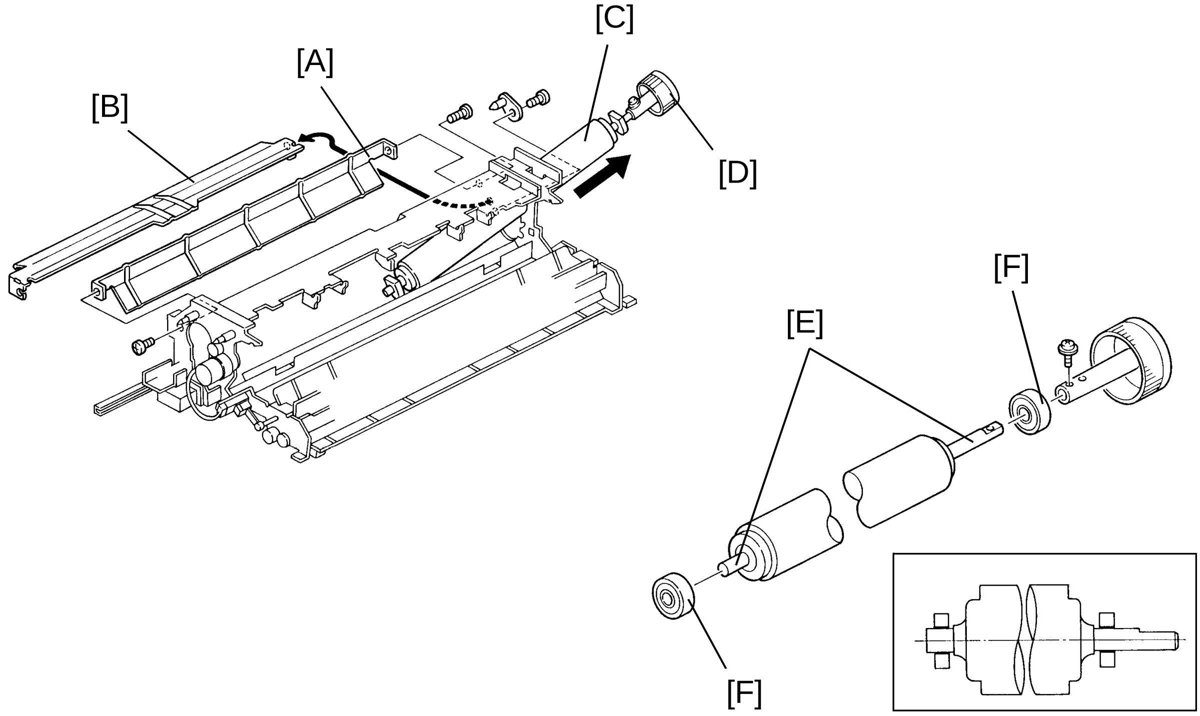
   NOTE: a) Lubricate the roller shaft [M] and fushing [N] with BARRIERTA L55/2 grease

   b) Peel off 3 cm (1 inch) from both ends of the protective sheet, and install the hot roller.

   c) Before setting the pressure springs, remove the rest of the protective sheet.

   d) Lubicate the fusing drive gears and their shafts with grease G501.

7.4 PRESSURE ROLLER REPLACEMENT



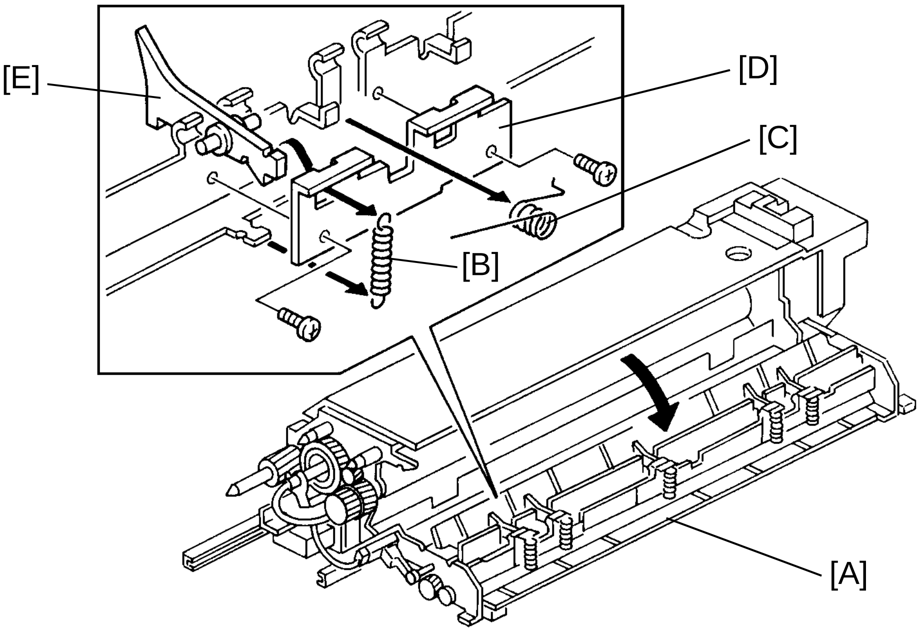
1. Remove the hot roller (see Hot Roller Replacement).
2. Remove the upper fusing entrance guide [A] (2 screws).
3. Remove the lower fusing entrance guide [B] (1 screw) as shown.
4. Remove the front lamp holder (1 screw).
5. Lift the front end of the pressure roller [C] and slide, along with its bearings, out the front side of the unit.
6. Remove the front and rear bearings and the fusing knob [D] (1 screw).
7. Replace the pressure roller.

   NOTE: When installing a new pressure roller:

   a) Lubricate the roller shaft [E] and bearings [F] with BARRIERTA L55/2 grease.

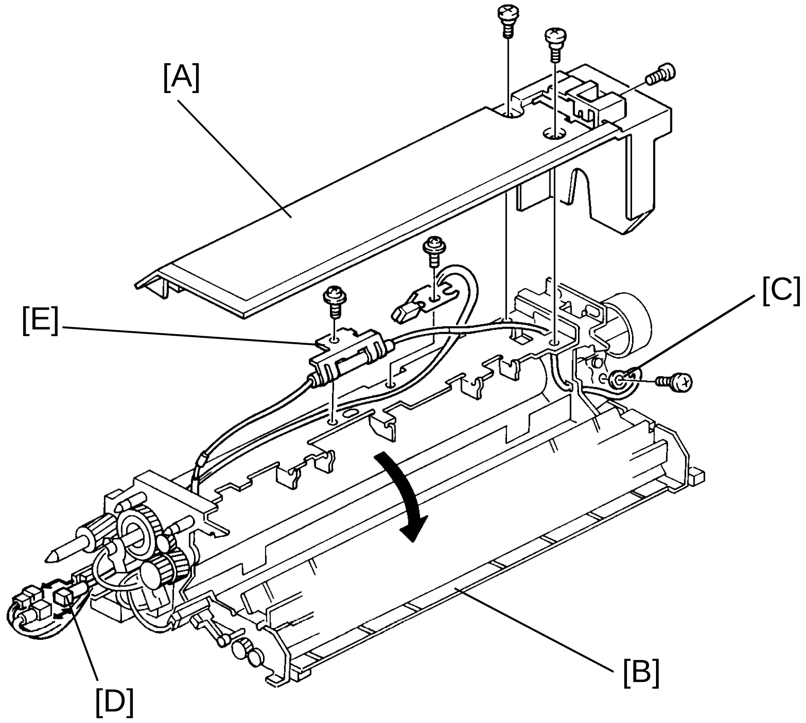
   b) Lubricate the fusing drive gears and their shafts with grease G501

7.5 FUSING STRIPPER PAWL REPLACEMENT



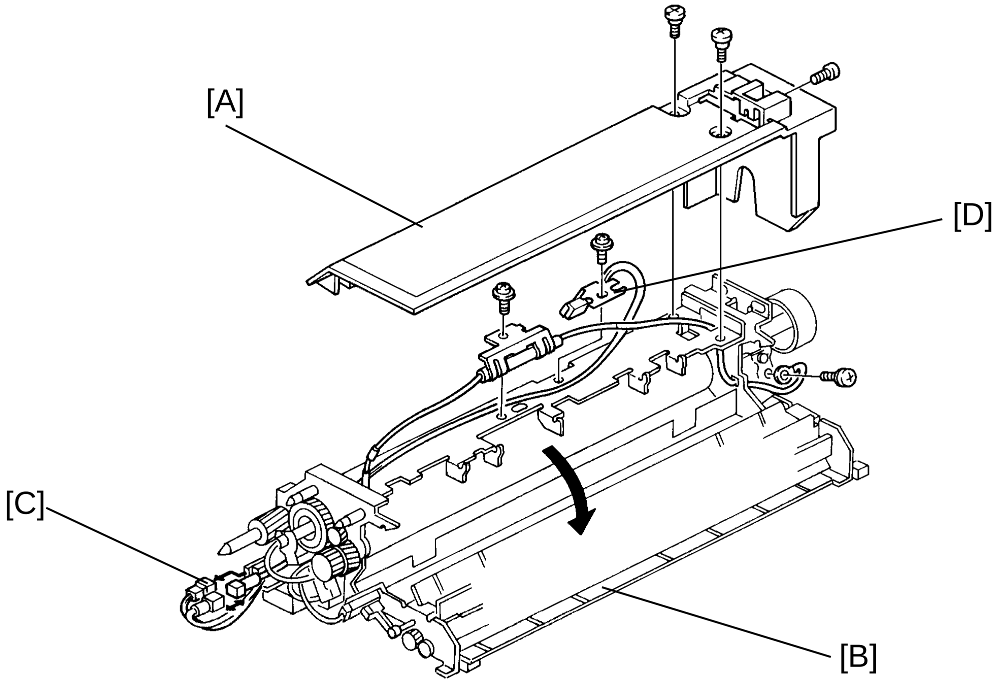
1. Remove the fusing unit (see Fusing Unit Removal).
2. Lower the fusing exit assembly [A].
3. Remove the pawl pressure springs [B] and pawl release springs [C].
4. Remove the 3 fusing pawl brackets [D] (5 screws).
5. Remove the fusing stripper pawls [E] and replace.

7.6 THERMOFUSE REPLACEMENT



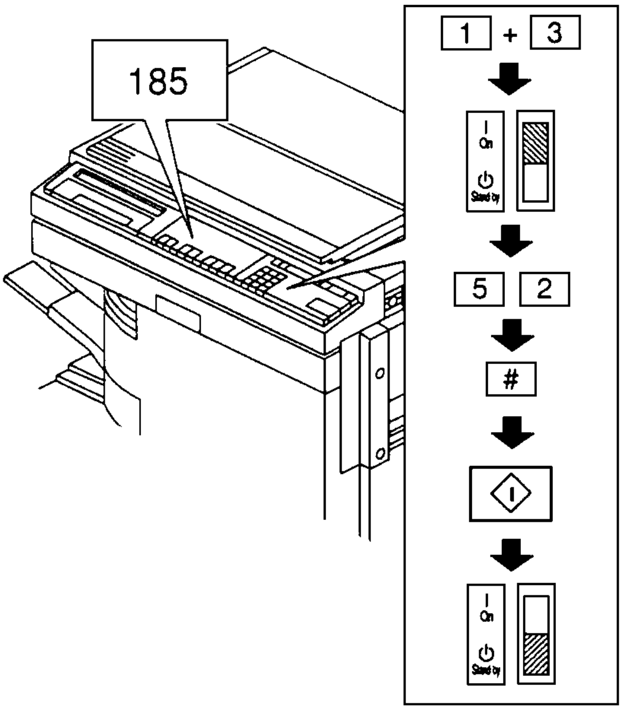
1. Remove the fusing unit (see Fusing Unit Removal).
2. Remove the fusing unit cover [A] (2 shoulder screws, 1 screw).
3. Lower the fusing exit assembly [B].
4. Remove the thermofuse harness lead [C] (1 screw) from the front fusing lamp terminal and disconnect the thermofuse harness from the fusing harness [D].
5. Remove the thermofuse holder [E] (1 screw) then remove the thermofuse (2 plate clamps).

7.7 FUSING THERMISTOR REPLACEMENT



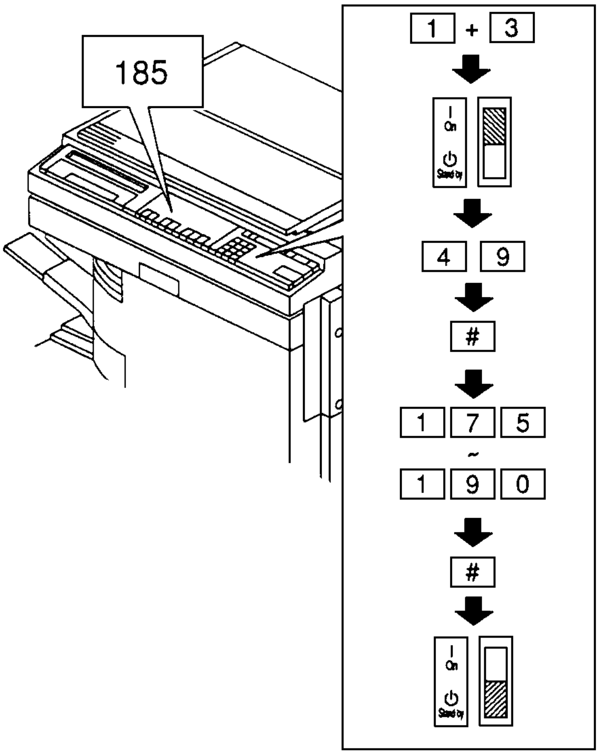
1. Remove the fusing unit (see Fusing Unit Removal).
2. Remove the fusing unit cover [A] (2 shoulder screws, 1 screw).
3. Lower the fusing exit assembly [B].
4. Disconnect the thermistor harness [C] from the fusing harness.
5. Remove the fusing thermistor [D] (1 screw, 2 plate clamps).

7.8 FUSING TEMPERATURE CHECK (SP52)



1. Turn the main switch off.
2. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch to access the SP mode.
3. Enter "52" (fusing temperature check mode) using the number keys and then press the enter key.
4. The current fusing temperature is indicated on the three digit indicator.
5. Turn the main switch off.

7.9 FUSING TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT (SP49)



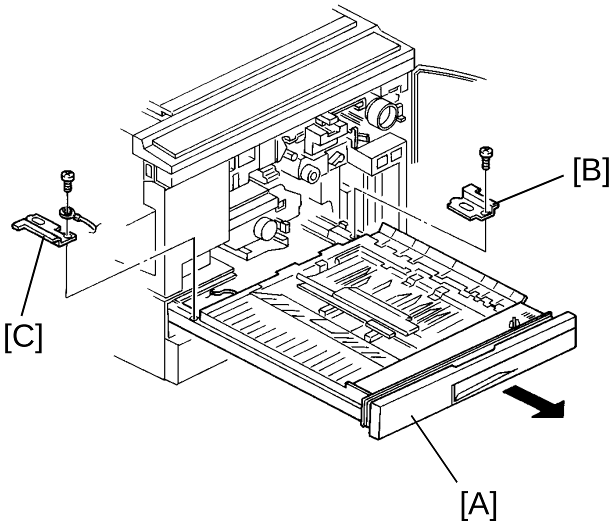
Standard Setting: 185°C

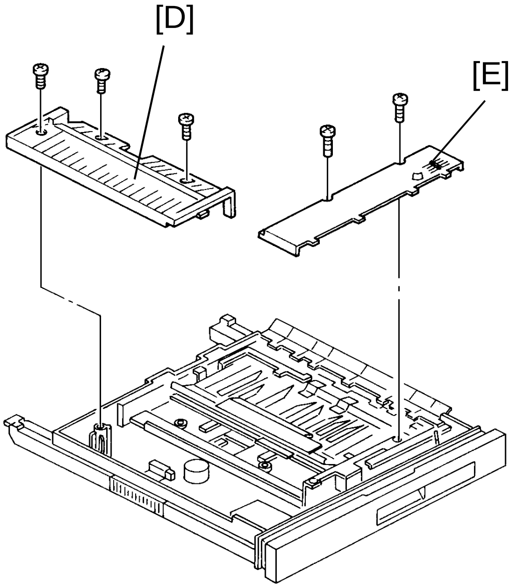
The fusing temperature can be adjusted between 175°C and 190°C in 1°C steps according to the following procedure:

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch to access the SP mode.
3. Enter "49" (fusing temperature adjustment mode) using the number keys and then press the enter key.
4. The current temperature setting blinks in the thre digit indicator. Enter the new temperature setting with the number key, then press the enter key.
5. Turn the main switch off.

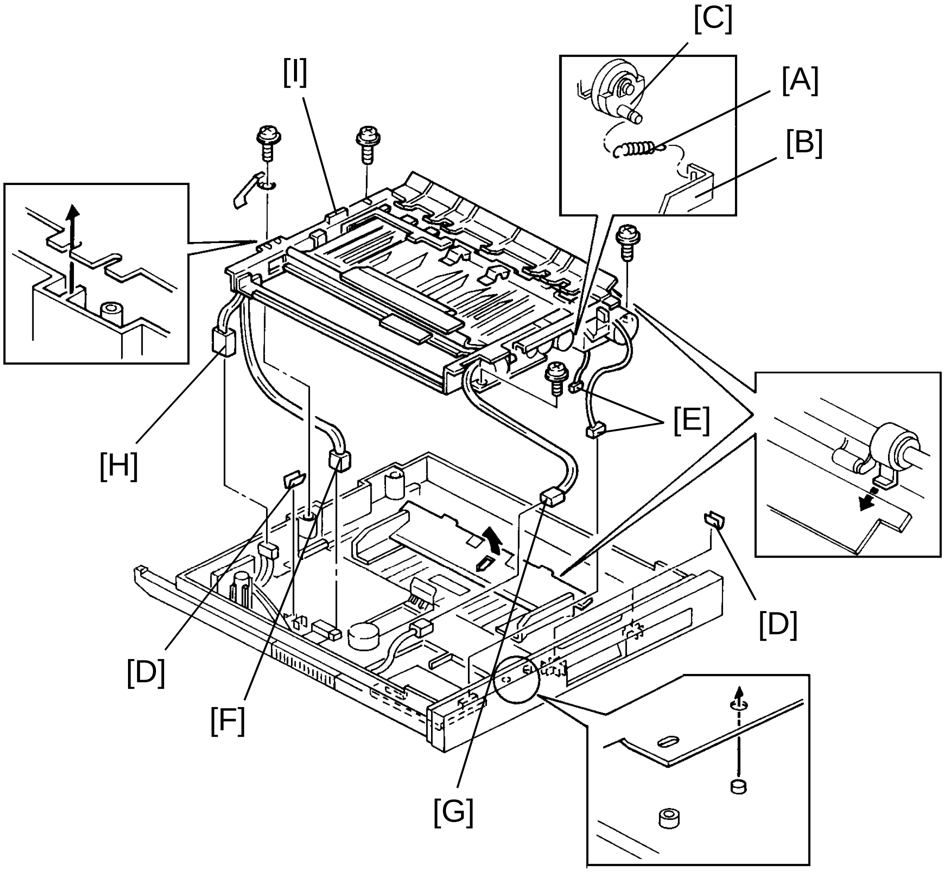
8. DUPLEX

8.1 DUPLEX UNIT REMOVAL



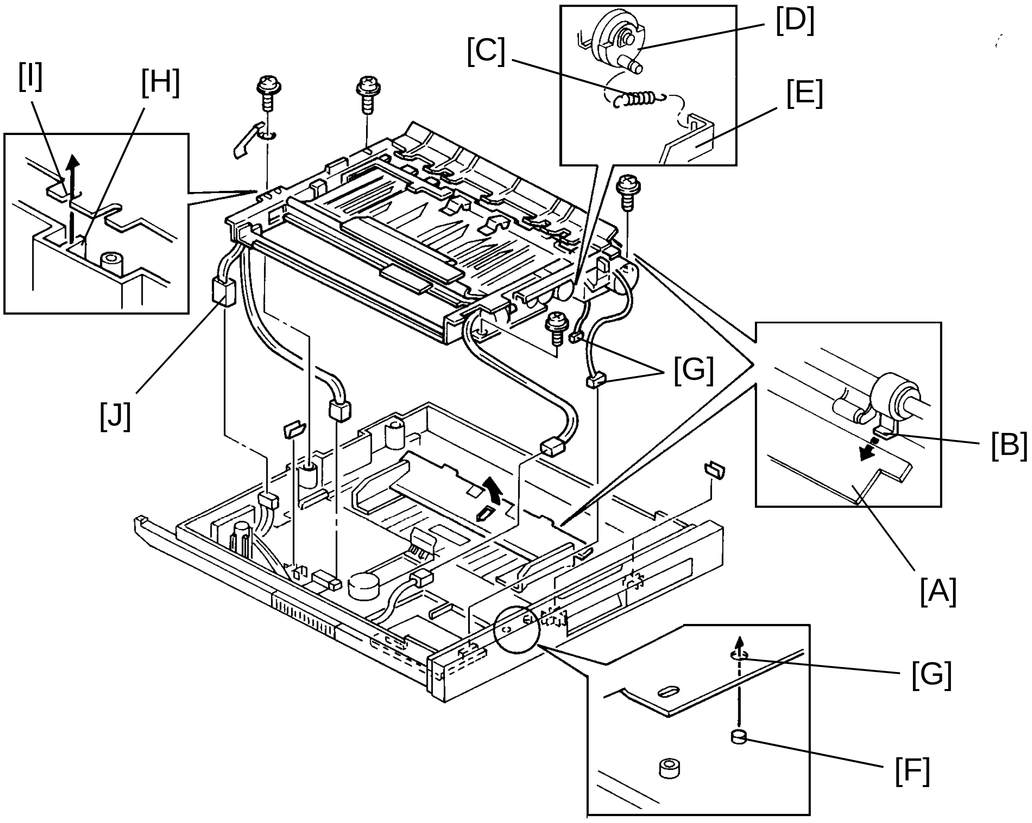


1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the duplex tray [A] and remove the tray stopper brackets [B, C] from both side rails as shown (1 screw each), then remove the duplex tray from the copier.
3. Remove the side inner cover [D] (3 screws).
4. Remove the front inner cover [E] (2 screws).



5. Unhook the lift spring [A] from the duplex lift lever [B] and the cam clutch [C].
6. Remove 3 clamps [D] with a pair of pliers.
7. Disconnect CN602, and CN603 [E] from the duplex control board.
8. Disconnect the sensor connector [F] from the jogger home position sensor.
9. Disconnect the connectors [G, H] from the duplex turn gate solenoid and from the duplex entrance sensor.
10. Remove the duplex unit [I] (4 screws) from the tray.

    NOTE: Hold both sides of the duplex unit frame when lifting the duplex unit out of the tray.



-Installation-

1. When placing the duplex unit back into the tray, hold up the bottom plate [A] so that the flipmylar brackets [B] fit under it as shown.

2. Hook the lift spring [C] to the cam clutch [D] and the duplex lift lever [E] as shown.

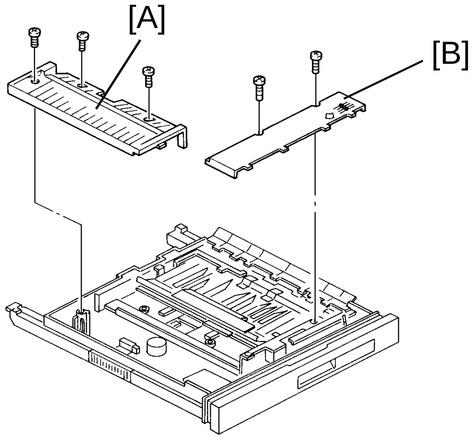
   NOTE: When installing the duplex unit, make sure of the following:

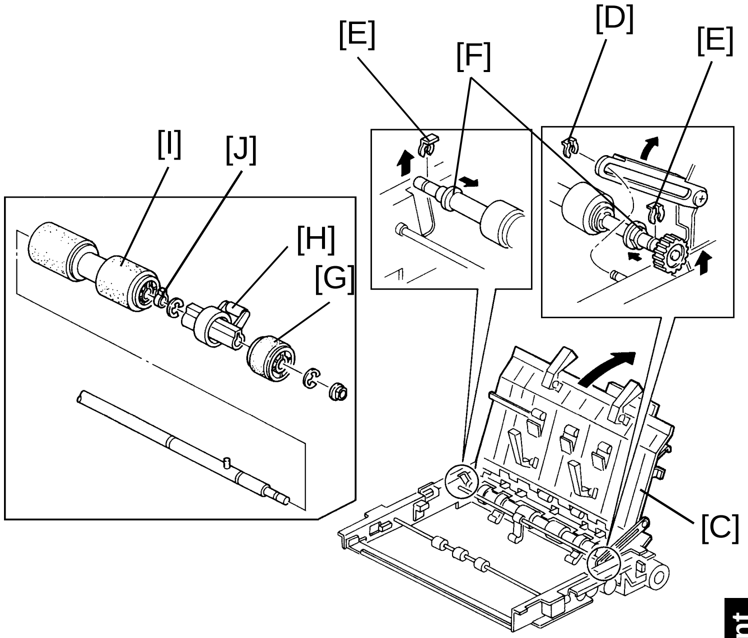
   a) The positioning pin [F] fits through hole [G] in the side plate.

   b) The positioning rib [H] fits through the cutout [I] in the side plate.

   c) The sensor harness [J] is not caught under the unit frame.

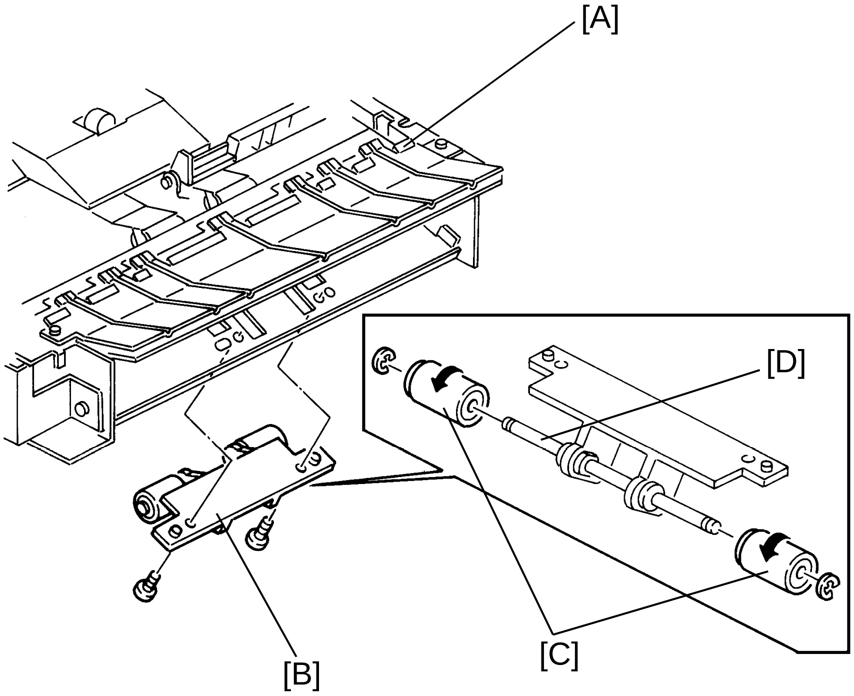
8.2 DUPLEX FEED ROLLER REPLACEMENT





1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the duplex tray.
3. Remove the side inner cover [A] and front inner cover [B] (5 screws).
4. Raise the upper and lower paper guide plates [C] all the way up and remove the snap ring [D] for the guide plate support arm.
5. Remove the snap ring [E] from both ends of the paper feed roller shaft.
6. Move the front and rear bushings [F] of the paper feed roller shaft inward and remove the paper feed roller assembly.
7. Remove the bushing, the rear stack roller [G] (1 E-ring) and rear paper flattener [H] from the shaft.
8. Remove the duplex feed roller [I] from the shaft (1 E-ring).
9. Remove the feed roller bushing [J] from the roller and place it in the new roller.
10. Reassemble the duplex unit.

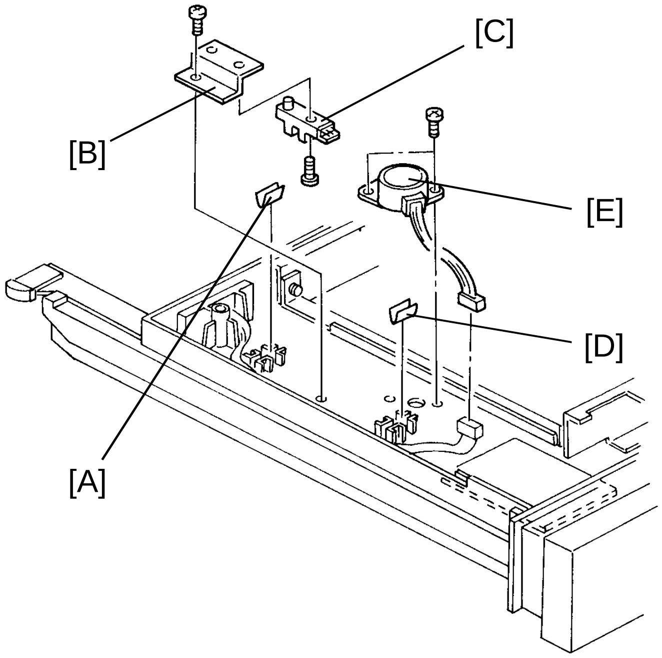
8.3 DUPLEX FRICTION ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the duplex unit [A] from the tray (see Duplex Unit Removal).
2. Remove the friction roller assembly [B] (2 screws) from the duplex unit.
3. Remove the friction rollers [C] (1 E-ring each) from the shaft [D].
4. Install new friction rollers on the shaft and reassemble the duplex unit.

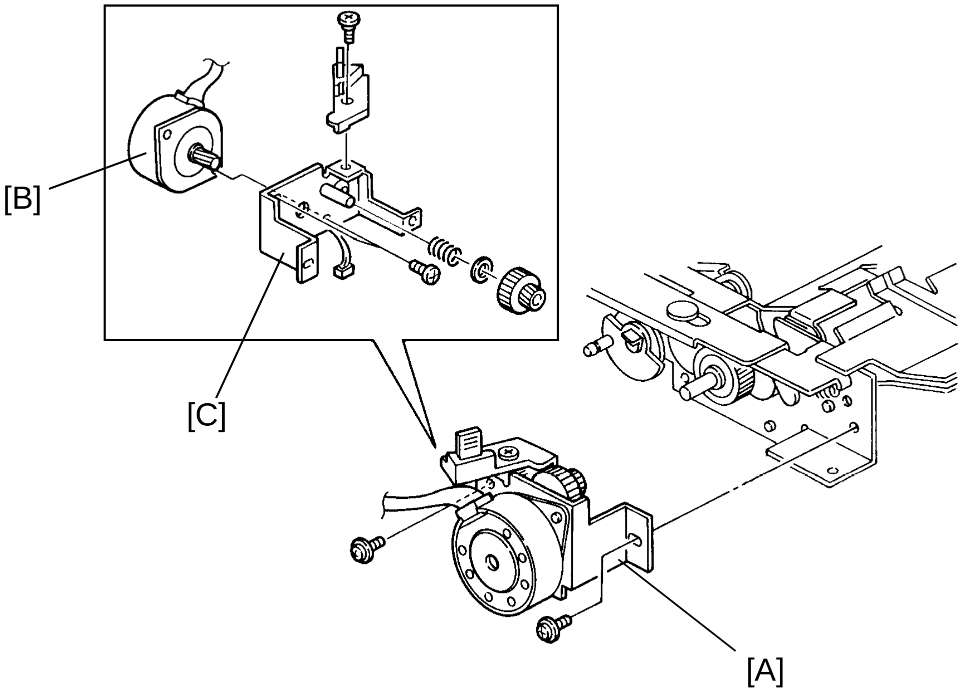
   NOTE: This friction roller has a one-way clutch. Be sure to install the roller so that it rotates in the direction of the arrow (see illustration).

8.4 JOGGER HOME POSITION SENSOR AND JOGGER MOTOR REPLACEMENT



1. Pull out the duplex tray and remove the side and front inner covers.
2. Remove the clamp [A] and sensor bracket [B] (1 screw).
3. Remove the jogger home position sensor [C] from the bracket and replace it (1 screw and 1 connector).
4. Remove the clamp [D] and replace the jogger motor [E] (2 screws and 1 connector).

8.5 DUPLEX MOTOR REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the duplex unit from the tray (see duplex unit removal).
2. Remove the duplex motor assembly [A] (2 screws).
3. Separate the duplex motor [B] from the bracket [C] and replace it (2 screws).

   NOTE: When installing a new duplex motor, make sure that the duplex motor thermistor is secured on the motor bracket by the screw for the motor.

9. COPY QUALITY ADJUSTMENT

9.1 LIGHT INTENSITY ADJUSTMENT (SP48)

When:	After performing SP66 (Drum initialize) and before exiting the SP mode when replacing the drum.
Purpose:	To properly adjust light intensity for the initial VL pattern detection (storing Vref = initial Vlp/Vlg)
Adjustment standard:	Level 2 of the gray scale on the OS-A3 test chart should be just visible on the copy when the 4th manual image density level is selected.
How:	SP48 changes the exposure lamp voltage from ac drive circuit on the dc power supply board.

NOTE: Light intensity adjustment should be done only after performing SP66 when replacing the drum. If light intensity is adjusted after the initial VL pattern detection, the light intensity will be changed to the initial setting by subsequent VL corrections. As an exception for this ±0.5 V change of SP48 data is effective to the light intensity even after the initial VL pattern detection. Because the VL correction changes the lamp voltage ±1 V step.

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Clean the following parts:

Item No.	Section	Method
(1)	Optics (mirrors, lens, reflectors, and exposure glass)	Damp cotton, and blower brush
(2)	Corona wires (charge, transfer, and separation) and corona unit casing	Dry cloth or water
(3)	QL filter, PTL filter, toner shield glass and filter, and erase lamp unit	Dry cloth and blower brush

3. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the Call Service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.
4. Enter "48" using the number keys and press the "#" key.
5. Press the "#" key again and set the OS-A3 chart on the exposure glass.

6. Make a full size copy at the manual image density level 4 (center) after the copier has warmed up (when the beeper sounds 3 times).

   NOTE: Make sure that the data in SP37 (black bias) is set to "0" (standard value).

7. Confirm that level 2 of the gray scale is just visible on the copy.

8. If the image density is not correct, go through the following steps.
   (1) Press the "#" key twice.
   (2) Change the exposure lamp voltage data displayed in the three digit indicator. Use the number keys and follow these rules:
   If image density is too dark: increase the setting
   If image density is too light: decrease the setting

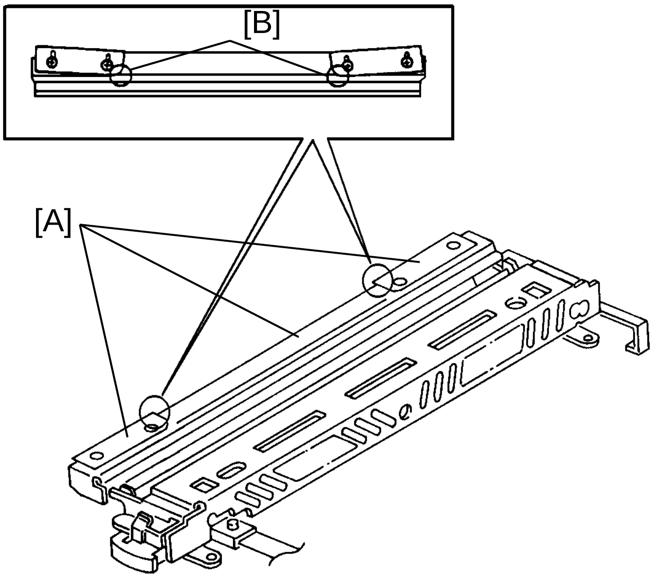
   NOTE: The data can be set between 50 and 75 in 0.5 steps. The default setting is "63".

   (3) Press the "#" key twice and then make a copy at the manual image density level 4.
   (4) Confirm if the image density is correct or not. If not, repeat the above steps from (1) to (3).

9. Turn the main switch off and on.

9.2 UNEVEN EXPOSURE ADJUSTMENT

When:	If the exposure is uneven.
Purpose:	To maintain even exposure.
Adjustment standard:	The side-to-side variation of the gray scales on the test chart should be less than one level.
How:	Change the position of the exposure adjusting plates to make the light intensity from the exposure lamp even across its length.



NOTE: Do not adjust the charge corona wire height to correct uneven image density on the copy. Otherwise, the total charge corona current will change, causing incorrect toner density control.

1. Clean the optics components and the charge corona wire.
2. Place a test chart on the exposure glass and make an A3/11" x 17" copy.
3. If the side-to-side variations of the gray scales is not within the adjustment standard, turn off the main switch and remove the exposure glass (see Exposure Glass Removal).
4. Position the adjusting plates [A] so that the copy image meets the adjustment standard. The leading edges [B] of the three adjusting plates must be aligned to avoid white streaks.

9.3 IMAGE AREA BIAS VOLTAGE ADJUSTMENT

9.3.1 Black Bias Adjustment (SP37)

When:	If the image density at the manual density level 4 cannot be adjusted by exposure lamp voltage (SP48) after performing SP66 (drum initialize) when replacing the drumis replaced.
Purpose:	To adjust the copy image density.
How:	SP37 changes the development bias voltage for black image and V_L pattern.

NOTE: Normally the black bias data should be set to "0" (standard). Black bias adjustment should be done only when adjusting light intensity (SP48) after performing the drum initialization (SP66), if necessary.
If black bias is adjusted after the initial V_L detection, the light intensity will be corrected to make the V_L pattern similar in density to the initial setting, by subsequent V_L corrections. This means that the effect of changing black bias is gradually eliminated.

SP37: Black Bias

Data	Density	Development Bias Correction Voltage
0	Normal	±0 V
1	Darkest	+40V
2	Darker	+20V
3	Lighter	– 20V
4	Lightest	– 40V

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the Call Service indicator and the Copy Counter number "0" are blinking.
3. Enter "37" using the number keys and press the "#" key.
4. Change the setting displayed in the three digit indicator by the number keys. Determine the proper setting from the above table. Press the "#" key.

9.3.2 Color Bias Adjustment (SP79)

When:	If color image density is improper compared with black image density.
Purpose:	To improve color image density.
How:	SP79 changes the development bias voltage for color images.

SP79: Color Bias

Data	Density	Development Bias Correction Voltage
0	Normal	±0 V
1	Darkest	+40V
2	Darker	+20V
3	Lighter	– 20V
4	Lightest	– 40V

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the Call Service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.
3. Enter "79" using the number keys and press the "#" key.
4. Change the setting displayed in the three digit indicator by the number keys. Determine the new setting from the above table. Press the "#" key.
5. Turn the main switch off and on.

9.3.3 Highlight Bias (Manual ID Level 7) Adjustment (SP46)

When:	If a customer requests a lighter or darker copy image density at manual image density level 7.
Purpose:	To meet customer’s request about the image density at manual ID level 7.
How:	SP47 changes the development bias voltage for images at manual ID level 7.

SP46: Highlight Bias

Data	Density	Development Bias Correction Voltage
0	Normal	–240V
1	Darker	–200V
2	Lighter	–280V
3	Lightest	–320V

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the Call Service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.
3. Enter "46" using the number keys and press the "#" key.
4. Change the setting displayed in the three digit indicator by the number keys. Determine the new setting from the above table. Press the "#" key.
5. Turn the main switch off and on.

9.4 TONER DENSITY ADJUSTMENT

9.4.1 Black Toner Density Adjustment (SP33)

When:	If a customer wants to change the overall image density of black copies.
Purpose:	To change toner concentration inside the black development unit.
How:	SP33 changes the development bias for the black ID sensor pattern.

SP33: Black Pattern Bias

Data	Black Toner Density	Development Bias Voltage for ID sensor Pattern	
		0~500	501~
0	Normal	–220V	–200V
1	Lighter	–180V	–160V
2	Darker	–240V	–220V
3	Darkest	–260V	–240V

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the Call Service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.
3. Enter "33" using the number keys and press the "#" key.
4. Change the setting displayed in the three digit indicator by the number keys. Determine the new setting from the above table. Press the "#" key.
5. Turn the main switch off and on.

9.4.2 Color Toner Density Adjustment (SP75)

When:	If a customer wants to change the overall image density of color copies.
Purpose:	To change toner concentration inside the color development unit.
How:	SP75 changes the development bias for the color ID sensor pattern.

SP75: Red/Blue/Green Pattern Bias

Data	Black Toner Density	Development Bias Voltage for ID sensor Pattern			
		0~500		501~	
		Red/Blue	Green	Red/Blue	Green
0	Normal	–200V	–240V	–180V	–220V
1	Lighter	–160V	–200V	–140V	–180V
2	Darker	–220V	–260V	–200V	–240V
3	Darkest	–240V	–280V	–220V	–260V

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the Call Service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.
3. Enter "75" using the number keys and press the "#" key.
4. Change the setting displayed in the three digit indicator by the number keys. Determine the new setting from the above table. Press the "#" key.
5. Turn the main switch off and on.

9.5 DETECT / FIXED TONER SUPPLY MODE SELECTION (SP30)

When:	If the type of original is almost the same with high image density and proportion, and adjusting the toner supply ratio (SP31) and toner density check interval (SP35) do not give constant image density without toner scattering problem.
Purpose:	To leave the detect mode and to supply a constant amount of toner in every copy cycle.
How:	SP30 turns on the toner supply clutch every black copy cycle.

NOTE: On this copier the ID sensor is used in the fixed supply mode as well as in the detect mode. Therefore, the fixed supply mode cannot be used when the ID sensor is in an abnormal condition.
The fixed toner supply mode is applied only to the black development unit, not to the color one.

SP30: **Black Toner Supply Mode**
0: Detect mode
1: Fixed mode

9.6 TONER SUPPLY RATIO SELECTION (SP31/SP32/SP81)

When:	If the standard setting for toner supply amount is not appropriate for the type of original in use.
Purpose:	To adjust the toner supply amount.
How:	Detect mode: SP31 for black toner, SP81 for color toner Fixed mode: SP32 for black toner All three service programs change the toner supply clutch ON period.

NOTE: Each color can have an independent toner supply ratio. The selected toner supply ratio corresponds to the color development unit installed in the copier.

SP31: Black Toner Supply Ratio (Detect Mode)

Data	0	1	2	3
Supply Ratio	15%	7.5%	30%	60%
Toner Supply Ratio Parameter	2	1	4	8

SP81: Red/Blue/Green Toner Supply Ratio (Detect Mode)

Data	0	1	2	3
Supply Ratio	14%	7%	21%	28%
Toner Supply Ratio Parameter	2	1	3	4

SP32: Black Toner Supply Ratio (Fixed Mode)

Data	0	1	2	3
Supply Ratio	7%	3.5%	10.5%	14.0%
Toner Supply Ratio Parameter	2	1	3	4

9.7 TONER DENSITY CHECK INTERVAL SELECTION (SP35/SP74)

When: If a customer complains of low image density of copies during a toner near end condition.

Purpose: To check toner density more often.

How: SP35 for black toner and SP74 for color toner change the interval of ID sensor pattern detection.

NOTE: Normally, "0" (every 5 copies) should be selected for color toner (SP74).

SP30:	**Black ID Detection**	**SP74:**	**Color ID Detection**
	0: Every 10 copies		0: Every 5 copies
	1: Every 5 copies		1: Every 10 copies

9.8 ID SENSOR AND V SENSOR AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT (SP54)

When:

1. After cleaning, removing, or replacing the ID sensor board or V sensor board.
2. At replacement of the OPC drum or RAM board on the main control board.
3. If a toner supply control problem occurs.
4. If memory all clear (SP99) has been performed.

Purpose: To make sure that ID sensor and V sensor functions correctly.

Adjustment standard:
ID sensor: Vsg = 4.0 ±0.2 V
V sensor: Vlg = 4.0 ±0.2 V

How: SP54 adjusts PWM value in memory for ID sensor and V sensor LED’s to get correct sensor output.

NOTE: Beeper sounds 2 times when the adjustment (about 4 seconds) are completed.
The adjusted PWM value and sensor output can be monitored by SP165 (ID-sensor PWM/Output Check) and SP166 (V-sensor PWM/Output Check). Refer to the SP mode table for details.

9.9 ADS SENSOR AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT (SP56)

When:

1. If ADS output voltage is not within the adjustment standard after cleaning the optics.
2. At replacement of the following parts: ADS board, Exposure lamp, RAM board on the main control board, and dc power supply board
3. If memory all clear (SP99) has been performed.

Purpose: To make sure that the ADS sensor functions correctly.

Adjustment standard: ADS Voltage = 1.5 ±0.1 V

How: SP56 adjusts ADS gain data in memory to get the correct sensor output.

NOTE: Close the platen cover to prevent external light from reaching the ADS sensor when performing this adjustment.
The beeper sounds 2 times when the adjustment (about 4 seconds) are completed.
The adjusted ADS gain data and the sensor output can be monitored by SP167 (ADS gain/Output Check). Refer to the SP mode table for details.

9.10 ADS DENSITY SELECTION (SP34)

When: If image density of copies is too light or dirty background appears on copies in ADS mode.

Purpose: To maintain good copy quality in ADS mode.

How: SP34 increases negative grid bias voltage for darker setting and increases negative development bias voltage for lighter setting.

SP34: **ADS Density**
0: Normal
1: Darker
2: Lighter

9.11 VERTICAL MAGNIFICATION ADJUSTMENT (SP43)

When:	If vertical magnification is not within the adjustment standard.
Purpose:	To maintain proper vertical magnification.
Adjustment standard:	Less than ±1.0% difference between original and copy.
How:	SP43 changes the scanner speed compensation.

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the Call Service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.
3. Enter "43" using the number keys and press the "#" key.
4. Press the "#" key again and place a 150 mm scale on the exposure glass perpendicular to the left scale.
5. Make a full size copy after the copier has warmed up.
6. Confirm that vertical magnification is within the adjustment standard.
7. If vertical magnification is not correct, go through the following steps.
   (1) Press the "#" key twice.
   (2) Change the vertical magnification setting displayed in the three digit indicator. Use the number keys and follow these rules:

If the copy image is too short:	increase the setting
If the copy image is too long:	decrease the setting

   NOTE: SP43 can be set between 0 and 15. Vertical magnification changes 0.2% per step.

   (3) Press the "#" key twice and then make a copy.
   (4) Confirm if vertical magnification is correct or not. If not, repeat the above steps from (1) to (3).
8. Turn the main switch off and on.

9.12 HORIZONTAL MAGNIFICATION ADJUSTMENT (SP44)

When:	If horizontal magnification is not within the adjustment standard.
Purpose:	To maintain proper horizontal magnification.
Adjustment standard:	Less than ±0.5% difference in full size mode between original and copy.
How:	SP44 changes the lens home position.

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the Call Service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.
3. Enter "44" using the number keys and press the "#" key.
4. Press the "#" key again and place a 150 mm scale parallel to the left scale on the exposure glass.
5. Make a full size copy after the copier has warmed up.
6. Confirm that horizontal magnification is within the adjustment standard.
7. If horizontal magnification is not correct, go through the following steps:
   (1) Press the "#" key twice.
   (2) Change the horizontal magnification setting displayed in the three digit indicator. Use the number keys and follow these rules:
   If the copy image is too short: increase the setting
   If the copy image is too long: decrease the setting

   NOTE: SP44 can be set between 0 and 31. Horizontal magnification changes 0.2% per step.

   (3) Press the "#" key twice and then make a copy.
   (4) Confirm if horizontal magnification is correct or not. If not, repeat the above steps from (1) to (3).
8. Turn the main switch off and on.

9.13 FOCUS ADJUSTMENT IN FULL SIZE (SP47)

When: If the copy image in full size mode is out of focus. After adjusting horizontal magnification.

Purpose: To maintain correct focus in full size mode.

How: SP47 changes the 3rd scanner home position.

NOTE: Adjust focus by checking pictures on copies.
Check the horizontal magnification after SP47, and adjust it if necessary.

SP47: **Focus Adjustment**
0 - 80 (40 = default), 0.6 mm per step

9.14 FOCUS ADJUSTMENT IN ENLARGE/REDUCTION (SP50)

When: If the copy image is out of focus in enlarge/reduction mode after adjusting SP43 (vertical magnification), SP44 (horizontal magnification), and SP47 (focus adjustment in full size).

Purpose: To maintain correct focus in enlarge/reduction mode.

How: SP50 changes the lens position 0.1% per step in enlarge/reduction mode.

NOTE: Normally the factory-set value is best for this adjustment.

SP50: **Lens Error Correction**
0 - 15 (8 = default, – 0.8% to + 0.7%)

9.15 VERTICAL MAGNIFICATION ADJUSTMENT IN DUPLEX/ OVERLAY MODE (SP45)

When:	If vertical magnification is different between the first and second images in duplex/overlay mode.
Purpose:	To equal vertical magnification between the first and second images in duplex/overlay mode.
How:	SP45 increases vertical magnification for the first image to equal that for the second image.

NOTE: Normally in duplex/overlay mode, the first image is a little shorter than the second image in the paper travel direction, because paper length becomes a little shorter after fusing the first image. The second image is transferred on the copy paper before paper returns to normal length as it does under normal condition.
This adjustment is not to make vertical magnification accurate, but to make the first and the second images fit, especially in overlay mode.
Since copies cannot be made in this SP mode, turn the main switch off and on, and make a copy to check the results of the adjustment.

SP45: Duplex Magnification

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
+0.4%	No Correction	+0.2%	+0.6%	+0.8%	+1.0%	+1.2%	+1.4%	+1.6%	+1.8%	+2.0%

9.16 LEAD EDGE REGISTRATION ADJUSTMENT (SP42)

When:	If lead edge registration is not within the adjustment standard.
Purpose:	To maintain a proper lead edge registration.
Adjustment standard:	0 ±2 mm (0 ±0.08")
How:	SP42 changes the registration roller start timing.

SP42: Registration
0 - 15 (8 = default, – 4.0 mm to +3.5 mm), 0.5 mm per step

9.17 LEAD EDGE ERASE MARGIN ADJUSTMENT (SP41)

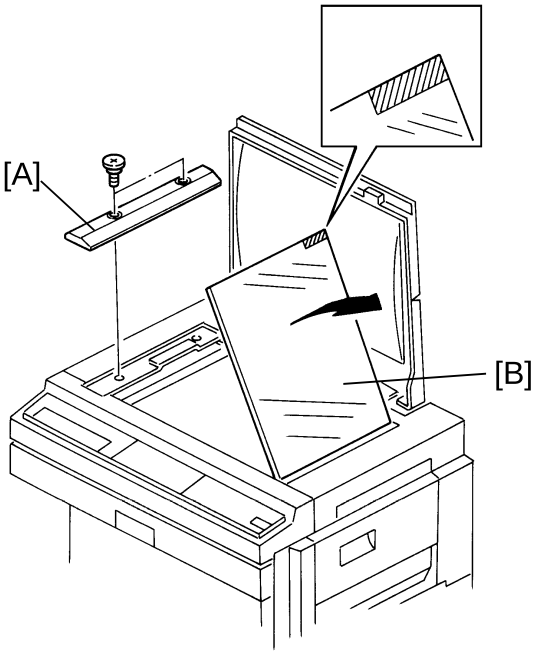
When:	If lead edge erase margin is not within the adjustment standard.
Purpose:	To maintain a proper lead edge erase margin.
Adjustment Standard:	2.5 ±1.5 mm (0.1 ±0.06")
How:	SP41 changes the erase lamp off timing.

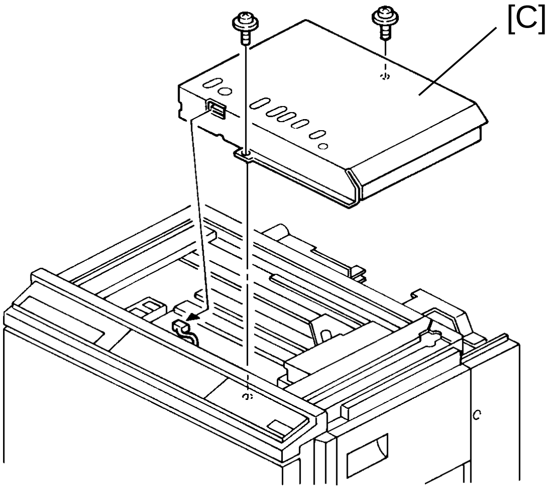
SP41: **Lead Edge Erase**
0 - 15 (8 = default, – 4.0 mm to +3.5 mm), 0.5 mm per step

9.18 SIDE-TO-SIDE REGISTRATION ADJUSTMENT

9.18.1 Lens Position Adjustment

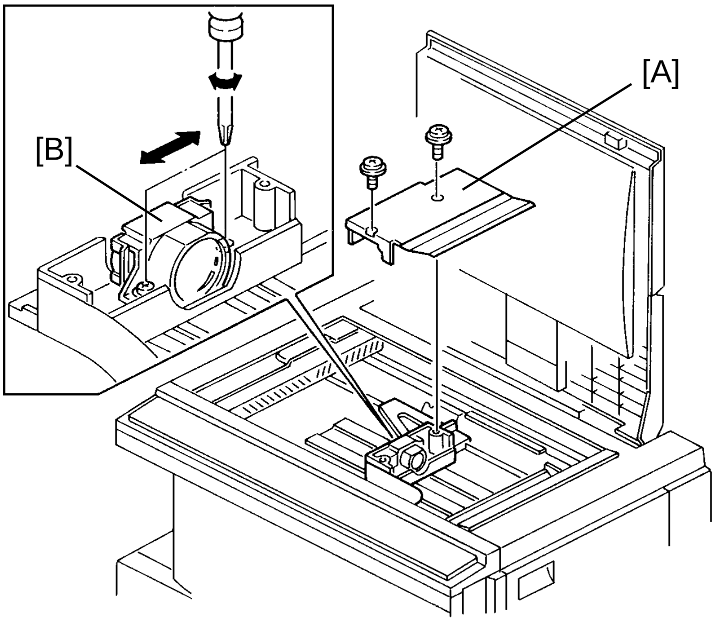
When:	If side-to-side registration is not within the adjustment standard, and image shift direction (to the front or to the rear) is the same from every paper feeding stations.
Purpose:	To maintain proper side to side registration from every feeding stations.
Adjustment standard:	0 ±2 mm (0 ±0.08")
How:	Change the lens position perpendicular to the paper travel direction. This will shift the image on the drum perpendicular to the paper travel direction.





1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the left scale [A] (2 stepped screws) and the exposure glass [B].
3. Remove the lens cover [C] (2 screws and 1 connector)

   NOTE: Be careful not to damage the exposure lamp harness.



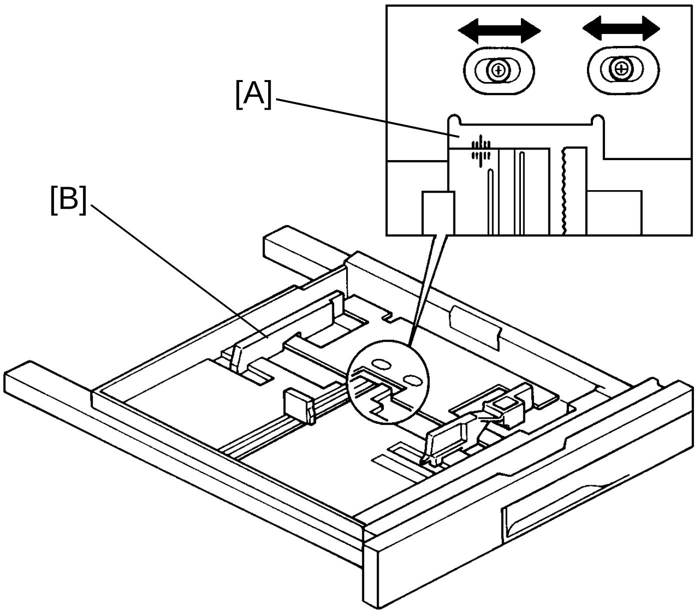
4. Remove the small lens cover [A] (2 screws).
5. Mark the original position of the lens assembly on the lens bracket.
6. Loosen the 2 screws, shift the lens assembly [B] according to the following rule, and tighten the screws.
   If the image is shifted to the rear: shift the lens assembly to the front.
   If the image is shifted to the front: shift the lens assembly to the rear.
7. Place the exposure glass and turn on the main switch.
8. Make a copy and check the results of the adjustment.
9. If the adjustment is still not correct shift the lens position again.

CAUTION: Be sure that the main switch is off when adjusting.

10. Reassemble the copier.

9.18.2 Tray Side Fence Adjustment

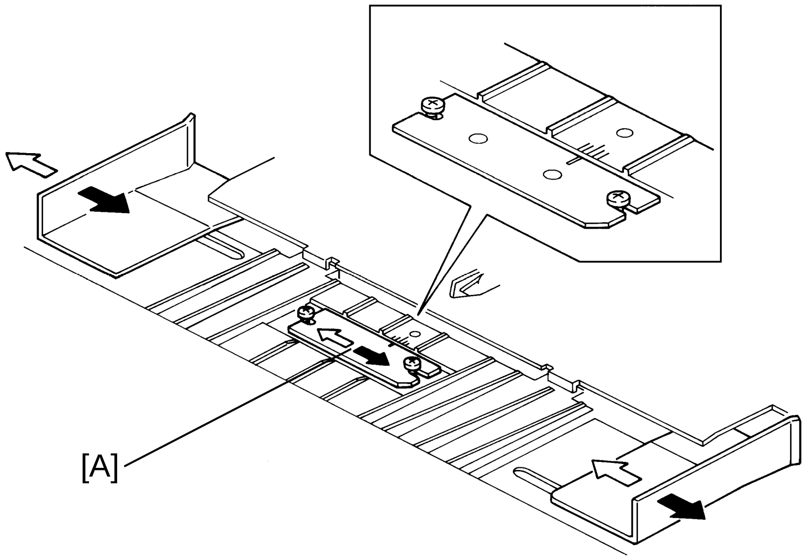
When:	If side-to-side registration on copies fed from a paper tray is not within the adjustment standard.
Purpose:	To maintain proper side to side registration from a paper tray.
Adjustment standard:	0 ±2 mm (0 ±0.08")
How:	Change the side fence position perpendicular to the paper travel direction. This will shift the paper position in a paper tray perpendicular to the paper travel direction.



1. Pull the paper tray out.
2. Move the side fences to B4/8 1/2" x 11" paper size position to access the fixing screws through the holes of the bottom plate.
3. Loosen the 2 screws fixing the side fence positioning plate [A].
4. Move the rear side fence [B] to the desired position and tighten the screws.

9.18.3 Duplex Tray Side Fence Adjustment

When:	If side-to-side registration of the second image in multiple 2-sided copying mode is not within the adjustment standard.
Purpose:	To maintain proper side to side registration of the second image in 2-sided copying mode.
Adjustment standard:	0 ±2 mm (0 ± 0.08")
How:	Change the duplex side fence position perpendicular to the paper travel direction. This will shift the paper position in a duplex tray perpendicular to the paper travel direction.

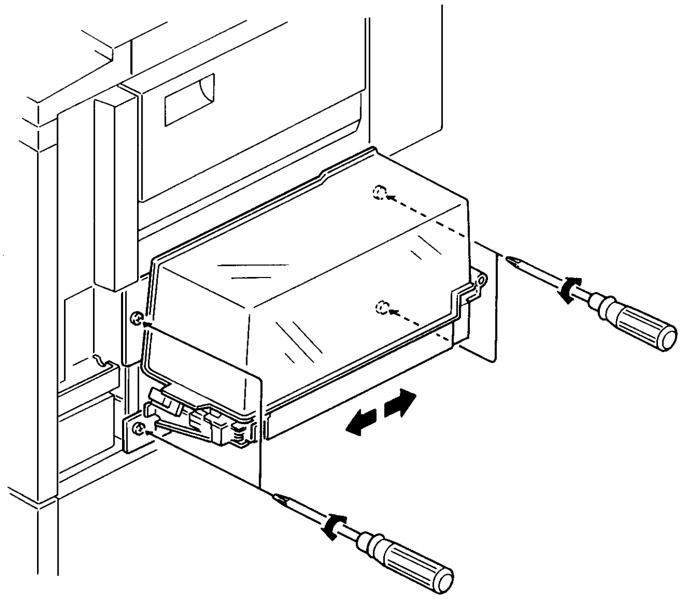


NOTE: This adjustment is not effective for copies in single 2-sided copying mode and overlay mode.

1. Pull the duplex tray out, and lift up the upper and lower paper guide plates.
2. Loosen the 2 screws fixing the side fence positioning plate [A].
3. Move the side fence positioning plate to the desired position and tighten the screws.

9.18.4 LCT Side to Side Registration Adjustment

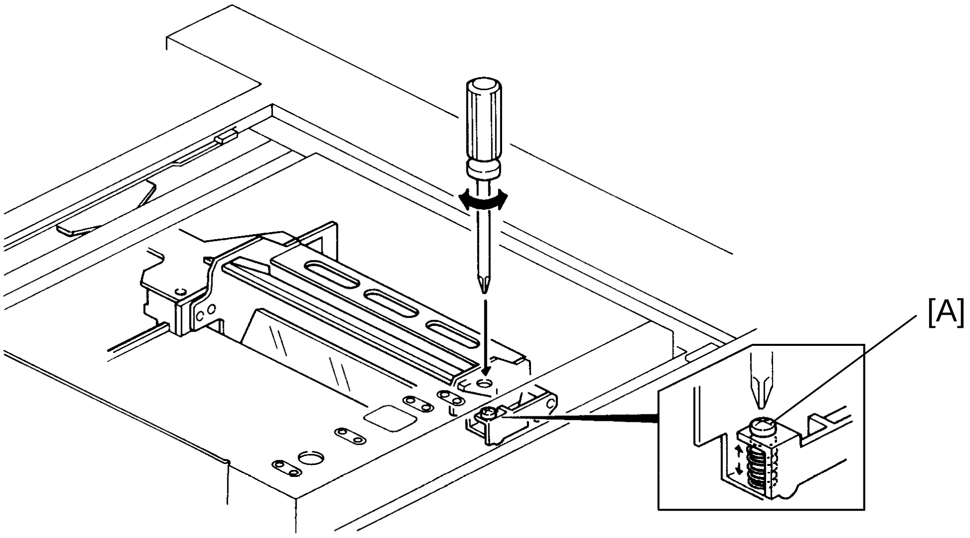
When:	If side-to-side registration on copies fed from the large capacity tray is not within the adjustment standard
Purpose:	To maintain proper side to side registration from the large capacity tray.
Adjustment standard:	0 ±2 mm (0 ±0.08")
How:	Change the LCT unit fixing position perpendicular to the paper travel direction. This will shift the paper position perpendicular to the paper travel direction.



1. Remove the following covers:
   LCT front cover, LCT rear cover, right front lower cover, and right rear lower cover
2. Loosen the 4 screws fixing the LCT unit to the copier frame.
3. Move the whole LCT unit to the desired position and tighten the screws.
4. Reinstall the covers.

9.19 3RD SCANNER HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

When:	If skewed images appear after adjusting the 1st and 2nd scanner positions.
Purpose:	To maintain proper copy image.
How:	Turn the 3rd scanner height adjustment screw. This changes the 3rd scanner's height.



CAUTION: Never perform this adjustment unless you have positively verified that the source of the skewing of image is optical and not in the paper path.

1. Turn off the main switch and remove the exposure glass.
2. Adjust the 3rd scanner's height by turning the adjusting screw [A].

9.20 OVERLAP/WHITE MARGIN SELECTION IN OVERLAY MODE (SP24)

When:	If a customer wants a white frame on the border line when using "Black-in area" and "Color-in area" mode. (This is applied only when the editor is installed.)
Purpose:	To satisfy the customer’s requirement.
How:	SP24 change the ON number of LED blocks of the edit erase lamp unit and the ON timing for the first and second image in "Black-in area" and "Color-in area" mode.

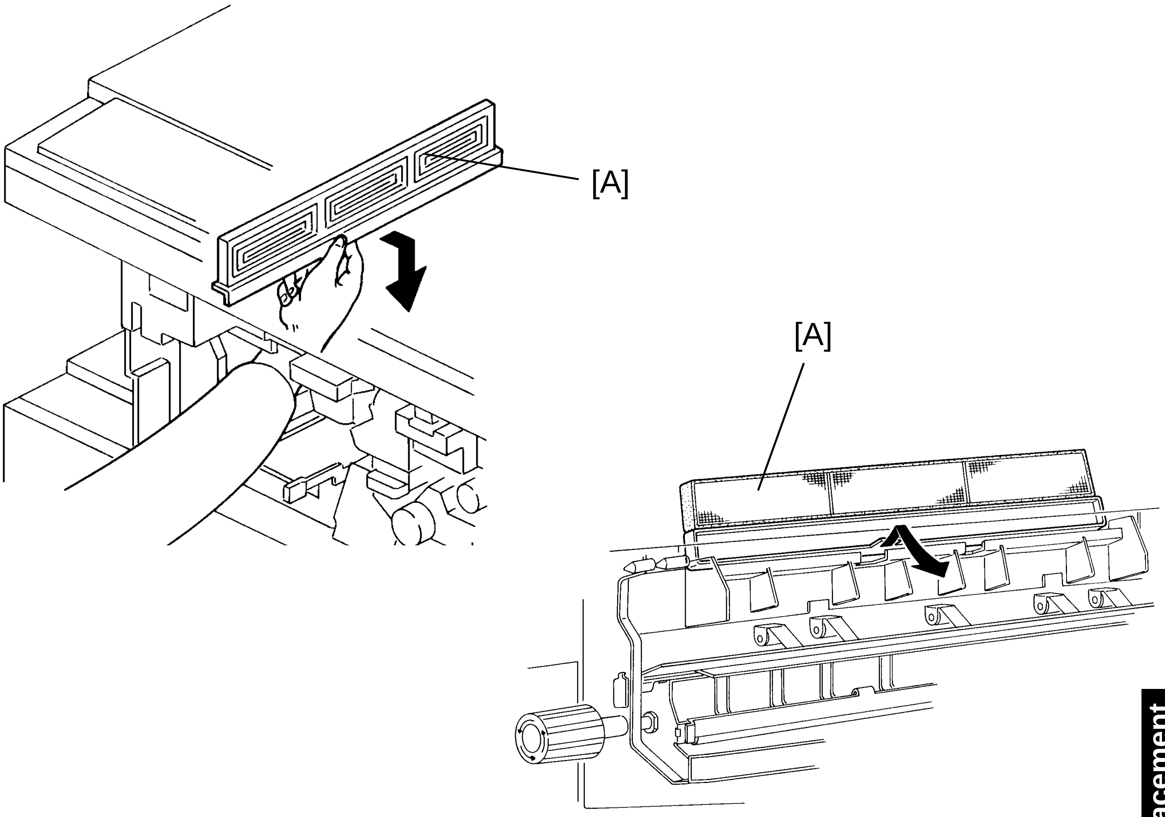
NOTE: The normal setting is no white frame on the border line. Color and black images may overlap by 5 mm at most because of side to side image shift between the first and second images.

SP24: **Overlay Border Erase**
0: NO (No border erase)
1: YES (Border erase)

10. OTHERS

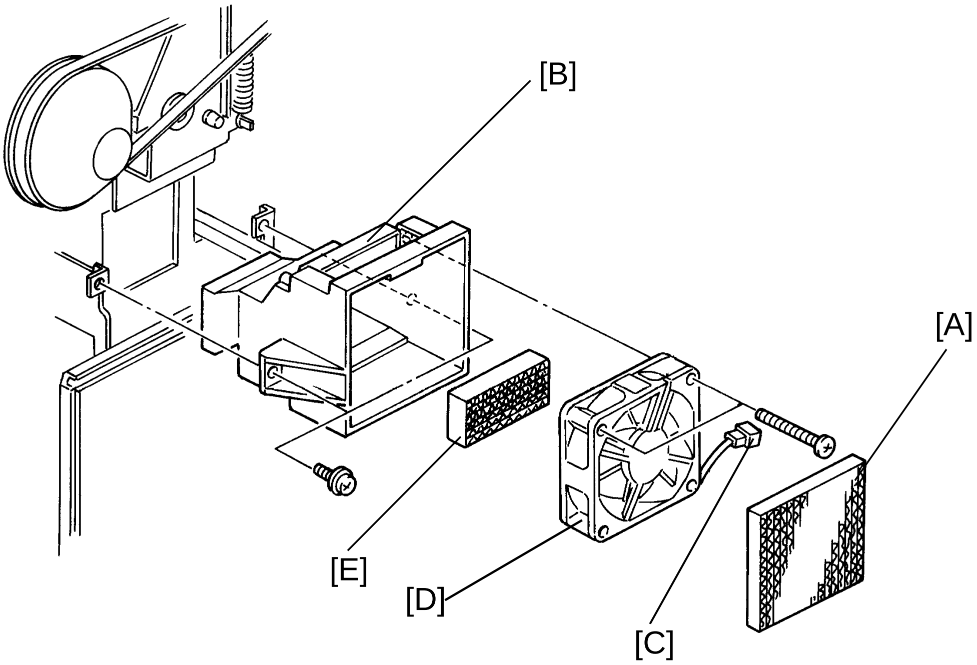
10.1 OZONE FILTER REPLACEMENT

10.1.1 Fusing Exhaust Fan Filter



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Open the front door and remove the fusing unit.
3. While holding up the ozone filter [A] slightly slide it out as shown.
4. Replace the ozone filter.
   NOTE: The PM interval of this ceramic ozone filter is 400K copies.

10.1.2 Vacuum Fan Filters

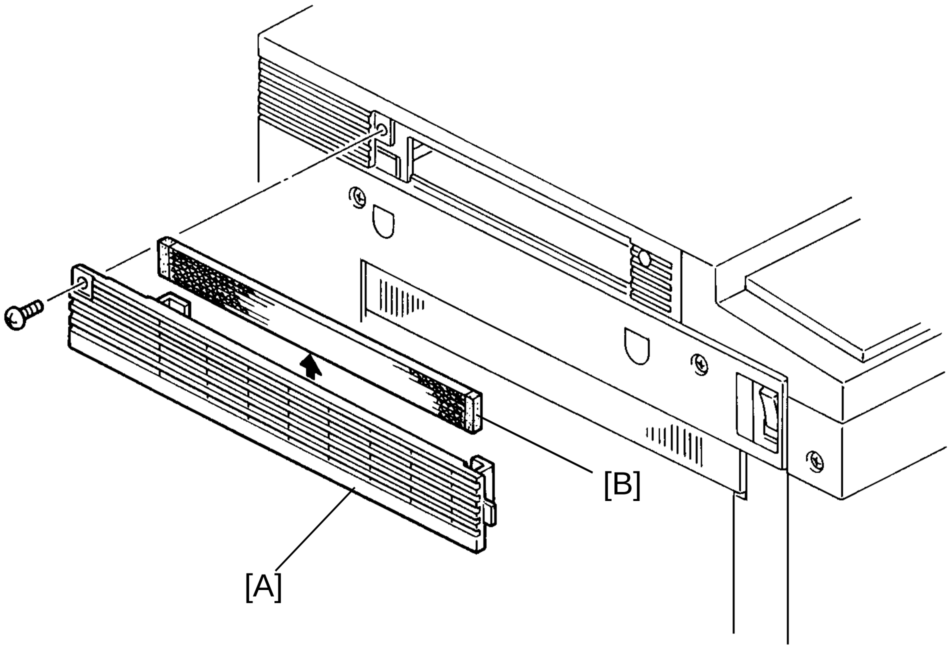


1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Remove the ozone filter [A]

   NOTE: The PM interval of this paper ozone filter is 80K copies.
4. Swing out the dc power supply board.
5. Unhook the high voltage cables from the vacuum fan bracket [B] and disconnect the vacuum fan harness [C] (1 connector).
6. Remove the vacuum fan bracket (2 screws).
7. Remove the vacuum fan [D] (2 screws).
8. Replace the ozone filter [E].

   NOTE: The PM interval of this ceramic ozone filter is 400K copies.
9. Reinstall the vacuum fan and install the new ozone filter.

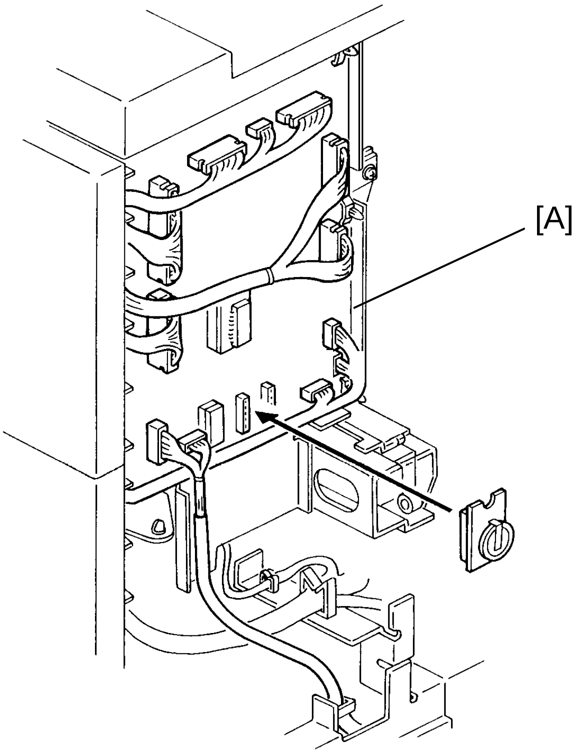
10.1.3 Optics Cooling Fan Filter



1. Remove the optics left cover [A] (1 screw).
2. Replace the ozone filter [B].

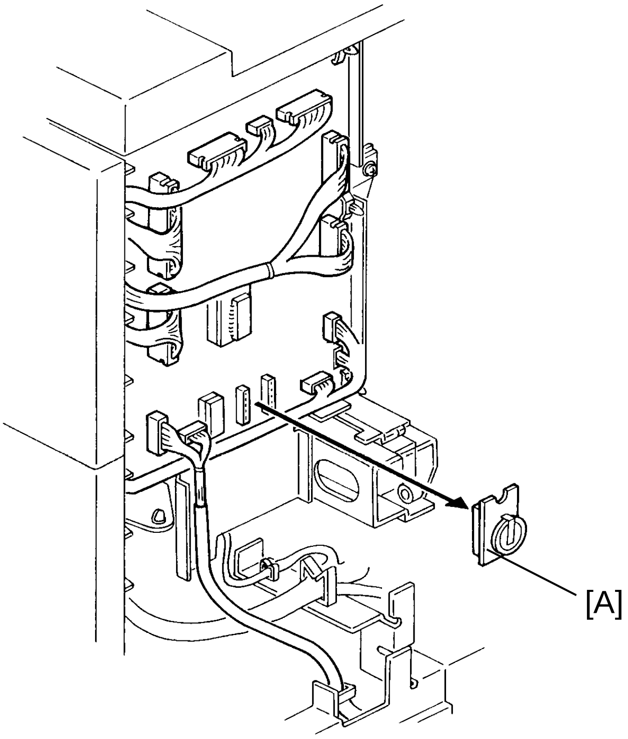
   NOTE: The PM interval of this paper ozone filter is 80 k copies.

10.2 MAIN CONTROL BOARD REPLACEMENT



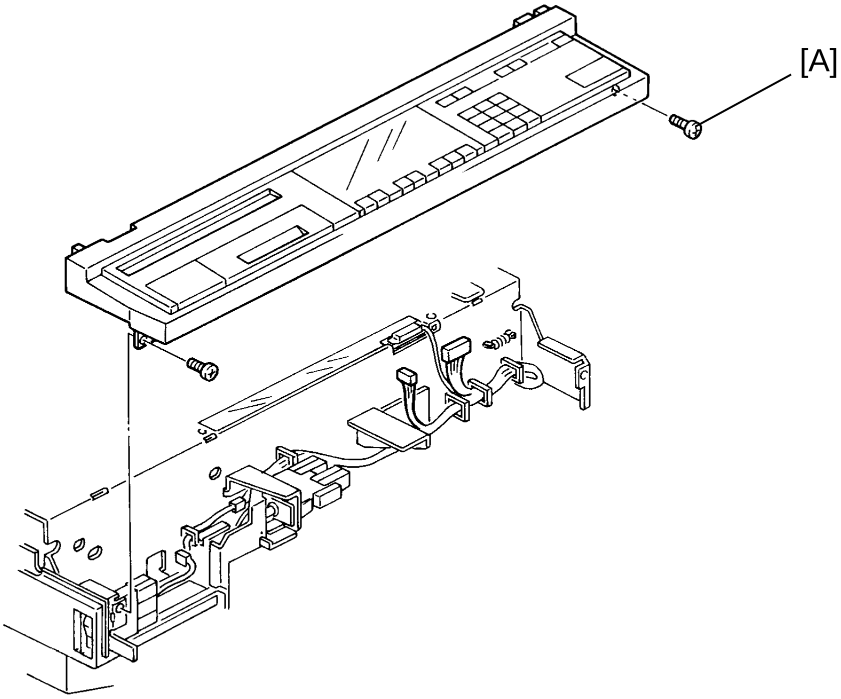
1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power cord.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Disconnect the harnesses (11 connectors) from the main control board [A].
4. Replace the main control board (6 locking supports).
5. Remove the RAM board from the old main control board and install it on the new board.

10.3 RAM BOARD REPLACEMENT



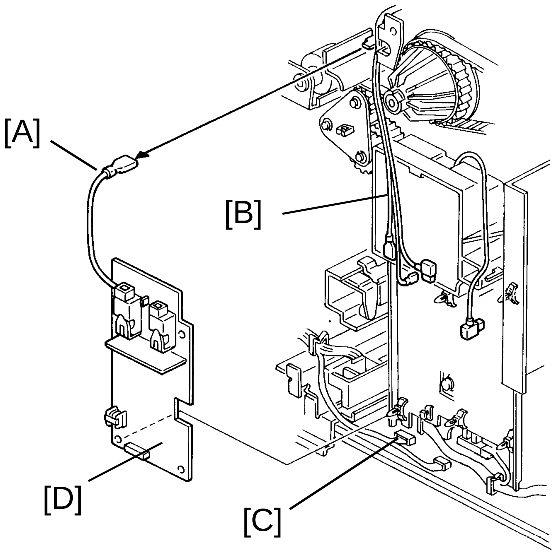
1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power cord.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Replace the RAM board [A].
4. Reassemble the copier and plug it in.
5. Perform the memory all clear (SP99) and follow the necessary procedure (see Memory All Clear Procedure in Service Program Mode of Service Table section).

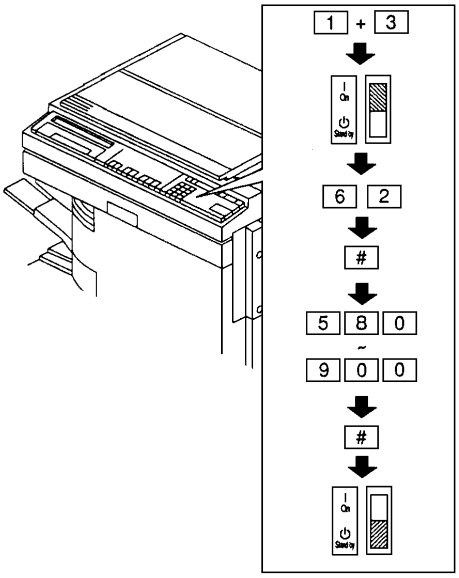
10.4 OPERATION PANEL REMOVAL



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the front door and the upper front cover.
3. Remove the operation panel [A] (4 screws, 2 connectors).

10.5 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD - CTBG REPLACEMENT



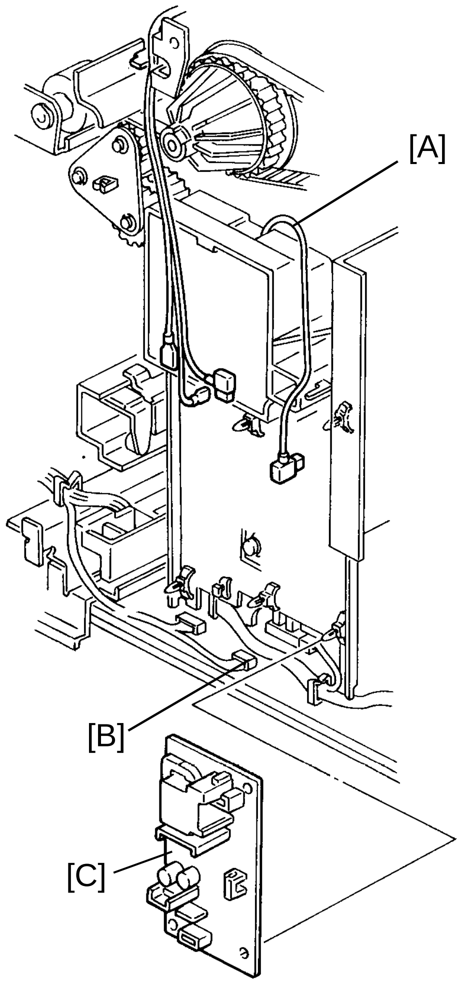


1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power cord.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Swing out the main control board assembly (1 screw).
4. Disconnect the bias cable [A] (1 connector, 1 harness lamp).
5. Disconnect the 3 high-voltage cables [B] and a harness [C].
6. Replace the CTBG power pack [D] (3 locking supports).
7. Reassemble the machine.
8. Plug in the power cord.
9. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys, turn on the main switch in order to access the SP mode.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the Call Service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.
10. Enter "62" (grid voltage setting mode) using the number keys and press the enter key.
11. Enter the new grid voltage correction data labeled on the board using the number keys and press the enter key.
12. Adjust the transfer corona current.
    (See T/S corona current auto adjustment.)
13. Enter the factory set data for the separation corona current by SP163 and SP164 if the high voltage supply board – D is the original one.

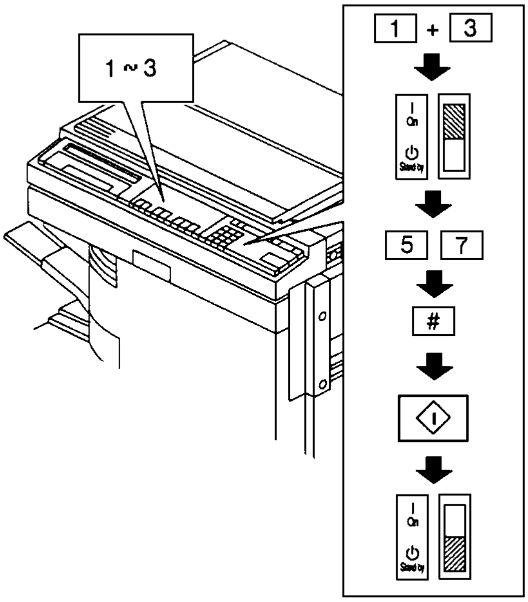
Replacement
Adjustment

10.6 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD – D REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power cord.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Disconnect the high-voltage cable [A] and a harness [B] (2 connectors).
4. Replace the high voltage supply board – D [C] (3 locking supports).
5. Adjust the separation corona current.
   (See T/S corona current auto adjustment.)
6. Enter the factory set data for the transfer corona current by SP162 if the high voltage supply board - CTBG is the original one.

10.7 T/S CORONA CURRENT AUTO ADJUSTMENT (SP57)



NOTE: 1. Setting data of SP62 must be done, before performing the T/S corona current auto adjustment.

2. Adjust the corona current only when a high voltage supply board is replaced.
3. When adjusting the corona current, the drum and T/S corona wires must be replaced with new ones and the T/S corona unit must be cleaned.

1. While pressing both "1" and "3" on the operation panel number keys turn on the main switch in order to access the SP mode.

   NOTE: Release the number keys after confirming that the Call Service indicator and the copy counter number "0" are blinking.

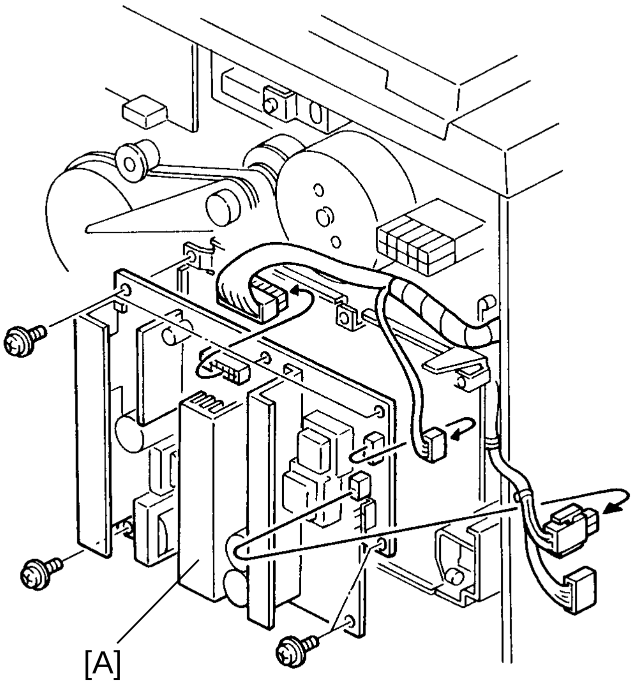
2. Enter "57" (Auto drum current adjustment) using the number keys and press the enter key.
3. Press the start key. The adjustment condition will be displayed with the following data in the magnification three digit indicator.

Data	Condition
1	Measuring and adjusting the transfer corona current
2	Measuring and adjusting the corona current
3	Finish the T/S corona current adjustment

(The copier starts the adjustment, this lasts about 10~20 seconds, and the beeper sounds twice when it is finished.)

4. Turn the main switch off.

10.8 DC POWER SUPPLY BOARD REPLACEMENT



NOTE: 1. Check the fuses (F1, F2, F3, and F4) on the board before determining that the dc power supply board is defective.

2. When checking if the dc power supply board is defctive or not by installing the board on another machine, wait for 10 minutes before turning on the main switch. Because if the over voltage protection circuit functions, the dc power supply board cuts its output and it takes a maximum of 10 minutes to recover by discharging the capacitors.

1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power cord.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Remove the dc power supply board [A] (5 screws and 4 connectors).

SECTION 6

TROUBLESHOOTING

1. INTRODUCTION

This troubleshooting guide is compiled to help field engineers solve some of the more common field problems. However, it does not cover all the potential problems. We request your help in improving our troubleshooting documentation. Whenever you encounter new field problems, please submit detailed reports to the nearest service support office. We will then issue additional troubleshooting information based on reports from you and other field service engineers around the world.

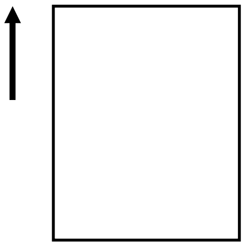
1. The following is a comparison table showing the area you should check first if you have image problems at periodic intervals.

Interval of Image Problem	Possible Cause
251mm/9.89"	Drum
125.5mm/4.94"	Hot roller or Pressure Roller

2. If the problem is related to electrical circuit boards, first disconnect, then reconnect the connectors before replacing the PCBs. (In case of the dc power supply board, refer to NOTE in the replacement procedure.)

2. COPY QUALITY

2.1 BLANK COPY (WHITE COPY)



- Phenomenon -

White or almost white copy.

- Possible Causes -

1. Charge is not applied.
   - High voltage supply board - CTBG (charge or grid) failure
   - Poor contact of high voltage lead wires
   - Broken charge corona wire
   - Leak in insulator or endblock

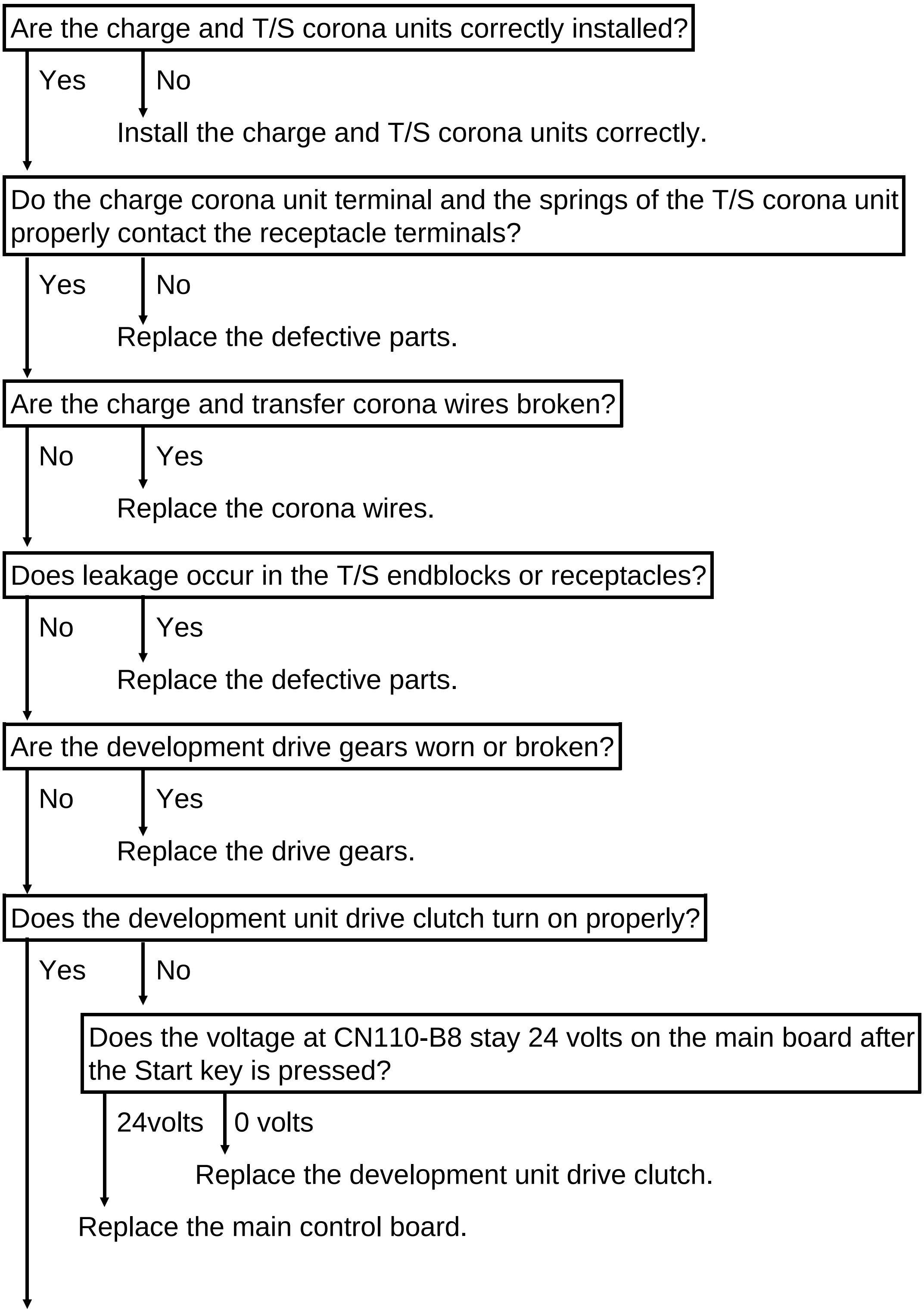
2. Copy image is not transferred to the paper.
   - High voltage supply board - CTBG (transfer) failure
   - Poor contact of high voltage lead wires
   - Poor contact of transfer corona wire
   - broken transfer corona wire
   - Leak in insulator or endblocks

3. Development roller does not rotate.
   - Broken drive gears
   - Defective development unit drive clutch

4. Poor drum sensitivity.
   - Drum exposed to fluorescent light or direct sunlight for long period of time.
   - Drum exposed to ammonia gas or fumes for a long period of time.

5. Drum does not rotate.

- Action -


Are the charge and T/S corona units correctly installed?
Yes
No
Install the charge and T/S corona units correctly.
Do the charge corona unit terminal and the springs of the T/S corona unit properly contact the receptacle terminals?
Yes
No
Replace the defective parts.
Are the charge and transfer corona wires broken?
No
Yes
Replace the corona wires.
Does leakage occur in the T/S endblocks or receptacles?
No
Yes
Replace the defective parts.
Are the development drive gears worn or broken?
No
Yes
Replace the drive gears.
Does the development unit drive clutch turn on properly?
Yes
No
Does the voltage at CN110-B8 stay 24 volts on the main board after the Start key is pressed?
24volts
0 volts
Replace the development unit drive clutch.
Replace the main control board.

Yes

Does the drum rotate properly?

Yes No

Check drum drive mechanisms such as the drum drive belt and the drum pulleys.

Check the following points:

- CN103-4 (Charge/grid trigger line)
  (1) If the signal stays HIGH after the Start key is pressed, replace the main control board.

  (2) If the charge corona does not turn on even if the signal changes to LOW, replace the high voltage supply board - CTBG.

- CN103-2 (Transfer trigger line)
  (1) If the signal stays HIGH after the Start key is pressed, replace the main control board.

  (2) If the transfer corona does not turn on even if the signal changes to LOW, replace the high voltage supply board - CTBG.

If there is no problem with the signal lines, replace the drum if the sensitivity does not recover even when the drum is not exposed to light.

2.2 DIRTY BACKGROUND

- Phenomenon -

1. Dirty background at image density level 4 (manual setting).

2. ADS copies have a dirty background.

- Possible Causes -

1. V_L correction failure
    - Very dirty optics (V_L correction cannot compensate).
    - Deteriorated exposure lamp (maximum output cannot give sufficient light intensity).
    - Failure of the dc power supply board.
    - Dirty erase lamp unit.

2. V_R correction failure
    - High voltage supply board - CTBG (development bias) failure.
    - Poor contact of development bias.
    - The development bias is grounded.

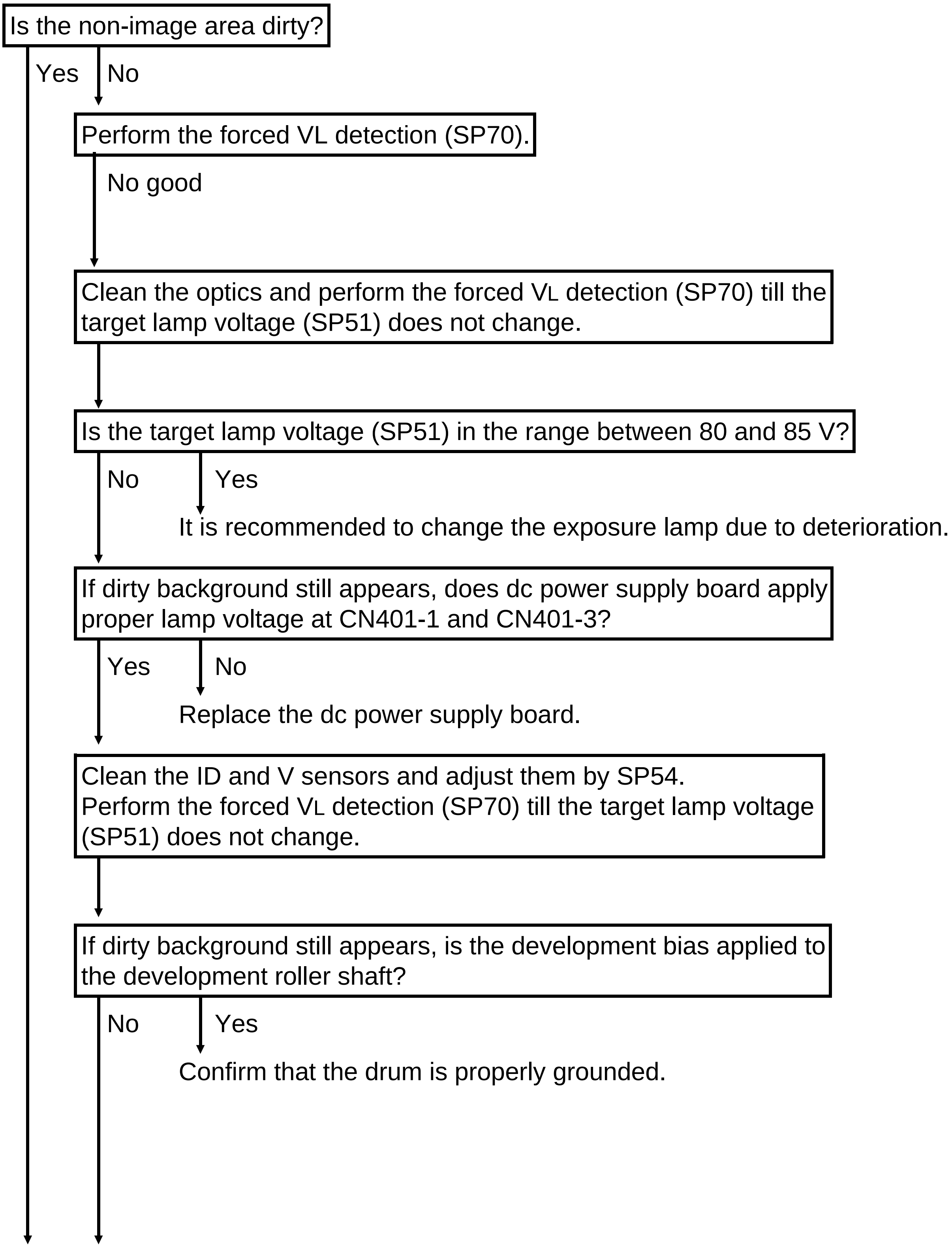
3. OPC drum is not grounded properly.

4. ADS mode
    - Improper ADS Density setting (SP34).
    - ADS Sensor board failure.
    - High voltage supply board - CTBG failure.
    - Incorrect adjustment of ADS sensor (SP56/SP167).

5. High toner density
    - Improper setting of grid bias correction data (SP62).
    - Improper grid bias setting (SP161).
    - Improper ID sensor pattern bias (SP33/75).
    - Dirty erase lamp unit.

- Action -

Make a copy in reduction mode at manual image density level 4.



Is the non-image area dirty?

Perform the forced VL detection (SP70).

Clean the optics and perform the forced VL detection (SP70) till the target lamp voltage (SP51) does not change.

Is the target lamp voltage (SP51) in the range between 80 and 85 V?

It is recommended to change the exposure lamp due to deterioration.

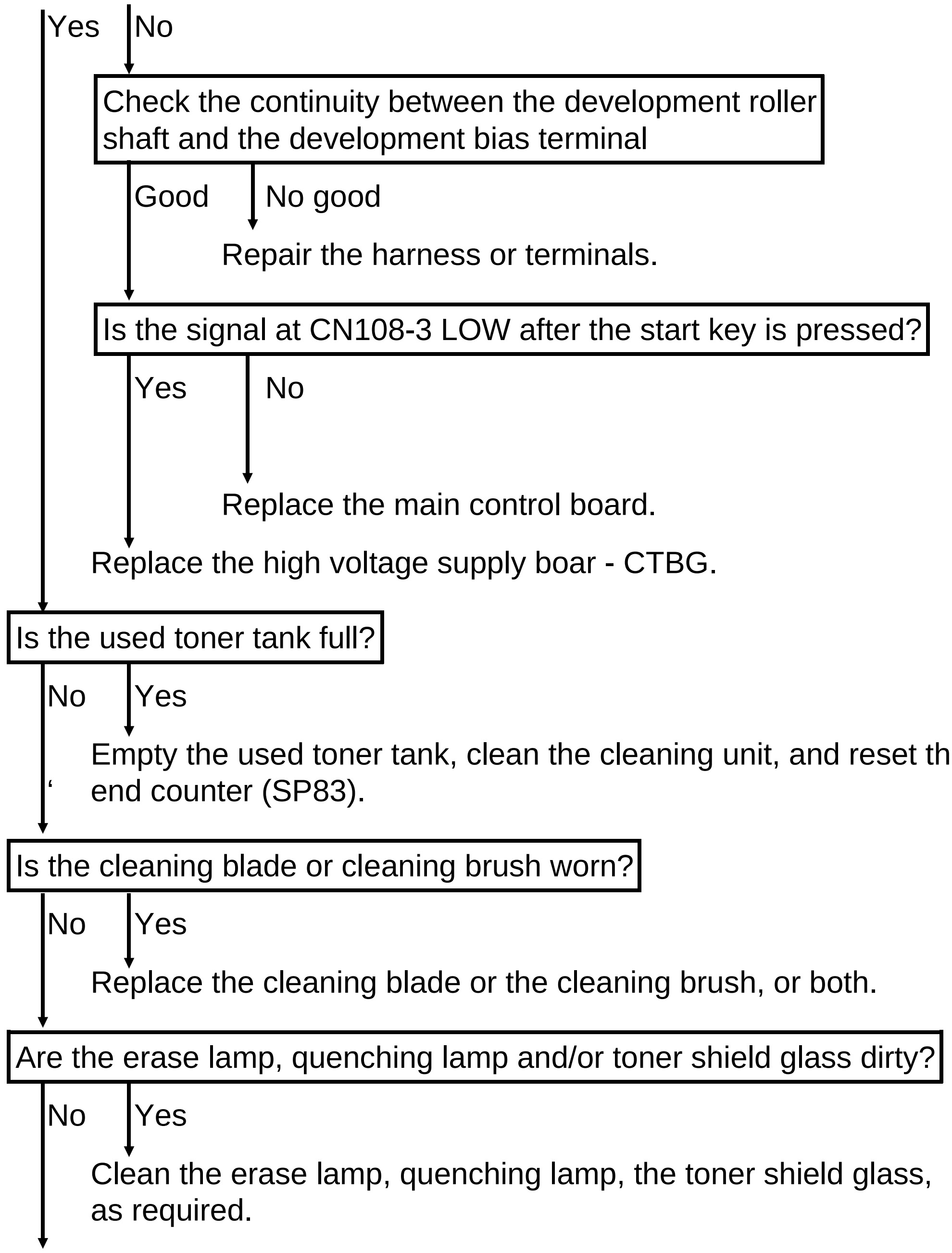
If dirty background still appears, does dc power supply board apply proper lamp voltage at CN401-1 and CN401-3?

Replace the dc power supply board.

Clean the ID and V sensors and adjust them by SP54.
Perform the forced VL detection (SP70) till the target lamp voltage (SP51) does not change.

If dirty background still appears, is the development bias applied to the development roller shaft?

Confirm that the drum is properly grounded.



Yes No

Check the continuity between the development roller shaft and the development bias terminal

Good No good

Repair the harness or terminals.

Is the signal at CN108-3 LOW after the start key is pressed?

Yes No

Replace the main control board.

Replace the high voltage supply boar - CTBG.

Is the used toner tank full?

No Yes

Empty the used toner tank, clean the cleaning unit, and reset the toner end counter (SP83).

Is the cleaning blade or cleaning brush worn?

No Yes

Replace the cleaning blade or the cleaning brush, or both.

Are the erase lamp, quenching lamp and/or toner shield glass dirty?

No Yes

Clean the erase lamp, quenching lamp, the toner shield glass, as required.

If toner scattering occurs, see the toner scattering section.

If dirty background occurs only in ADS mode, do the following:

- If the ADS voltage (SP167) is not within 1.5 ± 0.1 volts standard voltage, readjust the ADS voltage (SP56).
- Change the setting of ADS density (SP34) from 0 (Normal) to 2 (Lighter).

2.3 UNEVEN IMAGE DENSITY

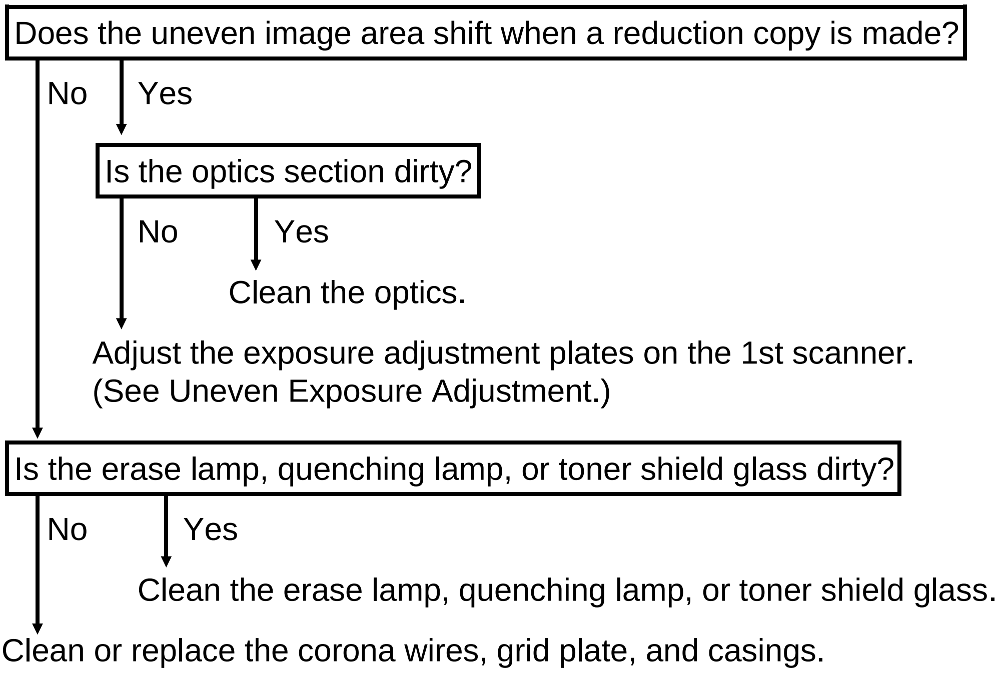
- Phenomenon -

Uneven image density appears on copies.

- Possible Cause -

1. Dirty optics
2. Improper position of exposure adjustment plates
3. Dirty corona wires or grid plate
4. Uneven height of charge corona wire
5. Improper function of cross mixing in the development unit

- Action -



Does the uneven image area shift when a reduction copy is made?

No

Yes

Is the optics section dirty?

No

Yes

Clean the optics.

Adjust the exposure adjustment plates on the 1st scanner.
(See Uneven Exposure Adjustment.)

Is the erase lamp, quenching lamp, or toner shield glass dirty?

No

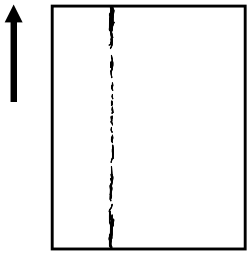
Yes

Clean the erase lamp, quenching lamp, or toner shield glass.

Clean or replace the corona wires, grid plate, and casings.

2.4 VERTICAL BLACK BANDS

- Phenomenon -



Vertical black bands appear on the copy.

- Possible Causes -

1. Dirty optics
2. Dust between the cleaning blade and drum
3. Edge of the cleaning blade deformed
4. Deformed cleaning brush
5. Deformed inlet seal on the development unit

- Action -

Do the black bands shift when a reduction copy is made?

No ↓ Yes ↓

Yes: Check and clean the optics section (including the toner shield glass).

No ↓

Press the blade release lever several times to clean the edge of the cleaning blade. If black bands still appear, go to the next step.

↓

Is the edge of the cleaning blade deformed?

No ↓ Yes ↓

Yes: Replace the cleaning blade.

No ↓

Is the cleaning brush deformed?

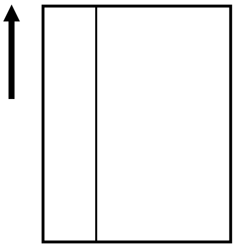
No ↓ Yes ↓

Yes: Replace the cleaning brush.

No ↓

If the inlet seal on the development unit is deformed, replace the inlet seal plate and the seal as a set.

2.5 VERTICAL BLACK LINES



- Phenomenon -

Thin black lines appear on the copy.

- Possible Causes -

1. Scratched cleaning blade
2. Dirty or scratched mirrors
3. Scratched or dirty drum
4. Scratched hot roller

- Action -

Do the black lines shift when a reduction copy is made?

No Yes

Clean or replace the exposure glass or mirrors.

Is the toner shield glass or green filter scratched?

No Yes

Replace the toner shield glass or green filter.

Is the edge of the cleaning blade scratched?

No Yes

Replace the cleaning blade.

Is the hot roller scratched?

No Yes

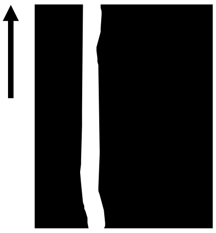
Check whether black lines appear on the copy by stopping the copy paper in the transport section. If no black lines appear, replace the hot roller.

Check whether the drum is scratched or toner is built-up on the drum.

- If toner is built-up on the drum, clean the drum with a dry clotch or wet cotton.
- If the drum is scratched, replace the drum.

2.6 VERTICAL WHITE LINES OR BANDS—1 (DULL OR BLURRED)

- Phenomenon -



Dull or blurred white lines appear on the copy.

- Possible Causes -

1. Dirty or deteriorated charge corona wires
2. Dirty or deformed grid plate
3. Damp or deformed inlet seal on the development unit

- Action -

Are the charge corona wires or grid plate dirty?

No
Yes

Clean the charge corona wires or grid plate.

Is the inlet seal damp or deformed.

No
Yes

Clean the inlet seal with a dry cloth. If the problem is not corrected, replace the inlet seal plate and the seal as a set.

Is the grid plate deformed?

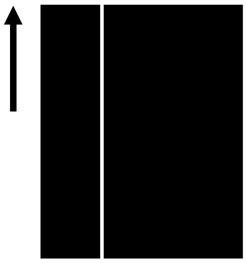
No
Yes

Replace the grid plate.

Replace the charge corona wire.

2.7 VERTICAL WHITE LINES OR BANDS—2 (THIN, DISTINCT)

- Phenomenon -



Vertical white lines appear on the copy.

- Possible Causes -

1. Paper dust on the edge of the cleaning blade
2. Scratched drum
3. Scratched hot roller

- Action -

Press the cleaning blade release lever several times. Make a copy and if white lines still appear, go to the next step.

↓

Make a copy and stop the machine when the paper reaches the transport section. Do white lines appear on the copy?

Yes ↓ Replace the drum if it is scratched.

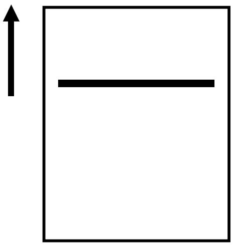
No ↓ Replace the hot roller if it is scratched.

NOTE: If the drum is scratched, find out what caused the scratches on the drum and correct the problem.

- Paper Misfeed
- Incorrect positioning of the pick-off pawls
- Foreign substances on the cleaning brush or blade
- Carrier leakage

2.8 HORIZONTAL BLACK/WHITE LINES

- Phenomenon -

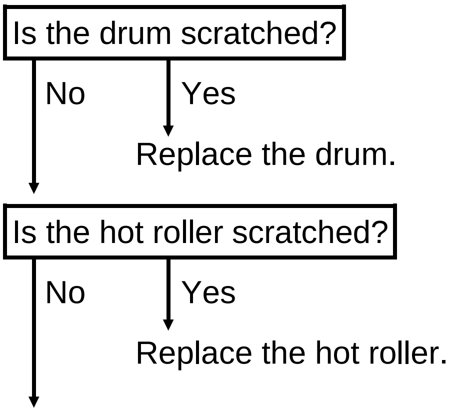


Black or white lines perpendicular to the paper feed direction appear on the copy image.

- Possible Causes -

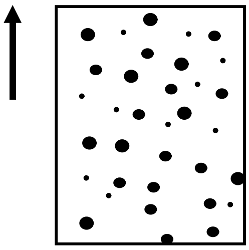
1. Drum is scratched.
   If black lines appear at 251 mm (9.89") intervals, the cause is a scratched drum or toner build up.
2. Hot roller is scratched.
   If black lines appear at 125.5 mm (4.94") intervals, the cause is a scratched hot roller.
3. Toner adheres to the drum surface.
   Due to insufficient cleaning, foreign matter may accumulate on the blade, causing toner to stick to the drum surface when the drum stops.

- Action -


Is the drum scratched?
No
Yes
Replace the drum.
Is the hot roller scratched?
No
Yes
Replace the hot roller.

If toner adheres to the drum surface, clean the drum with wet cotton. Also clean or replace the cleaning blade and/or cleaning brush.

2.9 BLACK SPOTS ON THE COPY IMAGE



- Phenomenon -

The grid voltage is not applied correctly.

- Poor contact between the charge corona casing and grid plate
- High voltage supply board - CTBG defective
- Main control board defective

- Action -

Is there good electrical contact between the charge corona casing and the grid plate?

Yes / No

No: Repair the poor contact and replace any parts if needed.

Yes: Check the voltage at CN103-4 on the main control board.

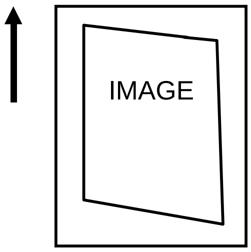
0 volt / Not 0 volt

Not 0 volt: Replace the main control board.

0 volt: Replace the high voltage supply board - CTBG.

2.10 SKEWED (OPTICAL) COPY IMAGE

- Phenomenon -



The copy image is skewed (parallelogram shape).

The sides of the copy image are straight, but the leading and trailing edges are skewed.
(This differs from skewing originating in the paper path type of skewing.)

- Possible Causes -

1. 1st and 2nd scanners are positioned improperly.
2. 3rd scanner is not parallel with the 1st and 2nd scanners.
3. Mirrors are in the wrong position.
4. The stubs of the 3rd scanner is off the rails.

- Action -

Are the 1st and 2nd scanners properly positioned ?

Yes ↓ No ↓

Reposition the scanners correctly.

Is each mirror positioned correctly on its scanner?

Yes ↓ No ↓

Reposition the mirror correctly. If the spring plates are defective, replace them.

Are the stubs of the 3rd scanner assembly off the rails?

No ↓ Yes ↓

Put the mirror assembly stubs back on the rails.

Readjust the height of the 3rd scanner by turning the adjusting screw.

2.11 TONER DENSITY TOO HIGH

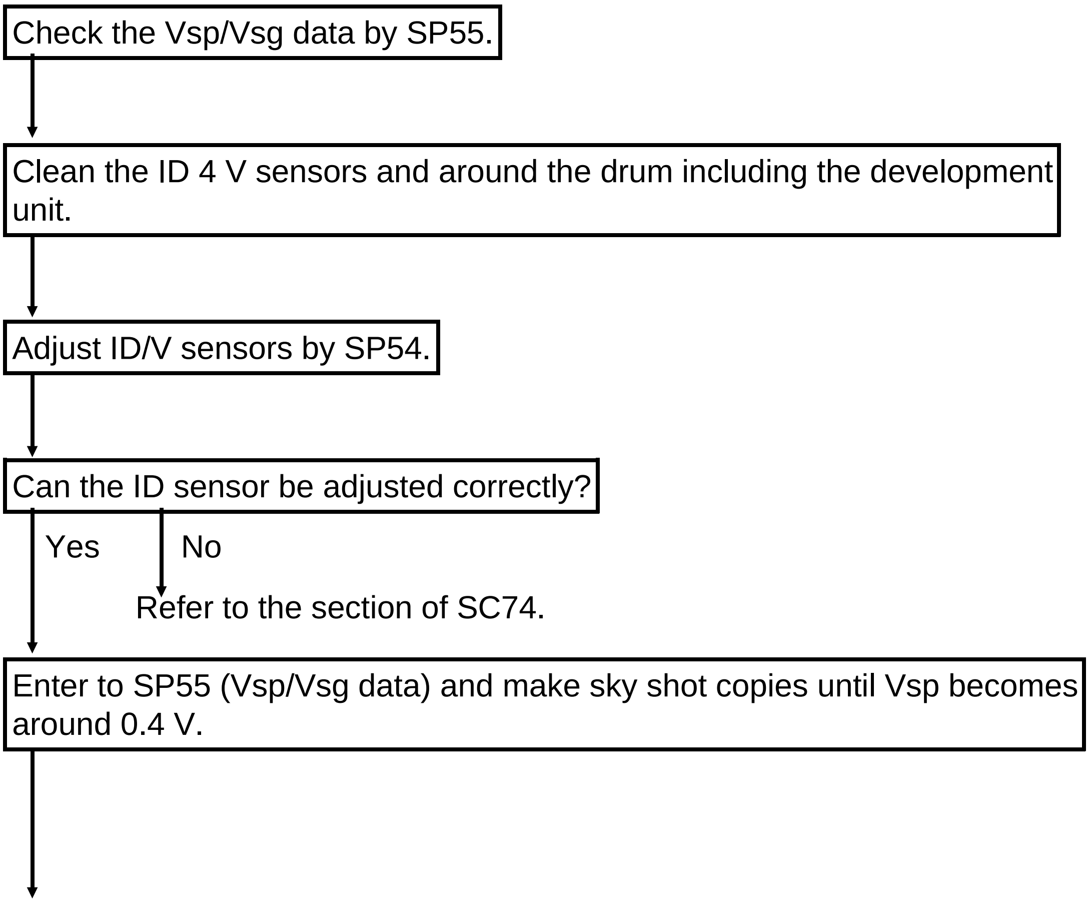
- Phenomenon -

1. Dirty background appears on the copy.
2. The image density of black solid areas is too high.
3. Toner has built up on the endblock cover of the T/S corona unit and also on the PTL top mylar.

- Possible Causes -

1. Toner supply clutch keeps on turning continuously.
2. Copier is in abnormal fixed toner supply mode.
3. Main Control board is defective.
4. ID sensor pattern bias is too low.
5. ID sensor grid bias voltage is too low.

- Action -



Check the Vsp/Vsg data by SP55.

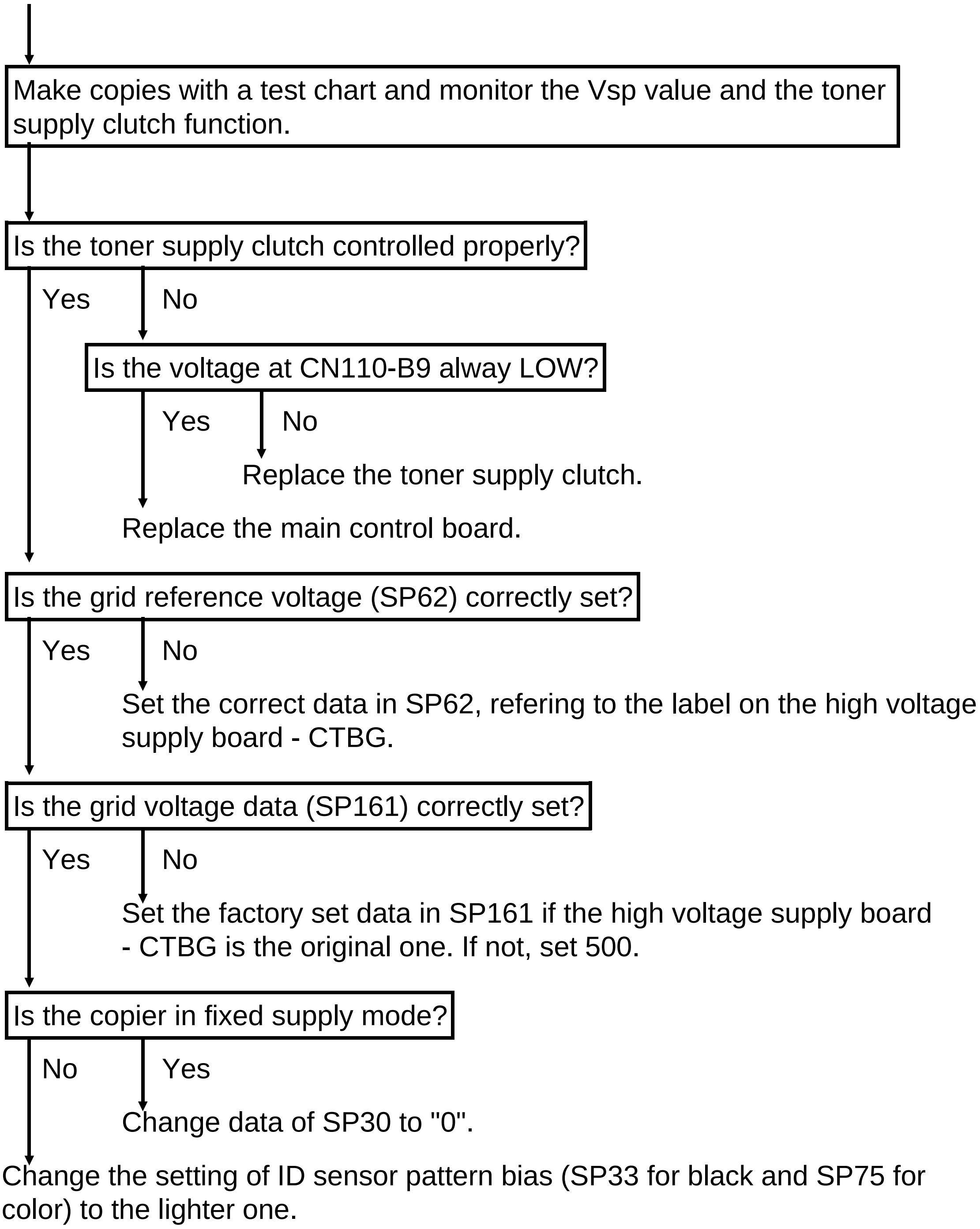
Clean the ID 4 V sensors and around the drum including the development unit.

Adjust ID/V sensors by SP54.

Can the ID sensor be adjusted correctly?

Refer to the section of SC74.

Enter to SP55 (Vsp/Vsg data) and make sky shot copies until Vsp becomes around 0.4 V.



Make copies with a test chart and monitor the Vsp value and the toner supply clutch function.

Is the toner supply clutch controlled properly?

Yes

No

Is the voltage at CN110-B9 alway LOW?

Yes

No

Replace the toner supply clutch.

Replace the main control board.

Is the grid reference voltage (SP62) correctly set?

Yes

No

Set the correct data in SP62, refering to the label on the high voltage supply board - CTBG.

Is the grid voltage data (SP161) correctly set?

Yes

No

Set the factory set data in SP161 if the high voltage supply board - CTBG is the original one. If not, set 500.

Is the copier in fixed supply mode?

No

Yes

Change data of SP30 to "0".

Change the setting of ID sensor pattern bias (SP33 for black and SP75 for color) to the lighter one.

2.12 TONER DENSITY TOO LOW

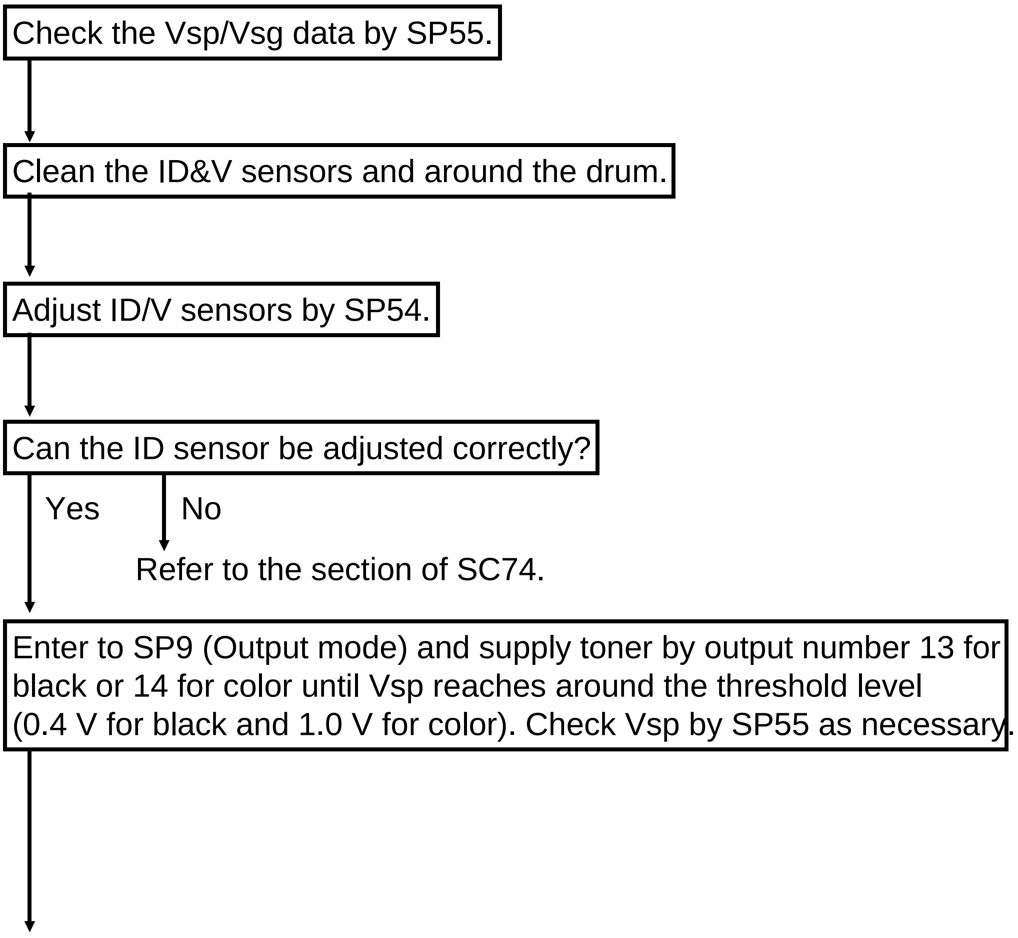
- Phenomenon -

1. Light copy
2. Carrier is on the copy.
3. Light spots appear in black solid areas.

- Possible Causes -

1. Toner supply clutch does not rotate.
2. Copier is in the (abnormal) fixed toner supply mode.
3. Main control board is defective.
4. ID sensor pattern bias is too high.
5. ID sensor grid bias voltage is too high.

- Action -



Check the Vsp/Vsg data by SP55.

Clean the ID&V sensors and around the drum.

Adjust ID/V sensors by SP54.

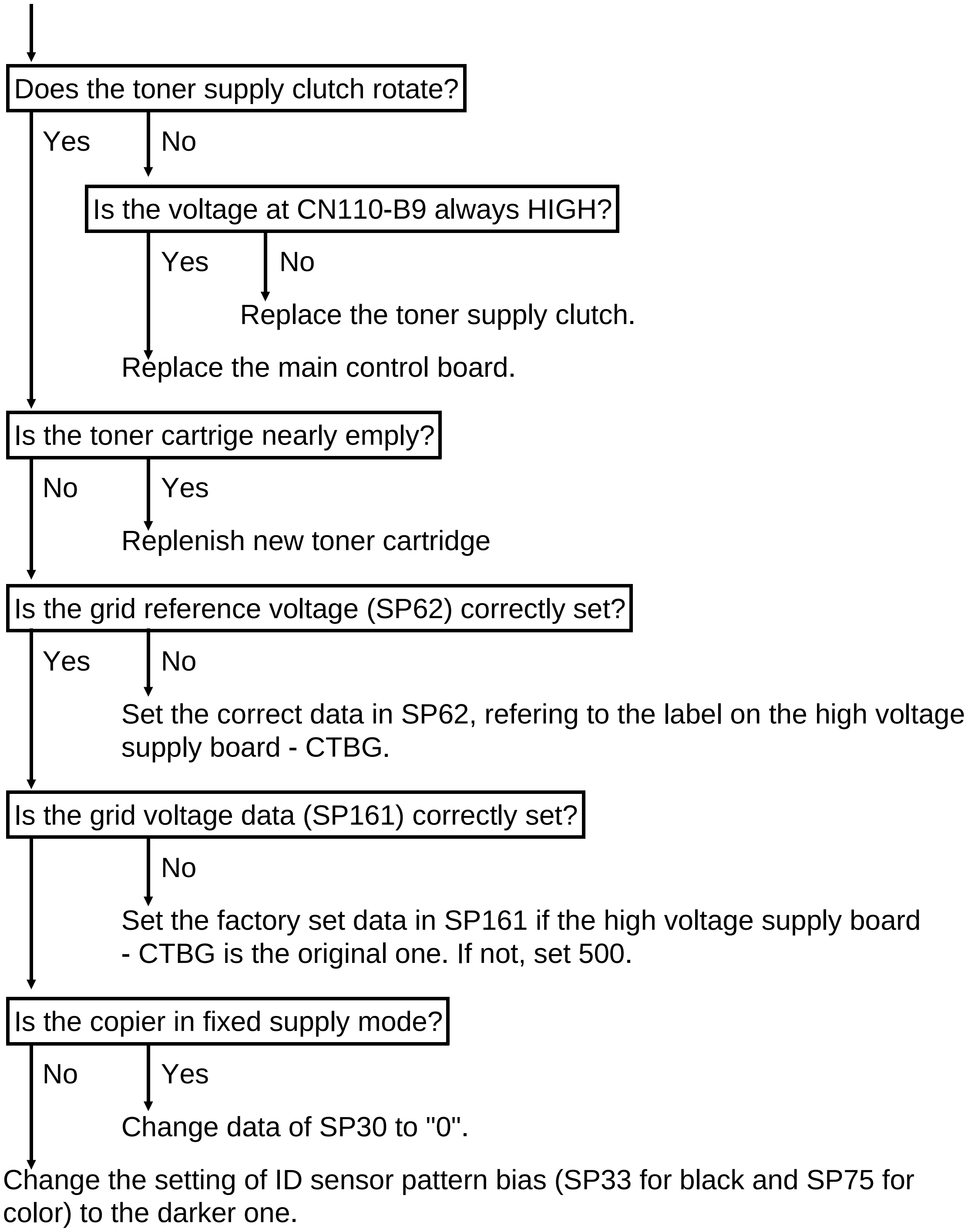
Can the ID sensor be adjusted correctly?

Yes

No

Refer to the section of SC74.

Enter to SP9 (Output mode) and supply toner by output number 13 for black or 14 for color until Vsp reaches around the threshold level (0.4 V for black and 1.0 V for color). Check Vsp by SP55 as necessary.


Does the toner supply clutch rotate?
Yes
No
Is the voltage at CN110-B9 always HIGH?
Yes
No
Replace the toner supply clutch.
Replace the main control board.
Is the toner cartrige nearly emply?
No
Yes
Replenish new toner cartridge
Is the grid reference voltage (SP62) correctly set?
Yes
No
Set the correct data in SP62, refering to the label on the high voltage supply board - CTBG.
Is the grid voltage data (SP161) correctly set?
No
Set the factory set data in SP161 if the high voltage supply board - CTBG is the original one. If not, set 500.
Is the copier in fixed supply mode?
No
Yes
Change data of SP30 to "0".
Change the setting of ID sensor pattern bias (SP33 for black and SP75 for color) to the darker one.

2.13 TONER SCATTERING

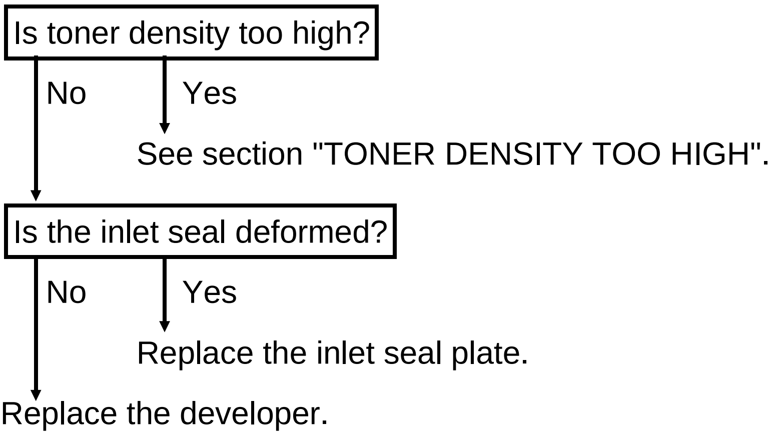
- Phenomenon -

Toner scatters from the development unit.

- Possible Causes -

1. Toner density is too high.
2. Inlet seal on the development unit is out of position.
3. Developer has deteriorated.

- Action -


Is toner density too high?
No
Yes
See section "TONER DENSITY TOO HIGH".
Is the inlet seal deformed?
No
Yes
Replace the inlet seal plate.
Replace the developer.

2.14 UNFUSED COPY IMAGE

- Phenomenon -

Solid image rubs off easily.

- Possible Causes -

1. Fusing pressure is too weak.
2. Fusing temperature is too low.
3. Thermistor is malfunctioning.

- Action -

Adjust the position of the pressure springs to increase the fusing pressure.

↓ No good

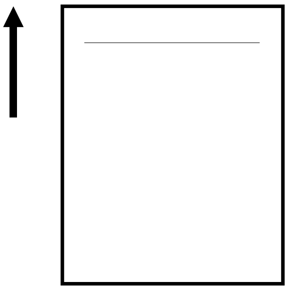
Increase fusing temperature using SP49.

↓ No good

Check the thermistor. If the thermistor is malfunctioning, replace it.

2.15 A HORIZONTAL THIN LINE APPEARING CLOSE TO THE LEADING EDGE

- Phenomenon -



When an original has black solid areas at the trailing edge, toner transferred from the trailing edge onto the hot roller will appear on the next copy paper.

- Action -

Set SP157 (trail edge erase) to leave a blank margin on the trailing edge of copies.
(The blank margin can be adjusted from 0 to 4 mm in 0.5 mm steps when the lead edge registration is adjusted to 0 mm.)

2.16 CREASING AFTER FUSING

- Phenomenon -

Under high humidity conditions, humidified copy paper creases as it comes out of the fusing unit.

- Action -

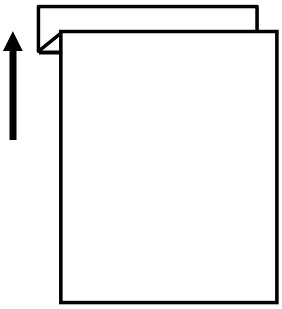
Install an optional tray heater on each paper feeding station. Refer to "Tray heater installation" in section 3.
(The tray heater is available as a service part.)

2.17 Z-FOLDED COPY OR LEAD EDGE REGISTRATION VARIES

- Phenomenon -

Copies are folded like "Z" shape at the leading part.
The variation of lead edge registration is too big.

- Action -



Adjust the paper buckle amount between the registration rollers and the upper relay rollers (or feed & separation rollers) by SP mode for each paper feeding station.
SP150:By-pass feed/LCT
SP151:Upper paper tray
SP152:Lower paper tray and paper tray unit

3. SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

3.1 CODE #11 - EXPOSURE LAMP ERROR 1 (STAND-BY)

- Definition -

The exposure lamp turns on or opens during stand-by condition.

- Possible Cause -

- Exposure lamp open
- Optics thermoswitch open
- Main power relay defective
- Defective dc power supply board (triac or lamp voltage detection circuit)

NOTE: To reset this service call condition, enter to the SP mode, then turn the main switch off and on.

3.2 CODE #12 - EXPOSURE LAMP ERROR 2 (COPYING)

- Definition -

The exposure lamp circuit stays open longer than 20 seconds during a copy cycle.
The exposure lamp stays on longer than 20 seconds during a copy cycle.

- Possible Cause -

- Exposure lamp open
- Optics thermoswitch open
- Main power relay defective
- Defective dc power supply board (triac or lamp voltage detection circuit) defective

NOTE: To reset this service call condition, enter to the SP mode, then turn the main switch off and on.

3.3 CODE #20 - SCANNER MOTOR ERROR

- Definition -

The difference of pulse numbers for the scanner drive motor between the number of pulses in forward and reverse exceeds a certain number. (When initializing and copying.)

- Possible Cause -

- Scanner movement too heavy
- Scanner drive motor defective
- Scanner drive motor control board defective
- Main control board defective

3.4 CODE #21 - SCANNER HOME POSITION ERROR 1

- Definition -

The scanner home position sensor remains deactivated (photo-transistor. stays on) 4 seconds after the main switch is turned on.

- Possible Cause -

- Scanner H.P. sensor defective
- Scanner movement too heavy
- Scanner drive motor defective
- Scanner motor control board defective
- Scanner drive belt out of position

3.5 CODE #22 - SCANNER HOME POSITION ERROR 2

- Definition -

The scanner home position sensor remains activated (photo-transistor. stays off) 0.1 seconds after the main switch is turned on.

- Possible Cause -

- Scanner H.P. sensor defective
- Scanner movement too heavy
- Scanner drive motor defective
- Scanner motor control board defective
- Scanner drive belt out of position

3.6 CODE #23 - LEAD EDGE SIGNAL ERROR

- Definitions -

The main CPU does not receive a scan lead edge signal from the I/O CPU on the main control board from when the scanner starts going forward till it starts returning.

- Possible Cause -

- Main control board defective]
- Electrical noise resulting in a communication error between the CPU’s on the main control board.

3.7 CODE #24 - SCANNER HOME POSITION SIGNAL ERROR

- Definition -

The main CPU does not receive a scanner H.P. signal from the I/O CPU on the main control board 20 seconds after the magnification ratio is changed or 20 seconds after the scanner starts from the H.P.

- Possible Cause -

- Main control board defective
- Electrical noise resulting in a communication error between the CPU’s on the main control board.

3.8 CODE #28 - LENS HOME POSITION ERROR 1

-Definition -

The lens H.P. sensor remains activated (photo-transistor. stays off) 2.4 seconds after the reduction mode is selected or the main switch is turned on.

- Possible Cause -

- Lens H.P. sensor defective
- Lens drive motor defective
- Lens movement too heavy
- Main control board defective

3.9 CODE #29 - LENS HOME POSITION ERROR 2

-Definition -

The lens H.P. sensor remains deactivated (photo-transistor stays on) 2.4 seconds after the reduction mode is selected or the main switch is turned on.

- Possible Cause -

- Lens H.P. sensor defective
- Lens drive motor defective
- Lens movement too heavy
- Main control board defective

3.10 CODE #2A - 3RD SCANNER HOME POSITION ERROR 1

- Definition -

The 3rd scanner H.P. sensor remains deactivated (photo-transistor stays on) 2.4 seconds after the 3rd scanner moves to the left in enlargement/reduction mode, or the main switch is turned on.

- Possible Cause -

- 3rd scanner H.P. sensor defective
- 3rd scanner drive motor defective
- 3rd scanner movement too heavy
- Main control board defective

3.11 CODE #2B - 3RD SCANNER HOME POSITION ERROR 2

- Definition -

The 3rd scanner H.P. sensor remains activated (photo-transistor stays off) 2.4 seconds after the 3rd scanner moves to the right in enlargement/reduction mode or the main switch is turned on.

- Possible Cause -

- 3rd scanner H.P. sensor defective
- 3rd scanner drive motor defective
- 3rd scanner movement too heavy
- Main control board defective

3.12 CODE #41 TO #45 - PAPER TRAY LIFT MOTOR ERROR

- Definition -

The tray lift motor stays on over 15 seconds for lifting or lowering.
#41: Copier upper tray lift motor (non-duplex machine only)—
#42: Copier lower tray lift motor
#43: Tray lift motor 1 (paper tray unit)
#44: Tray lift motor 2 (paper tray unit)
#45: Tray lift motor 3 (paper tray unit)

- Possible Cause -

- Tray lift motor defective
- Tray upper limit sensor defective
- Paper end sensor defective
- Tray bottom plate movement too heavy

3.13 CODE #46 - LCT LIFT MOTOR ERROR

- Definition -

The LCT lift motor stays on over 30 seconds for lifting or lowering.

- Possible Cause -

- LCT cover-2 switch (SW15) is not activated or the switch it self is defective.
- LCT lift motor defective
- LCT upper limit sensor defective
- LCT lower limit sensor defective
- LCT bottom plate movement too heavy
- LCT drive belt out of position

3.14 CODE #53 - FUSING THERMISTOR OPEN

- Definition -

The CPU detects the fusing thermistor open condition for over 10 seconds.

- Possible Cause -

- Fusing thermistor open
- Fusing unit not in position
- Main control board defective

NOTE: To reset this SC condition, enter to the SP mode then turn the main switch off and on.

3.15 CODE #54 - FUSING WARM-UP ERROR

- Definition -

The fusing temperature does not reach 175°C 4 minutes after the main switch is turned on.

- Possible Cause -

- Fusing lamp open
- Fusing thermofuse open
- Fusing thermistor not in position
- Main power relay (RA1) defective
- Defective dc power supply board (triac or fusing lamp drive circuit)
- Main control board defective

NOTE: To reset this SC condition, enter to the SP mode then turn the main switch off and on.

3.16 CODE #55 - FUSING OVERHEAT

- Definition -

The fusing temperature reaches over 220°C.

- Possible Cause -

- Fusing thermistor short
- Defective dc power supply board (triac of fusing lamp drive circuit)
- Main control board defective

NOTE: To reset this SC condition, enter to the SP mode then turn the main switch off and on.

3.17 CODE #61 - MAIN DRIVE MOTOR ERROR

- Definition -

The main motor does not start rotating within 2 seconds after the CPU sends the main motor on signal.

The CPU detects this condition by the lock signal "L" from the main motor control board. During a copy cycle, the paper jam signal is detected prior to this lock signal.

- Possible Cause -

- Main motor defective
- Main motor control board defective
- Mechanical components driven by main motor too heavy

3.18 CODE #62 - TRANSPORT FAN MOTOR ERROR

- Definition -

The transport fan motor does not start rotating within 2 seconds after the CPU sends the transport fan motor on signal.
The CPU detects this condition through the lock signal "L" of the fan motor.

- Possible Cause -

- Transport fan motor poorly connected
- Transport fan motor defective]
- Main control board defective

3.19 CODE #63 - EXHAUST BLOWER MOTOR ERROR

- Definition -

The exhaust blower motor does not start rotating within 2 seconds after the CPU sends the exhaust blower motor on signal.
The CPU detects this condition through the lock signal "L" of the fan motor.

- Possible Cause -

- Exhaust blower motor poorly connected
- Exhaust blower motor defective
- Main control board defective

3.20 CODE #64 - FUSING EXHAUST FAN MOTOR ERROR

- Definition -

The fusing exhaust fan motor does not start rotating within 2 seconds after the CPU sends the fusing exhaust fan motor on signal.
The CPU detects this condition through the lock signal "L" of the fan motor.

- Possible Cause -

- Fusing exhaust fan motor poorly connected
- Fusing exhaust fan motor defective
- Main control board defective

3.21 CODE #72 - TRANSFER CORONA CURRENT ADJUSTMENT ERROR

- Definition -

When performing SP57 (auto drum current adjustment):

1. Transfer drum current is lower than the adjustment standard at the maximum output from the high voltage power supply board -T.
2. Transfer drum current is higher than the adjustment standard at the minimum output from the high voltage power supply board - T.

- Possible Cause -

- Transfer corona wire broken
- T/S corona unit not in position
- Drum unit poorly connected
- High voltage power supply board - CTBG defective
- Main control board defective

3.22 CODE #73 - SEPARATION CORONA CURRENT ADJUSTMENT ERROR

- Definition -

When performing SP57 (auto drum current adjustment):

1. Separation drum current is lower than the adjustment standard at the maximum output from the high voltage power supply board - D.
2. Separation drum current is higher than the adjustment standard at the minimum output from the high voltage power supply board - D.

- Possible Cause -

- Separation corona wire broken
- T/S corona unit not in position
- Drum unit poorly connected
- High voltage power supply board - D defective
- Main control board defective

3.23 CODE #74 - ID SENSOR ADJUSTMENT ERROR

- Definition -

When performing SP54 (auto Vsg/Vlg adjustment):

1. ID sensor output (Vsg) is lower than the adjustment target (4.0 V) at the maximum output of the ID sensor's LED.
2. ID sensor output (Vsg) is higher than the adjustment target (4.0 V) at the minimum output of the ID sensor's LED.

- Possible Cause -

- ID sensor board defective
- ID sensor board poorly connected
- Main control board defective

3.24 CODE #75 - V SENSOR ADJUSTMENT ERROR

- Definition -

When performing SP54 (auto Vsg/Vlg adjustment):

1. V sensor output (Vlg) is lower than the adjustment target (4.0 V) at the maximum output of the V sensor’s LED.
2. V sensor output (Vlg) is higher than the adjustment target (4.0 V) at the minimum output of the V sensor’s LED.

- Possible Cause -

- V sensor board defective
- V sensor board poorly connected
- Main control board defective

3.25 CODE #76 - ADS SENSOR ADJUSTMENT ERROR

- Definition -

When performing SP56 (auto ADS gain adjustment):

1. ADS sensor output is lower than the adjustment target (1.5 V) at the maximum gain data of the ADS sensor.
2. ADS sensor output is higher than the adjustment target (1.5 V) at the minimum gain data of the ADS sensor.

- Possible Cause -

- ADS sensor board defective
- ADS sensor board poorly connected
- Main control board defective
- Lens housing cover improperly installed

3.26 CODE #81 - JOGGER HOME POSITION ERROR 1

- Definition -

The jogger H.P. sensor remains deactivated (photo-transistor stays on) 0.8 seconds after the jogger fence started the returning.

- Possible Cause -

- Jogger motor defective
- Jogger H.P. sensor defective
- Jogger fence movement too heavy
- Main control board defective

3.27 CODE #82 - JOGGER HOME POSITION ERROR 2

- Definition -

The jogger H.P. sensor remains activated (photo-transistor stays off) 0.16 seconds after the jogger fence started going forward.

- Possible Cause -

- Jogger motor defective
- Jogger H.P. sensor defective
- Jogger fence movement too heavy
- Main control board defective

3.28 CODE #91 - TOTAL COUNTER ERROR

- Definition -

During a copy cycle the CPU does not receive a total counter reed switch on signal.

- Possible Cause -

- Total counter poorly connected
- Total counter defective

3.29 CODE #92 - TOTAL COUNTER SHORT

- Definition -

The CPU always receives a total counter reed switch on signal.

- Possible Cause -

- Total counter defective

3.30 CODE #93 - INTERFACE SIGNAL ERROR

- Definition -

Main CPU does not receive a response signal from the I/O CPU.

- Possible Cause -

- Main control board defective
- Electrical noise resulting in a communication error between the CPU’s on the main control board

3.31 CODE #94 - EDITOR SIGNAL ERROR

- Definition -

An interface communication error occurs between the main CPU and the editor board.

- Possible Cause -

- Editor board defective
- Main control board defective

3.32 CODE #95 - AREA CODE DETECTION ERROR

- Definition -

The CPU cannot recognize the area code from the diode matrix signal from the operation panel.

- Possible Cause -

- Operation panel board defective
- Main control board defective

3.33 CODE #dE - VL INITIAL DETECTION ERROR

- Definition -

The CPU cannot detect the proper Vref setting at the initial VL pattern detection after performing SP66 (drum initialization).

- Possible Cause -

- SP54 (auto Vsg/Vlg adjustment) not performed
- Toner density too high
- Toner density too low
- Development unit not set
- OPC drum not set
- OPC drum with a large heavy scratch at V sensor detection area
- Cleaning unit not set
- Exposure Lamp voltage (SP48) is not adjusted properly (too high or too low).

3.34 BLINKING "CALL SERVICE" INDICATOR (WITHOUT ANY SC CODE #)

- Definition -

The possible problems are listed below. Check the actual causes through the data of SP7.

1: The PM counter (SP88) has reached the set PM interval (SP87).

2: The copier is operating under ID sensor abnormal condition.
Vsg abnormal: Vsg=0.00
Vsp abnormal: Vsg=5.00

3: The used toner tank is nearly full. (The copier will stop within 250 copies.)

NOTE: A combination of causes is possible. The three digit indicator will show 1, 2, 3, 12, 13, 23, or 123.

- Possible Cause -

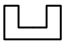
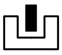
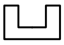
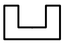
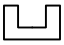
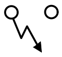
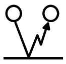
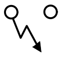
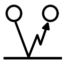
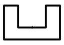
- The PM counter (SP88) has reached the set PM interval (SP87).
- Main control board defective.
- Incorrect Vsg voltage.
- Dirty ID sensor.
- Low toner density.
- Incorrect setting for SP84 (Editing eraser).
- ID sensor defective.
- Main control board defective.
- Toner supply clutch defective.
- The used toner tank is nearly full.
- Toner end counter (SP58) was not reset by SP83 the last time the used toner tank was emptied.

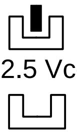
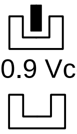
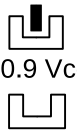
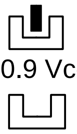
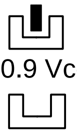
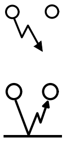
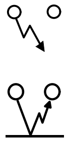
4. ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

4.1 SENSORS

Component (Symbol)		CN	Condition	Symptom	
				Main SW turns on	Ready condition
By-pass feed table (S1)	≥0.9 Vcc	104-B9	Open	"By-pass feed" indicator lights even if the by-pass feed table is closed.	By-pass feed mode is selected and "paper end" indicator lights.
	≤0.5 V		Shorted	By-pass feed mode cannot be selected even if the by-pass feed table is opened.	
Upper tray set (non-duplex machine only) (S2)	≥0.9 Vcc	104-B18	Open	After loading paper, "Paper end" indicator lights when the upper tray is selected.	
	≤0.5 V		Shorted	"Paper size" indicator does not light and upper tray cannot be selected, even if the paper tray is set.	
Lower tray set (S3)	≥0.9 Vcc	104-B20	Open	After loading paper, "Paper end" indicator lights when the lower tray is selected.	
	≤0.5 V		Shorted	"Paper size" indicator does not light and lower tray cannot be selected, even if the paper tray is set.	
By-pass feed paper end (S4)	≥0.9 Vcc	105-B11	Open	"Paper end" indicator does not light even if there is no paper on the by-pass feed table.	
	≤0.5 V		Shorted	"Paper end" indicator still lights even if paper is set on the by-pass feed table.	
Upper tray paper end (non-duplex machine only) (S5)	≥0.9 Vcc	104-B5	Open	When upper tray is selected "Paper end" indicator still lights, even if paper is added.	
	≤0.5 V		Shorted	when upper tray is selected"Paper end" indicator does not light, even though paper there is no in the upper tray.	
Lower tray paper end (S6)	≥0.9 Vcc	104-B14	Open	when lower tray is selected, "Paper end" indicator still lights even if paper is added.	
	≤0.5 V		Shorted	When lower tray is selected, "Paper end" indicator does not light, even though there is no paper in the lower tray.	
Upper tray upper limit (non-duplex machine only) (S7)	≥0.9 Vcc	104-B8	Open	When the last paper has fed out from the upper tray, "Paper end" indicator lights for an instant. The upper tray lift motor does not rotate.	
	≤0.5 V		Shorted	After drinking the paper size indicator, "SC#41" is displayed.	

Trouble-shooting

Component (Symbol)		CN	Condition	Symptom	
				Main SW turns on	Ready condition
Lower tray upper limit (S8)	 ≥0.9 Vcc  ≤0.5 V	104-B17	Open	When the last paper was fed out from the lower tray, "Paper end" indicator lights for an instant. The lower tray lift motor does not rotate.	
			Shorted	After blinking, the paper size indicator "SC#42" is displayed.	
Lower relay (S9)	 ≥0.9 Vcc  ≤0.4 V	104-B15	Open	—	"Paper jam **A**" indicator starts blinking when copies are made from the lower tray.
			Shorted	"Paper jam **A**" indicator starts blinking even if there is no paper.	
Upper relay (S10)	 ≥0.9 Vcc  ≤0.4 V	104-B7	Open	—	"Paper jam **A**" indicator starts blinking when copies are made from the trays or in duplex mode.
			Shorted	"Paper jam **A**" indicator starts blinking even if there is no paper.	
Registration (S11)	 ≥0.9 Vcc  ≤0.4 V	105-A6	Open	—	"Paper jam **A**" indicator starts blinking when copies are made.
			Shorted	"Paper jam **A**" indicator starts blinking even if there is no paper.	
Image density (ID) (S12)	 	110-B27	Open	"SC#74" is displayed when SP#54 is performed.	
			Shorted		
(S13)	 	110-A27	Open	"SC#75" is displayed when SP#54 is performed.	
			Shorted		
Fusing exit (S14)	 ≥2.4 Vcc  ≤0.5 V	110-B8	Open	—	"Paper jam **B**" indicator starts blinking when copies are made.
			Shorted	"Paper jam **B**" indicator starts blinking even if there is no paper.	

Component (Symbol)		CN	Condition	Symptom	
				Main SW turns on	Ready condition
Junction gate (duplex machine only) (S15)	 ≥2.5 Vcc ≤0.5 V	111-B9	Open	—	"Paper jam **C**" indicator starts blinking when copies are made in duplex mode.
			Shorted	"Paper jam **C**" indicator starts blinking even if there is no paper.	
Scanner H.P. (S16)	 ≥0.9 Vcc ≤0.5 V	109-A11	Open	"SC#22" is displayed	"SC#22" is displayed when copies are made.
			Shorted	"SC#21" is displayed	"SC#21" is displayed when copies are made.
Lens H.P. (S17)	 ≥0.9 Vcc ≤0.5 V	109-B10	Open	"SC#29" is displayed	"SC#29" is displayed when the magnification ratio is changed.
			Shorted	"SC#20" is displayed	"SC#20" is displayed when the magnification ratio is changed.
Platen position (S18)	 ≥0.9 Vcc ≤0.5 V	111-B11	Open	Original size "*" is indicated.	Original size indicator does not change even if a different size original placed on the exposure glass.
			Shorted	When the platen cover is closed, the original size is indicated "*" or A3/11" x 17".	
3rd scanner H.P. (S19)	 ≥0.9 Vcc ≤0.5 V	109-A10	Open	"SC2b" is displayed.	"SC#2b" is displayed when the magnification ratio is changed.
			Shorted	"SC2a" is displayed.	"SC#2A" is displayed when the magnification ratio is changed.
Original length (S20)		111-B21 111-B22 111-B23 111-B24 111-B25	Open	The CPU cannot properly detect original size. APS and AMS do not function correctly.	
			Shorted		
Original width (S21)		111-B19 111-B20	Open	The CPU cannot properly detect original size. APS and AMS do not function correctly.	
			Shorted		

Component (Symbol)		CN	Condition	Symptom	
				Main SW turns on	Ready condition
Duplex entrance (duplex machine only) (S22)	≥2.4 V ≤0.8 V	111-A5	Open	— —	"Paper jam **E**" indicator starts blinking when copies are made in duplex mode.
			Shorted	—	
Duplex turn gate (duplex machine only) (S23)	≥2.4 V ≤0.8 V	111-B5	Open	"Paper jam E" indicator starts blinking.	—
			Shorted	"Paper jam E" indicator starts blinking.	
Duplex paper end (duplex machine only) (S24)	≥2.4 V ≤0.8 V	111-B4	Open	—	When multi duplex copies are made, paper jam should be accused in duplex tray.
			Shorted	—	
Jogger H.P. (duplex machine only) (S25)	≥2.4 V ≤0.8 V	111-B6	Open	—	"SC#82" is displayed when copies are made in duplex mode.
			Shorted	—	
LCT paper end (LCT machine only) (S26)	≥0.9 Vcc ≤0.5 V	105-B12	Open	When LCT is selected "Paper end" indicator does not light even though paper is empty	
			Shorted	Tray goes down even if paper is not empty.	
LCT lower limit (LCT machine only) (S27)	≥0.9 Vcc ≤0.5 V	105-B17	Open	Tray does not go down even if tray down switch is pressed.	Tray does not go down even though paper is empty in the LCT.
			Shorted	"SC#46" is displayed after tray goes down.	
LCT upper limit (LCT machine only) (S28)	≥0.9 Vcc ≤0.5 V	105-B18	Open	After tray goes down, tray does not lift up.	
			Shorted	"SC#46" is displayed after tray lifts up.	

4.2 SWITCHES

Component	CN No.	Condition	Symptom
Upper paper size (SW1) (SW2) (SW3) (SW4)	104-B1 104-B2 104-B3 104-B4	Open	The CPU cannot detect proper paper size, and misfeeds may occur when copies are made.
		Shorted	
Lower paper size (SW5) (SW6) (SW7) (SW8)	104-B 9 104-B10 104-B11 104-B12	Open	The CPU cannot detect proper paper size, and misfeeds may occur when copies are made.
		Shorted	
Color detection (SW9)	111-A6 111-B7	Open	The CPU cannot detect proper color development unit, and cannot properly control the copy process system for the development unit. This may cause an abnormal image.
		Shorted	
Exit cover (SW10)	111-B10	Open	"C-2" is displayed even if the exit cover is closed.
		Shorted	"C-2" is not displayed even if exit cover is opened.
Platen cover (SW11)	111-B12	Open	The CPU cannot detect proper original size correctly.
		Shorted	
Front door safety (SW12)	—	Open	"C-1" is displayed even if the front door is closed.
	—	Shorted	"C-1" is not displayed even if the front door is opened.
Main SW (SW13)	—	Open	The copier does not turns on.
	—	Shorted	The copier does not turns off.
LCT cover -1 (SW14)	105-B14	Open	When LCT is selected, "C-4" is displayed even if LCt cover is closed.
		Shorted	When LCT is selected, "C-4" is not displayed even if LCT cover is opened.

Component	CN No.	Condition	Symptom
LCT cover -2 (SW15)	105-A5	Open	The tray does not go down even if the tray down switch is pressed. After 30 seconds, "SC#46" is displayed.
		Shorted	The tray goes down continuously.
	105-B6	Open	• During the copier runs, the "Paper end" indicator lights and the tray goes down even if paper there is still. • After loading paper, the tray does not go up and "SC#46" is displayed.
		Shorted	The tray goes up continuously.
Tray down (SW16)	105-A8	Open	The tray does not go down and LED does not light even if the tray down switch is pressed.
		Shorted	

4.3 FUSES

Component	Condition	Symptom
F1 (125V/10A) (DC Power Supply Board)	Open	The copier does not turn on when the main switch is turned on.
F2 (125V/6.3A) (DC Power Supply Board)	Open	"C-5" is displayed first then "SC#2A" is displayed depending on the 3rd scanner position when the main switch is turned on.
F3 (125V/6.3A) (DC Power Supply Board)	Open	"Paper jam **A**" indicator starts blinking when copies are made. "SC#61" is displayed when copier starts idling or during the copy cycle.
F4 (125V/6.3A) (DC Power Supply Board)	Open	"SC#21" or "SC#22" is displayed depending on the 1st scanner position.
F1 (125V/10A) (Main Motor Control Board)	Open	"SC#61" is displayed when copier starts idling or during the copy cycle. "Paper jam **A**" indicator starts blinking when copies are made.
F1 (125V/15A) (Power Code Terminal)	Open	The copier does not turn on when the main switch is turned on.